

# **<oxygen/> XML Author 11.2 User Manual**

**SyncRO Soft Ltd.**

---

# <oXygen/> XML Author 11.2 User Manual

SyncRO Soft Ltd.

Copyright © 2002-2009 SyncRO Soft Ltd. All Rights Reserved.

<oXygen/> XML Author User Manual

Copyright © 2009 Syncro Soft SRL

All rights reserved. No parts of this work may be reproduced in any form or by any means - graphic, electronic, or mechanical, including photocopying, recording, taping, or information storage and retrieval systems - without the written permission of the publisher.

Products that are referred to in this document may be either trademarks and/or registered trademarks of the respective owners. The publisher and the author make no claim to these trademarks.

While every precaution has been taken in the preparation of this document, the publisher and the author assume no responsibility for errors or omissions, or for damages resulting from the use of information contained in this document or from the use of programs and source code that may accompany it. In no event shall the publisher and the author be liable for any loss of profit or any other commercial damage caused or alleged to have been caused directly or indirectly by this document.

Many of the designations used by manufacturers and sellers to distinguish their products are claimed as trademarks. Where those designations appear in this book, and SyncRO Soft Ltd., was aware of a trademark claim, the designations have been printed in caps or initial caps. While every precaution has been taken in the preparation of this book, the publisher assumes no responsibility for errors or omissions, or for damages resulting from the use of the information contained herein.

Third party software components are distributed in the <oXygen/> XML Author installation packages, including the Java Runtime Environment (JRE), DocBook DTD and stylesheets. This product includes software developed by the Apache Software Foundation (<http://www.apache.org>) [<http://www.apache.org>): the Apache FOP, Xerces XML Parser and Xalan XSLT . This product includes software with copyright (C) 2002-2008 Yutaka Furubayashi (Poka-poka Dream Factory). These products are not the property of SyncRO Soft Ltd.. To the best knowledge of SyncRO Soft Ltd. owners of the aforesaid products granted permission to copy, distribute and/or modify the software and its documents under the terms of the Apache Software License, Version 1.1. Other packages are used under the GNU Lesser General Public License. Users are advised that the JRE is provided as a free software, but in accordance with the licensing requirements of Sun Microsystems. Users are advised that SyncRO Soft Ltd. assumes no responsibility for errors or omissions, or for damages resulting from the use of <oXygen/> XML Author and the aforesaid third party software. Nor does SyncRO Soft Ltd. assume any responsibility for licensing of the aforesaid software, should the relevant vendors change their terms. By using <oXygen/> XML Author the user accepts responsibility to maintain any licenses required by SyncRO Soft Ltd. or third party vendors, unless SyncRO Soft Ltd. declares in writing that the <oXygen/> XML Author license is inclusive of third party licensing.

Printed: November 2009

---

---

# Table of Contents

|   |    |
|---|----|
| 1. Introduction .....   | 1  |
| Key Features and Benefits .....   | 1  |
| 2. Installation .....   | 3  |
| Installation Requirements .....   | 3  |
| Platform Requirements .....   | 3  |
| Operating System, Tools and Environment Requirements .....                        | 3  |
| Operating System .....  | 3  |
| Tools .....   | 3  |
| Environment Prerequisites .....   | 3  |
| Installation Instructions .....   | 4  |
| Unattended installation .....   | 6  |
| Setting a parameter in the startup script .....                                   | 7  |
| Starting the application .....  | 7  |
| Obtaining and registering a license key .....                                     | 8  |
| Named User license registration .....   | 8  |
| How floating (concurrent) licenses work .....                                     | 9  |
| How to install the <oXygen/> XML Author license server as a Windows service ..... | 11 |
| How to release a floating license .....   | 12 |
| License registration with a registration code .....                               | 12 |
| Unregistering the license key .....   | 12 |
| Upgrading the <oXygen/> XML Author application .....                              | 12 |
| Checking for new versions .....   | 13 |
| Uninstalling the application .....  | 13 |
| Unattended uninstall .....  | 13 |
| Performance problems .....  | 13 |
| Large documents .....   | 13 |
| External processes .....  | 14 |
| Display problems on Linux/Solaris .....   | 14 |
| 3. Getting started .....  | 15 |
| Supported types of documents .....  | 15 |
| Getting help .....  | 15 |
| Perspectives .....  | 15 |
| Editor perspective .....  | 15 |
| Database perspective .....  | 17 |
| Dockable views and editors .....  | 19 |
| 4. Editing documents .....  | 21 |
| Working with Unicode .....  | 21 |
| Opening and saving Unicode documents .....  | 21 |
| The Unicode toolbar .....   | 22 |
| Opening and closing documents .....   | 23 |
| Creating new documents .....  | 23 |
| The New dialog .....  | 23 |
| Creating Documents based on Templates .....                                       | 28 |
| Saving documents .....  | 29 |
| Opening existing documents .....  | 29 |
| Opening and Saving Remote Documents via FTP/SFTP/WebDAV .....                     | 30 |
| Changing file permissions on a remote FTP server .....                            | 33 |
| WebDAV over HTTPS .....   | 33 |
| Opening the current document in a Web browser .....                               | 34 |
| Closing documents .....   | 35 |
| Viewing file properties .....   | 35 |

|   |    |
|---|----|
| Editing XML documents .....                                       | 35 |
| Associate a schema to a document .....                            | 35 |
| Setting a schema for the Content Completion .....                 | 35 |
| Setting a default schema .....                                    | 35 |
| Adding a Processing Instruction .....                             | 36 |
| Associating a schema with the namespace of the root element ..... | 37 |
| Learning document structure .....                                 | 37 |
| Streamline with Content Completion .....                          | 37 |
| Code templates .....  | 41 |
| Content Completion helper panels .....                            | 41 |
| The Model panel .....   | 41 |
| The Element Structure panel .....                                 | 42 |
| The Annotation panel .....  | 43 |
| The Attributes panel .....  | 43 |
| The Elements view .....   | 44 |
| The Entities View .....   | 44 |
| Validating XML documents .....                                    | 45 |
| Checking XML well-formedness .....                                | 45 |
| Validating XML documents against a schema .....                   | 47 |
| Marking Validation Errors .....                                   | 47 |
| Validation Example .....  | 48 |
| Caching the Schema Used for Validation .....                      | 48 |
| Validate As You Type .....  | 49 |
| Custom validation of XML documents .....                          | 49 |
| Linked output messages of an external engine .....                | 51 |
| Validation Scenario .....   | 51 |
| Sharing the Validation Scenarios. Project Level Scenarios .....   | 54 |
| Validation Actions in the User Interface .....                    | 54 |
| References to XML Schema specification .....                      | 55 |
| Resolving references to remote schemas with an XML Catalog .....  | 55 |
| Document navigation .....   | 56 |
| Quick document browsing using bookmarks .....                     | 56 |
| Folding of the XML elements .....                                 | 56 |
| Outline View .....  | 57 |
| XML Document Overview .....                                       | 58 |
| Outliner filters .....  | 58 |
| Modification Follow-up .....                                      | 59 |
| Document Structure Change .....                                   | 59 |
| The popup menu of the Outline tree .....                          | 59 |
| Document Tag Selection .....                                      | 60 |
| Navigation buttons .....  | 60 |
| Using the Go To dialog .....                                      | 60 |
| Grouping documents in XML projects .....                          | 61 |
| Large Documents .....   | 61 |
| Creating an included part .....                                   | 61 |
| Using the Project view .....                                      | 62 |
| Team Collaboration - Subversion .....                             | 64 |
| Project Level Settings .....                                      | 65 |
| Including document parts with XInclude .....                      | 65 |
| Working with XML Catalogs .....                                   | 67 |
| Formatting and indenting documents (pretty print) .....           | 67 |
| Viewing status information .....                                  | 70 |
| Image preview .....   | 70 |
| Making a persistent copy of results .....                         | 70 |

|   |    |
|---|----|
| Locking and unlocking XML markup .....                        | 71 |
| Adjusting the transparency of XML markup .....                | 71 |
| XML editor specific actions .....                             | 72 |
| Split actions .....   | 72 |
| Edit actions .....  | 72 |
| Select actions .....  | 72 |
| Source actions .....  | 72 |
| XML document actions .....                                    | 73 |
| XML Refactoring actions .....                                 | 74 |
| Smart editing .....   | 75 |
| Syntax highlight depending on namespace prefix .....          | 75 |
| Editing CSS stylesheets .....                                 | 76 |
| Validating CSS stylesheets .....                              | 76 |
| Content Completion in CSS stylesheets .....                   | 76 |
| CSS Outline View .....  | 76 |
| Folding in CSS stylesheets .....                              | 77 |
| Formatting and indenting CSS stylesheets (pretty print) ..... | 77 |
| Other CSS editing actions .....                               | 77 |
| Integrating external tools .....                              | 77 |
| Integrating the Ant tool .....                                | 78 |
| Editing very large documents .....                            | 78 |
| Insufficient memory .....                                     | 79 |
| Editing documents with long lines .....                       | 79 |
| Large file viewer .....                                       | 79 |
| Hex Viewer .....  | 81 |
| Scratch Buffer .....  | 82 |
| Changing the user interface language .....                    | 82 |
| Handling read-only files .....                                | 82 |
| 5. Authoring in the tagless editor .....                      | 83 |
| Authoring XML documents without the XML tags .....            | 83 |
| General Author Presentation .....                             | 84 |
| Author views .....  | 85 |
| Outline view .....  | 85 |
| XML Document Overview .....                                   | 86 |
| Modification Follow-up .....                                  | 86 |
| Document Structure Change .....                               | 86 |
| The popup menu of the Outline tree .....                      | 86 |
| Elements view .....   | 87 |
| Attributes view .....   | 87 |
| Entities view .....   | 89 |
| The Author editor .....                                       | 89 |
| Navigating the document content .....                         | 90 |
| Displaying the markup .....                                   | 91 |
| Bookmarks .....   | 91 |
| Position information tooltip .....                            | 91 |
| Displaying referred content .....                             | 93 |
| Finding and replacing text .....                              | 94 |
| Contextual menu .....   | 94 |
| Editing XML in <oXygen/> Author .....                         | 96 |
| Editing the XML markup .....                                  | 96 |
| Editing the XML content .....                                 | 97 |
| Table layout and resizing .....                               | 98 |
| DocBook .....   | 98 |
| XHTML .....   | 99 |

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| DITA .....   | 99  |
| Editing MathML notations .....   | 99  |
| Refreshing the content .....   | 101 |
| Validation and error presenting .....                                    | 101 |
| Whitespace handling .....  | 102 |
| Minimize differences between versions saved on different computers ..... | 103 |
| Change Tracking .....  | 104 |
| Managing changes .....   | 105 |
| 6. Author for DITA .....   | 107 |
| Creating DITA maps and topics .....                                      | 107 |
| Editing DITA Maps .....  | 107 |
| Creating a map .....   | 108 |
| Create a topic and add it to a map .....                                 | 109 |
| Organize topics in a map .....   | 109 |
| Create a bookmap .....   | 109 |
| Create relationships between topics .....                                | 110 |
| Create an index entry .....  | 110 |
| Editing actions .....  | 110 |
| Advanced operations .....  | 113 |
| Inserting a Topic Reference .....  | 113 |
| Inserting a Topic Heading .....  | 114 |
| Inserting a Topic Group .....  | 115 |
| Edit properties .....  | 115 |
| Transforming DITA Maps .....   | 116 |
| Available Output Formats .....   | 116 |
| Configuring a DITA transformation .....                                  | 117 |
| Customizing the DITA scenario .....                                      | 117 |
| The <i>Parameters</i> tab .....  | 117 |
| The <i>Filters</i> tab .....   | 118 |
| The <i>Advanced</i> tab .....  | 119 |
| The <i>Output</i> tab .....  | 121 |
| The <i>FO Processor</i> tab .....  | 122 |
| Set a font for PDF output generated with Apache FOP .....                | 123 |
| Running a DITA Map ANT transformation .....                              | 123 |
| DITA OT customization support .....                                      | 123 |
| Support for transformation customizations .....                          | 123 |
| Using your own DITA OT toolkit from <oXygen/> .....                      | 123 |
| Using your custom build file .....                                       | 124 |
| Customizing the <oXygen/> Ant tool .....                                 | 124 |
| Upgrading to a new version of DITA OT .....                              | 124 |
| Increasing the memory for the Ant process .....                          | 124 |
| Resolving topic references through an XML catalog .....                  | 124 |
| DITA specializations support .....                                       | 125 |
| Integration of a DITA specialization .....                               | 125 |
| Editing DITA Map specializations .....                                   | 125 |
| Editing DITA Topic specializations .....                                 | 125 |
| Use a new DITA Open Toolkit in <oXygen/> .....                           | 126 |
| Reusing content .....  | 126 |
| Working with content references .....                                    | 126 |
| Reusable component .....   | 127 |
| Insert a direct content reference .....                                  | 128 |
| 7. Predefined document types .....                                       | 129 |
| The DocBook V4 document type .....                                       | 129 |
| Association rules .....  | 129 |

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| Schema .....                              | 130 |
| Author extensions .....                   | 130 |
| Templates .....                           | 133 |
| Catalogs .....                            | 133 |
| Transformation Scenarios .....            | 134 |
| The DocBook V5 document type .....        | 134 |
| Association rules .....                   | 134 |
| Schema .....                              | 134 |
| Author extensions .....                   | 134 |
| Templates .....                           | 134 |
| Catalogs .....                            | 134 |
| Transformation Scenarios .....            | 134 |
| The DocBook Targetset document type ..... | 135 |
| Association rules .....                   | 135 |
| Schema .....                              | 135 |
| Author extensions .....                   | 135 |
| Templates .....                           | 135 |
| The DITA Topics document type .....       | 135 |
| Association rules .....                   | 135 |
| Schema .....                              | 135 |
| Author extensions .....                   | 136 |
| Templates .....                           | 142 |
| Catalogs .....                            | 142 |
| Transformation Scenarios .....            | 142 |
| The DITA MAP document type .....          | 142 |
| Association rules .....                   | 143 |
| Schema .....                              | 143 |
| Author extensions .....                   | 143 |
| Templates .....                           | 144 |
| Catalogs .....                            | 144 |
| Transformation Scenarios .....            | 144 |
| The XHTML document type .....             | 144 |
| Association rules .....                   | 144 |
| Schema .....                              | 144 |
| CSS .....                                 | 144 |
| Author extensions .....                   | 144 |
| Templates .....                           | 146 |
| Catalogs .....                            | 146 |
| Transformation Scenarios .....            | 147 |
| The TEI P4 document type .....            | 147 |
| Association rules .....                   | 147 |
| Schema .....                              | 147 |
| Author extensions .....                   | 147 |
| Templates .....                           | 149 |
| Catalogs .....                            | 149 |
| Transformation Scenarios .....            | 149 |
| The TEI P5 document type .....            | 149 |
| Association rules .....                   | 150 |
| Schema .....                              | 150 |
| Author extensions .....                   | 150 |
| Templates .....                           | 150 |
| Catalogs .....                            | 150 |
| Transformation Scenarios .....            | 150 |
| The MathML document type .....            | 150 |

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| Association rules .....                        | 151 |
| Schema .....                                   | 151 |
| Templates .....                                | 151 |
| The Microsoft Office OOXML document type ..... | 151 |
| Association rules .....                        | 151 |
| Schema .....                                   | 152 |
| Templates .....                                | 152 |
| The Open Office ODF document type .....        | 152 |
| Association rules .....                        | 153 |
| Schema .....                                   | 153 |
| Templates .....                                | 153 |
| The OASIS XML Catalog document type .....      | 153 |
| Association rules .....                        | 154 |
| Schema .....                                   | 154 |
| Templates .....                                | 154 |
| The XML Schema document type .....             | 154 |
| Association rules .....                        | 154 |
| Author extensions .....                        | 154 |
| The RelaxNG document type .....                | 154 |
| Association rules .....                        | 155 |
| Author extensions .....                        | 155 |
| The NVDL document type .....                   | 155 |
| Association rules .....                        | 155 |
| Author extensions .....                        | 155 |
| The Schematron document type .....             | 155 |
| Association rules .....                        | 155 |
| Author extensions .....                        | 155 |
| The Schematron 1.5 document type .....         | 156 |
| Association rules .....                        | 156 |
| Author extensions .....                        | 156 |
| The XSLT document type .....                   | 156 |
| Association rules .....                        | 156 |
| Author extensions .....                        | 156 |
| The XMLSpec document type .....                | 156 |
| Association rules .....                        | 156 |
| Schema .....                                   | 156 |
| Author extensions .....                        | 157 |
| Templates .....                                | 157 |
| Catalogs .....                                 | 157 |
| Transformation Scenarios .....                 | 157 |
| The FO document type .....                     | 157 |
| Association rules .....                        | 157 |
| Schema .....                                   | 157 |
| Author extensions .....                        | 157 |
| Transformation Scenarios .....                 | 157 |
| The EAD document type .....                    | 158 |
| Association rules .....                        | 158 |
| Schema .....                                   | 158 |
| Author extensions .....                        | 158 |
| Templates .....                                | 158 |
| Catalogs .....                                 | 158 |
| 8. Author Developer Guide .....                | 159 |
| Introduction .....                             | 159 |
| Simple Customization Tutorial .....            | 160 |



|  |     |
|--|-----|
| XML Schema .....   | 160 |
| Writing the CSS .....  | 161 |
| The XML Instance Template .....  | 164 |
| Advanced Customization Tutorial - Document Type Associations .....                     | 165 |
| Creating the Basic Association .....   | 165 |
| First step. XML Schema. ....   | 165 |
| Second step. The CSS. ....   | 167 |
| Defining the General Layout. ....  | 168 |
| Styling the section Element. ....  | 168 |
| Styling the table Element. ....  | 170 |
| Styling the Inline Elements. ....  | 172 |
| Styling Elements from other Namespace .....  | 172 |
| Styling images .....   | 173 |
| Marking elements as foldable .....   | 174 |
| Marking elements as links .....  | 175 |
| Third Step. The Association. ....  | 175 |
| Organizing the Framework Files .....   | 176 |
| Association Rules .....  | 177 |
| Java API: Rules implemented in Java .....  | 178 |
| Deciding the initial page .....  | 180 |
| Schema Settings .....  | 180 |
| Author CSS Settings .....  | 180 |
| Testing the Document Type Association .....  | 181 |
| Packaging and Deploying .....  | 182 |
| Author Settings .....  | 182 |
| Configuring Actions, Menus and Toolbars .....  | 183 |
| The Insert Section Action .....  | 183 |
| The Insert Table Action .....  | 186 |
| Configuring the Toolbars .....   | 187 |
| Configuring the Main Menu .....  | 188 |
| Configuring the Contextual Menu .....  | 189 |
| Author Default Operations .....  | 189 |
| The arguments of InsertFragmentOperation .....   | 190 |
| The arguments of SurroundWithFragmentOperation .....                                   | 192 |
| Java API - Extending Author Functionality through Java .....                           | 192 |
| Example 1. Step by Step Example. Simple Use of a Dialog from an Author Operation. .... | 193 |
| Example 2. Operations with Arguments. Report from Database Operation. ....             | 196 |
| Configuring New File Templates .....   | 201 |
| Configuring XML Catalogs .....   | 203 |
| Configuring Transformation Scenarios .....   | 204 |
| Configuring Extensions .....   | 206 |
| Configuring an Extensions Bundle .....   | 206 |
| Implementing an Author Extension State Listener .....                                  | 210 |
| Implementing an Author Schema Aware Editing Handler .....                              | 211 |
| Configuring a Content completion handler .....   | 212 |
| Configuring a Link target element finder .....   | 214 |
| The DefaultElementLocatorProvider implementation .....                                 | 214 |
| The XPointerElementLocator implementation .....  | 215 |
| The IDElementLocator implementation .....  | 218 |
| Creating a customized link target reference finder .....                               | 218 |
| Configuring a custom Drag and Drop listener .....                                      | 219 |
| Configuring a References Resolver .....  | 219 |

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| Configuring CSS Styles Filter .....   | 222 |
| Configuring a Table Column Width Provider .....                                 | 223 |
| Configuring a Table Cell Span Provider .....                                    | 227 |
| Configuring an Unique Attributes Recognizer .....                               | 230 |
| Customizing the default CSS of a document type .....                            | 231 |
| Document type sharing .....   | 232 |
| CSS support in <oxygen/> Author .....   | 232 |
| CSS 2.1 features .....  | 232 |
| Supported selectors .....   | 232 |
| Unsupported selectors .....   | 233 |
| Properties Support Table .....  | 234 |
| <oxygen/> CSS Extensions .....  | 237 |
| Media Type oxygen .....   | 237 |
| Supported Features from CSS Level 3 .....                                       | 238 |
| Namespace Selectors .....   | 238 |
| The attr() function: Properties Values Collected from the Edited Document. .... | 239 |
| Additional Custom Selectors .....   | 241 |
| Additional Properties .....   | 243 |
| Folding elements: foldable and not-foldable-child properties .....              | 243 |
| Link elements .....   | 244 |
| Display Tag Markers .....   | 245 |
| <oxygen/> Custom CSS functions .....  | 246 |
| The local-name() function .....   | 246 |
| The name() function .....   | 246 |
| The url() function .....  | 246 |
| The base-uri() function .....   | 247 |
| The parent-url() function .....   | 247 |
| The capitalize() function .....   | 247 |
| The uppercase() function .....  | 247 |
| The lowercase() function .....  | 247 |
| The concat() function .....   | 247 |
| The replace() function .....  | 248 |
| The unparsed-entity-uri() function .....  | 248 |
| The attributes() function .....   | 249 |
| Example Files Listings .....  | 249 |
| The Simple Documentation Framework Files .....                                  | 249 |
| XML Schema files .....  | 249 |
| sdf.xsd .....   | 249 |
| abs.xsd .....   | 251 |
| CSS Files .....   | 251 |
| sdf.css .....   | 251 |
| XML Files .....   | 253 |
| sdf_sample.xml .....  | 253 |
| XSL Files .....   | 255 |
| sdf.xsl .....   | 255 |
| Java Files .....  | 257 |
| InsertImageOperation.java .....   | 257 |
| QueryDatabaseOperation.java .....   | 261 |
| SDFExtensionsBundle.java .....  | 264 |
| SDFSchemaManagerFilter.java .....   | 267 |
| SDFSchemaAwareEditingHandler.java .....   | 268 |
| TableCellSpanProvider.java .....  | 275 |
| TableColumnWidthProvider.java .....   | 277 |

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| ReferencesResolver.java .....                                       | 281 |
| CustomRule.java .....   | 285 |
| DefaultElementLocatorProvider.java .....                            | 285 |
| XPointerElementLocator.java .....                                   | 286 |
| IDElementLocator.java .....   | 290 |
| 9. Grid Editor .....  | 292 |
| Introduction .....  | 292 |
| Layouts: Grid and Tree .....  | 293 |
| Navigating the grid .....   | 293 |
| Expand All Action .....   | 294 |
| Collapse All Action .....   | 294 |
| Expand Children Action .....  | 294 |
| Collapse Children Action .....                                      | 294 |
| Collapse Others .....   | 294 |
| Specific Grid Actions .....   | 294 |
| Sorting a Table Column .....  | 295 |
| Inserting a row in a table .....                                    | 295 |
| Inserting a column in a table .....                                 | 295 |
| Clearing the content of a column .....                              | 295 |
| Adding nodes .....  | 295 |
| Duplicating nodes .....   | 295 |
| Refresh layout .....  | 296 |
| Start editing a cell value .....                                    | 296 |
| Stop editing a cell value .....                                     | 296 |
| Drag and Drop(DnD) in the Grid Editor .....                         | 296 |
| Copy and Paste in the Grid Editor .....                             | 296 |
| Bidirectional Text Support in the Grid Editor .....                 | 298 |
| 10. Transforming documents .....                                    | 300 |
| XSLT Transformations .....  | 300 |
| Output formats .....  | 300 |
| Transformation scenario .....                                       | 301 |
| Batch transformation .....  | 302 |
| Built-in transformation scenarios .....                             | 302 |
| Defining a new transformation scenario .....                        | 302 |
| XSLT Stylesheet Parameters .....                                    | 310 |
| Additional XSLT Stylesheets .....                                   | 312 |
| XSLT/XQuery Extensions .....  | 312 |
| Creating a Transformation Scenario .....                            | 312 |
| Sharing the Transformation Scenarios. Project Level Scenarios. .... | 313 |
| Transformation Scenarios view .....                                 | 313 |
| XSL-FO processors .....   | 314 |
| Add a font to the built-in FOP .....                                | 315 |
| Locate font .....   | 315 |
| Generate font metrics file .....                                    | 315 |
| Register font to FOP configuration .....                            | 316 |
| Set FOP configuration file in Oxygen .....                          | 317 |
| Add new font to FO output .....                                     | 318 |
| DocBook Stylesheets .....   | 318 |
| TEI Stylesheets .....   | 318 |
| DITA-OT Stylesheets .....   | 318 |
| Common transformations .....  | 319 |
| PDF Output .....  | 319 |
| PS Output .....   | 320 |

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| TXT Output .....  | 320 |
| HTML Output .....   | 321 |
| HTML Help Output .....  | 321 |
| Java Help Output .....  | 322 |
| XHTML Output .....  | 322 |
| Supported XSLT processors .....                               | 322 |
| Configuring custom XSLT processors .....                      | 325 |
| Configuring the XSLT processor extensions paths .....         | 325 |
| XProc Transformations .....                                   | 326 |
| XProc transformation scenario .....                           | 326 |
| Integration of an external XProc engine - the XProc API ..... | 326 |
| 11. Querying documents .....                                  | 328 |
| Running XPath expressions .....                               | 328 |
| What is XPath .....   | 328 |
| <oXygen/>'s XPath console .....                               | 328 |
| The XPath Builder View .....                                  | 332 |
| 12. Comparing and merging documents .....                     | 334 |
| Directories Comparison .....                                  | 334 |
| The directories comparison user interface .....               | 335 |
| The Operations Menu .....                                     | 335 |
| Compare Toolbar .....   | 336 |
| Directories Selector .....                                    | 336 |
| The comparison result .....                                   | 336 |
| Compare images .....  | 337 |
| Files Comparison .....  | 337 |
| The Main Menu .....   | 338 |
| Edit Menu .....   | 338 |
| Find Menu .....   | 338 |
| Source Menu .....   | 338 |
| The Target Menu .....   | 338 |
| Operations Menu .....   | 338 |
| Option Menu .....   | 339 |
| Help Menu .....   | 339 |
| Compare Toolbar .....   | 339 |
| Files Selector .....  | 341 |
| File contents panel .....                                     | 341 |
| Word Level Comparison .....                                   | 341 |
| Character Level Comparison .....                              | 342 |
| 13. Working with Archives .....                               | 343 |
| Using files directly from archives .....                      | 343 |
| Browsing and modifying archives' structure .....              | 343 |
| Editing files from archives .....                             | 344 |
| 14. Working with Databases .....                              | 345 |
| Relational Database Support .....                             | 345 |
| Configuring Database Data Sources .....                       | 345 |
| How to configure an IBM DB2 Data Source .....                 | 345 |
| How to configure a Generic JDBC Data Source .....             | 346 |
| How to configure a Microsoft SQL Server Data Source .....     | 346 |
| How to configure a MySQL Data Source .....                    | 346 |
| How to configure an Oracle 11g Data Source .....              | 347 |
| How to configure a PostgreSQL 8.3 Data Source .....           | 347 |
| Configuring Database Connections .....                        | 347 |
| How to Configure an IBM DB2 Connection .....                  | 348 |
| How to Configure a JDBC-ODBC Connection .....                 | 348 |

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| How to Configure a Microsoft SQL Server Connection .....        | 348 |
| How to Configure a MySQL Connection .....                       | 349 |
| How to Configure an Oracle 11g Connection .....                 | 349 |
| How to Configure a PostgreSQL 8.3 Connection .....              | 350 |
| Resource Management .....                                       | 350 |
| Data Source Explorer View .....                                 | 350 |
| Actions available at connection level .....                     | 352 |
| Actions available at catalog level .....                        | 352 |
| Actions available at schema level .....                         | 352 |
| Actions available at table level .....                          | 352 |
| XML Schema Repository level .....                               | 352 |
| Oracle's XML Schema Repository Level .....                      | 352 |
| IBM DB2's XML Schema Repository Level .....                     | 352 |
| Microsoft SQL Server's XML Schema Repository Level .....        | 353 |
| Table Explorer View .....                                       | 353 |
| Native XML Database (NXD) Support .....                         | 356 |
| Configuring Database Data Sources .....                         | 356 |
| How to configure a Berkeley DB XML datasource .....             | 356 |
| How to configure an eXist datasource .....                      | 356 |
| How to configure a MarkLogic datasource .....                   | 357 |
| How to configure a Software AG Tamino datasource .....          | 357 |
| How to configure a Raining Data TigerLogic datasource .....     | 357 |
| How to configure a Documentum xDb (X-Hive/DB) datasource .....  | 358 |
| Configuring Database Connections .....                          | 358 |
| How to configure a Berkeley DB XML Connection .....             | 358 |
| How to configure an eXist Connection .....                      | 359 |
| How to configure a MarkLogic Connection .....                   | 359 |
| How to configure a Software AG Tamino Connection .....          | 360 |
| How to configure a Raining Data TigerLogic Connection .....     | 360 |
| How to configure an Documentum xDb (X-Hive/DB) Connection ..... | 361 |
| Resource Management .....                                       | 361 |
| Data Source Explorer View .....                                 | 361 |
| Berkeley DB XML Connection .....                                | 362 |
| Actions available at connection level .....                     | 362 |
| Actions available at container level .....                      | 363 |
| Actions available at resource level .....                       | 365 |
| eXist Connection .....  | 365 |
| Actions available at connection level .....                     | 365 |
| Actions available at container level .....                      | 365 |
| Actions available at resource level .....                       | 366 |
| WebDAV Connection .....   | 366 |
| How to Configure a WebDAV Connection .....                      | 366 |
| WebDAV connection actions .....                                 | 367 |
| Actions available at connection level .....                     | 367 |
| Actions available at folder level .....                         | 367 |
| Actions available at file level .....                           | 367 |
| 15. Content Management System (CMS) Integration .....           | 369 |
| Documentum (CMS) Support .....                                  | 369 |
| How to configure Documentum (CMS) support .....                 | 369 |
| How to configure a Documentum (CMS) data source .....           | 369 |
| How to configure a Documentum (CMS) connection .....            | 370 |
| Documentum (CMS) actions .....                                  | 370 |
| Actions available on connection .....                           | 371 |
| Actions available on cabinets/folders .....                     | 371 |

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| Actions available on resources .....                       | 372 |
| DITA transformations on DITA content from Documentum ..... | 374 |
| 16. Digital signature .....                                | 375 |
| Overview .....   | 375 |
| Canonicalizing files .....                                 | 376 |
| Certificates .....   | 377 |
| Signing files .....  | 378 |
| Verifying the signature .....                              | 379 |
| 17. The Syncro SVN Client .....                            | 380 |
| Introduction .....   | 380 |
| What is Syncro SVN Client .....                            | 380 |
| Quick start guide and reference .....                      | 380 |
| Main window .....  | 381 |
| Starting Syncro SVN Client .....                           | 381 |
| Views .....  | 382 |
| Main menu .....  | 382 |
| Main toolbar .....   | 388 |
| Getting started .....                                      | 389 |
| Define a repository location .....                         | 389 |
| Add / Edit / Remove repository locations .....             | 389 |
| Authentication .....                                       | 390 |
| Defining a working copy .....                              | 391 |
| Check out a working copy .....                             | 392 |
| Depth .....  | 392 |
| Revision .....   | 393 |
| Use an existing working copy .....                         | 394 |
| Manage working copy resources .....                        | 394 |
| Edit files .....   | 394 |
| Add resources to version control .....                     | 394 |
| Ignore resources not under version control .....           | 395 |
| Delete resources .....                                     | 395 |
| Copy / Move / Rename resources .....                       | 395 |
| Lock / Unlock resources .....                              | 396 |
| Scanning for locks .....                                   | 397 |
| Locked items .....   | 397 |
| Locking a file .....                                       | 397 |
| Unlocking a file .....                                     | 398 |
| Synchronize with the repository .....                      | 398 |
| Presentation modes .....                                   | 398 |
| View differences .....                                     | 401 |
| Resolve conflicts .....                                    | 402 |
| Real conflicts vs mergeable conflicts .....                | 403 |
| Content conflicts vs Property conflicts .....              | 403 |
| Edit real content conflicts .....                          | 404 |
| Revert your changes .....                                  | 405 |
| Merge conflicted resources .....                           | 406 |
| Drop incoming modifications .....                          | 406 |
| Tree conflicts .....                                       | 407 |
| Update the working copy .....                              | 407 |
| Send your changes to the repository .....                  | 408 |
| Integration with Bug Tracking Tools .....                  | 410 |
| Obtain information for a resource .....                    | 411 |
| Request status information for a resource .....            | 411 |
| Request history for a resource .....                       | 411 |

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| Using the resource history view .....   | 412 |
| History actions available in the popup menu displayed by a right click in the view when a<br>single resource is selected: ..... | 412 |
| History actions available on the popup menu for double selection: .....   | 413 |
| Directory Change Set View .....   | 413 |
| Management of SVN properties .....  | 414 |
| Add / Edit / Remove SVN properties .....  | 415 |
| Creation and management of Branches/Tags .....  | 415 |
| Create a Branch/Tag .....   | 416 |
| Merging .....   | 417 |
| Merge revisions .....   | 417 |
| Reintegrate a branch .....  | 419 |
| Merge two different trees .....   | 419 |
| Merge Options .....   | 420 |
| Resolve merge conflicts .....   | 421 |
| Switch the Repository Location .....  | 422 |
| Relocate a Working Copy .....   | 422 |
| Create Patches .....  | 422 |
| Create a patch from working copy .....  | 423 |
| Include unversioned files in the patch .....  | 425 |
| Create patch from repository revision .....   | 426 |
| Working with repositories .....   | 428 |
| Import / Export resources .....   | 428 |
| Importing resources into a repository .....   | 428 |
| Exporting resources from a repository .....   | 428 |
| Copy / Move / Delete resources from the repository .....  | 428 |
| Sparse checkouts .....  | 429 |
| Repository View .....   | 429 |
| General description .....   | 429 |
| Toolbar .....   | 429 |
| Contextual menu actions .....   | 430 |
| Working Copy View .....   | 432 |
| General description .....   | 432 |
| Working Copy format .....   | 432 |
| Refresh a Working Copy .....  | 433 |
| Toolbar .....   | 433 |
| Contextual menu actions .....   | 433 |
| Drag and drop operations .....  | 437 |
| Icons .....   | 437 |
| Synchronize View .....  | 438 |
| General description .....   | 438 |
| Synchronize trees .....   | 439 |
| Toolbar .....   | 439 |
| Contextual menu actions .....   | 439 |
| Icons .....   | 441 |
| Compare View .....  | 441 |
| Description .....   | 441 |
| Toolbar .....   | 442 |
| Compare images view .....   | 443 |
| Editor .....  | 443 |
| Description .....   | 443 |
| Image preview .....   | 444 |
| Description .....   | 444 |
| History View .....  | 444 |

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| Description .....                            | 444 |
| History Filters .....                        | 445 |
| The History filter dialog .....              | 445 |
| The History filter field .....               | 446 |
| Features .....                               | 446 |
| Annotations View .....                       | 447 |
| Description .....                            | 447 |
| Properties View .....                        | 448 |
| Description .....                            | 448 |
| The <i>svn:externals</i> property .....      | 449 |
| Toolbar / Contextual menu .....              | 450 |
| Console View .....                           | 450 |
| Description .....                            | 450 |
| Help View .....                              | 450 |
| Description .....                            | 450 |
| The Revision Graph of a SVN Resource .....   | 450 |
| Syncro SVN Client Preferences .....          | 454 |
| Command line interface cross reference ..... | 454 |
| Actions commands reference .....             | 454 |
| Checkout .....                               | 454 |
| Update .....                                 | 455 |
| Commit .....                                 | 455 |
| Diff .....                                   | 455 |
| Show History .....                           | 455 |
| Refresh .....                                | 455 |
| Synchronize .....                            | 455 |
| Import .....                                 | 456 |
| Export .....                                 | 456 |
| Information .....                            | 456 |
| Add .....                                    | 456 |
| Add to svn:ignore .....                      | 456 |
| Delete .....                                 | 456 |
| Copy .....                                   | 457 |
| Move / Rename .....                          | 457 |
| Mark resolved .....                          | 457 |
| Revert .....                                 | 457 |
| Cleanup .....                                | 457 |
| Show / Refresh Properties .....              | 457 |
| Branch / Tag .....                           | 457 |
| Merge .....                                  | 458 |
| Scan for locks .....                         | 458 |
| Lock .....                                   | 458 |
| Unlock .....                                 | 458 |
| Mark as merged .....                         | 458 |
| Override and update .....                    | 458 |
| Override and commit .....                    | 459 |
| Add / Edit property .....                    | 459 |
| Remove property .....                        | 459 |
| Revert changes from this revision .....      | 459 |
| Revert changes from these revisions .....    | 459 |
| 18. How to develop an <oXygen/> plugin ..... | 460 |
| Introduction .....                           | 460 |
| Requirements .....                           | 460 |
| Implementing plugins .....                   | 460 |



|  |     |
|--|-----|
| General plugins .....  | 461 |
| Selection plugins .....  | 462 |
| Document plugins .....   | 462 |
| Custom protocol plugins .....                                    | 462 |
| Resource locking custom protocol plugins .....                   | 463 |
| Components Validation plugins .....                              | 463 |
| Workspace access plugin .....                                    | 464 |
| Open redirect plugin .....                                       | 464 |
| Example - UppercasePlugin .....                                  | 465 |
| Example - a custom protocol plugin .....                         | 466 |
| Installing the plugin .....                                      | 467 |
| 19. Text editor specific actions .....                           | 468 |
| Undoing and redoing user actions .....                           | 468 |
| Copying and pasting text .....                                   | 468 |
| Finding and replacing text in the current file .....             | 468 |
| The Find/Replace dialog .....                                    | 468 |
| The Find All Elements/Attributes dialog .....                    | 471 |
| The Quick Find toolbar .....                                     | 472 |
| Keyboard shortcuts for finding the next and previous match ..... | 473 |
| Finding and replacing text in multiple files .....               | 473 |
| Using Check Spelling .....                                       | 476 |
| Adding a spell dictionary .....                                  | 478 |
| Adding a Hunspell dictionary .....                               | 478 |
| Adding an AZ Check dictionary .....                              | 478 |
| Learning words .....   | 479 |
| Ignoring words .....   | 479 |
| Spell checking as you type .....                                 | 479 |
| Check Spelling in Files .....                                    | 479 |
| Changing the font size .....                                     | 480 |
| VI editor actions .....  | 481 |
| Dragging and dropping the selected text .....                    | 481 |
| Inserting a file at caret position .....                         | 481 |
| Opening the file at caret in system application .....            | 481 |
| Opening the file at caret position .....                         | 481 |
| Switching between opened tabs .....                              | 481 |
| Printing a file .....  | 481 |
| Exiting the application .....                                    | 482 |
| 20. Configuring the application .....                            | 483 |
| Importing/Exporting Global Options .....                         | 483 |
| Preferences .....  | 483 |
| Global .....   | 484 |
| Fonts .....  | 486 |
| Document Type Association .....                                  | 487 |
| Perspectives Layout .....  | 489 |
| Encoding .....   | 491 |
| Editor .....   | 492 |
| Pages .....  | 492 |
| Text .....   | 493 |
| Grid .....   | 494 |
| Author .....   | 496 |
| Schema aware .....   | 498 |
| Track Changes .....  | 502 |
| MathML .....   | 503 |
| Messages .....   | 504 |

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| Format .....   | 505 |
| XML .....  | 506 |
| Whitespaces .....                                      | 508 |
| CSS .....  | 509 |
| JavaScript .....                                       | 510 |
| Content Completion .....                               | 510 |
| Annotations .....                                      | 513 |
| XPath .....  | 513 |
| Colors .....   | 514 |
| Syntax Highlight / Elements/Attributes by Prefix ..... | 516 |
| Open/Save .....  | 517 |
| Code Templates .....                                   | 518 |
| Document Templates .....                               | 519 |
| Spell Check .....                                      | 520 |
| Document Checking .....                                | 522 |
| Custom Validation .....                                | 523 |
| CSS Validator .....                                    | 525 |
| XML .....  | 525 |
| XML Catalog .....                                      | 525 |
| XML Parser .....                                       | 527 |
| Saxon EE Validation .....                              | 528 |
| XProc Engines .....                                    | 529 |
| XSLT/FO/XQuery .....                                   | 530 |
| XSLT .....   | 530 |
| Saxon6 .....   | 531 |
| Saxon HE/PE/EE .....                                   | 532 |
| Saxon HE/PE/EE Advanced options .....                  | 533 |
| XSLTProc .....   | 533 |
| MSXML .....  | 535 |
| MSXML.NET .....  | 536 |
| FO Processors .....                                    | 538 |
| XPath .....  | 540 |
| Custom Engines .....                                   | 542 |
| Data Sources .....                                     | 544 |
| Configuration of Data Sources .....                    | 544 |
| Download links for database drivers .....              | 548 |
| Table Filters .....                                    | 549 |
| SVN .....  | 549 |
| Working Copy .....                                     | 551 |
| SVN Diff .....   | 552 |
| Diff .....   | 552 |
| Diff Appearance .....                                  | 555 |
| Archive .....  | 555 |
| Plugins .....  | 557 |
| External Tools .....                                   | 557 |
| Menu Shortcut Keys .....                               | 559 |
| File Types .....                                       | 560 |
| SVN File Editors .....                                 | 561 |
| Custom Editor Variables .....                          | 563 |
| HTTP(S) / (S)FTP / Proxy Configuration .....           | 564 |
| Advanced HTTP Settings .....                           | 565 |
| (S)FTP .....   | 566 |
| Certificates .....                                     | 567 |
| XML Structure Outline .....                            | 567 |

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| View .....  | 568 |
| Messages .....  | 568 |
| SVN Messages .....  | 570 |
| Sharing Preferences .....   | 571 |
| Automatically importing the preferences from the other distribution ..... | 571 |
| Reset Global Options .....  | 572 |
| Scenarios Management .....  | 572 |
| Editor variables .....  | 572 |
| Custom editor variables .....   | 573 |
| Configure toolbars .....  | 574 |
| 21. Common problems .....   | 575 |
| Index .....   | 581 |

---

# Chapter 1. Introduction

Welcome to the User Manual of <oXygen/> XML Author 11.2 ! This book explains how to use the 11.2 version of the <oXygen/> XML Author effectively to author XML documents visually in a WYSIWYG like way quickly and easily.

The <oXygen/> XML Author is a cross-platform application for authors who want to edit XML documents visually without extensive knowledge about XML and XML related technologies. The WYSIWYG like editor is driven by CSS stylesheets associated with the XML documents and offers the option to switch off XML tags completely when editing an XML document.

## Key Features and Benefits

The <oXygen/> XML Author offers the following key features and benefits.

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Multiplatform availability: Windows, Mac OS X, Linux, Solaris   | Multilanguage support: English, German, French, Italian and Japanese  |
| Visual WYSIWYG XML editing mode based on W3C CSS stylesheets.   | Visual DITA Map editor  |
| Closely integrate with the DITA Open Toolkit for generating DITA output   | Support for latest versions of document frameworks: DocBook and TEI.  |
| Can be used as standalone desktop application, run through Java Web Start or as an Eclipse plugin   | Non blocking operations, you can perform validation and transformation operations in background   |
| Support for XML, CSS, XSLT, XSL-FO.   |   |
| Multiple built-in validation engines (Xerces, libxml, Saxon SA, MSXML 4.0, MSXML.NET) and support for custom validation engines (XSV, SQC). | Multiple built-in XSLT transformers (Saxon 6.5, Saxon B, Saxon SA, Saxon.NET, Xalan, libxslt, MSXML 3.0 / 4.0, Microsoft .NET 1.0, Microsoft .NET 2.0), support for custom JAXP transformers. |
| Support for latest versions of document frameworks: DocBook and TEI.  | Compare and merge files and directories   |
| Ready to use FOP support to generate PDF or PS documents  | XInclude support  |
| Support for editing remote files over FTP, SFTP, HTTP/WebDAV and HTTPS/WebDAV   | Easy error tracking - locate the error source by clicking on it   |
| New XML document wizards to easily create documents specifying a schema or a DTD  | Context sensitive content assistant driven by XML Schema, Relax NG, DTD, NVDL or by the edited document structure enhanced with schema annotation presenter                                   |
| XML Catalog support   | Unicode support   |
| Pretty-printing of XML files  | Easy configuration for external FO Processors   |
| Apply XSLT and FOP transformations  | XPath search and evaluation support   |
| Preview transformation results as XHTML or XML or in your browser   | Support for document templates to easily create and share documents   |
| Canonicalize and sign documents   | XML project manager   |
| Batch validate selected files in project  | Fully-fledged client for the Subversion (SVN) versioning system with support for SVN 1.3, SVN 1.4, SVN 1.5 and SVN 1.6 repositories.  |

| Configurable external tools  | Configurable actions key bindings                           |
|--|---|
| Multi-line find and replace support allows regular expressions, is XML aware, is incremental, handles multiple files | Special viewer for very large files (up to 2 GB file size). |
| Associate extensions on Windows  | Bookmark support  |
| Mac OS X ready   | Print documents   |
| Model View   | Attributes View   |
| Multidocument environment  | SVG Viewer  |
| XSLT 2.0 full support  | XPath 2.0 execution and debugging support                   |
| Dockable views and editors   | Document folding  |
| Spell checking supporting English, German and French including locals  | Custom protocol plugin support                              |
| All the usual editor capabilities (cut, copy, paste, find, replace, windows management)                              | Drag&drop support   |
| Support for editing, modifying and using files directly from ZIP-type archives                                       | Outline view in sync with a non well-formed document        |

---

# Chapter 2. Installation

This section explains platform requirements and installation procedures. It also provides instructions on how to obtain and register a license key, how to perform upgrades and uninstall the application if required.

If you need help at any point during these procedures please send email to <support@oxygenxml.com>

## Installation Requirements

### Platform Requirements

Minimum run-time requirements are listed below.

- Pentium Class Platform
- 256 MB of RAM
- 300 MB free disk space

## Operating System, Tools and Environment Requirements

### Operating System

|            |                       |
|------------|-----------------------|
| Windows    | Windows 98 or later.  |
| Mac OS     | minimum Mac OS X 10.4 |
| UNIX/Linux | All versions/flavors  |

### Tools

Installation packages are supplied in compressed archives. Ensure you have installed a suitable archive extraction utility with which to extract the archive. The MD5 sum is available on the Download page [<http://www.oxygenxml.com/download.html>] for every archive. You should check the MD5 sum of the downloaded archive with a MD5 checking tool available on your platform.

### Environment Prerequisites

Prior to installation ensure that your Operating System environment complies with the following:

- <oxygen/> XML Author supports only official and stable Java virtual machine versions 1.5.0 and later from Sun Microsystems (available at <http://java.sun.com>) and from Apple Computer (pre-installed on Mac OS X). For Mac OS X, Java VM updates are available at <http://www.apple.com/macosx/features/java/>. <oxygen/> XML Author may work very well with JVM implementations from other vendors but the eventual incompatibilities will not be solved in further <oxygen/> XML Author releases. <oxygen/> XML Author does not work with the GNU libgcj Java virtual machine [<http://www.oxygenxml.com/forum/ftopic1887.html>].
- The PATH environment variable is set to the most current Java VM installation.
- References to older Java VM installations are removed from the PATH.

# Installation Instructions

Prior to proceeding with the following instructions, please ensure that your system complies with the prerequisites detailed in the installation requirements.

## Note

The following instructions assume that a Java Runtime Environment (JRE) is installed. If you have downloaded an installation package that contains the JRE, please note that the package will automatically install a JRE prior to execution of the application but this JRE will be used on your computer only for running <oXygen/> XML Author, it will be invisible to other applications.

## Note

The installation kits and the executable files packaged inside the installation kits were checked before publication with an antivirus program to make sure they are not infected with viruses, trojan horses or other malicious software.

## Procedure 2.1. Windows Installation

1. Download the `author.exe` installation kit and run it.
2. Follow the instructions presented in the installation program. The user preferences are stored in the subfolder `com.oxygenxml.author` of the folder that is the value of the APPDATA Windows variable for the user that starts the application.

## Note

In order to specify another Java virtual machine to be used by <oXygen/> XML Author you have to set the home folder of the desired JVM in the Windows variable `JAVA_HOME` or in the Windows variable `JDK_HOME`. If `JAVA_HOME` and `JDK_HOME` are not set the application launcher will try to detect a JVM installed in a standard location on the computer and use it for running the application. If you installed the kit which includes a Java virtual machine you have to rename or remove the `jre` subfolder of the install folder in order for the variable `JAVA_HOME` or `JDK_HOME` to have an effect.

## Procedure 2.2. Mac OS X Installation

1. Create a folder called `author` on your local disk.
2. Within the `author` folder, create child folder named in accordance with the version number of the application. The directory structure looks as follows: `./author/11.2/`
3. Download the Mac OS X Installation package ( `author.tar.gz` ) to this folder.
4. Extract the archive to the same folder.
5. Execute the file named `author`

## Note

<oXygen/> XML Author uses the first JVM from the list of preferred JVM versions set on your Mac computer that has the version number not less than 1.5.0. To change the version of the Java virtual machine that runs the application you must move your desired JVM version up in the preferred list by dragging it with the

mouse on the first position in the list of JVMs available from Applications -> Utilities -> Java -> Java Preferences.

### Procedure 2.3. Linux Installation

1. Download the `author.sh` installation kit and run it.
2. Follow the instructions presented in the installation program.

#### Note

In order to specify another Java virtual machine to be used by <oxyen/> XML Author you have to set the home folder of the desired JVM in the environment variable `JAVA_HOME` or in the environment variable `JDK_HOME`. If `JAVA_HOME` and `JDK_HOME` are not set the application launcher will try to detect a JVM installed in a standard location on the computer and use it for running the application.

### Procedure 2.4. All Platforms Installation

1. Create a folder called `author` on your local disk.
2. Within the `author` folder, create child folder named in accordance with the application version number. The directory structure looks as follows: `../author/11.2/`
3. Download the All Platforms Installation package ( `author.tar.gz` ) to this folder.
4. Extract the archive to the same folder.
5. Run from a command line the script `author.bat` on Windows, `authorMac.sh` on Mac OS X, `author.sh` on Unix/Linux.

#### Note

To change the version of the Java virtual machine that runs the application you have to specify the full path to the java executable of the desired JVM version in the Java command at the end of the script file, for example:

```
"C:\Program Files\Java\jre1.5.0_13\bin\java" -Xmx256m  
-Dsun.java2d.noddraw=true ...
```

on Windows,

```
/System/Library/Frameworks/JavaVM.framework/Versions/  
1.5.0/Home/bin/java "-Xdock:name=Author" ...
```

on Mac OS X.

### Procedure 2.5. Windows NT Terminal Server

1. Install the application on the server, making its shortcuts available to all users.
2. Edit the `author.vmoptions` file located in the install folder, adding the parameter `-Dcom.oxygenxml.MultipleInstances=true` so that the file content looks like:



```
-Xmx256m  
-Dcom.oxygenxml.MultipleInstances=true
```

The "-Xmx" value represents the maximum memory for each application instance. Please make sure you tune them in a way that the multiple editor instances won't use all the available physical memory.

### Procedure 2.6. Unix/Linux Server

1. Install the editor on the server, making sure the `author.sh` script is executable and the installation directory is in the `PATH` of the users that need to use the editor.
2. Create a file called `author.vmoptions` in the <Oxygen/> XML Author install folder where the `author11.2` file is located. The content of the file must be:

```
-Xmx256m -Dcom.oxygenxml.MultipleInstances=true
```

The "-Xmx" value represents the maximum memory for each editor instance. Please make sure you tune it in a way that the multiple editor instances won't use all the available physical memory.

3. Make sure the X server processes located on the workstations allow connections from the server host. For this use the `xhost` command.
4. Telnet (or ssh) on the server host.
5. Start an xterm process, with display on the workstation. Ex: **xterm -display workstationip:0.0**
6. Start the application by typing **author.sh**

## Unattended installation

Unattended installation is possible only on Windows and Linux by running the installer executable from command line and passing the `-q` parameter. The installer executable is called `author.exe` on Windows and `oxygenXMLDiff.sh` on Linux

In unattended mode the installer does not overwrite files with the same name if a previous version of the application is installed in the same folder. The `-overwrite` parameter added after `-q` forces overwriting these files.

If the installer is executed in silent (unattended) mode and `-console` is passed as a second parameter after `-q` a console will be allocated on Windows that displays the output of the installer. The command for running the installer is in this case:

```
start /wait author.exe -q -console
```

By default an unattended installation applies the default settings of the installer. If you want to install the application on a large number of computers but you need to change the default values of some settings (like the install folder on disk, whether a desktop icon or a quick launch shortcut are created, the file associations created in the operating system, the name of the program group on the Start menu, etc.) then you should use a special settings file which specifies the new values for these settings. To generate the settings file you have to run the installer in normal attended mode once on a test computer and specify the exact options that you want for the unattended installation. When the installation is completed a file called `response.varfile` and containing your selected options is created in the `.install4j` subfolder of the installation folder, by default `C:\Program Files\Oxygen XML Author 11\.install4j` on Windows. This is a one time process. After that for applying these options on all the computers where an unattended installation is performed you have to specify this file in the command line, for example copy the file in the same location as the installer program and use the command:

- on Windows:        `author.exe -q -varfile response.varfile`

- on Linux:            `author.sh    -q -varfile response.varfile`

## Setting a parameter in the startup script

On the Windows platform if you start the application by double-clicking on the Start menu shortcut/Desktop shortcut in order to set a startup parameter you have to add a line with the parameter to the file `author.vmoptions` located in the installation directory together with the launcher file called `author.exe`. If the file `author.vmoptions` does not exist yet in the folder of the launcher file you have to create it there. For example for setting the maximum amount of Java memory to 600 MB the content of the file `author.vmoptions` must be:

```
-Xmx600m
```

If you start the application with the script `author.bat` you have to add or modify the parameter to the `java` command at the end of the script. For example for setting the maximum amount of Java memory to 600 MB the `java` command should start with:

```
java -Xmx600m -Dsun.java2d.noddraw=true ...
```

On the Mac OS X platform to add or modify a startup parameter you have to Ctrl-click on the <oxygen/> XML Author application icon in Finder, in the pop-up menu select *Show Package Contents*, then in the *Contents* directory you edit the file `Info.plist`: in the key *VMOptions* you modify the parameter if it already exists in that key or you add it after the model of the existing parameters inside that key.

On the Linux platform you have to create a file called `author.vmoptions` if it does not exist already and specify the parameter exactly as in the case of the `.vmoptions` file on the Windows platform.

If you use the *All platforms* distribution you have to add or modify the startup parameter that you want to set in the `java` command line at the end of the startup script `author.bat` on Windows, `authorMac.sh` on Mac OS X and `author.sh` on Linux. All these files are located in the installation directory. For example for setting the maximum amount of Java memory to 600 MB on Windows the `-Xmx` parameter must be modified in the `java` command at the end of `author.bat` like this:

```
java -Xmx600m -Dsun.java2d.noddraw=true ...
```

on Mac OS X the `java` command at the end of `authorMac.sh` should look like:

```
java "-Xdock:name=Author"\  
-Dcom.oxygenxml.editor.plugins.dir="$AUTHOR_HOME/plugins"\  
-Xmx600m\  

```

and on Linux the `java` command at the end of `author.sh` should look like:

```
java -Xmx600m\  
-Dcom.oxygenxml.editor.plugins.dir="$AUTHOR_HOME/plugins"\  

```

## Starting the application

As a Java based application, the <oxygen/> XML Author can run on all Operating Systems that support the Java Runtime Environment (JRE version 1.5.0 or later). The following instructions assume that JRE and the appropriate <oxygen/> XML Author distribution package for your Operating System are installed.

To start the application follow the instructions for the installed package:

### Procedure 2.7. Windows

- From the Windows Explorer double-click `author.exe`.

### Procedure 2.8. Linux

- At the prompt type: `sh author.sh`.

### Procedure 2.9. Mac OS X

- Double-click the `author` icon.

### Procedure 2.10. All Platforms

- On Windows run `author.bat`. On Mac OS X run `authorMac.sh`. On Linux/Unix run `author.sh`

## Obtaining and registering a license key

The <oXygen/> XML Author is not free software and requires a license in order to enable the application.

For demonstration and evaluation purposes a time limited license is available upon request from the <oXygen/> [<http://www.oxygenxml.com/register.html>] web site. This license is supplied at no cost for a period of 30 days from date of issue. During this period the <oXygen/> XML Author is fully functional enabling you to test all aspects of the application. Thereafter, the application is disabled and a permanent license must be purchased in order to use the application. For special circumstances, if a trial period of greater than 30 days is required, please contact <support@oxygenxml.com>. All licenses are obtained from the <oXygen/> web site [<http://www.oxygenxml.com>].

For definitions and legal details of the license types available for <oXygen/> XML Author you should consult the End User License Agreement received with the license key and available also on the <oXygen/> XML Author website at [http://www.oxygenxml.com/eula\\_author.html](http://www.oxygenxml.com/eula_author.html)

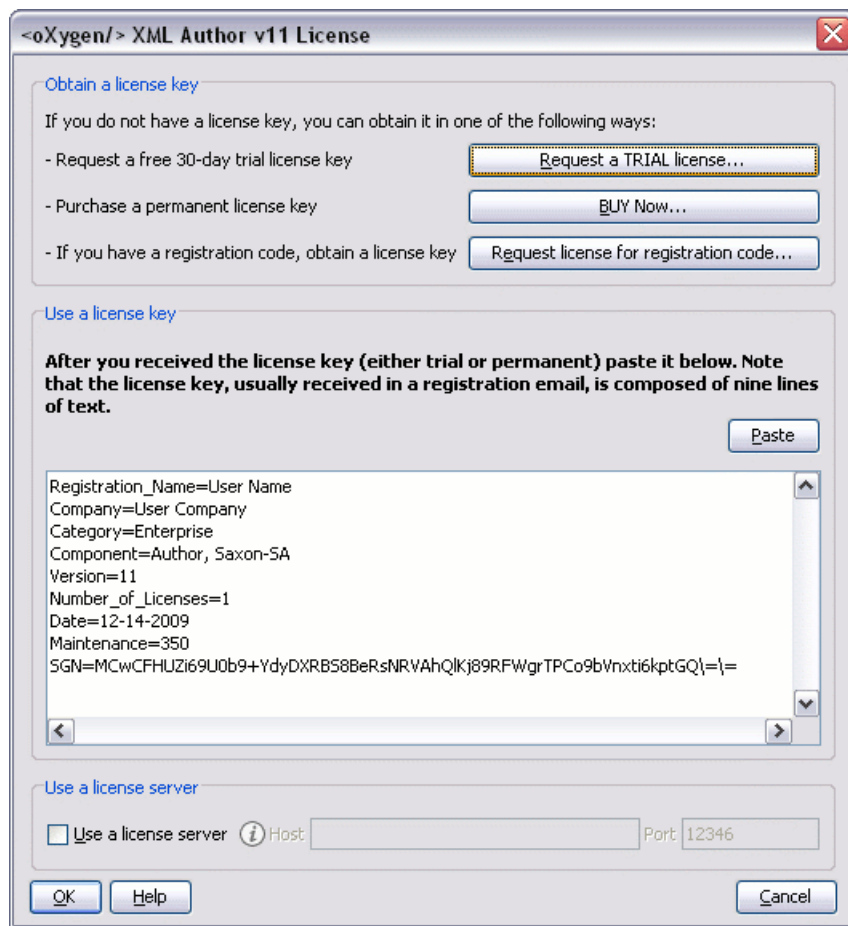
### Note

Starting with version 10.0 <oXygen/> accepts a license key for a newer version in the license registration dialog, e.g. version 10.0 accepts a license key for version 11 or a license key for version 12.

Once you have obtained a license key the installation procedure is described below.

## Named User license registration

1. Save a backup copy of the message containing the new license key.
2. Start the application.
3. Copy to the clipboard the license text as explained in the message.
4. If this is a new install of the application then it will display automatically the registration dialog when it is started. In the case you already used the application and obtained a new license, use the menu option Help/Register to make the registration dialog appear.

**Figure 2.1. Registration Dialog**

5. Paste the license text in the registration dialog, and press OK.

You have the following alternative for the procedure of license install:

1. Save the license key in a file named `licensekey.txt`.
2. Copy the file in the `lib` subfolder of the application folder. In that way the license will not be asked when the application will start.
3. Start the <oXygen/> XML Author application.

## How floating (concurrent) licenses work

If all the floating licenses are used in the same local network the installation procedure of floating licenses is the same as for the Named User licenses. Within the same network the license management is done by communication between the instances of <oXygen/> XML Author that are connected to the same local network and that run at the same time. Any new instance of <oXygen/> XML Author that is started after the number of running instances is equal with the number of purchased licenses will display a warning message and will disable the open file action.

If the floating licenses are used on machines connected to different local networks a separate license server must be started and the licenses deployed on it.

### Procedure 2.11. Floating license server setup

1. Download the license server from one of the download URLs included in the registration email message with your floating license key.
2. Run the downloaded Windows 32 bit installer or Windows 64 bit installer or unzip the all platforms zip archive kit on your server machine. The Windows installer installs the license server as a Windows service, it provides the option to start the Windows service automatically at Windows startup and it creates shortcuts in the Start menu group for starting and stopping the Windows service manually. If you use the zip archive on Windows you have to run the scripts provided in the archive for installing, starting, stopping and uninstalling the server as a Windows service.
3. If you start the server with the script `licenseServer.bat / licenseServer.sh` you can leave the default values for the parameters for the licenses folder and server port or you can set these two parameters to other values. The default folder for the floating license file is `[license-server-install-dir]/license` and the default TCP/IP server port is 12346.

To change the default values of the license server the following parameters have to be used:

- **-licenseDir** followed by the path of the directory where the license files will be placed;
- **-port** followed by the port number used to communicate with <oXygen/> XML Author instances.

#### Important

The license folder must contain a text file called `license.txt` which must contain a single floating license key corresponding to the set of purchased floating licenses. If you have more than one floating license key for the same <oXygen/> version obtained from different purchases please contact us at [support@oxygenxml.com](mailto:support@oxygenxml.com) to merge your license keys into a single one.

After the floating license server is set up the <oXygen/> XML Author application can be started and configured to request a license from it:

### Procedure 2.12. Request a floating license from the license server

1. Start the application.
2. Go to *Help -> Register...* . The license dialog is displayed.
3. Check the *Use a license server* checkbox.
4. Fill-in the *Host* text field with the host name or IP address of the license server.
5. Fill-in the *Port* text field with the port number used for communicating with the license server. Default is 12346.
6. Click the *OK* button. If the maximum number of available licenses was not exceeded a license key is received from the floating license server and registered in <oXygen/> XML Author. The license details are displayed in the About dialog opened from menu Help. If the maximum number of licenses was exceeded a warning dialog will pop up letting the user know about the problem. The message contains information about the users who requested and successfully received the floating licenses before exceeding the maximum number of licenses.

## How to install the <oXygen/> XML Author license server as a Windows service

In order to install the <oXygen/> XML Author license server as a Windows service you should run the Windows installer downloaded from the URL provided in the registration email message containing your floating license key.

If you want to install, start and uninstall yourself the server as a Windows service you can run the scripts created in the install folder from a command line console with the install folder of the license server as the current folder (on Windows Vista you have to run the console as Administrator). For installing the Windows service:

```
installWindowsService.bat
```

After installing the server as a Windows service, use the following two commands to start and stop the license server:

```
startWindowsService.bat
```

```
stopWindowsService.bat
```

Uninstalling the Windows service requires the following command:

```
uninstallWindowsService.bat
```

The `installWindowsService.bat` script installs the <oXygen/> XML Author license server as a Windows service with the name "oXygenLicenseServer" and accepts two parameters: the path of the folder containing the floating license key files and the local port number on which the server accepts connections from instances of the <oXygen/> XML Author. The parameters are optional. The default values are:

license      for the license file folder

12555        for the local port number

The `JAVA_HOME` variable must point to the home folder of a Java runtime environment installed on your Windows system.

The `startService.bat` script starts the Windows service so that the license server can accept connections from <oXygen/> XML Author clients.

The `stopService.bat` script stops the Windows service. The license server is shut down and it cannot accept connections from <oXygen/> XML Author clients.

The `uninstallService.bat` script uninstalls the Windows service created by the `installService.bat` script.

When the license server is used as a Windows service the output messages and the error messages cannot be viewed as for a command line script so that they are redirected automatically to the following log files created in the directory where the license server is installed:

outLicenseServer.log            the standard output stream of the server

errLicenseServer.log            the standard error stream of the server

On Windows Vista if you want to start or stop the Windows service with the Start menu shortcut called *Start Windows service* / *Stop Windows service* you have to run the shortcut as Administrator. This is a standard option for running Start menu shortcuts on Windows Vista and is necessary for giving the required permission to the command that starts / stops the Windows service.

## How to release a floating license

The floating license key registered for the current <oXygen/> XML Author instance will be released automatically when the <oXygen/> XML Author instance is closed. If you do not have Internet access to connect to the floating license server and you own also an individual license which you want to use in this case instead of the floating license, you have to open the license registration dialog again by going to Help -> Register, uncheck the *Use a license server* checkbox, press the *Paste* button to paste the individual license and press OK to switch from the floating license to the pasted individual license.

## License registration with a registration code

If you have only a registration code and you want to register the associated license key you must request this license key by filling the registration code and other details associated with your license in a request form on the <oXygen/> XML Author website. The button **Request license for registration code** in the registration dialog available from menu Help → Register opens this request form in the default Web browser on your computer.

## Unregistering the license key

Sometimes you need to unregister your license key, for example to release a floating license to be used by other user and still use the current <oXygen/> XML Author instance with an individual, Named User license, or to transfer your license key to other computer before other user starts using your current computer. This is done by going to Help → Register to display the license registration dialog, making sure the text area for the license key is empty and the checkbox *Use a license server* is unchecked, and pressing the OK button of the dialog. This brings up a confirmation dialog in which you select between falling back to the license key entered previously (for the case of releasing a floating license and reverting to the individual license entered previously in the *Register* dialog) and removing your license key from your user account of the computer.

## Upgrading the <oXygen/> XML Author application

From time to time, upgrade and patch versions of <oXygen/> XML Author are released to provide enhancements that rectify problems, improve functionality and the general efficiency of the application.

This section explains the procedure for upgrading <oXygen/> XML Author while preserving any personal configuration settings and customizations.

Unless otherwise stated by instructions supplied with a patch or upgrade kit, the following procedure is recommended:

### Procedure 2.13. Upgrade Procedure

1. Create a new folder under `../author` e.g. `../author/11.2`
2. Download and extract the upgrade to the new folder.
3. If you have defined <oXygen/> XML Author in the system PATH, modify it to the new installation folder.
4. Start <oXygen/> XML Author to ensure that the application can start and that your license is recognized by the upgrade installation.
5. If you are upgrading to a major version, for example from 8.3 to 9.0, then you will need to enter the new license text into the registration dialog that is shown when the application is started.

6. Select Help → About to determine the version number. If the previous version was 8.3, the About dialog should now show version 9.0.

## Checking for new versions

<oXygen/> XML Author offers the option of checking for new versions at the <http://www.oxygenxml.com> site when the application is started. If this option is enabled a message dialog will notify the user when new versions are released.

You can check for new versions manually at any time by going to menu Help → Check for New Versions

## Uninstalling the application

### Caution

The following procedure will remove <oXygen/> XML Author from your system. *Please ensure that all valuable data is saved to another location prior to performing this procedure.*

### Procedure 2.14. Uninstall Procedure

1. Backup all valuable data from the <oXygen/> XML Author installation folder.
2. On Windows use the appropriate uninstaller shortcut provided with your OS.

On Mac OS X and Unix manually delete the installation folder and all its contents.

3. If you wish to completely remove the application directory and any work saved in it, you will have to delete this directory manually. To remove the application configuration and any personal customizations remove the %APPDATA%\com.oxygenxml.author directory on Windows (usually %APPDATA% has the value [user-home-dir]\Application Data) / .com.oxygenxml.author on Linux / Library/Preferences/com.oxygenxml.author on Mac OS X from the user home directory.

## Unattended uninstall

If you want to run an unattended uninstall this is possible only on Windows and Linux by running the uninstaller executable from command line and passing the -q parameter. The uninstaller executable is called `uninstall.exe` on Windows and `uninstall` on Linux and is located in the install folder of the application.

## Performance problems

### Large documents

When started from the icon created on the Start menu or the Desktop on Windows and from the shortcut created on the Linux desktop the maximum memory available to <oXygen/> XML Author is set by default to 40% of the amount of physical RAM but not more than 700 MB. When started from the command line scripts the maximum memory is 256 MB. If large documents are edited in <oXygen/> XML Author and you see that performance slows down considerably after some time then a possible cause is that it needs more memory in order to run properly. You can increase the maximum amount of memory available to <oXygen/> XML Author by setting the -Xmx parameter in a configuration file specific to the platform that runs the application.



## Warning

The maximum amount of memory should not be equal to the physical amount of memory available on the machine because in that case the operating system and other applications will have no memory available.

## Note

You can use the Large File Viewer to view huge XML files which otherwise might be impossible to open in the editor.

When installed on a multi-user environment such as Windows Terminal Server or Unix/Linux, to each instance of <oxygen/> XML Author will be allocated the amount stipulated in the memory value. To avoid depreciating the general performance of the host system, please ensure that the amount of memory available is optimally apportioned for each of the expected instances.

## External processes

The amount of memory allocated for generating PDF output with the built-in Apache FOP processor is controlled by a different setting available in <oxygen/> XML Author Preferences: Memory available to the built-in FOP. In case of Out Of memory errors this is the setting that must be modified for allowing more memory for the built-in FOP.

For external XSL-FO processors configured in Preferences -> XML -> XSLT/FO/XQuery -> FO Processors and for external XSLT processors configured in Preferences -> XML -> XSLT/FO/XQuery -> Custom Engines and for external tools configured in Preferences -> External Tools the maximum memory must be set in the command line of the tool with a parameter -Xmx set to the Java virtual machine.

## Display problems on Linux/Solaris

Display problems like screen freeze or momentary menu pop-ups during mouse movements over screen on Linux or Solaris can be solved by specifying the parameter

```
-Dsun.java2d.pmosffscreen=false
```

for the Java virtual machine. This parameter disables off-screen pixmap support and must be added to the Java command line which starts the Java virtual machine at the end of the file *author11.2* located in the install directory.

---

# Chapter 3. Getting started

## Supported types of documents

The <oXygen/> XML Author provides a rich set of features for working with:

- XML documents and applications
- CSS documents

## Getting help

Online help is available at any time while working in <oXygen/> XML Author by going to menu Help → Help ... which opens the Help dialog.

Context sensitive help is available from any dialog or view by pressing the F1 key which opens the same Help dialog directly on a relevant page for the current view or dialog which has the editing focus.

The Help dialog is modal so it does not allow other editing actions in the <oXygen/> XML Author editors, views and dialogs. The same help content is available in the view Perspective → Show View → Dynamic Help (also available from menu Help → Dynamic Help ) which allows editing actions when it is visible on screen and which switches automatically to the relevant help page for the focused editor, view or dialog..

The name and version of the third-party libraries and frameworks used by <oXygen/> XML Author are listed in the About dialog box: Help → About ... Also you can see here the values of system properties like the version of the Java virtual machine, the location of the user home directory, the Java classpath, etc.

## Perspectives

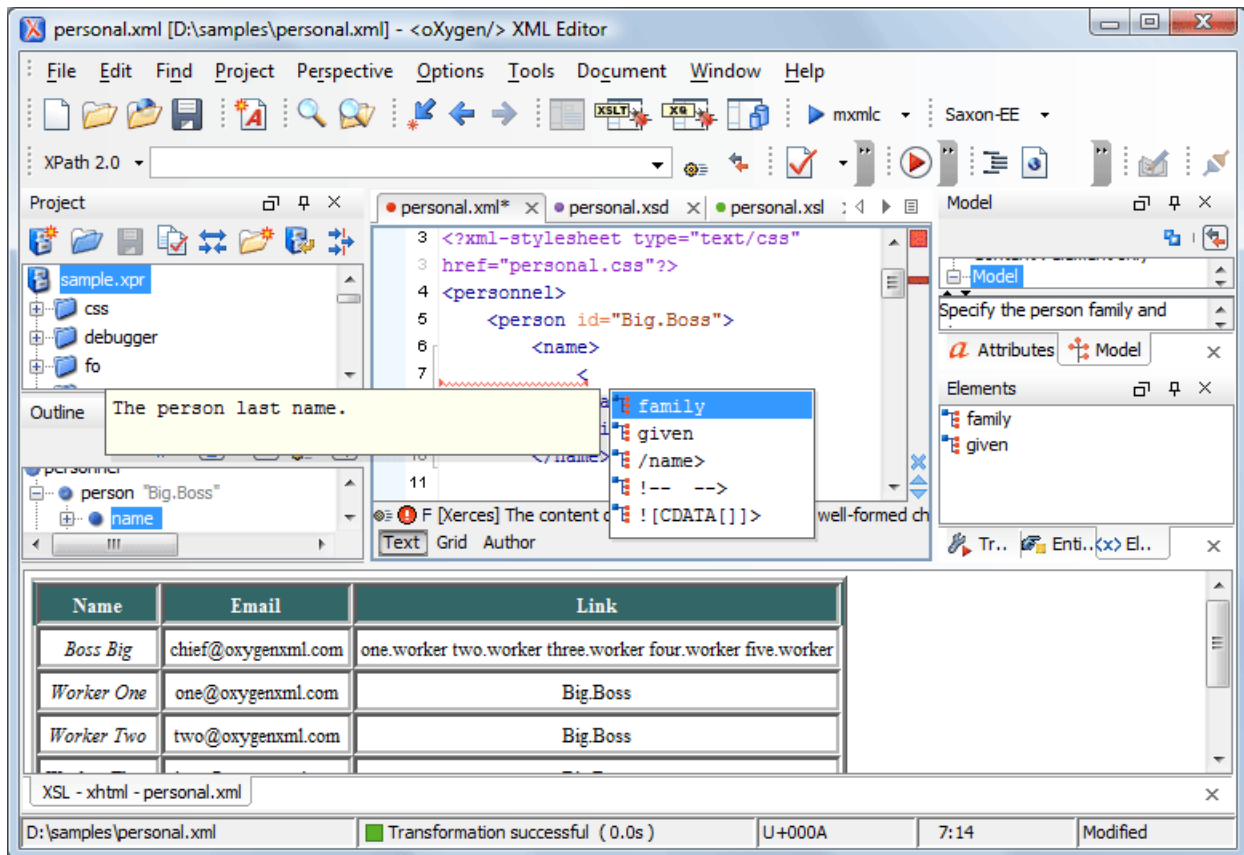
The <oXygen/> XML Author interface uses standard interface conventions and components to provide a familiar and intuitive editing environment across all operating systems.

In <oXygen/> XML Author you can work with documents in one of the perspectives:

|                      |   |
|----------------------|---|
| Editor perspective   | Editing of documents is supported by specialized and synchronized editors and views.  |
| Database perspective | Multiple connections to both relational databases and native XML ones can be managed at the same time in this perspective: database browsing, SQL execution, XQuery execution and data export to XML. |

## Editor perspective

The Editor perspective is used for editing the content of your documents. The space is organized in:




**Figure 3.1. Editor perspective**

When two or more panels are displayed, the application provides divider bars. By selecting a divider bar, it can be dragged to a new position, therefore increasing the space occupied by one panel while decreasing it for the other.

As majority of the work process centers around the Editor panel, other panels can be hidden from view using the expand and collapse controls located on the divider bars.

This perspective organizes the workspace in the following panels:

- |                  |  |
|------------------|--|
| Main menu        | Provides menu driven access to all the features and functions available within <oxygen/>.  |
| Main toolbar     | Provides easy access to common and frequently used functions. Each icon is a button that acts as a shortcut to a related function.   |
| Editor panel     | The place where you spend most of your time, reading, editing, applying markup and checking the validity and form of your documents.   |
| Outline view     | Provides the following functions: XML document overview, modification follow-up, document structure change, document tag selection.  |
| Model view panel | Presents the structure of the current edited tag and additional tag documentation.   |
| Results panel    | Displays result messages returned from user operations. The following actions are available: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Hierarchical view  - that allows you to see the results in tree-like manner. Clicking on a tree leaf highlights the corresponding line in the document.</li> </ul> |

- Flat view  - that will present the errors in a table-like manner. Clicking on a table row highlights the corresponding line in the document.
- Remove selected  - removes the currently selected message from the list.
- Remove all  - clears the message list.

Navigation to the previous and next message is possible from the contextual menu or by using the assigned shortcut keys. The default shortcut keys are **Ctrl + Shift + ]** for navigating to the next and **Ctrl + Shift + [** for navigating to the previous message.

Project view                      Enables the definition of projects and logical management of the documents it contains.

## Database perspective

The Database perspective is similar to the Editor perspective. It allows you to manage a database, offering support for browsing multiple connections at the same time, both relational and native XML databases, SQL execution, XQuery execution and data export to XML.

This perspective offers database specific support for:

- Sleepycat Berkeley DB XML Database
- eXist XML Database
- IBM DB2 (Enterprise edition only)
- JDBC-ODBC Bridge (Enterprise edition only)
- MarkLogic (Enterprise edition only, XQuery support only)
- Microsoft SQL Server 2005 and Microsoft SQL Server 2008 (Enterprise edition only)
- MySQL (Enterprise edition only)
- Oracle 11g (Enterprise edition only)
- PostgreSQL 8.3 (Enterprise edition only)
- Software AG Tamino (Enterprise edition only)
- TigerLogic (Enterprise edition only, XQuery support only)
- Documentum xDb (X-Hive/DB) XML Database (Enterprise edition only)
- Documentum (CMS) 6.5 (Enterprise edition only)

The XML capabilities of the databases marked in this list with "Enterprise edition only" are available only in the Enterprise edition of <oXygen/>. The non-XML capabilities of any database listed here are available also in the Academic and Professional editions of <oXygen/> by registering the database driver as a generic JDBC driver (the *Generic JDBC* type in the list of driver types) when defining the data source for accessing the database in <oXygen/>. The non-XML capabilities are browsing the structure of the database instance, opening a table in the *Table Explorer* view, handling the values from columns of type XML Type as String values. The XML capabilities are: displaying an XML Schema node in the tree of the database structure (for databases with such an XML specific structure) with actions for opening/editing/validating the schemas in an <oXygen/> editor panel, handling the values from columns of type XML Type

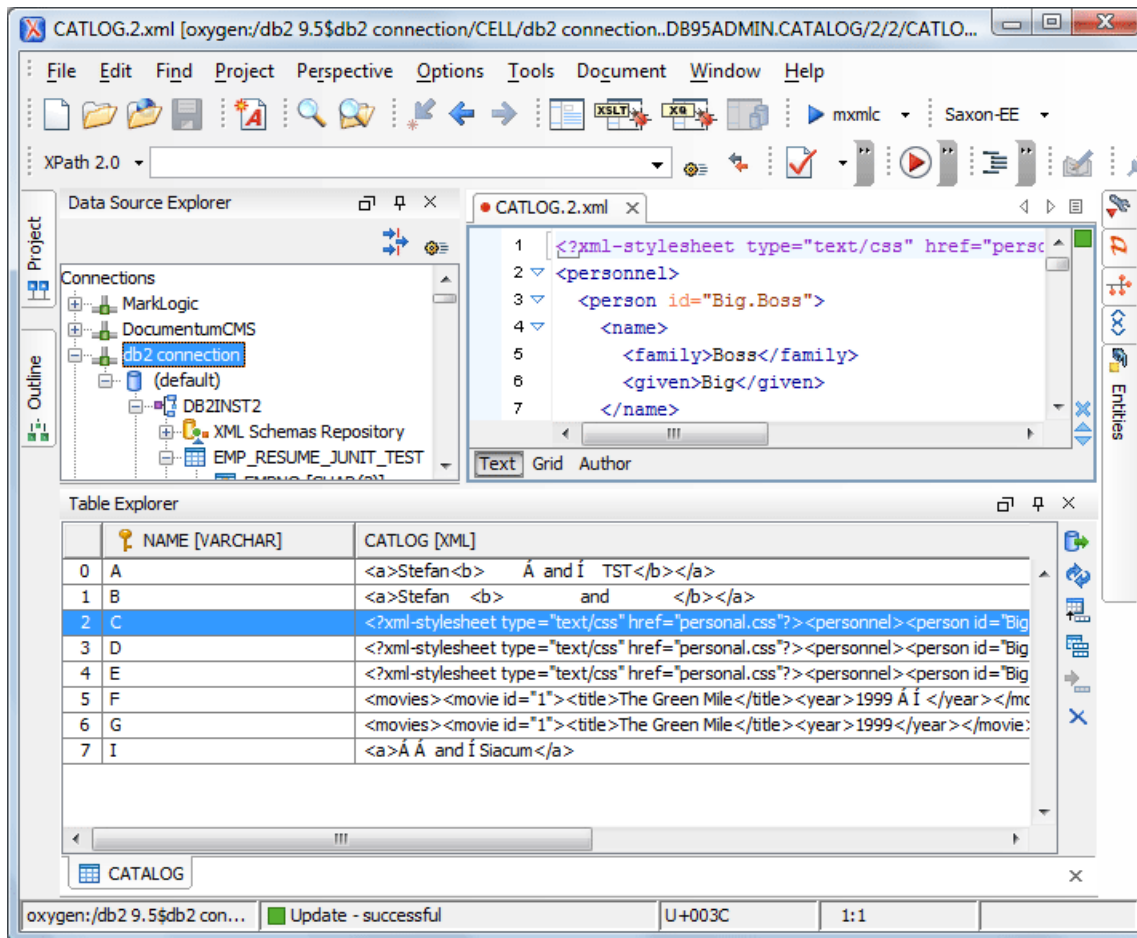
as XML instance documents that can be opened and edited in an <oxygen/> editor panel, validating an XML instance document added to an XML Type column of a table, etc.

For a detailed feature matrix that compares the Academic, Professional and Enterprise editions of <oxygen/> please go to the <oxygen/> website [[http://www.oxygenxml.com/feature\\_matrix.html](http://www.oxygenxml.com/feature_matrix.html)].

## Note

Only connections configured on relational data sources can be used to import to XML or to generate XML schemas.

**Figure 3.2. Database perspective**



|                      |  |
|----------------------|--|
| Main menu            | Provides menu driven access to all the features and functions available within <oxygen/>.  |
| Main toolbar         | Provides easy access to common and frequently used functions. Each icon is a button that acts as a shortcut to a related function.   |
| Editor panel         | The place where you spend most of your time, reading, editing, applying markup and checking the validity and form of your documents. |
| Data Source explorer | Provides browsing support for the configured connections.  |

|                |   |
|----------------|---|
| Table explorer | Provides table content editing support: insert a new row, delete a table row, cell value editing, export to XML file. |
|----------------|---|

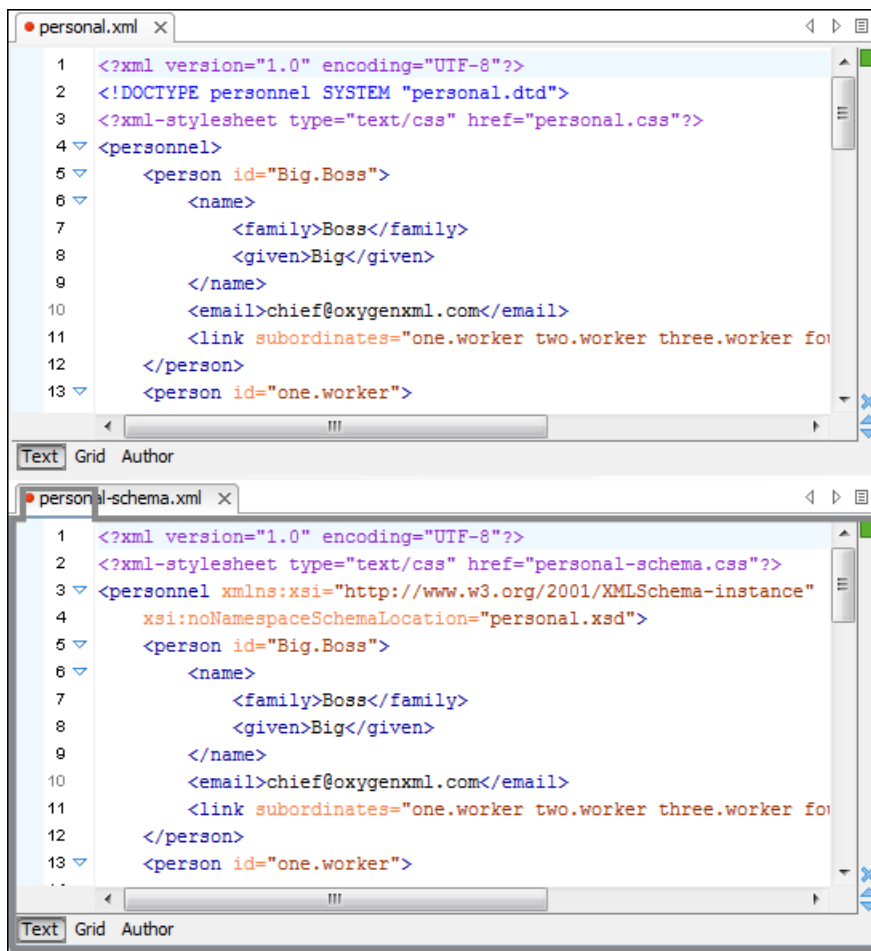
## Dockable views and editors





All the <oxygen/> views available in the Editor Perspective are dockable. You can drag them to any margin of another view or editor inside the <oxygen/> window to form any desired layout. Also a view can be set to a floating state to enable it to hover over other views and editors.

For gaining more editing space in the <oxygen/> window you should set one or more views to the auto hide state: only the title will remain always visible, attached to one of the margins of the <oxygen/> window, the rest of the view will be restored only by the mouse pointer hovering over the title or clicking the title. The view will become hidden again when the mouse pointer goes out of the screen area covered by that view.

The editing area can be divided vertically in several editing panels by dragging the title of an editor inside the editing area and dropping it when the frame of the dragged editor is painted in the desired position. In the following figure you can see how to unsplit the editing area by dragging the title of the `personal.xml` editor panel over `personal-schema.xml` until the drop frame painted in dark grey covers all the `personal-schema.xml` editor panel and then dropping it.

**Figure 3.3. Split the editing area by drag and drop of the editor title**



All the opened editors can be tiled horizontally/vertically or stacked together using actions from Window menu :  Tile Editors Horizontally,  Tile Editors Vertically,  Stack Editors. When several tiled editors exist, and action  Synchronously scrolling (from the same Window menu) is enabled, when scrolling inside one editor all other editors will also scroll.

Also the editing area can be divided vertically and horizontally with the split / unsplit actions available on the Split toolbar and the Window menu:  Split horizontally,  Split vertically,  Unsplit.

The editor can be maximized or restored (same action as double click on the editor tab) by using the Maximize/Restore Editor Area action from the Window menu.

Any <oxygen/> view or toolbar can be opened at any time from the menu items available in the menus Perspective → Show View and Perspective → Show Toolbar

---

# Chapter 4. Editing documents

## Working with Unicode

Unicode provides a unique number for every character, no matter what the platform, no matter what the program, no matter what the language. Unicode is an internationally recognized standard, adopted by industry leaders. The Unicode is required by modern standards such as XML, Java, ECMAScript (JavaScript), LDAP, CORBA 3.0, WML, etc., and is the official way to implement ISO/IEC 10646.

It is supported in many operating systems, all modern browsers, and many other products. The emergence of the Unicode Standard, and the availability of tools supporting it, are among the most significant recent global software technology trends. Incorporating Unicode into client-server or multi-tiered applications and websites offers significant cost savings over the use of legacy character sets.

As a modern XML Editor, <oXygen/> provides support for the Unicode standard enabling your XML application to be targeted across multiple platforms, languages and countries without re-engineering. Internally, the <oXygen/> XML Editor uses 16bit characters covering the Unicode Character set.

As a Java application <oXygen/> comes with a default Java input method for typing characters with Unicode codes. However the default input method does not cover all the Unicode codes, for example the codes for some accented characters or characters of East Asian languages. Such characters can be inserted in the editor panel of <oXygen/> either with the Character Map dialog available from menu Edit → Insert from Character Map or by installing a Java input method that supports the insertion of the needed characters. The installation of a Java input method [<http://java.sun.com/products/jfc/tsc/articles/InputMethod/inputmethod.html>] depends on the platform on which <oXygen/> runs (Windows, Mac OS X, Linux, etc) and is the same for any Java application.

## Opening and saving Unicode documents

On loading documents <oXygen/> reads the document prolog to determine the specified encoding type. This is then used to instruct the Java Encoder to load support for and save using the code chart specified. In the event that the encoding type cannot be determined, <oXygen/> will prompt and display the Available Java Encodings dialog which will provide a list of all encodings supported by the Java platform.

If the opened document contains a character which cannot be represented with the encoding detected from the document prolog or selected from the Available Java Encodings dialog <oXygen/> applies the policy specified for handling such errors. If the policy is set to REPORT <oXygen/> displays an error dialog about the character not allowed by the encoding. If the policy is set to IGNORE the character is removed from the document displayed in the editor panel. If the policy is set to REPLACE the character will be replaced with a standard replacement character for that encoding.

While in most cases you will use UTF-8, simply changing the encoding name will cause the file to be saved using the new encoding.

On saving the edited document if it contains characters not included in the encoding declared in the document prolog <oXygen/> will detect the problem and will signal it to the user who is required to resolve the conflict before he is able to save the document.

To edit document written in Japanese or Chinese, you will need to change the font to one that supports the specific characters (a Unicode font). For the Windows platform, use of *Arial Unicode MS* or *MS Gothic* is recommended. Do not expect Wordpad or Notepad to handle these encodings. Use Internet Explorer or Word to eventually examine XML documents.






When a document with a UTF-16 encoding is edited and saved in <oXygen/>, the saved document will have a byte order mark (BOM) which will specify the byte order of the document's content. The default byte order is platform dependent. That means that a UTF-16 document created on a Windows platform (where the default byte order mark is *UnicodeLittle*) will have a different BOM than a UTF-16 document created on a Mac OS platform (where the byte order mark is *UnicodeBig*). The byte order and the BOM of an existing document will be preserved by <oXygen/> when the document is edited and saved. This behavior can be changed in <oXygen/> from the Encoding preferences panel.


 **Note**

The naming convention used under Java does not always correspond to the common names used by the Unicode standard. For instance, while in XML you will use encoding="UTF-8", in Java the same encoding has the name "UTF8".

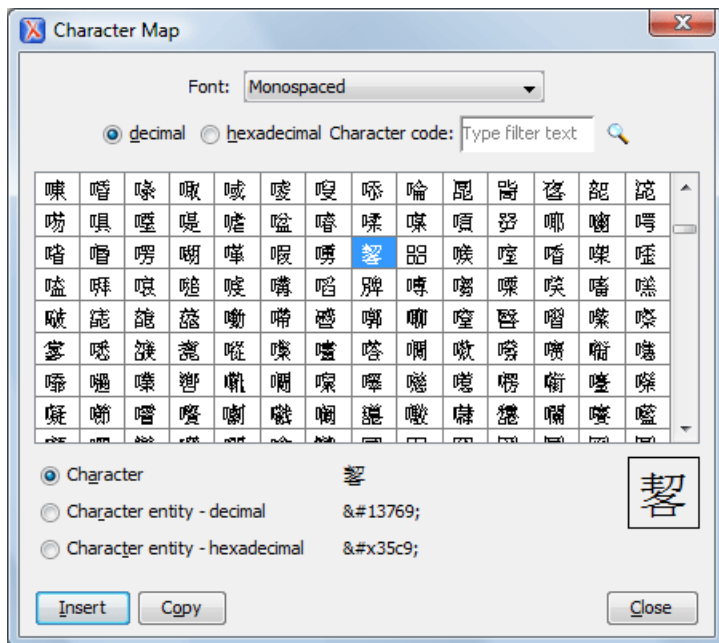
## The Unicode toolbar

The display of the Unicode toolbar is switched on and off from Perspective → Show Toolbar → Unicode and contains the actions  Change text orientation with the default shortcut **Ctrl + Shift + O** and  Insert from Character Map

The  Change text orientation action enables editing documents in languages with right to left writing (Hebrew, Arabic, etc.) by moving the caret to the left when new characters are inserted in the document. Please note that you may have to set an appropriate Unicode aware font for the editor panel, able to render the characters of the language of the edited file.

The  Insert from Character Map action opens a dialog in which you can select one character in the matrix of all characters available in a font and insert it in the edited document. The action is available also in the Edit menu.

**Figure 4.1. The Character Map dialog**



The character selected in the character table or an entity with the decimal code or the hexadecimal code of that character can be inserted in the current editor. You will see it in the editor if the font is able to render it. The *Insert* button inserts the selected character in the editor. The *Copy* button copies it to the clipboard without inserting it in the editor.

A character can be located very quickly in the map if you know the Unicode code: just type the code in the search field above the character map and the character is selected automatically in the map. If the code is hexadecimal the radio button for hexadecimal codes is selected automatically. Selecting a radio button with the mouse starts searching the code in the map.

The Character Map dialog cannot be used to insert Unicode characters in the grid version of a document editor. Accordingly the *Insert* button of the dialog will be disabled if the current document is edited in grid mode.

## Opening and closing documents

As with most editing applications, <oXygen/> XML Author lets you open existing documents, save your changes and close them as required.

## Creating new documents


### The New dialog

<oXygen/> supports a large number of document types. This dialog presents the default associations between a file extension and the type of editor which opens the file for editing. You can override these default associations in the File Types user preferences panel.

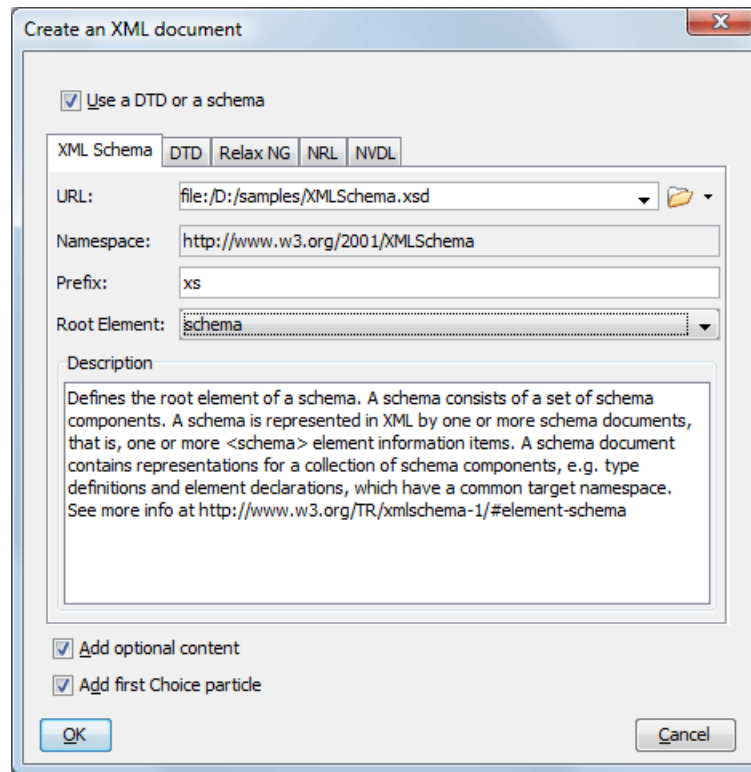
The New dialog only creates a skeleton document containing the document prolog, a root element and possibly other child elements depending on the options specific for each schema type.

Use the following procedure to create documents.

#### Procedure 4.1. Creating new documents

1. Select File → New (**Ctrl+N**) or press the  New toolbar button. The New dialog is displayed which contains the supported Document Types: XML, CSS File, Text File, PHP File, JavaScript File.
2. Select a document type, then click OK. If XML was selected the "Create an XML Document" dialog is displayed otherwise a new document is opened in the Editor Panel.
3. The Create an XML Document dialog enables definition of a XML Document Prolog using the system identifier of a XML Schema, DTD, Relax NG (full or compact syntax) schema, NRL (Namespace Routing Language) or NVDL (Namespace-based Validation Dispatching Language) schema. As not all XML documents are required to have a Prolog, you may choose to skip this step by clicking OK. If the prolog is required complete the fields as the following.

**Figure 4.2. The Create an XML Document Dialog - XML Schema Tab**



Complete the dialog as follows:

- Use a DTD or a schema                      When checked enables selection between DTD, XML Schema, Relax NG schema, NRL or NVDL schema.
- URL    Specifies the location of an XML Schema Document (XSD). >  
You can also specify an URI if it is solved by the <oXygen/> catalog.

**Example 4.1. DITA XSD URI**

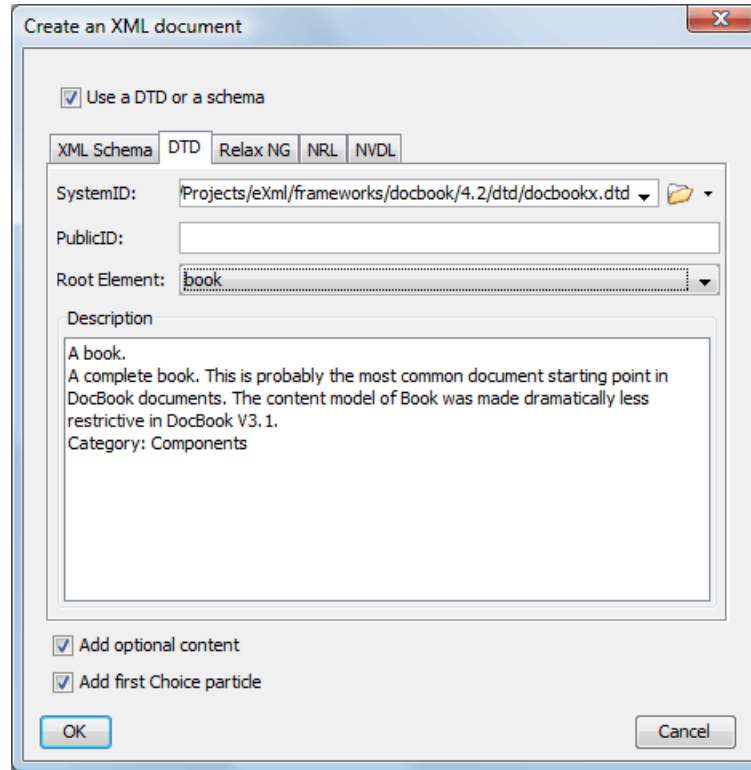
`urn:oasis:names:tc:dita:xsd:topic.xsd:1.1`

- Namespace                                      Specifies the document namespace.
- Prefix    Specifies the prefix for the namespace of the document root.
- Document Root                                      Populated from the elements defined in the specified XSD, enables selection of the element to be used as document root.
- Description    Shows a small definition for the currently selected element.
- Add optional content                                      If it is selected the elements and attributes that are defined in the XML Schema as optional are generated in the skeleton XML document created in a new editor panel when the OK button is pressed.

Add first Choice particle

If it is selected the first element of an *xs:choice* schema element is generated in the skeleton XML document created in a new editor panel when the OK button is pressed.

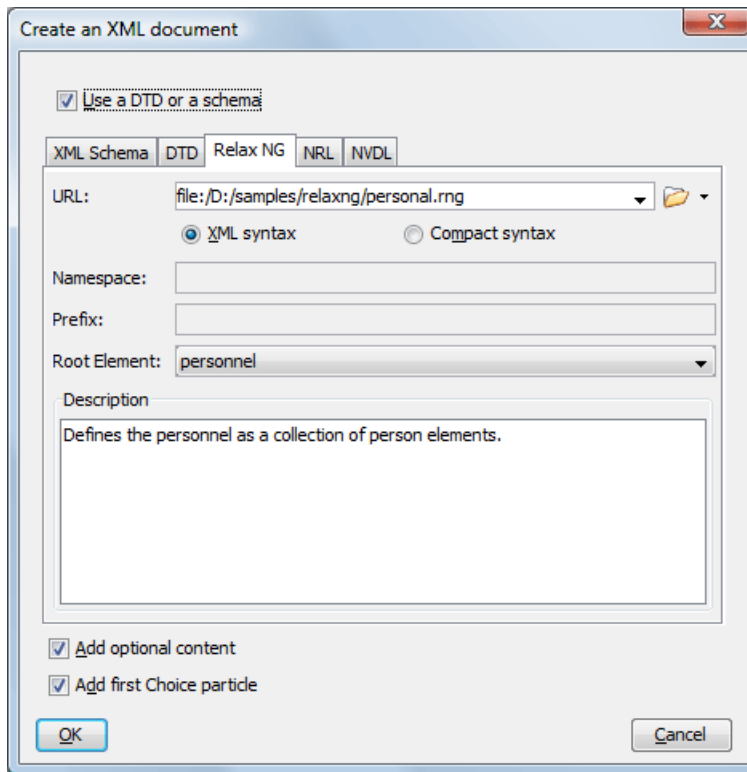
**Figure 4.3. The Create an XML Document Dialog - DTD Tab**



Complete the dialog as follows:

- |                       |   |
|-----------------------|---|
| Use a DTD or a schema | When checked enables selection between DTD, XML Schema, Relax NG schema, NRL or NVDL schema.                            |
| System ID             | Specifies the location of a Document Type Definition (DTD).   |
| Public ID             | Specifies the PUBLIC identifier declared in the Prolog.   |
| Document Root         | Populated from the elements defined in the specified DTD, enables selection of the element to be used as document root. |
| Description           | Shows a small definition for the currently selected element.  |

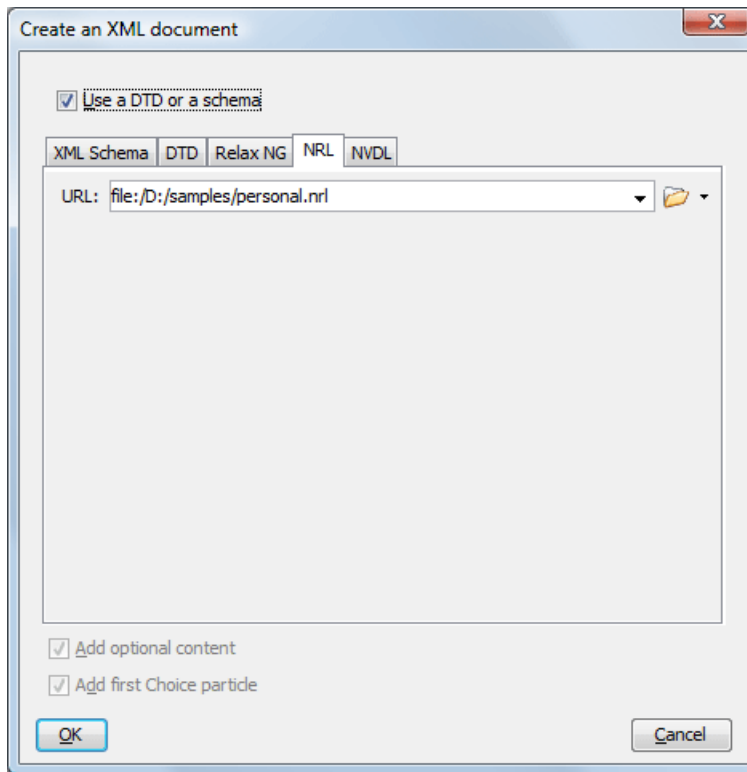
**Figure 4.4. The Create an XML Document Dialog - Relax NG Tab**



Complete the dialog as follows:

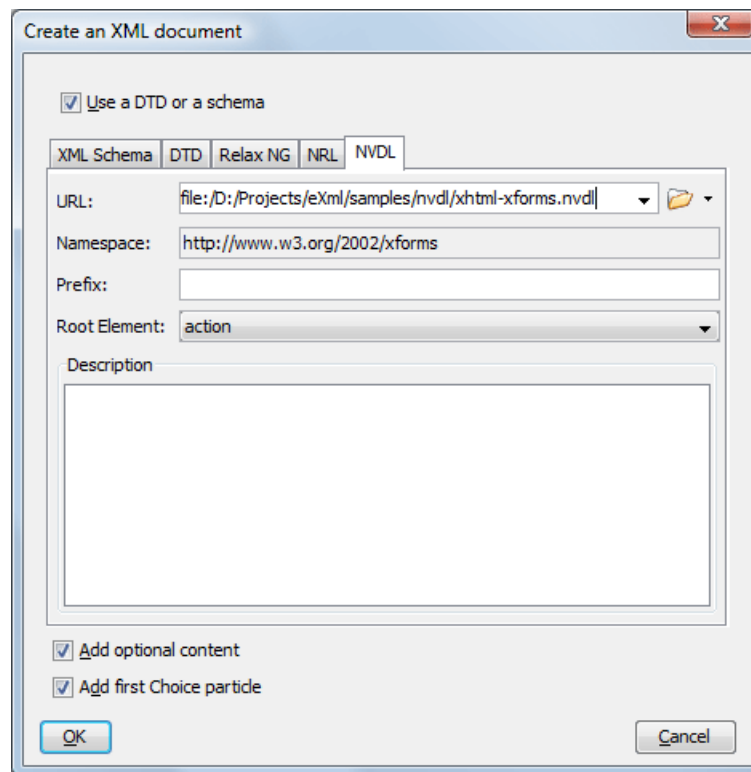
|                       |   |
|-----------------------|---|
| Use a DTD or a schema | When checked enables selection between DTD, XML Schema, Relax NG schema NRL or NVDL schema.   |
| URL                   | Specifies the location of a Relax NG schema in XML or compact syntax (RNG/RNC).   |
| XML syntax            | When checked the specified URL refers to a Relax NG schema in XML syntax. It will be checked automatically if the user selects a document with the <i>.rng</i> extension.     |
| Compact syntax        | When checked the specified URL refers to a Relax NG schema in compact syntax. It will be checked automatically if the user selects a document with the <i>.rnc</i> extension. |
| Namespace             | Specifies the document namespace.   |
| Prefix                | Specifies the prefix for the namespace of the document root.  |
| Document Root         | Populated from the elements defined in the specified RNG or RNC document, enables selection of the element to be used as document root.                                       |
| Description           | Shows a small definition for the currently selected element.  |

**Figure 4.5. The Create an XML Document Dialog - NRL Tab**



Complete the dialog as follows:

- |                       |  |
|-----------------------|--|
| Use a DTD or a schema | When checked enables selection between DTD, XML Schema, Relax NG schema, NRL or NVDL schema. |
| URL                   | Specifies the location of a NRL schema (NRL).  |

**Figure 4.6. The Create an XML Document Dialog - NVDL Tab**

Complete the dialog as follows:

|                       |   |
|-----------------------|---|
| Use a DTD or a schema | When checked enables selection between DTD, XML Schema, Relax NG schema, NRL or NVDL schema.                                      |
| URL                   | Specifies the location of a Namespace-based Validation Dispatching Language schema (NVDL).  |
| Namespace             | Specifies the document namespace.   |
| Prefix                | Specifies the prefix for the namespace of the document root.  |
| Document Root         | Populated from the elements defined in the specified NVDL document, enables selection of the element to be used as document root. |
| Description           | Shows a small definition for the currently selected element.  |

## Creating Documents based on Templates

Templates are documents containing a predefined structure. They provide starting points on which one can rapidly build new documents that repeat the same basic characteristics. <oXygen/> installs a rich set of templates for a number of XML applications. You may also create your own templates and share them with other users.

You can also use editor variables in the template files' content and they will be expanded when the files are opened.

The Templates tab in New dialog enables you to select predefined templates or templates that have already been created in previous sessions or by other users. Open a template using the following options:

The list of templates presented in the dialog includes:


|                          |  |
|--------------------------|--|
| Document Types templates | Templates supplied with the defined document types.  |
| User defined templates   | The user can add template files in the <code>templates</code> folder of the <code>&lt;oXygen/&gt;</code> install directory. Also in the option page Options → Preferences+Editor / Templates / Document TemplatesWindow → Preferences+oXygen/Editor / Templates / Document Templates can be specified a custom templates folder to be scanned. |

## Procedure 4.2. Creating Documents based on Templates

1. Select File → New / From Templates. The Templates tab is displayed and is used to select and open a new document based on an existing template document. Template documents act as starting points that have predefined properties such as file type, prolog, root element, containers and even existing content.
2. Scroll the Templates list and select the required Template Type.
3. Click OK. A new document is opened that already contains structure and content provided in the template starting point.



## Saving documents

The edited document can be saved with one of the actions:

- File → Save (**Ctrl+S**)  or press the Save toolbar button to save the current document. If the document does not have a file, displays the Save As dialog.
- File → Save As: Displays the Save As dialog, used to name and save an open document to a file; or save an existing file with a new name.
- File → Save To URL to display the Save to URL dialog, used to name and save an open document to a file; or saves an existing file with a new name, using FTP/SFTP/WebDAV.
- File → Save All: Saves all open documents. If any document does not have a file, displays the Save As dialog.

## Opening existing documents

Documents can be opened using one of the actions:

- File → Open (**Ctrl+O**) or press the  Open toolbar button to display the Open dialog used to discover, select and open one or more files. The start folder of the Open dialog can be either the last folder visited by the Open dialog the last time it was used in `<oXygen/>` XML Author or the folder of the currently edited file. This can be configured in the user preferences.
- File → Open URL ... or press the  Open URL ... toolbar button to display the Open URL dialog used to open a document using FTP/SFTP/WebDAV.
- File → Revert: Loads the last saved file content. All unsaved modifications are lost.
- File → Reopen: Displays a list of recently opened document files. Select a file to open.
- Project view contextual menu → Open : Opens the selected file from the Project view.



- From the command line when the <oXygen/> XML Author application is launched. If launched from the command line with the startup script installed by the installation wizard you can specify local file names as optional parameters:
- multiple XML files to be opened automatically at startup in separate editor panels:

```
scriptName [pathToXMLFile1] [pathToXMLFile2] ...
```

where *scriptName* is the name of the startup script for your platform ( `author.bat` on Windows, `author.sh` on Unix/Linux, `authorMac.sh` on Mac OS) and *pathToXMLFileN* is the name of a local XML file

The two possibilities of opening files at startup by specifying them in the command line are explained also if the startup script receives one of the `-h` or `--help` parameters.

### Note

When more files are opened you can change the tab order by clicking and dragging a tab in the desired position.

In addition <oXygen/> XML Author supports direct opening of files from the command prompt. Use the following command syntax:

- On Windows:

```
author.bat FileToOpen.xml
```

- On Unix/Linux:

```
sh ./author.sh FileToOpen.xml
```

- On Mac OS X:

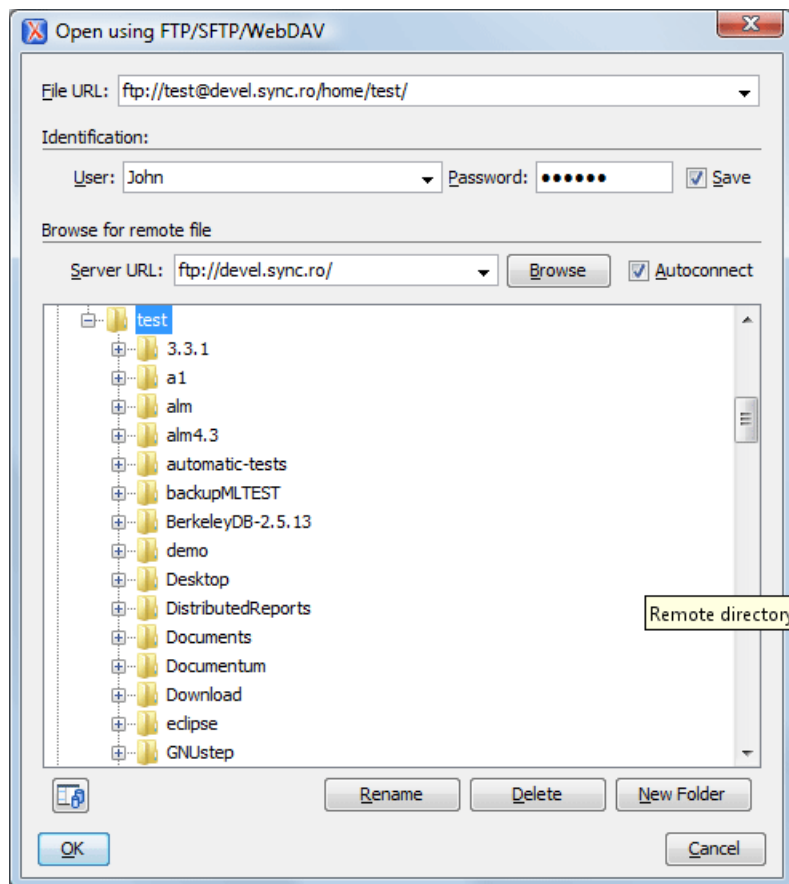
```
sh ./authorMac.sh FileToOpen.xml
```

Also when the Tree Editor perspective is activated the current document in the Editor perspective will be opened and displayed as a tree of XML elements.

## Opening and Saving Remote Documents via FTP/SFTP/WebDAV

<oXygen/> supports editing remote files, using the FTP, SFTP and WebDAV protocols. The remote opened files can be edited exactly as the local ones. They can be added to the project, and can be subject to XSL and FO transformations.

Figure 4.7. Open URL dialog



### Note

The FTP part is using passive access to the FTP servers. Make sure the server you are trying to connect to is supporting passive connections. Also the UTF-8 encoding is supported and can be configured for communication with the FTP server if the server supports it.

Files can be opened through the Secure FTP (SFTP) protocol using the regular user/password mechanism or using a private key file and a passphrase. The user/password mechanism has precedence so for using the private key and passphrase you have to remove the password from the dialog used to browse the server repository and leave only the user name. The private key file and the passphrase must be set in the SFTP user preferences.

The WebDAV access is implemented using the Slide package of the Apache Software Foundation.

The HTTP/WebDAV capabilities have been extensively tested with various servers running on Windows (IIS), Mac OS X and Linux (Apache).

### Note

If you have set a proxy server to be used by <oxygen> XML Author, make sure it supports the WebDAV protocol. If it does not, make sure your connections do not pass through this server, otherwise you will not be able to connect to a WebDAV server. If the server requires NTLM authentication <oxygen> XML Author will display an authentication dialog where the user and password for passing through the NTLM server must be entered. If the user is from a domain you can specify the user as **DOMAIN\user**.

To open the remote files, choose from the main menu File → Open URL ... The displayed dialog is composed of several parts:

- The editable combo box, in which it can be specified directly the URL to be opened or saved.

### URLs that can be directly opened

You can type in here an URL like `http://some.site/test.xml`, in case the file is accessible through normal HTTP protocol, or `ftp://anonymous@some.site/home/test.xml` if the file is accessible through anonymous FTP.

This combo box is also displaying the current selection when the user changes selection by browsing the tree of folders and files on the server.

- The *Identification* section contains the access credentials. If you want to browse for a file on a server, you have to specify the user and password. This information is bound to the selected URL displayed in the "File URL" combo box, and used further in opening/saving the file. If the check box "Save" is selected, then the user and password are saved between editing sessions. The password is kept encrypted into the options file.

### Note

Your password is well protected. In the case the options file is used on other machine by a user with a different username the password will become unreadable, since the encryption is username dependent. This is also true if you add URLs having user and password to your project.

- The *Browse for remote file* section contains the server combo and the "Autoconnect" check box. Into the server combo it may be specified the protocol (HTTP, HTTPS or FTP), the name or IP of the server and, in case of WebDAV, the path to the WebDAV directory.

### Server URLs

When accessing a FTP server, you need to specify only the protocol and the host, like: `ftp://server.com`, `ftp://ftp.apache.org`, or if using a nonstandard port: `ftp://server.com:7800/` etc.

When accessing a WebDAV server, along with the protocol and the host, it must be specified also the directory of the WebDAV repository.

### Important

Make sure that the repository directory ends in a slash "/".

Ex: `https://www.some-webdav-server.com:443/webdav-repository/`, `http://devel:9090/webdav/`


By pressing the "Browse" button the directory listing will be shown in the component below. When "Autoconnect" is selected then at every time the dialog is shown, the browse action will be performed.

- The tree view of the documents stored on the server. You can browse the directories, and make multiple selections. Additionally, you may use the "Rename", "Delete", and "New Folder" to manage the file repository.

The file names are sorted in a case-insensitive way.

A WebDAV resource can be locked when it is opened in <oxygen> XML Author by checking the option Lock WebDAV files on open to protect it from concurrent modifications on the server by other users. If other user tries to edit the same resource he will receive an error message and the name of the lock owner. The lock is released automatically when the editor for that resource is closed in <oxygen> XML Author .

GZIP compression is handled correctly for the content received/sent from/to a HTTP server or a WebDAV server. The built-in client of <oXygen/> XML Author notifies the server when the connection is established that GZIP compression is supported.

The current WebDAV Connection details can be saved using the  button and then used in the *Data Source Explorer* view.

## Changing file permissions on a remote FTP server

Some FTP servers allow the modification of file permissions on the file system for the files that they serve over the FTP protocol. This feature of the protocol is accessible directly in the FTP/WebDAV file browser dialog by right-clicking on a tree node and selecting the *Change permissions* menu item.

The usual Unix file permissions *Read*, *Write* and *Execute* are granted or denied in this dialog for the owner of the file, the group of the owner and the rest of the users. The aggregate number of the current state of the permissions is updated in the *Permissions* text field when a permission is modified with one of the check boxes.

## WebDAV over HTTPS

If you want to access a WebDAV repository across an insecure network <oXygen/> allows you to load and save the documents over the HTTPS protocol (if the server understands this protocol) so that any data exchange with the WebDAV server is encrypted.

When a WebDAV repository is first accessed over HTTPS the server hosting the repository will present a security certificate as part of the HTTPS protocol, without any user intervention. <oXygen/> XML Author will use this certificate to decrypt any data stream received from the server. For the authentication to succeed you should make sure the security certificate of the server hosting the repository can be read by <oXygen/> XML Author . This means that <oXygen/> XML Author can find the certificate in the key store of the Java Runtime Environment in which it runs. You know the server certificate is not in the JRE's key store if you get the error "No trusted certificate found" when trying to access the WebDAV repository:

You can add a certificate to the key store by exporting it to a local file using any HTTPS-capable Web browser (for example Internet Explorer) and then importing this file into the JRE using the keytool executable bundled with the JRE. The steps are the following using Internet Explorer (if you use other browser the procedure is similar):

### Procedure 4.3. Import a HTTPS server certificate

1. Export the certificate into a local file
  - a. Point your HTTPS-aware Web browser to the repository URL. If this is your first visit to the repository it will be displayed a security alert stating that the security certificate presented by the server is not trusted.

**Figure 4.8. Security alert - untrusted certificate**

- b. Press the button "View Certificate".
  - c. Select the "Details" tab.
  - d. Press the button "Copy to file ...". This will start the Certificate Export Wizard on Windows
  - e. Follow the indications of the wizard to save the certificate to a local file, for example `server.cer` .
2. Import the local file into the JRE running `<oXygen/>`
    - a. Open a text-mode console.
    - b. Go to the `lib/security` subdirectory of your JRE directory, that is of the directory where it is installed the JRE running `<oXygen/>` , for example on Windows `C:\Program Files\Java\jre1.5.0_09\lib\security`
    - c. Run the following command: `..\bin\keytool.exe -import -trustcacerts -file local-file.cer -keystore cacerts` where `local-file.cer` is the file containing the server certificate, created during the previous step. `keytool` requires a password before adding the certificate to the JRE keystore. The default password is "changeit". If somebody changed the default password then he is the only one who can perform the import. As a workaround you can delete the `cacerts` file, re-type the command and enter as password any combination of at least 6 characters. This will set the password for future operations with the key store.
  3. Restart `<oXygen/>` XML Author

## Opening the current document in a Web browser

To open the current document in the default Web browser installed on the computer use the action *Open in browser* available on menu Document → File and also on the *Document* toolbar. It is useful for seeing the effect of applying an XSLT stylesheet or a CSS stylesheet on a document which specifies the stylesheet using an *xml-stylesheet* processing instruction.

## Closing documents

To close documents use one of the following methods:

- File → Close (**Ctrl+W**) : Closes only the selected tab. All other tab instances remain.
- File → Close All: Closes all opened documents. If a document is modified or has no file, a prompt to save, not to save, or cancel the save operation is displayed.
- Close - accessed by right-clicking on an editor tab: Closes the selected editor.
- Close Other Files - accessed by right-clicking on an editor tab: Closes the other files except the selected tab.
- Close All - accessed by right-clicking on an editor tab: Closes all open editors within the panel.

## Viewing file properties

In the Properties view you can quickly access information about the current edited document like the character encoding, full path on the file system, schema used for content completion and document validation, document type name and path, associated transformation scenario, if the file is read-only, document's total number of characters, line width, if indent with tabs is enabled and the indent size. The view can be accessed by going to Perspective+Show View → Properties

To copy a value from the *Properties View* in the clipboard, for example the full file path, use the *Copy* action available on the right-click menu of the view.

## Editing XML documents

### Associate a schema to a document

#### Setting a schema for the Content Completion

In case you are editing document fragments, for instance the chapters from a book each one in a separate file, you can activate the Content Completion for these fragments in two ways:

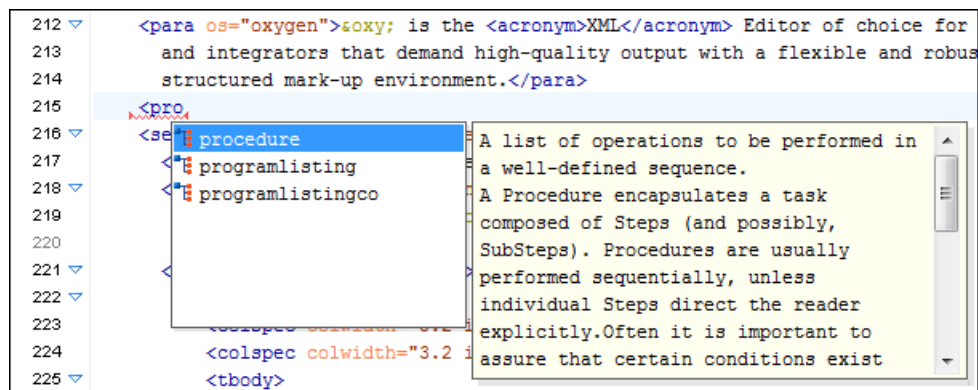
##### Setting a default schema

The list of document types available at Options → Preferences -> Document Type Association contains a set of rules for associating a schema with the current document when no schema is specified within the document. The schema is one of the types: XML Schema, XML Schema with embedded Schematron rules, Relax NG (XML syntax or compact syntax), Relax NG (XML syntax) with embedded Schematron rules, Schematron, DTD, NRL, NVDL.

The rules are applied in the order they appear in the table and take into account the local name of the root element, the default namespace and the file name of the document.

##### **Important**


The editor is creating the Content Completion lists by analysing the specified schema and the current context (the position in the editor). If you change the schema you can observe that the list of tags to be inserted is changing.

**Figure 4.9. Content completion driven by DocBook DTD**

## Adding a Processing Instruction

The same effect is obtained by configuring a processing instruction that specifies the schema to be used. The advantage of this method is that you can configure the Content Completion for each file. The processing instruction must be added at the beginning of the document, just after the XML prologue:

```
<?oxygen RNGSchema="file:/C:/work/relaxng/personal.rng" type="xml" ?>
```

Select menu Document+Schema → Associate schema... or click the toolbar button  Associate schema to open a dialog for selecting a schema used for Content Completion and document validation. The schema is one of the types: XML Schema (with or without embedded Schematron rules), DTD, Relax NG - XML syntax (with or without embedded Schematron rules), Relax NG - compact syntax, NRL, NVDL, Schematron.

This is a dialog helping the user to easily associate a schema file with the edited document. Enables definition of a XML Document Prolog using the system identifier of a XML Schema, DTD, Relax NG (full or compact syntax) schema, NRL (Namespace Routing Language) schema, NVDL (Namespace-based Validation Dispatching Language) schema or Schematron schema. If you associate an XML Schema with embedded Schematron rules or a Relax NG schema (XML syntax) with embedded Schematron rules you have to check the *Embedded Schematron rules* checkbox available for these two types of schemas. Embedded Schematron rules are not supported in Relax NG schema with compact syntax.

When associating a XML Schema to the edited document if the root element of the document defines a default namespace URI with a "xmlns" attribute the "Associate schema" action adds a xsi:schemaLocation attribute. Otherwise it adds a xsi:noNamespaceSchemaLocation attribute.

The URL combo box contains a predefined set of schemas that are used more often and it also keeps a history of the last used schemas.

<oxygen/> logs the URL of the detected schema in the Information view.

The *oxygen* processing instruction has the following attributes:

|           |   |
|-----------|---|
| RNGSchema | specifies the path to the Relax NG schema associated with the current document  |
| type      | specifies the type of Relax NG schema, is used together with the RNGSchema attribute and can have the value "xml" or "compact". |
| NRLSchema | specifies the path to the NRL schema associated with the current document   |

NVDLSchema specifies the path to the NVDL schema associated with the current document

SCHSchema specifies the path to the SCH schema associated with the current document

## Associating a schema with the namespace of the root element

The namespace of the root element of an XML document can be associated with an XML Schema using an XML catalog. If there is no *xsi:schemaLocation* attribute on the root element and the XML document is not matched with a document type the namespace of the root element is searched in the XML catalogs set in Preferences. If there is an element *uri* or *rewriteUri* or *delegateUri* in the XML catalog that associates the namespace with a schema that schema will be associated with the XML document.

## Learning document structure

When working with documents that do not specify a schema, or for which the schema is not known or does not exist, <oXygen/> is able to learn and translate it to a DTD, which in turn can be saved to a file in order to provide a DTD for Content Completion and document validation. In addition to being useful for quick creation of a DTD that will be capable of providing an initialization source for the Content Completion assistant. This feature can also be used to produce DTDs for documents containing personal or custom element types.

When it is opened a document that does not specify a schema <oXygen/> automatically learns the document structure and uses it for Content Completion. To disable this feature uncheck the checkbox Learn on open document from Preferences.

### Procedure 4.4. To create a DTD:

1. Open the structured document from which a DTD will be created.
2. Select menu Document+XML Document → Learn Structure (**Ctrl+Shift+L**) to read the mark-up structure of the current document so that it can be saved as a DTD using the Save Structure option. <oXygen/> will learn the document structure, when finished displaying words Learn Complete in the Message Pane of the Editor Status bar.
3. Select menu Document+XML Document → Save Structure (**Ctrl+Shift+S**) to display the Save Structure dialog, used to name and create DTD documents learnt by the Learn Structure function.

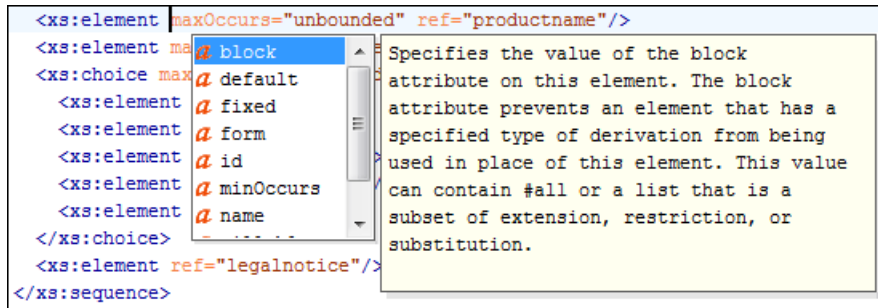
### Note

The resulting DTD is only valid for documents containing the elements and structures defined by the document used as the input for creating the DTD. If new element types or structures are defined in a document, they must be added to the DTD in order for successful validation.

## Streamline with Content Completion

<oXygen/>'s intelligent Content Completion feature is a content assistant that enables rapid, in-line identification and insertion of structured language elements, attributes and in some cases their parameter options.



**Figure 4.10. Content Completion Assistant**

If the Content Completion assistant is enabled in user preferences (the option *Use Content Completion*) it is automatically displayed after a configurable delay from the last key press of the < character that is entered into a document or from **CTRL+Space** on a partial element or attribute name. Moving the focus to highlight an element and pressing the **Enter** key or the **Tab** key, inserts both the start and end tags of the highlighted element into the document. The delay is configurable in *Preferences* as a number of milliseconds from last key press.

The DTD, XML Schema, Relax NG, NRL or NVDL schema used to populate the Content Completion assistant is specified in the following methods, in order of precedence:

- The schema specified explicitly in the document. In this case <oXygen/> reads the beginning of the document and resolves the location of the DTD, XML Schema, Relax NG schema, NRL or NVDL schema.

### Note

Limitation: In case of XML Schema the content completion takes into account only the schema declarations from the root element of the document. If a schema declaration is attached to other element of the XML document it is ignored.

- The default schema rule declared in the Document Type Association preferences panel which matches the edited document.

After inserting, the cursor is positioned directly before the > character of the start tag, if the element has attributes, in order to enable rapid insertion of any attributed supported by the element, or after the > char of the start tag if the element has no attributes. Pressing the space bar, directly after element insertion will again display the assistant. In this instance the attributes supported by that element will be displayed. If an attribute supports a fix set of parameters, the assistant will display the list of valid parameter. If the parameter setting is user defined and therefore variable, the assistant will be closed to enable manual insertion. The values of the attributes can be learned from the same elements in the current document.

If you press **CTRL + Enter** instead of **Enter** or **Tab** after inserting the start and end tags in the document <oXygen/> will insert an empty line between the start and end tag and the cursor will be positioned between on the empty line on an indented position with regard to the start tag.

If the feature Add Element Content of Content Completion is enabled all the elements that the new element must contain, as specified in the DTD or XML Schema or RELAX NG schema, are inserted automatically in the document. The Content Completion assistant can also add optional content and first choice particle, as specified in the DTD or XML Schema or RELAX NG schema, for the element if the two options are enabled.

The content assistant can be started at any time by pressing **CTRL+Space** Also it can be started with the action *Start Content Completion* (default shortcut is CTRL + Slash) which can be configured in Preferences → Menu Shortcut Keys : category *Content Completion*, description *Start Content Completion*. The effect is that the context-sensitive

list of proposals will be shown in the current position of the caret in the edited document if element, attribute or attribute value insertion makes sense. Such positions are: anywhere within a tag name or at the beginning of a tag name in an XML document, XML Schema, DTD or Relax NG (full or compact syntax) schema, anywhere within an attribute name or at the beginning of an attribute name in any XML document with an associated schema, and within attribute values or at the beginning of attribute values in XML documents where lists of possible values have been defined for that element in the schema associated with the document.

The content of the Content Completion assistant is dependent on the element structure specified in the DTD, XML Schema, Relax NG (full or compact syntax) schema or NRL, NVDL schema associated to the edited document.

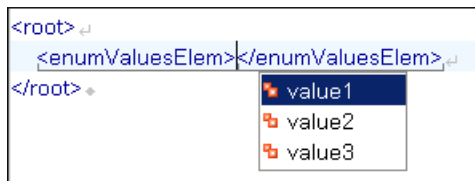
The number and type of elements displayed by the assistant is dependent on the current position of the cursor in the structured document . The child elements displayed within a given element are defined by the structure of the specified DTD, XML Schema, Relax NG (full or compact syntax) schema or NRL, NVDL schema. All elements that can't be child elements of the current element according to the specified schema are not displayed.

Inside Relax NG documents the Content Completion assistant is able to present element values if such values are specified in the Relax NG schema. Also in Relax NG documents the Content Completion assistant presents additional values of type ID for an *anyURI* data type. It presents also pattern names defined in the Relax NG schema as possible values for pattern references. For example if the schema defines an *enumValuesElem* element

```
<element name="enumValuesElem">
  <choice>
    <value>value1</value>
    <value>value2</value>
    <value>value3</value>
  </choice>
</element>
```

in documents based on the schema the Content Completion assistant offers the list of values:

**Figure 4.11. Content Completion assistant - element values in Relax NG documents**



If the schema for the edited document defines attributes of type ID and IDREF the content assistant will display for IDREF attributes a list of all the ID values already present in the document for an easy insertion of a valid ID value at the cursor position in the document. This is available for documents that use DTD, XML Schema and Relax NG schema.

Also values of all the *xml:id* attributes are treated as ID attributes and collected and displayed by the content completion assistant as possible values for *anyURI* attributes defined in the schema of the edited document. This works only for XML Schema and Relax NG schemas.

For documents that use an XML Schema or Relax NG schema the content assistant offers proposals for attributes and elements values that have as type an enumeration of tokens. Also if a default value or a fixed value is defined in the XML Schema used in validation for an attribute or element then that value is offered in the content completion window.

If the edited document is not associated with a schema explicitly using the usual mechanisms for associating a DTD or XML Schema with a document or using a processing instruction introduced by the *Associate schema* action the content assistant will extract the elements presented in the pop-up window from the default schema.

If the schema for the document is of type XML Schema, Relax NG (full syntax), NVDL or DTD and it contains element, attributes or attributes values annotations, these will be presented when the content completion window is displayed, if the option *Show annotations* is enabled. Also the annotation is presented in a small tooltip window displayed automatically when the mouse hovers over an element or attribute annotated in the associated schema of the edited document. The tooltip window can be invoked at any time using the **F2** shortcut.

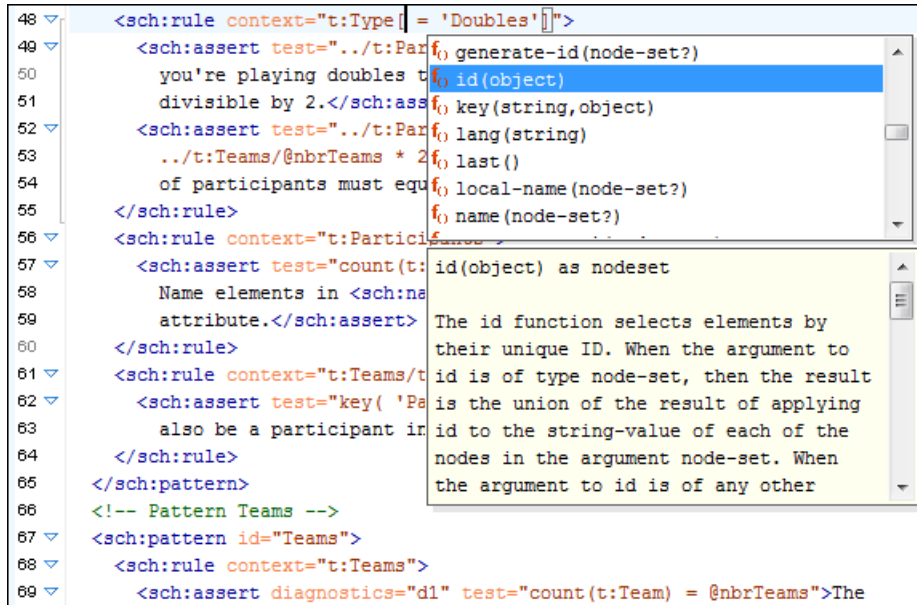
In an XML Schema annotations are put in an `<xs:annotation>` element:

```
<xs:annotation>
  <xs:documentation>
    Description of the element.
  </xs:documentation>
</xs:annotation>
```

If the current element / attribute in the edited document does not have an annotation in the schema and that schema is of the type XML Schema `<oxygen>` seeks an annotation in the type definition of the element / attribute or, if no annotation is found there, in the parent type definition of that definition, etc.

When editing a Schematron schema the content completion assistant displays XSLT 1.0 functions and optionally XSLT 2.0 functions in the attributes *path*, *select*, *context*, *subject*, *test* depending on the Schematron options that are set in Preferences. If the Saxon 6.5 namespace (`xmlns:saxon="http://icl.com/saxon"`) or the Saxon 9 namespace is declared in the Schematron schema (`xmlns:saxon="http://saxon.sf.net/"`) the content completion displays also the XSLT Saxon extension functions as in the following figure:

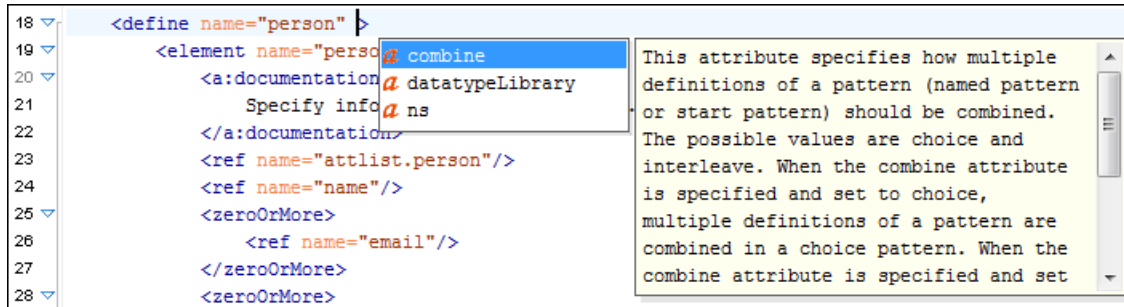
**Figure 4.12. XSLT extension functions in Schematron schemas documents**



In a Relax NG schema any element outside the Relax NG namespace (`http://relaxng.org/ns/structure/1.0`) is handled as annotation and the text content is displayed in the annotation window together with the content completion window:

For NVDL schemas annotations for the elements / attributes in the referred schemas (XML Schema, RNG, etc) are presented

**Figure 4.13. Schema annotations displayed at Content Completion**



The following HTML tags are recognized inside the text content of an XML Schema annotation: *p*, *br*, *ul*, *li*. They are rendered as in an HTML document loaded in a web browser: *p* begins a new paragraph, *br* breaks the current line, *ul* encloses a list of items, *li* encloses an item of the list.

For DTD <oXygen/> defines a custom mechanism for annotation using comments enabled from the option *Use DTD comments as annotations* . The text of a comment with the following format will be presented on content completion:

```
<!--doc:Description of the element. -->
```

The operation of the Content Completion assistant is configured by the options available in the options group called Content Completion.

## Code templates

You can define short names for predefined blocks of code called code templates. The short names are displayed in the content completion window if the word at cursor position is a prefix of such a short name. <oXygen/> comes with a lot of predefined code templates but you can define your own code templates for any type of editor.

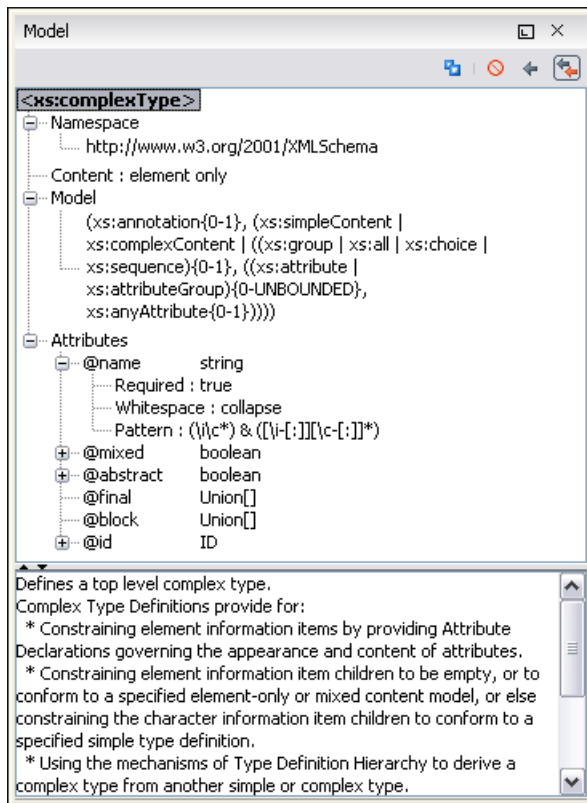
To obtain the template list you can use the Content Completion on request shortcut key (usually CTRL-SPACE) or the Code Templates on request shortcut key (CTRL-SHIFT-SPACE). The first shortcut displays the code templates in the same content completion list with elements from the schema of the document. The second shortcut displays only the code templates and is the default shortcut of the action Document → Content Completion → Show Code Templates

## Content Completion helper panels

Information about the current element being edited are also available in the Model panel and Attributes panel, located on the left-hand side of the main window. The Model panel and the Attributes panel combined with the powerful Outline view provide spacial and insight information on the edited document.

### The Model panel

The Model panel presents the structure of the current edited tag and tag documentation defined as annotation in the schema of the current document.

**Figure 4.14. The Model View**

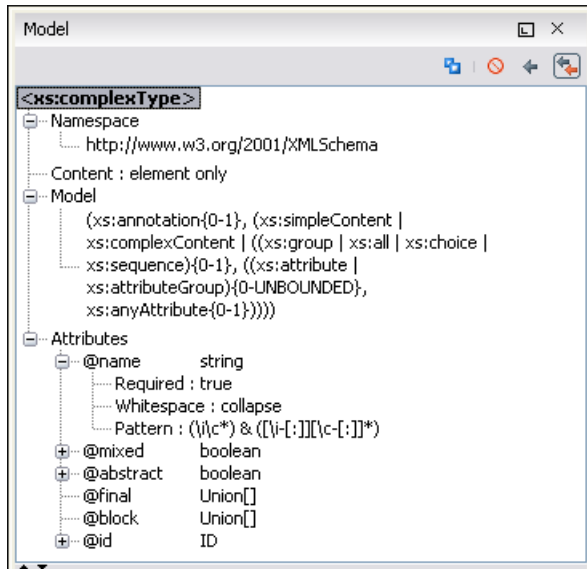
The Model panel is comprised of:

- An element structure panel.
- An annotation panel.

### The Element Structure panel

The element structure panel shows the structure of the current edited or selected tag in a Tree format.

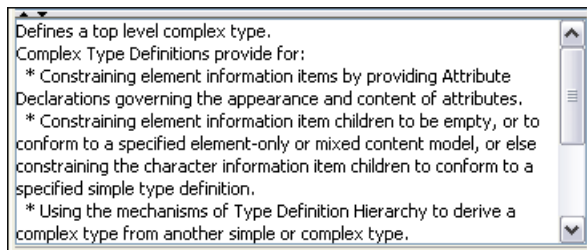
The information includes the name, model and attributes the currently edited tag may have. The allowed attributes are shown along with any restrictions they might possess.

**Figure 4.15. The Element Structure panel**

### The Annotation panel

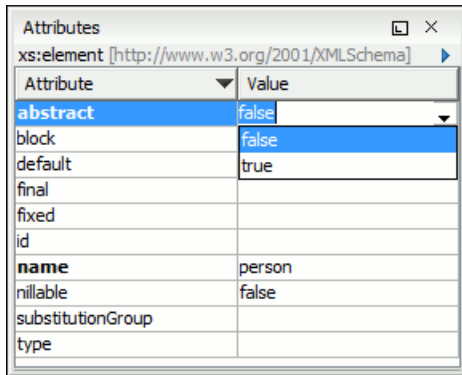
The Annotation panel shows the annotations that are present in the used schema for the currently edited or selected tag.

This information can be very useful to persons learning XML because it has small available definitions for each used tag.

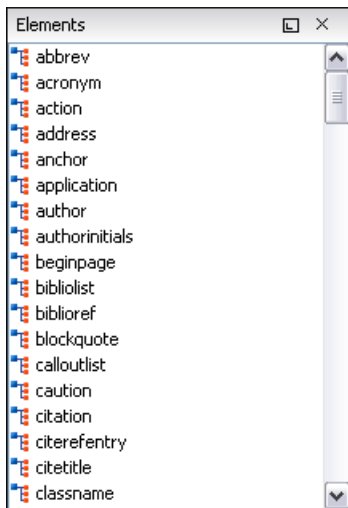
**Figure 4.16. The Annotation panel**

### The Attributes panel

The Attributes panel presents all the possible attributes of the current element and allows to insert attributes in the current element or change the value of the attributes already used in the element. The attributes already present in the document are painted with a bold font. Clicking on the Value column of a table row will start editing the value of the attribute from the selected row. If the possible values of the attribute are specified as list in the schema associated with the edited document the Value column works as a combo box where you can select one of the possible values to be inserted in the document. The attributes table is sortable, 3 sorting orders being available by clicking on the columns' names. Thus the table's contents can be sorted in ascending order, in descending order or in a custom order, where the used attributes are placed at the beginning of the table as they appear in the element followed by the rest of the allowed elements as they are declared in the associated schema.

**Figure 4.17. The Attributes panel**

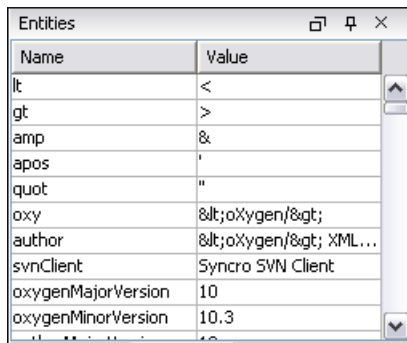
## The Elements view

**Figure 4.18. The Elements View**

Presents a list of all defined elements that you can insert at the current caret position according to the schema used for content completion. Double-clicking any of the listed elements will insert that element in the edited document. All elements from a sequence are presented but the invalid proposals (which cannot be inserted in the current context) are grayed-out.

## The Entities View

This view displays a list with all entities declared in the current document as well as built-in ones. Double clicking one of the entities will insert it at the current cursor position. You can also sort entities by name and value.

**Figure 4.19. The Entities View**


| Name               | Value                  |
|--------------------|------------------------|
| lt                 | <                      |
| gt                 | >                      |
| amp                | &                      |
| apos               | '                      |
| quot               | "                      |
| oxy                | &lt;oxygen/&gt;        |
| author             | &lt;oxygen/&gt; XML... |
| svnClient          | Syncro SVN Client      |
| oxygenMajorVersion | 10                     |
| oxygenMinorVersion | 10.3                   |

## Validating XML documents

The W3C XML specification states that a program should not continue to process an XML document if it finds a validation error. The reason is that XML software should be easy to write, and that all XML documents should be compatible. With HTML it was possible to create documents with lots of errors (like when you forget an end tag). One of the main reasons that HTML browsers are so big and incompatible, is that they have their own ways to figure out what a document should look like when they encounter an HTML error. With XML this should not be possible.

However, when creating an XML document, errors are very easily introduced. When working with large projects or many files, the probability that errors will occur is even greater. Determining that your project is error free can be time consuming and even frustrating. For this reason `<oxygen/>` provides functions that enable easy error identification and rapid error location.

## Checking XML well-formedness

A *Well-Formed XML* document is a document that conforms to the XML syntax rules.

A *Namespace Well-Formed XML* document is a document that is Well-Formed XML and is also namespace-wellformed and namespace-valid.

The XML Syntax rules for Well-Formed XML are:

- All XML elements must have a closing tag.
- XML tags are case sensitive.
- All XML elements must be properly nested.
- All XML documents must have a root element.
- Attribute values must always be quoted.
- With XML, white space is preserved.


The namespace-wellformed rules are:

- All element and attribute names contain either zero or one colon
- No entity names, processing instruction targets, or notation names contain any colons.

The namespace-valid rules are:



- The prefix `xml` is by definition bound to the namespace name `http://www.w3.org/XML/1998/namespace`. It MAY, but need not, be declared, and MUST NOT be undeclared or bound to any other namespace name. Other prefixes MUST NOT be bound to this namespace name.
- The prefix `xmlns` is used only to declare namespace bindings and is by definition bound to the namespace name `http://www.w3.org/2000/xmlns/`. It MUST NOT be declared or undeclared. Other prefixes MUST NOT be bound to this namespace name.
- All other prefixes beginning with the three-letter sequence `x, m, l`, in any case combination, are reserved. This means that users SHOULD NOT use them except as defined by later specifications and processors MUST NOT treat them as fatal errors.
- The namespace prefix, unless it is `xml` or `xmlns`, MUST have been declared in a namespace declaration attribute in either the start-tag of the element where the prefix is used or in an ancestor element (i.e. an element in whose content the prefixed markup occurs). Furthermore, the attribute value in the innermost such declaration MUST NOT be an empty string.

If you select menu `Document+Validate` → `Check Document Form` (**Ctrl+Shift+W**) or click the toolbar button  `Check Document Form` (<Oxygen/> checks if your document is *Namespace Well-Formed XML*. If any error is found the result is returned to the Message Panel. Each error is one record in the Result List and is accompanied by an error message. Clicking the record will open the document containing the error and highlight the approximate location.

#### Example 4.2. Document which is not Well-Formed XML

```
<root><tag></root>
```

When "Check document form" is performed the following error is raised:

The element type "tag" must be terminated by the matching end-tag "</tag>"

To resolve the error, click in the result list record which will locate and highlight the errors approximate position. Identify which start tag is missing an end tag and insert </tag>.

#### Example 4.3. Document which is not namespace-wellformed

```
<x:y></x:y>
```

When "Check document form" is performed the following error is raised:


Element or attribute do not match QName production: QName ::= (NCName ':' )?NCName.

#### Example 4.4. Document which is not namespace-valid

```
<x:y></x:y>
```

When "Check document form" is performed the following error is raised:


The prefix "x" for element "x:y" is not bound.

Also the files contained in the current project and selected with the mouse in the Project view can be checked for well-formedness with one action available on the popup menu of the Project view :  Check well form

## Validating XML documents against a schema

A *Valid XML* document is a *Well Formed XML* document, which also conforms to the rules of a schema which defines the legal elements of an XML document. The schema type can be: XML Schema, Relax NG (full or compact syntax), Schematron, Document Type Definition (DTD), Namespace Routing Language (NRL) or Namespace-based Validation Dispatching Language (NVDL).

The purpose of the schema is to define the legal building blocks of an XML document. It defines the document structure with a list of legal elements.

The `<oXygen/>`  Validate document function ensures that your document is compliant with the rules defined by an associated DTD, XML Schema, Relax NG or Schematron schema. XML Schema or Relax NG Schema can embed Schematron rules. For Schematron it is possible to select the validation phase.

### Note

Validation of an XML document against a W3C XML Schema containing a type definition with a *minOccurs* or *maxOccurs* attribute having a value larger than 256 limits the value to 256 and issues a warning about this restriction in the Message panel at the bottom of the `<oXygen/>` window. Otherwise for large values of the *minOccurs* and *maxOccurs* attributes the validator fails with an OutOfMemory error which practically makes `<oXygen/>` unusable without a restart of the entire application.

### Note

Validation of an XML document against a deeply recursive Relax NG schema may fail with a stack overflow error. It happens very rarely and the cause is the unusual depth of the Relax NG pattern recursion needed to match an element of the document against the schema and the depth exceeds the default stack size allocated by the Java virtual machine. The error can be overcome by simply setting a larger stack size to the JVM at startup using the `-Xss` parameter, for example `-Xss1m`.

### Note

Validation of an XML document against a W3C XML Schema or Relax NG Schema (XML syntax) with embedded ISO Schematron rules allows XPath 2.0 in the expressions of the ISO Schematron rules. This ensures that both XPath 1.0 and XPath 2.0 expressions are accepted in the embedded ISO Schematron rules and are enforced by the validation operation. For embedded Schematron 1.5 rules the version of XPath is set with a user preference.

## Marking Validation Errors

A line with a validation error or warning will be marked in the editor panel by underlining the error region with a red color. Also a red sign will mark the position in the document of that line on the right side ruler of the editor panel. The same will happen for a validation warning, only the color will be yellow instead of red.

The ruler on the right of the document is designed to display the errors found during the validation process and also to help the user to locate them more easily. The ruler contains the following areas:

- top area containing a success validation indicator that will turn green in case the validation succeeded or red otherwise.


A more detailed report of the errors is displayed in the tool tip. In case there are errors, only the first three of them will be presented in the tool tip;

- middle area where the errors markers are depicted in red (with a darker color tone for the current selected one). The number of markers shown can be limited by modifying the setting Options → Preferences+Editor / Document checking+Limit error markers to

Clicking on a marker will highlight the corresponding text area in the editor. The error message is displayed both in the tool tip and in the error area on the bottom of the editor panel.

The Document checking user preferences are easily accessible from the button displayed at the beginning of the error message on the bottom of the editor panel.

- bottom area containing two navigation arrows that will go to the next or to the previous error and a button for clearing all the error markers from the ruler. The same actions can be triggered from Document → Validate as you type (**Ctrl** + **.**)-> Next error and Document → Validate as you type (**Ctrl** + **,**)-> Previous error.

The validation status area is the line at the bottom of the editor panel that presents the message of the current validation error. Clicking on  opens the document checking page in <oxygen/> user preferences.

Status messages from every validation action are logged into the Information view.

## Validation Example

### Example 4.5. Validation error messages


In this example you will use the case where a DocBook *listitem* element does not match the rules of the docbookx.dtd. In this case running *Validate Document* will return the following error:

```
E The content of element type "listitem" must
match" (calloutlist|glosslist|itemizedlist|orderedlist|segmentedlist|
simplelist|variablelist|caution|important|note|tip|warning|
literallayout|programlisting|programlistingco|screen|
screenco|screenshot|synopsis|cmdsynopsis|
funcsynopsis|classsynopsis|fieldsynopsis|constructorsynopsis|
destructorsynopsis|methodsynopsis|formalpara|para|simpara|
address|blockquote|graphic|graphicco|mediaobject|
mediaobjectco|informalequation|informalexample|
informalfigure|informaltable|equation|example|
figure|table|msgset|procedure|sidebar|qandaset|anchor|
bridgehead|remark|highlights|abstract|authorblurb|epigraph|
indexterm|beginpage)+".
```

As you can see, this error message is a little more difficult to understand, so understanding of the syntax or processing rules for the DocBook XML DTD's "listitem" element is required. However, the error message does give us a clue as to the source of the problem, but indicating that "The content of element type "listitem" must match".

Luckily most standards based DTD's, XML Schema's and Relax NG schemas are supplied with reference documentation. This enables us to lookup the element and read about it. In this case you should learn about the child elements of *listitem* and their nesting rules. Once you have correctly inserted the required child element and nested it in accordance with the XML rules, the document will become valid on the next validation test.

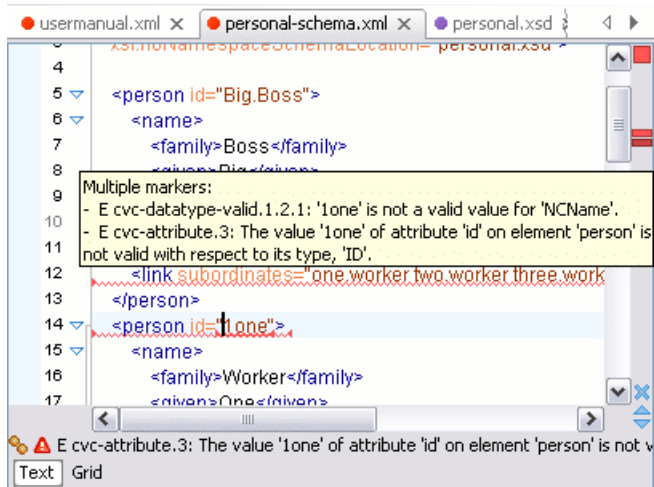
## Caching the Schema Used for Validation

If you don't change the active editor and you don't switch to other application the schema associated to the current document is parsed and cached at the first validate action and is reused by the next *Validate document* actions without re parsing it. This increases the speed of the validate action starting with the second execution if the schema is large or is located on a remote server on the Web. To reset the cache and re parse the schema you have to use the  Reset cache and validate action. This action will also re parse the catalogs and reset the schema used for content completion.

## Validate As You Type

<oXygen/> can be configured to mark validation errors in the edited document as you modify it using the keyboard. If you enable the *Validate as you type* option any validation errors and warnings will be highlighted automatically in the editor panel after the configured delay from the last key typed, with underline markers in the editor panel and small rectangles on the right side ruler of the editor panel, in the same way as for manual validation invoked by the user.

**Figure 4.20. Validate as you type on the edited document**



If the error message is long and it is not displayed completely in the error line at the bottom of the editing area double-clicking on the error icon at the left of the error line or on the error line displays an information dialog with the full error message. The arrow buttons of the dialog enable the navigation to other errors issued by the validation as you type feature.

## Custom validation of XML documents

If you need to validate the edited document with other validation engine than the built-in one you have the possibility to configure external validators as custom validation engines in <oXygen/>. After such a custom validator is properly configured it can be applied on the current document with just one click on the Custom Validation Engines toolbar. The document is validated against the schema declared in the document.

Some validators are configured by default but they are third party processors which do not support the output message format for linked messages described above:

### LIBXML

included in <oXygen/> (Windows edition), associated to XML Editor, able to validate the edited document against XML Schema, Relax NG schema full syntax, internal DTD (included in the XML document) or a custom schema type. XML catalogs support(**--catalogs**) and XInclude processing(**--xininclude**) are enabled by default in the preconfigured LIBXML validator. The **--postvalid** flag is set as default allowing LIBXML to validate correctly the main document even if the XInclude fragments contain IDREFS to ID's located in other fragments.

For validation against an external DTD specified by URI in the XML document the parameter **--dtdvalid** *\$(ds)* must be added manually to the DTD validation command line. *\$(ds)* represents the detected DTD declaration in the XML document.

 **Note**

Known problem: file paths containing spaces are not handled correctly in the LIBXML processor. For example the built-in XML catalog files of the predefined document types (DocBook, TEI, DITA, etc) are not handled by LIBXML if <oXygen/> is installed in the default location on Windows (C:\Program Files) because the built-in XML catalog files are stored in the *frameworks* subdirectory of the installation directory which in this case contains at least a space character.

 **Note**

On Mac OS X if the full path to the LIBXML executable file is not specified in the *Executable path* text field some errors may occur on validation against a W3C XML Schema like:

```
Unimplemented block at ... xmlschema.c
```

These errors can be avoided by specifying the full path to the LIBXML executable file.

|                                       |   |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| Saxon SA                              | included in <oXygen/>. It is associated to XML Editor and XSD Editor. It is able to validate XML Schema schemas and XML documents against XML Schema schemas. The validation is done according to the W3C XML Schema 1.0 specification or according to the W3C XML Schema 1.1 one. This can be configured in Preferences.   |
| MSXML 4.0                             | included in <oXygen/> (Windows edition). It is associated to XML Editor, XSD Editor and XSL Editor. It is able to validate the edited document against XML Schema, internal DTD (included in the XML document), external DTD or a custom schema type.   |
| MSXML.NET                             | included in <oXygen/> (Windows edition). It is associated to XML Editor, XSD Editor and XSL Editor. It is able to validate the edited document against XML Schema, internal DTD (included in the XML document), external DTD or a custom schema type.   |
| XSV                                   | not included in <oXygen/>. A Windows distribution of XSV can be downloaded from: <a href="ftp://ftp.cogsci.ed.ac.uk/pub/XSV/XSV31.EXE">ftp://ftp.cogsci.ed.ac.uk/pub/XSV/XSV31.EXE</a> [ftp://ftp.cogsci.ed.ac.uk/pub/XSV/XSV31.EXE] A Linux distribution can be downloaded from <a href="ftp://ftp.cogsci.ed.ac.uk/pub/XSV/XSV-3.1-1.noarch.rpm">ftp://ftp.cogsci.ed.ac.uk/pub/XSV/XSV-3.1-1.noarch.rpm</a> [ftp://ftp.cogsci.ed.ac.uk/pub/XSV/XSV-3.1-1.noarch.rpm] The executable path is configured already in <oXygen/> for the installation directory [ <code>oXygen-install-dir</code> ]/xsv. If it is installed in a different directory the predefined executable path must be corrected in Preferences. It is associated to XML Editor and XSD Editor. It is able to validate the edited document against XML Schema or a custom schema type. |
| SQC (Schema Quality Checker from IBM) | not included in <oXygen/>. It can be downloaded from here [ <a href="http://www.alphaworks.ibm.com/tech/xmlsqc?open&amp;l=xml-dev,t=grx,p=shecheck">http://www.alphaworks.ibm.com/tech/xmlsqc?open&amp;l=xml-dev,t=grx,p=shecheck</a> ] (it comes as a .zip file, at the time of this writing SQC2.2.1.zip is about 3 megabytes). The executable path and working directory are configured already for the SQC installation directory [ <code>oXygen-install-dir</code> ]/sqc. If it is   |

installed in a different directory the predefined executable path and working directory must be corrected in Preferences. It is associated to XSD Editor.

A custom validator cannot be applied on files loaded through an <oXygen/> custom protocol plugin developed independently and added to <oXygen/> after installation.

### Linked output messages of an external engine

Validation engines display messages in an output view at the bottom of the <oXygen/> window. If such an output message (warning, error, fatal error, etc) spans between three to five lines of text and has the following format then the message is linked to a location in the validated document so that a click on the message in the output view highlights the location of the message in an editor panel containing the file referred in the message. This behavior is similar to the linked messages generated by the default built-in validator. The format for linked messages is:

- Type:[F|E|W] (the string "Type:" followed by a letter for the type of the message: fatal error, error, warning - this line is optional in a linked message)
- SystemID: a system ID of a file (the string "SystemID:" followed by the system ID of the file that will be opened for highlighting when the message is clicked in the output message - usually the validated file, the schema file or an included file)
- Line: a line number (the string "Line:" followed by the number of the line that will be highlighted)
- Column: a column number (the string "Column:" followed by the number of the column where the highlight will start on the highlighted line - this line is optional in a linked message)
- Description: message content (the string "Description:" followed by the content of the message that will be displayed in the output view)

### Validation Scenario

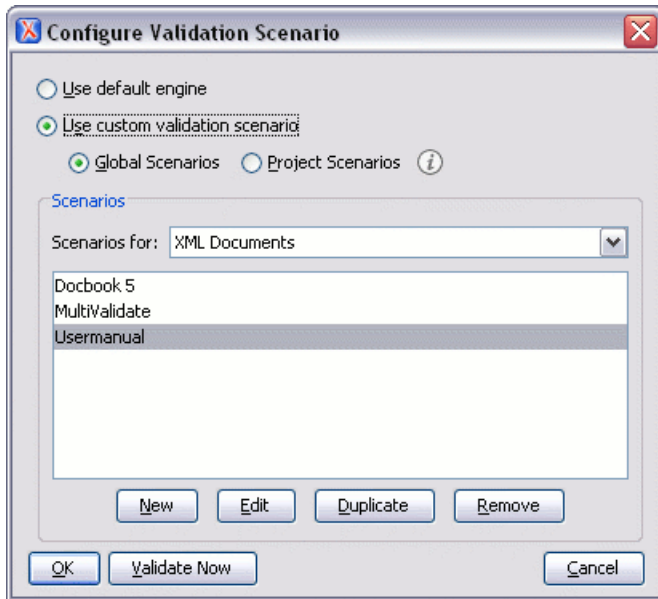
A complex XML document is usually split in smaller interrelated modules which do not make much sense individually and which cannot be validated in isolation due to interdependencies with the other modules. A mechanism is needed to set the main module of the document which in fact must be validated when an imported module needs to be checked for errors.

A typical example is the chunking DocBook XSL stylesheet which has `chunk.xsl` as the main module and which imports a stylesheet module called `param.xsl` which only defines XSLT parameters and other modules called `chunk-common.xsl` and `chunk-code.xsl`. The module `chunk-common.xsl` defines a named XSLT template with the name "chunk" which is called by `chunk-code.xsl`. The parameters defined in `param.xsl` are used in the other modules without being redefined.

Validation of `chunk-code.xsl` as an individual XSLT stylesheet issues a lot of misleading errors referring to parameters and templates used but undefined which are only caused by ignoring the context in which this module is used in real XSLT transformations and in which it should be validated. To validate such a module properly a validation scenario must be defined which sets the main module of the stylesheet and also the validation engine used to find the errors. Usually this is the engine which applies the transformation in order to detect by validation the same errors that would be issued by transformation.

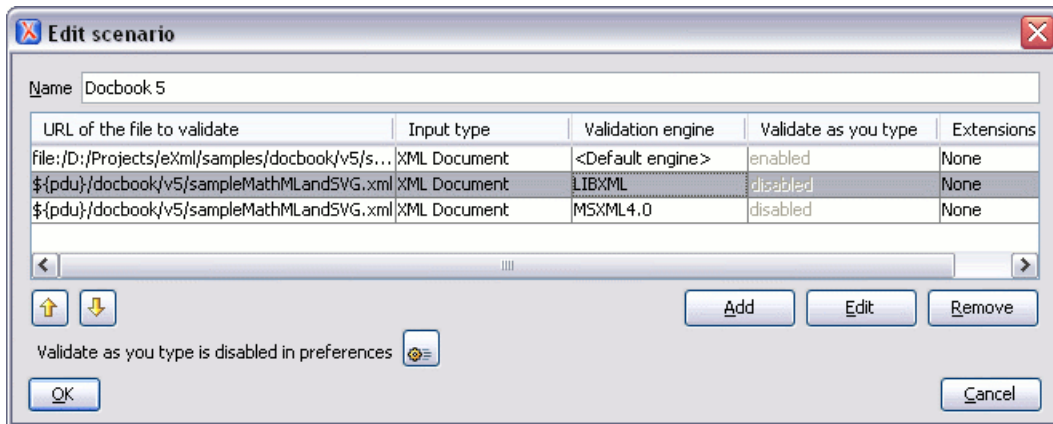
To define a validation scenario first open the *Configure Validation Scenario* dialog. You do this with the *Configure Validation Scenario* action available on the menu Document → Validate and on the *Validate* toolbar. You can use the default engine set in **Preferences**, or use a custom validation scenario. The list of reusable scenarios for documents of the same type as the current document is displayed.

**Figure 4.21. Configure Validation Scenarios**



A validation scenario is created or edited in a special dialog opened with the *New* button or with the *Edit* one.

**Figure 4.22. Edit a Validation Scenario**



The table columns are:

URL of the file to validate

The URL of the main module which includes the current module and which is the entry module of the validation process when the current module is validated.

Input type

The type of the document that is validated in the current validation unit: XML document, XSLT document, XQuery document, etc.

Validation engine

One of the engines available in <oXygen/> for validation of the type of document to which the current module belongs.

Validate as you type

If this option is checked then the validation operation defined by this row of the table is applied also by the Validate as you type feature. If the *Validate as you type* feature

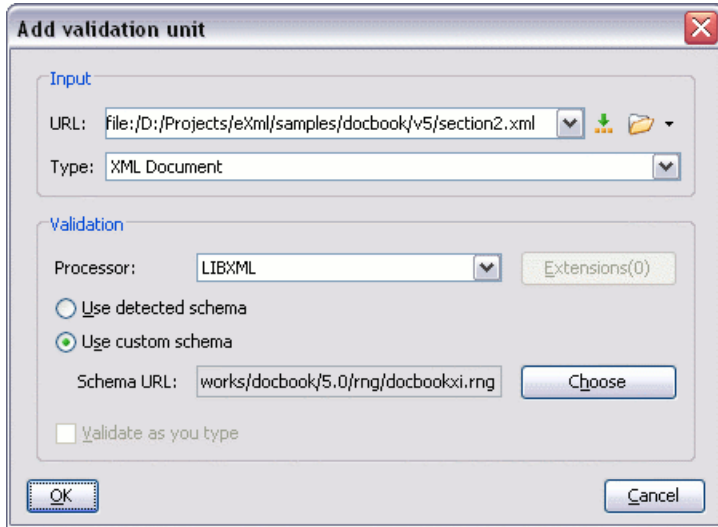
is disabled in Preferences then this option does not take effect as the Preference setting has higher priority.



Extensions

A list of Java jar files or classes which implement extensions of the language of the current module. For example when the current module is an XSLT stylesheet an extension jar contains the implementation of the XSLT extension functions or the XSLT extension elements used in the stylesheet which includes the current module.

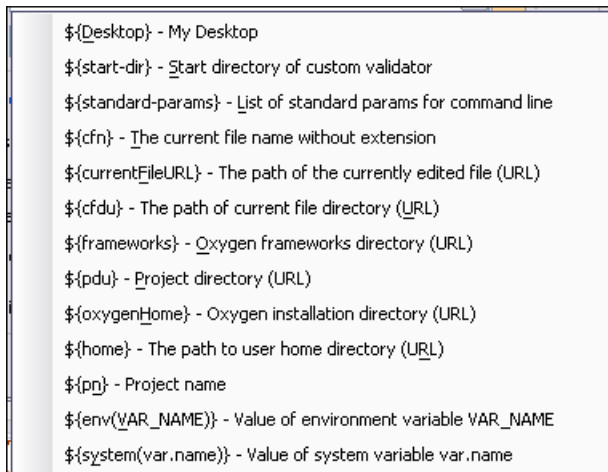
A row of the table is created or edited in the following dialog:

**Figure 4.23. Edit a Validation Unit**



The components of the dialog are the same as the columns of the table displayed in the scenario edit dialog. The URL of the main module can be specified with the help of a file browser for the local file system (the  button), with the help of the Open FTP / SFTP / WebDAV dialog opened by the  button or by inserting an editor variable or a custom editor variable from the following pop-up menu:

**Figure 4.24. Insert an editor variable**





A second benefit of a validation scenario is that the stylesheet can be validated with several engines to make sure that it can be used in different environments with the same results. For example an XSLT stylesheet needs to be applied with Saxon 6.5, Xalan and MSXML 4.0 in different production systems.

Other examples of documents which can benefit of a validation scenario are a complex XQuery with a main module which imports modules developed independently but validated in the context of the main module of the query and an XML document in which the master file includes smaller fragment files using XML entity references. In an XQuery validation scenario the default validator of <oXygen/> (Saxon 9) or any connection to a database that supports validation (Berkeley DB XML Database, eXist XML Database, Software AG Tamino, Documentum xDb (X-Hive/DB) XML Database) can be set as validation engine.

## Sharing the Validation Scenarios. Project Level Scenarios

In the upper part of the dialog showing the list of scenarios you will find two radio buttons controlling where the scenarios are stored.





Selecting "Global Scenarios" ensures that the scenarios are saved in the user home directory.

After changing the selection to "Project Scenarios", the scenario list will be stored in the project file. If your project is saved on a source versioning/sharing system (CVS, SVN, Source Safe, etc..) then your team can use the scenarios you defined.


Other preferences can also be stored at the project level. For more information, see the Preference Sharing section.

## Validation Actions in the User Interface

Use one of the actions for validating the current document:

- Select menu Document+Validate → Validate Document (**Ctrl+Shift+V**) or click the button  Validate Document available in the Validate toolbar to return an error result-list in the Message panel. Mark-up of current document is checked to conform with the specified DTD, XML Schema or Relax NG schema rules. It caches the schema and the next execution of the action uses the cached schema.
- Select menu Document+Validate → Reset Cache and Validate or click the button  Reset Cache and Validate available in the Validate toolbar to reset the cache with the schema and validate the document. This action will also re parse the catalogs and reset the schema used for content completion. It returns an error result-list in the Message panel. Mark-up of current document is checked to conform with the specified DTD, XML Schema or Relax NG schema rules.
- Select menu Document+Validate → Validate with or click the button  Validate with available in the Validate toolbar. This can be used to validate the current document using a selectable schema (XML Schema, DTD, Relax NG, NRL, NVDL, Schematron schema). Returns an error result-list in the Message panel. Mark-up of current document is checked to conform with the specified schema rules. The Validate with action does not work for files loaded through an <oXygen/> custom protocol plugin developed independently and added to <oXygen/> after installation.
- Select menu Document+Schema → Open External Schema or click the button  Open External Schema available in the Document toolbar to open the schema used for validating the current document in a new editor.
- Select contextual menu of Project Panel, Validate Selection to validate all selected files with their declared schemas.
- Select contextual menu of Project Panel, Validate Selection with Schema ... to select a schema and validate all selected files with that schema.

- Select contextual menu of Project panel, Configure Validation Scenario ... to configure and apply a validation scenario in one action to all the selected files in the Project panel, .

The button  Validation options available on the *Validate* toolbar allows quick access to the validation options of the built-in validator in the <oxygen/> user preferences.

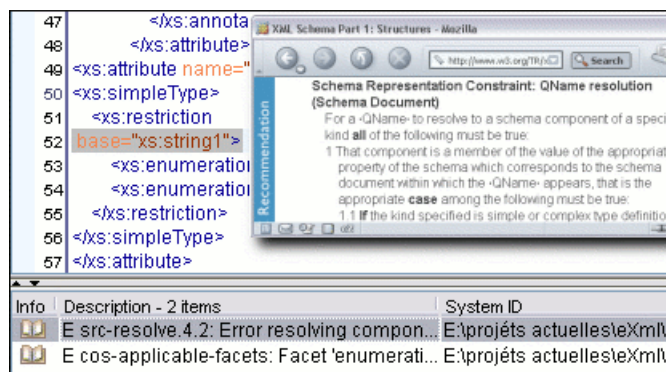
Also you can select several files in the Project panel and validate them with one click by selecting the action Validate selection, the action Validate selection with Schema ... or the action Configure Validation Scenario ... available from the contextual menu of the Project view.

If there are too many validation errors and the validation process is long you can limit the maximum number of reported errors.

## References to XML Schema specification

If validation is done against XML Schema <oxygen/> indicates a specification reference relevant for each validation error. The error messages contain an Info field that when clicked will open the browser on the "XML Schema Part 1:Structures" specification at exactly the point where the error is described thus allowing you to understand the reason for that error.

**Figure 4.25. Link to specification for XML Schema errors**



## Resolving references to remote schemas with an XML Catalog

When a reference to a remote schema must be used in the validated XML document for interoperability purposes but a local copy of the schema should be actually used for validation for performance reasons the reference can be resolved to the local copy of the schema with an XML catalog. For example if the XML document contains a reference to a remote schema *docbook.rng*

```
<?oxygen RNGSchema="http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/5.0/rng/docbook.rng"
  type="xml" ?>
```

it can be resolved to a local copy with a catalog entry:

```
<system systemId="http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/5.0/rng/docbook.rng"
  uri="rng/docbook.rng" />
```

An XML catalog can be used also to map a W3C XML Schema specified with an URN in the *xsi:schemaLocation* attribute of an XML document to a local copy of the schema. For example if the XML document specifies the schema with:

```
<topic xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
      xsi:noNamespaceSchemaLocation="urn:oasis:names:tc:dita:xsd:topic.xsd:1.1">
```

the URN can be resolved to a local schema file with a catalog entry like:

```
<system systemId="urn:oasis:names:tc:dita:xsd:topic.xsd:1.1"
      uri="topic.xsd"/>
```

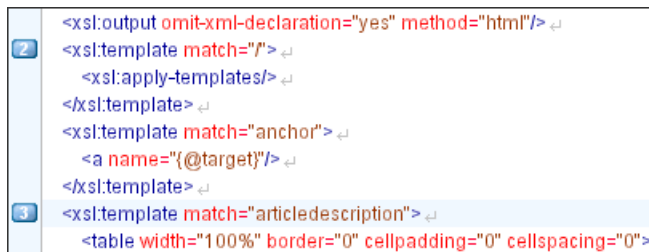
## Document navigation

Navigating between XML elements located in various parts of the currently edited document is easy due to several powerful features.


### Quick document browsing using bookmarks

The concept of bookmark is the same as in other IDEs: the user can mark a position in one edited document so that he can quickly return after further editing and browsing through one or more documents opened at the same time. Up to nine distinct bookmarks can be placed in any opened document. Configurable shortcut key strokes are available for placing bookmarks and for quick return to any of the marked positions.

**Figure 4.26. Editor Bookmarks**



The key strokes can be configured from Options → Preferences->Menu shortcut keys.

A bookmark can be placed from Edit → Bookmarks->Create, from Edit → Bookmarks → Bookmarks Quick Creation (F9), by clicking the toolbar button  Bookmarks Quick Creation and by clicking in the margin of the editing area, to the left of the line number area, reserved for bookmarks.

Quickly switching to a position marked by a bookmark can be done by Edit → Bookmarks->Go to.

### Folding of the XML elements

XML documents are organized as a tree of elements. When working on a large document you can collapse some elements leaving in the focus only the ones you need to edit. Expanding and collapsing works on individual elements: expanding an element leaves the child elements unchanged.

**Figure 4.27. Folding of the XML Elements**

```

▶ <xsl:template match="articledescription"> [28 lines]
▼ <xsl:template match="articledescriptions">
  <xsl:apply-templates/>
</xsl:template>
▼ <xsl:template match="code">
  <ul>
  ▼ <p class="textSmall">
    ▶ <xsl:for-each select="codewrow"> [2 lines]
  </p>
  </ul>
  </xsl:template>

```

An unique feature of `oXygen` is the fact that the folds are persistent: the next time you will open the document the folds are restored to the last state so you won't have to collapse the uninteresting parts again.

To toggle the folded state of an element click on the special mark displayed in the left part of the document editor next to the start tag of that element or click on the action `Toggle fold` available from the context menu or from the menu `Document+Folding → Toggle fold`. The element extent is marked with a grey line displayed in the left part of the edited document. The grey line covers always the lines of text comprised between the start tag and end tag of the element where it is positioned the cursor.

Other menu actions related to folding of XML elements are available from the context menu of the current editor or from the menu `Document → Folding`:

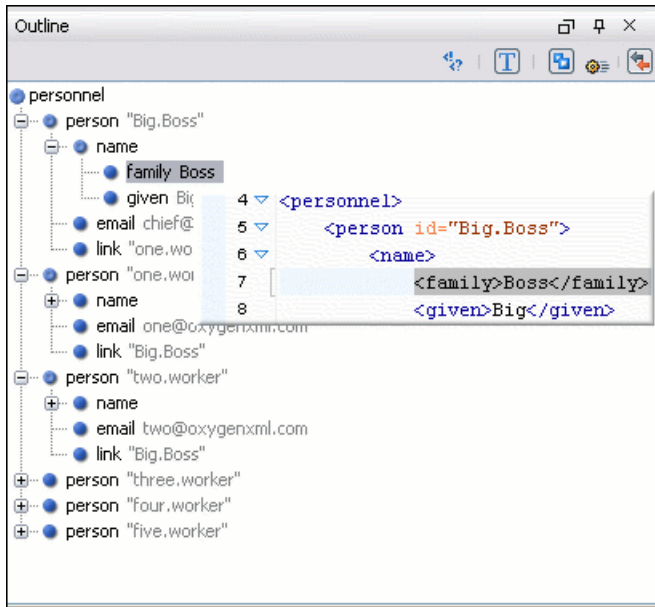
- `Document+Folding+ [icon]` → `Close Other Folds (Ctrl+NumPad+)`: Fold all the sections except the current element.
- `Document+Folding+ [icon]` → `Collapse Child Folds (Ctrl+Decimal)`: Fold the sections indented with one level inside the current element.
- `Document+Folding+ [icon]` → `Expand Child Folds (Ctrl+Equals)`: Unfold the sections indented with one level inside the current element.
- `Document+Folding+ [icon]` → `Expand All (Ctrl+NumPad+*)`: Unfold all the sections inside the current element.
- `Document+Folding+ [icon]` → `Toggle Fold`: Toggles the state of the current fold.

## Outline View

The Outline view has the following available functions:

- the section called “XML Document Overview”
- the section called “Outliner filters”
- the section called “Modification Follow-up”
- the section called “Document Structure Change”
- the section called “Document Tag Selection”

**Figure 4.28. The Outline View**



## XML Document Overview

The Outline view displays a general tag overview of the current edited XML Document. It also shows the correct hierarchical dependencies between the tag elements, making it easier for the user to be aware of the document's structure and the way tags are nested.

The *Expand more* and *Collapse all* items of the popup menu available on the outline tree enlarge or reduce the set of nodes of the edited document currently visible in the view. The tree expansion action is a faster alternative to mouse clicks on the plus signs of the tree when one wants to access quickly a node deeply nested in the hierarchy of document nodes. When a large number of nodes become expanded and the document structure is not clear any more the collapsing action clears the view quickly by reducing the depth of the expanded nodes to only one child of the currently selected node.

## Outliner filters

Show comments/Processing Instructions      Show/Hide Comments and Processing instructions in the outliner.

Show text      Show/Hide additional text content for the displayed elements.

Show attributes      Show/Hide attribute values for the displayed elements.

The displayed attribute values can be changed from the Outline preferences panel.

The content of the Outline view can also be filtered with patterns typed in the text field of the view. The patterns can include the wildcard characters \* and ?. If more than one pattern is used they must be separated by comma. Any pattern is a prefix filter, that is a \* is appended automatically at the end of every pattern.

## Modification Follow-up

When editing, the Outline view dynamically follows the modifications introduced by the user, showing in the middle of the panel the node which is currently being modified. This gives the user better insight on location where in the document one is positioned and how the structure of the document is affected by one's modifications.

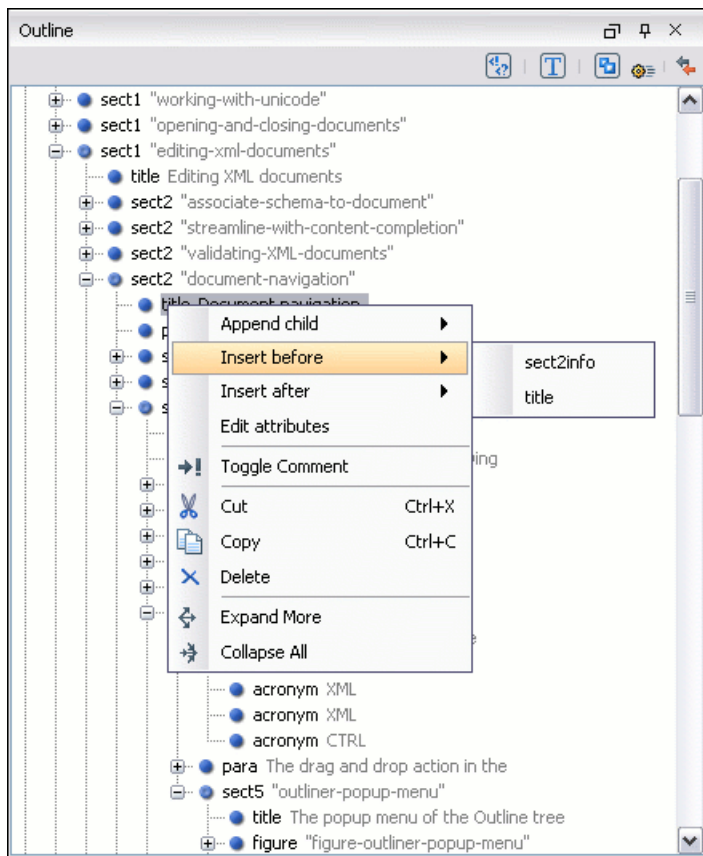
## Document Structure Change

Entire XML elements can be moved or copied in the edited document using only the mouse in the Outline view in drag-and-drop operations. If you drag an XML element in the Outline view and drop it on another one in the same panel then the dragged element will be moved after the drop target element. If you hold the mouse pointer over the drop target for a short time before the drop then the drop target element will be expanded first and the dragged element will be moved inside the drop target element after its opening tag. You can also drop an element before or after another element if you hold the mouse pointer towards the upper or lower part of the targeted element. A marker will indicate whether the drop will be performed before or after the target element. If you hold down the CTRL key the performed operation will be copy instead of move.

The drag and drop action in the Outline view can be disabled and enabled from the Preferences dialog.

## The popup menu of the Outline tree

**Figure 4.29. Popup menu of the Outline tree**



The *Append Child*, *Insert Before* and *Insert After* submenus of the outline tree popup menu allow to quickly insert new tags in the document at the place of the element currently selected in the Outline tree. The *Append Child* submenu lists the names of all the elements which are allowed by the schema associated with the current document as child of the

current element. The *Insert Before* and *Insert After* submenus of the Outline tree popup menu list the elements which are allowed by the schema associated with the current document as siblings of the current element inserted immediately before respectively after the current element.

*Edit attributes* for the selected node. A dialog is presented allowing the user to see and edit the attributes of the selected node. See here for more details about editing attributes.

The *Toggle comment* item of the outline tree popup menu is the same item as in the editor popup menu with the same name. It encloses the currently selected element of the outline tree in an XML comment, if the element is not commented, or un comments it if it is commented.

The *Cut*, *Copy* and *Delete* items of the popup menu execute the same actions as the Edit menu items with the same name on the elements currently selected in the outline tree.

## Document Tag Selection




The Outline view can also be used to search for a specific tag's location and contents in the edited document. Intuitively, by selecting with the left mouse button the desired tag in the Outline view, the document is scrolled to the position of the selected tag. Moreover, the tag's contents are selected in the document, making it easy to notice the part of the document contained by that specific tag and furthermore to easily copy and paste the tag's contents in other parts of the document or in other documents.

You can double click the tag in the Outliner tree to move focus to the editor.

You can also use key search to look for a particular tag name in the Outliner tree.

## Navigation buttons

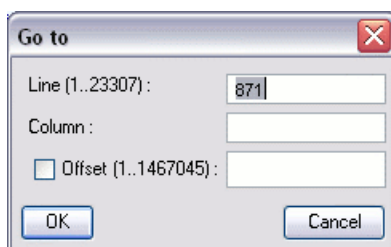
These buttons are available in editor's main toolbar:

-  Go to last modification : Moves the caret to the last modification in any opened document.
-  Back : Moves the caret to the previous position.
-  Forward : Moves the caret to the next position. Enabled after at least one press of "Back" button.

## Using the Go To dialog

The *Go to* dialog available from Find → Go to ... (**Ctrl+L** (**Cmd+L on Mac**)) enables you to go to a precise location in the current edited file specified by line and column or by offset relative to the beginning of the file.

**Figure 4.30. Go to**



Complete the dialog as follows:

- Line        The destination line in the current document.
- Column     The destination column in the current document.
- Offset      The destination offset relative to the beginning of document.

## Grouping documents in XML projects

### Large Documents

Let's consider the case of documenting a large project. It is likely to be several people involved. The resulting document can be few megabytes in size. How to deal with this amount of data in such a way the work parallelism would not be affected ?

Fortunately, XML provides a solution for this. It can be created a master document, with references to the other document parts, containing the document sections. The users can edit individually the sections, then apply FOP or XSLT over the master and obtain the result files, let say PDF or HTML.

Two conditions must be fulfilled:

- The master should declare the DTD to be used and the external entities - the sections. A sample document is:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<!DOCTYPE book SYSTEM "../xml/docbookx.dtd" [
<!ENTITY testing SYSTEM "testing.xml" > ]
>
<book>
<chapter> ...
```

At a certain point in the master document there can be inserted the section "testing.xml" entity:

... &testing; ...

- The document containing the section must not define again the DTD.

```
<section> ... here comes the section content ... </section>
```

#### **Note**

The indicated DTD and the element names ( "section", "chapter" ) are used here only for illustrating the inclusion mechanism. You can use any DTD and element names you need.

When splitting a large document and including the separate parts in the master file using external entities, only the master file will contain the Document Type Definition (the DTD) or other type of schema. The included sections can't define again the schema because the main document will not be valid. If you want to validate the parts separately you have to use XInclude for assembling the parts together with the master file.

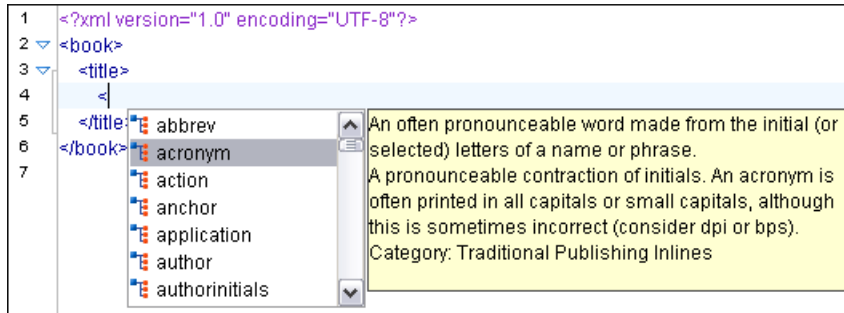
### Creating an included part

Open a new document of type XML, with no associated schema.



You can type in the edited document the root element of your section. For example, if you are using DocBook it can be "<chapter></chapter>" or "<section></section>". Now if you are moving the cursor between the tags and press "<", you will see the list of element names that can be inserted.

**Figure 4.31. Content Completion list over a document with no schema**



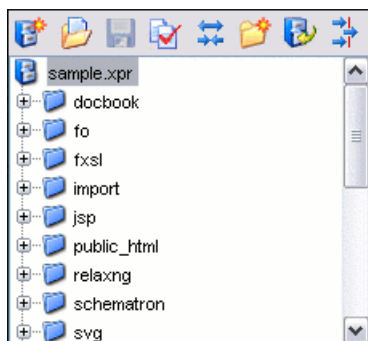
### Note

The validation will work on an included file that has no DTD set only if you associate the file with a validation scenario that specifies the master file as the start point of validation. Without a validation scenario you can only check the included file to be well-formed.

## Using the Project view


The Project view, located on the left-hand side of the main window, is designed to assist the user in organizing and managing related files grouped in the same XML project. The actions available on the context menu and toolbar associated to this panel enable the creation of XML projects and shortcuts to various operations on the project documents. On Windows the context menu can be displayed with the mouse on a right click or with the keyboard by pressing the special context menu key available on Windows keyboards.


**Figure 4.32. The Project View**



The default layout initialized by the Perspective → Reset Layout menu item arranges the Project view on the left side of the <oxygen/> window, above the Outline view. If you closed the view at some time to get more editing space you can reopen it quickly at any time with the Project → Show Project View menu item.


To create a new project select File → New Project or click the toolbar button  New Project

To open an existing project select File → Open Project ... (**Ctrl+F2**) or click the toolbar button  Open Project or select File → Reopen Project (displays a list of recently opened project files, select a project file to open). You can also drop an <oXygen/> XPR project file from the file explorer in the Project panel.

To save a project on disk select File → Save Project (**Ctrl+F3**) or click the toolbar button  Save Project


The files are organized in a XML project usually as a collection of folders. There are two types of folders:

- Logical folders - they are marked with a blue icon and do not have any connection with folders on the disk, creating and deleting them in <oXygen/> does not affect the file system on disk.
- Linked folders - they are marked with a yellow icon and their name and content mirror a real folder existing in the file system on disk.

To create a new logical or physical folder (depending on the selected resource) select in the contextual menu New Folder or Import Folders or Import Remote Folders or click the Project view toolbar button  New Folder

You can create linked folders by dragging and dropping a folder from the Windows Explorer / Mac OS X Finder over the project tree or by selecting in the contextual menu Link to External Folders Also the structure of the project tree can be changed with drag and drop operations on the files and folders of the tree.

To create a new linked folder inside another linked folder, or inside one of its children, right click on the linked folder where you want to create it and select New Folder from the contextual menu.

To add one or more files to a folder, right click on it, and choose Add files or Add Edited File or click the toolbar button  Add Edited File or right-click on the title of an opened editor and select from the pop-up menu Add to project or Add all to project.

The default target when adding files to a project is the project root. Selecting a folder changes the target to the selected folder. Files may have multiple instances, within the folder system but cannot appear twice within the same folder.

To remove one or more files and/or folders select them with the mouse in the project tree, right-click to invoke the contextual menu and select the Remove action or press the DELETE key.

To create a new file inside a linked folder choose the *New File* action from the contextual menu.

A child (folder or file) of a linked folder can be renamed by right-clicking on it and accessing the Rename action from the contextual menu. The file or folder will be renamed both in the <oXygen/> Project view and on the local disk.

If a project folder contains many documents a certain document can be quickly located in the project tree if the user selects with the mouse the folder containing the desired document (or some arbitrary document in this folder) and types the first characters of the document name. The desired document will be automatically selected as soon as the typed characters uniquely identify its name in the folder. The selected document can be opened by pressing the ENTER key, by double-clicking on it and with one of the Open actions from the popup menu. For opening a file of known type with other editor than the default use the Open as action. Also the selected document can be deleted by pressing the DELETE key or by choosing Remove from the context menu.

The currently selected files in the Project view can be validated against a schema of type Schematron, XML Schema, Relax NG, NRL, NVDL, or a combination of the later with Schematron with one of the actions *Validate Selection* and *Validate Selection with ...* available on the right-click menu of the Project view. This together with the logical folder support of the project allows you to group your files and validate them very easily.

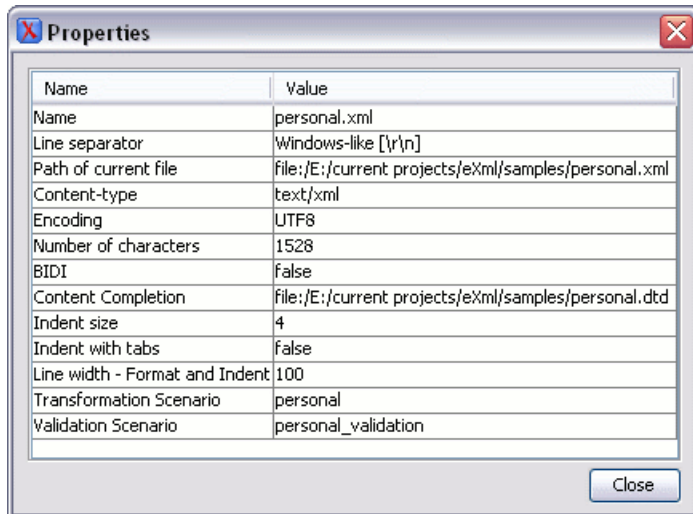
The currently selected files in the Project view can be transformed in one action with one of the actions *Apply Transformation Scenario*, *Configure Transformation Scenario ...* and *Transform with...* available on the right-click menu of


the Project view. This together with the logical folder support of the project allows you to group your files and transform them very easily.


If the resources from a linked folder in the project have been changed outside the view you can refresh the content of the folder by using the Refresh action from the contextual menu. The action is also performed when selecting the linked resource and pressing **F5** key

A list of useful file properties similar to the ones available in the Properties view can be obtained with the *Properties* action of the popup menu invoked on a file node of the Project view tree, in a dialog like below:

**Figure 4.33. The Properties dialog**



The full path to the project files is hidden by default. Click the toolbar button  Show/Hide Path to toggle the file path on or off.

The files and folders that appear as visible in the Project view can be filtered. Click the toolbar button  Filters to set filter patterns for the files you want or do NOT want to show.

In the dialog you can introduce filter patterns for the files that will be shown, files that will be hidden and filter patterns for the linked directories of the Project view that will be hidden.

Right-clicking any object in the tree-view displays the Project menu with functions that can be performed on, or from the selected object. Options available from the Project menu are specific to the object type selected in the tree-view.

You can also use drag and drop to arrange the files in logical folders (but not in linked folders). Also, dragging and dropping files from the project tree to the editor area results in the files being opened.

## Team Collaboration - Subversion

There is a SVN (Subversion) Client application embedded in <oXygen/>. You may start it from the Tools menu and use it for synchronizing your working copy with a central repository.

Another way of starting it is by using the contextual menu of the project tree: Team → Open in SVN Client. This action displays the Syncro SVN Client and shows the selected project file in the working copy view.

## Project Level Settings

You can store into the project not only lists of files and directories, but also transformation scenarios and other setting. For more information see the Preference Sharing and Sharing the Transformation Scenarios sections.

## Including document parts with XInclude

XInclude is a standard for assembling XML instances into another XML document through inclusion. It enables larger documents to be dynamically created from smaller XML documents without having to physically duplicate the content of the smaller files in the main file. XInclude is targeted as the replacement for External Entities. The advantage of using XInclude is that, unlike the entities method, each of the assembled documents is permitted to contain a Document Type Declaration (DOCTYPE Decl.). This means that each file is a valid XML instance and can be independently validated. It also means that the main document to which smaller instances are included can be validated without having to remove or comment the DOCTYPE Decl. as is the case with External Entities. This makes XInclude a more convenient and effective method for managing XML instances that need to be stand-alone documents and part of a much larger work.

The main application for XInclude is in the document orientated content frameworks such as manuals and Web pages. Employing XInclude enables authors and content managers to manage content in a modular fashion that is akin to Object Orientated methods used in languages such as Java, C++ or C#.

The advantages of modular documentation include: reusable content units, smaller file units that are easier to edited, better version control and distributed authoring.

An example: create a chapter file and an article file in the `samples` folder of the `<oxygen/>` install folder and include the chapter file in the article file using XInclude.

Chapter file `introduction.xml`:

```
<?xml version="1.0"?>
<!DOCTYPE chapter PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.3//EN"
"http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.3/docbookx.dtd">
<chapter>
  <title>Getting started</title>
  <section>
    <title>Section title</title>
    <para>Para text</para>
  </section>
</chapter>
```

Main article file:

```
<?xml version="1.0"?>
<!DOCTYPE article PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.3//EN"
"http://www.docbook.org/xml/4.3/docbookx.dtd"
[ <!ENTITY % xinclude SYSTEM "../frameworks/docbook/dtd/xinclude.mod">
%xinclude;
]>
<article>
  <title>Install guide</title>
  <para>This is the install guide.</para>
  <xi:include xmlns:xi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XInclude"
```

```

                href="introduction.xml">
    <xi:fallback>
      <para>
        <emphasis>FIXME: MISSING XINCLUDE CONTENT</emphasis>
      </para>
    </xi:fallback>
  </xi:include>
</article>

```

In this example the following is of note:

- The DOCTYPE Decl. defines an entity that references a file containing the information to add the xi namespace to certain elements defined by the DocBook DTD.
- The href attribute of the xi:include element specifies that the introduction.xml file will replace the xi:include element when the document is parsed.
- If the introduction.xml file cannot be found the parse will use the value of the xi:fallback element - a message to FIXME.

If you want to include only a fragment of other file in the master file the fragment must be contained in a tag having an *xml:id* attribute and you must use an XPointer expression pointing to the *xml:id* value. For example if the master file is:

```

<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<?oxygen RNGSchema="test.rng" type="xml"?>
<test>
  <xi:include href="a.xml" xpointer="a1"
    xmlns:xi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XInclude"/>
</test>

```

and the a.xml file is:

```

<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<test>
  <a xml:id="a1">test</a>
</test>

```

after resolving the XPointer reference the document is:

```

<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<?oxygen RNGSchema="test.rng" type="xml"?>
<test>
  <a xml:id="a1" xml:base="a.xml">test</a>
</test>

```

The XInclude support in <oxygen/> is turned on by default. You can toggle it by going to the entry Enable XInclude processing in the menu Options → Preferences ...+XML / XML Parser When enabled <oxygen/> will be able to validate and transform documents comprised of parts added using XInclude.

## Working with XML Catalogs

When Internet access is not available or the Internet connection is slow the OASIS XML catalogs [<http://www.oasis-open.org/committees/entity/spec.html>] present in the list maintained in the XML Catalog Preferences panel will be scanned trying to map a remote system ID (at document validation) or a URI reference (at document transformation) pointing to a resource on a remote Web server to a local copy of the same resource. If a match is found then <oXygen/> will use the local copy of the resource instead of the remote one. This enables the XML author to work on his XML project without Internet access or when the connection is slow and waiting until the remote resource is accessed and fetched becomes unacceptable. Also XML catalogs make documents machine independent so that they can be shared by many developers by modifying only the XML catalog mappings related to the shared documents.

<oXygen/> supports any XML catalog file that conforms to one of:

- the OASIS XML Catalogs Committee Specification v1.1 [<http://www.oasis-open.org/committees/download.php/14809/xml-catalogs.html>]
- the OASIS Technical Resolution 9401:1997 [<http://www.oasis-open.org/specs/a401.htm>] including the plain-text flavor described in that resolution

The version 1.1 of the OASIS XML Catalog specification introduces the possibility to map a system ID, a public ID or a URI to a local copy using only a suffix of the ID or URI used in the actual document. This is done using the new `catalogElementSystemSuffix` [<http://www.oasis-open.org/committees/download.php/14809/xml-catalogs.html#s.systemsuffix>] and `uriSuffix` [<http://www.oasis-open.org/committees/download.php/14809/xml-catalogs.html#s.urisuffix>].

An XML catalog can be used also to map a W3C XML Schema specified with an URN in the `xsi:schemaLocation` attribute of an XML document to a local copy of the schema. For example if the XML document specifies the schema with:

```
<topic xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
      xsi:noNamespaceSchemaLocation="urn:oasis:names:tc:dita:xsd:topic.xsd:1.1">
```

Inside an XML Schema if an `xs:import` statement specifies only the `namespace` attribute, without the `schemaLocation` attribute, <oXygen/> will try to resolve the specified namespace URI through one of the XML catalogs configured in Preferences.

the URN can be resolved to a local schema file with a catalog entry like:

```
<system systemId="urn:oasis:names:tc:dita:xsd:topic.xsd:1.1"
      uri="topic.xsd"/>
```

An XML Catalog file can be created quickly in <oXygen/> starting from the two XML Catalog document templates called *OASIS XML Catalog 1.0* and *OASIS XML Catalog 1.1* and available in the document templates dialog.

User preferences related to XML Catalogs can be configured from Options → Preferences ... +XML / XML Catalog

## Formatting and indenting documents (pretty print)


In structured markup languages, the whitespace between elements that is created by use of the **Space bar**, **Tab** or multiple line breaks insertion from use of the **Enter**, is not recognized by the parsing tools. Often this means that when structured markup documents are opened, they are arranged as one long, unbroken line, what seems to be a single paragraph.

While this is perfectly acceptable practice, it makes editing difficult and increases the likelihood of errors being introduced. It also makes the identification of exact error positions difficult. Formatting and Indenting, also called Pretty

Print, enables such documents to be neatly arranged, in a manner that is consistent and promotes easier reading on screen and in print output.

Pretty print is in no way associated with the layout or formatting that will be used in the transformed document. This layout and formatting is supplied by the XSL stylesheet specified at the time of transformation.

**Procedure 4.5. To format and indent a document:**

1. Open or focus on the document that is to be formatted and indented.
2. Select menu Document → XML Document → Format and Indent (**Ctrl+Shift+P (Cmd+Shift+F on Mac OS)**) or click the toolbar button  Format and indent . While in progress the Status Panel will indicate Pretty print in progress. On completion, this will change to Pretty print successful and the document will be arranged.

 **Note**

Pretty Print can format empty elements as an auto-closing markup tag (ex. `<a/>`) or as a regular tag (ex. `<a></a>`). It can preserve the order or attributes or order them alphabetically. Also the user may specify a list of elements for which white spaces are preserved exactly as before Pretty print and one with elements for which white space is stripped. These can be configured from Options → Preferences+Editor / Format.

Pretty Print requires that the structured document is *Well-Formed XML*. If the document is not *Well-Formed XML* an error message is displayed. The message will usually indicate that a problem has been found in the form and will hint to the problem type. It will not highlight the general position of the error, to do this run the *well formed* action by selecting Document → Check document form (**Ctrl+Shift+W**).

 **Note**

If the document is not well-formed because some XML elements contain code in a specific language, for example JavaScript:

```
<script language="JavaScript" type="text/javascript">
  var javawsInstalled = 0;
  var javaws12Installed = 0;
  var javaws142Installed=0;
  isIE = "false";

  if (navigator.mimeTypes && navigator.mimeTypes.length) {
    x = navigator.mimeTypes['application/x-java-jnlp-file'];
    if (x) {
      javawsInstalled = 1;
      javaws12Installed=1;
      javaws142Installed=1;
    }
  } else {
    isIE = "true";
  }
</script>
```

this code can be enclosed in an XML comment to make the document well-formed before applying the *Format and Indent* action:

```

<script language="JavaScript" type="text/javascript">
  <!--
    var javawsInstalled = 0;
    var javaws12Installed = 0;
    var javaws142Installed=0;
    isIE = "false";

    if (navigator.mimeTypes && navigator.mimeTypes.length) {
      x = navigator.mimeTypes['application/x-java-jnlp-file'];
      if (x) {
        javawsInstalled = 1;
        javaws12Installed=1;
        javaws142Installed=1;
      }
    } else {
      isIE = "true";
    }
  -->
</script>

```

To change the formatting of just one XML element see the action `Pretty print element` . To change the indenting of the current selected text see the action `Indent selection` .

For user preferences related to formatting and indenting like `Detect indent on open` and `Indent on paste` see the corresponding `Preferences` panel.

XML elements can be excepted from the reformatting performed by the pretty-print operation by including them in the *Preserve space elements (XPath)* list. That means that when the *Format and Indent* (pretty-print) action encounters in the document an element with the name contained in this list the whitespace is preserved inside that element. This is useful when most of the elements must be reformatted with the exception of a few ones which are listed here.

For the situation when whitespace should be preserved in most elements with the exception of a few elements, the names of these elements must be added to the *Strip space elements (XPath)* list.

In addition to simple element names both the *Preserve space elements (XPath)* list and the *Strip space elements (XPath)* one accept a restricted set of XPath expressions for covering a pattern of XML elements with only one expression. The allowed types of expressions are:

|                                      |  |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| <code>//xs:documentation</code>      | the XPath descendant axis can be used only at the beginning of the expression; the namespace prefix can be attached to any namespace, no namespace binding check is performed when applying the pretty-print operation |
| <code>/chapter/abstract/title</code> | note the use of the XPath child axis   |
| <code>//section/title</code>         | the descendant axis can be followed by the child axis  |

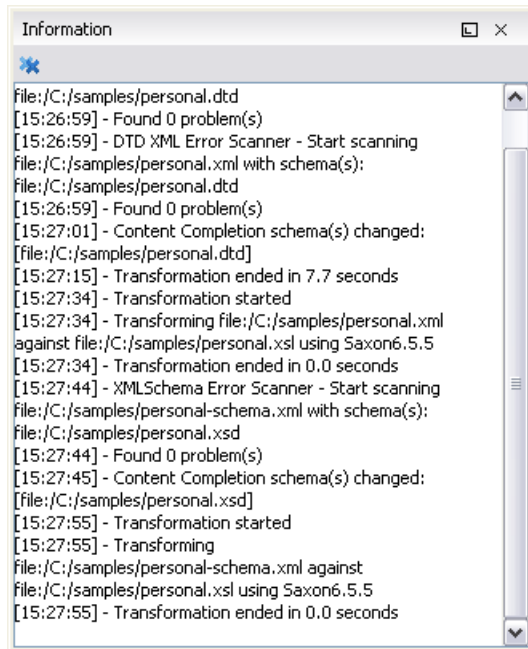
The value of an `xml:space` attribute present in the XML document on which the pretty-print operation is applied always takes precedence over the *Preserve space elements (XPath)* and the *Strip space elements (XPath)* lists.



## Viewing status information

Status information generated by the Schema Detection, Validation, Validate as you type and Transformation threads are fed into the Information view allowing the user to monitor how the operation is being executed.

**Figure 4.34. Information view messages**



Messages contain a timestamp, the name of the thread that generated it and the actual status information. The number of displayed messages can be controlled from the options panel.

In order to make the view visible go to Perspective+Show View → Information

## Image preview

Images and SVG files from the Project view can be previewed in a separate panel.

To preview an image you have to either double click the image name or click the Preview action from the Project's tree contextual menu. Supported image types are GIF, JPEG/JPG, PNG, BMP. Once the image is displayed in the Preview panel using the actions from the contextual menu one can scale the image at its original size (1:1 action) or scale it down to fit in the view's available area (Scale to fit action).

## Making a persistent copy of results


To make a persistent copy of the results displayed in the Results panel from operations like document validation, checking the form of documents, XSLT or FO transformation, find all occurrences of a string, applying an XPath expression to the current document use one of the actions:

- File → Save Results - displays the Save Results dialog, used to save the result-list of the current message tab. The action is also available on the right click menu of the Results panel.

- File → Print Results - displays the Page Setup dialog used to define the page size and orientation properties for printing the result-list of the current Results panel. The action is also available on the right click menu of the Results panel.
- Save Results as XML on the right click menu - saves the content of the Results panel in an XML file with the format:

```
<Report>
  <Incident>
    <engine>The engine who provide the error.</engine>
    <severity>The severity level</severity>
    <Description>Description of output message.</Description>
    <SystemID>The location of the file linked to the message.</SystemID>
    <Location>
      <start>
        <line>Start line number in file.</line>
        <column>Start column number in file</column>
      </start>
      <end>
        <line>End line number in file.</line>
        <column>End column number in file</column>
      </start>
    </Location>
  </Incident>
</Report>
```


## Locking and unlocking XML markup

For documents with fixed markup such as forms in which the XML tags are not allowed to be modified but only their text content, editing of the XML tag names can be disabled and re-enabled with an action available from Document+Source → Locks/Unlocks the XML Tags or from the toolbar button  Locks/Unlocks the XML tags

There is a default lock state for all opened editors in the Preferences XML Editor Format page.

## Adjusting the transparency of XML markup

Most of the time you want the content of a document displayed on screen with zero transparency. When you want to focus your attention only on editing text content inside XML tags `<oxygen/>` offers the option of reducing the visibility of the tags by increasing their transparency when they are displayed. There are two levels of tag transparency: semi-transparent markup and transparent markup. For the opposite case, when you want to focus on the tag names, the text transparency can be set to one of two levels: semi-transparent text and transparent text. To change the level of transparency:




- Click the toolbar button  Adjust contrast available on the Edit toolbar to adjust the contrast of markup in Editor perspective. If the Edit toolbar is not visible right-click in the toolbar area and select Edit from the popup menu.

On Windows XP and Windows Vista, depending on antialiasing settings and JVM used, this functionality could have no effect.

## XML editor specific actions

<oxygen> offers groups of actions for working on single XML elements. They are available from the Document menu and the context menu of the main editor panel. On Windows the context menu can be displayed with the mouse on a right click or with the keyboard by pressing the special context menu key available on Windows keyboards.

### Split actions

Also the editing area can be divided vertically and horizontally with the split / unsplit actions available on the Split toolbar, the Document → Split menu and the popup menu of the editor panel for XML files:  Split horizontally,  Split vertically,  Unsplit.

### Edit actions


- Document+Edit → Toggle Line Wrap (**Ctrl + Shift + Y**): Turns on line wrapping in the editor panel if it was off and vice versa. It has the same effect as the Line wrap preference.
- Document+Edit → Toggle comment (**Ctrl + Shift + ,**): Comment the current selection of the current editor. If the selection already contains a comment the action removes the comment from around the selection. If there is no selection in the current editor and the cursor is not positioned inside a comment the current line is commented. If the cursor is positioned inside a comment then the commented text is uncommented. The action is also available on the popup menu of the editor panel.








### Select actions

The Select actions are enabled when the caret is positioned inside a tag name.

- Document+Select → Element: Selects the entire current element;
- Document+Select → Content: Selects the content of the current element, excluding the start tag and end tag. If it is applied repeatedly starts with selecting the XML element from the cursor position and extends the selection to the ancestor XML elements. Each execution of the action extends the current selection to the surrounding element;
- Document+Select → Attributes: Selects all the attributes of the current element;
- Document+Select → Parent: Selects the parent element of the current element;
- Triple click on an element or processing instruction - If the triple click is done before the start tag of an element or after the end tag of an element then all the element is selected by the triple click action. If it is done after the start tag or before the end tag then only the element content without the start tag and end tag is selected.
- Double click after the opening quote or before the closing quote of an attribute value - select the whole attribute value.


### Source actions


- Document+Source+Locks / Unlocks the XML Tags  : Disable / Enable editing of XML tags
- Document+Source → To lower case: Converts the selection's content to lower case characters.
- Document+Source → To upper case: Converts the selection's content to upper case characters.
- Document+Source → Capitalize lines: Converts to upper case the first character of every selected line.

- Document+Source+Shift Right  (**Tab**): Shifts the selected block to the right;
- Document+Source+Shift Left  (**Shift+Tab**): Shifts the selected block to the left;
- Document+Source+Escape Selection ...  : Escapes a range of characters by replacing them with the corresponding character entities.
- Document+Source+Unescape Selection ...  : Replaces the character entities with the corresponding characters;
- Document+Source+Indent selection  (**Ctrl + I**): Corrects the indentation of the selected block of lines.
- Document+Source+Format and Indent Element  (**Ctrl + I**): Pretty prints the element that surrounds the caret position;
- Document+Source+Import entities list  : Shows a dialog that allows you to select a list of files as sources for external entities. The DOCTYPE section of your document will be updated with the chosen entities. For instance, if choosing the file chapter1.xml, and chapter2.xml, the following section is inserted in the DOCTYPE:
 

```
<!ENTITY chapter1 SYSTEM "chapter1.xml ">
<!ENTITY chapter2 SYSTEM "chapter2.xml ">
```
- Document+Source → To Lower Case : The action works on the selection converting all upper case letters to lower case.
- Document+Source → To Upper Case : The action works on the selection converting all lower case letters to upper case.
- Document+Source → Capitalize lines: It capitalizes the first letter found on every new line that is selected. Only the first letter is affected, the rest of the line remains the same. If the first character on the new line is not a letter then no changes are made.
- Document+Source → Join and normalize: The action works on the selection. It joins the lines by replacing the *line separator* with a single space character. It also normalizes the whitespaces by replacing a sequence of such characters with a single space.
- Document+Source → Insert new line after: This useful action has the same result with moving the caret to the end of the current line and pressing *ENTER*.

## XML document actions





- Document+Schema → Show Definition (also available on the contextual menu of the editor panel) : move the cursor to the definition of the current element in the schema associated with the edited XML document (DTD, XML Schema, Relax NG schema, NRL schema).
- Document+XML Document → Copy XPath (**Ctrl+Alt+.**): Copy XPath expression of current element or attribute from current editor to clipboard.
- Document+XML Document+Go to the matching tag  (**Ctrl+Shift+G**): Moves the cursor to the end tag that matches the start tag, or vice versa.

- Document+XML Document → Go after Next Tag (**Ctrl+Close Bracket**): Moves the cursor to the end of the next tag.
- Document+XML Document → Go after Previous Tag (**Ctrl+Open Bracket**): Moves the cursor to the end of the previous tag.
- Document+XML Document+Associate XSLT/CSS Stylesheet : Inserts an *xml-stylesheet* processing instruction at the beginning of the document referencing either an XSLT or a CSS file depending on the user selection. Either reference is useful for rendering the document in a Web browser when the action *Open in browser* is executed. Referencing the XSLT file is also useful for automatic detection of the transformation stylesheet when there is no scenario associated with the current document

When associating the CSS, the user can also specify the title and if the stylesheet is an alternate one. Setting a **Title** for the CSS makes it the author's preferred stylesheet. Checking the **Alternate** checkbox makes the CSS an alternate stylesheet.

oXygen Author fully implements the W3C recommendation regarding "Associating Style Sheets with XML documents". For more information see: <http://www.w3.org/TR/xml-stylesheet/http://www.w3.org/TR/REC-html40/present/styles.html#h-14.3.2>

## XML Refactoring actions




- Document+XML Refactoring+Surround with tag...  (**Ctrl+E**): Selected Text in the editor is marked with the specified start and end tags.
- Document+XML Refactoring+Surround with last <tag>  (**Ctrl+/**): Selected Text in the editor is marked with start and end tags of the last 'Surround in' action.
- Document+XML Refactoring+Rename element  (**Alt+Shift+R**): The element from the caret position and the elements that have the same name as the current element can be renamed according with the options from the Rename dialog.
- Document+XML Refactoring+Rename prefix  (**Alt+Shift+P**): The prefix of the element from the caret position and the elements that have the same prefix as the current element can be renamed according with the options from the Rename dialog.

Selecting the *Rename current element prefix* option the application will recursively traverse the current element and all its children.

For example, to change the `xmlns:p1="ns1"` association existing in the current element to `xmlns:p5="ns1"` just select this option and press OK. If the association `xmlns:p1="ns1"` is applied on the parent of the current element, then <oXygen/> will introduce a new declaration `xmlns:p5="ns1"` in the current element and will change the prefix from p1 to p5. If p5 is already associated in the current element with another namespace, let's say ns5, then a dialog showing the conflict will be displayed. Pressing the OK button, the prefix will be modified from p1 to p5 without inserting a new declaration `xmlns:p5="ns1"`. On Cancel no modification is made.

Selecting the "Rename current prefix in all document" option the application will apply the change on the entire document.

To apply the action also inside attribute values one must check the *Rename also attribute values that start with the same prefix* checkbox.

- Document+XML Refactoring+Split element  (Ctrl+Alt+D): Split the element from the caret position in two identical elements. The caret must be inside the element
- Document+XML Refactoring+Join elements  (Ctrl+Alt+J): Joins the left and the right elements relative to the current caret position. The elements must have the same name, attributes and attributes values.
- Document+XML Refactoring+Delete element tags  (Ctrl+Alt+X): Deletes the start tag and end tag of the current element.

## Smart editing

|                               |   |
|-------------------------------|---|
| Closing tag auto-expansion    | If you want to insert content into an auto closing tag like <code>&lt;tag/&gt;</code> deleting the <code>/</code> character saves some keystrokes by inserting a separate closing tag automatically and placing the cursor between the start and end tags: <code>&lt;tag&gt;&lt;/tag&gt;</code>   |
| Auto-rename matching tag      | When you edit the name of the start tag, <code>&lt;oxygen/&gt;</code> will mirror-edit the name of the matching end tag. This feature can be controlled from the <i>Content Completion</i> option page.   |
| Auto-breaking the edited line | The <i>Hard line wrap</i> option breaks the edited line automatically when its length exceeds the maximum line length defined for the pretty-print operation.   |
| Indent on Enter               | The <i>Indent on Enter</i> option indents the new line inserted when Enter is pressed.  |
| Smart Enter                   | The <i>Smart Enter</i> option inserts an empty line between the start and end tags and places the cursor in an indented position on the empty line automatically when the cursor is between the start and end tag and Enter is pressed.   |
| Triple click                  | A triple click with the left mouse button selects a different region of text of the current document depending on the position of the click in the document: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• if the click position is inside a start tag or an end tag then the entire element enclosed by that tag is selected</li> <li>• if the click position is immediately after a start tag or immediately before an end tag then the entire content of the element enclosed by that tag is selected, including all the child elements but excluding the start tag and the end tag of the element</li> <li>• otherwise the triple click selects the entire current line of text</li> </ul> |

## Syntax highlight depending on namespace prefix

The syntax highlight scheme of an XML file type allows the configuration of a color per each type of token which can appear in an XML file. Distinguishing between the XML tag tokens based on the namespace prefix brings additional visual help in editing some XML file types. For example in XSLT stylesheets elements from different namespaces like XSLT, XHTML, XSL:FO or XForms are inserted in the same document and the editor panel can become cluttered. Marking tags with different colors based on the namespace prefix allows easier identification of the tags.

**Figure 4.35. Example of coloring XML tags by prefix**

```

3 <xsl:template match="name">
4   <fo:list-item>
5     <fo:list-item-label end-indent="label-end()">
6       <fo:block text-align="end" font-weight="bold">Full Name</fo:block>
7     </fo:list-item-label>
8     <fo:list-item-body start-indent="body-start()">
9       <xsl:apply-templates select="*" />
10    </fo:list-item-body>
11  </fo:list-item>
12 </xsl:template>

```

## Editing CSS stylesheets

<oXygen/> provides special support for developing CSS stylesheet documents.

## Validating CSS stylesheets

<oXygen/> includes a built-in CSS validator integrated with the general validation support. This brings the usual validation features to CSS stylesheets.

## Content Completion in CSS stylesheets

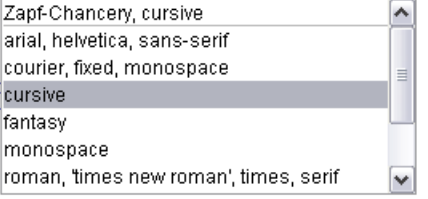
A content completion assistant similar to the one of XML documents offers the CSS properties and the values available for each property. It is activated on the **CTRL + Space** shortcut and it is context sensitive when it is invoked for the value of a property.

**Figure 4.36. Content Completion in CSS stylesheets**

```

74 a:active {
75   color: red;
76   background-color: yellow;
77   font-family]
78 }
79
80 acronym:hover
81 abbr[title], acrc] cursive
82 border-bottom] fantasy
83 cursor: help;
84 }
85

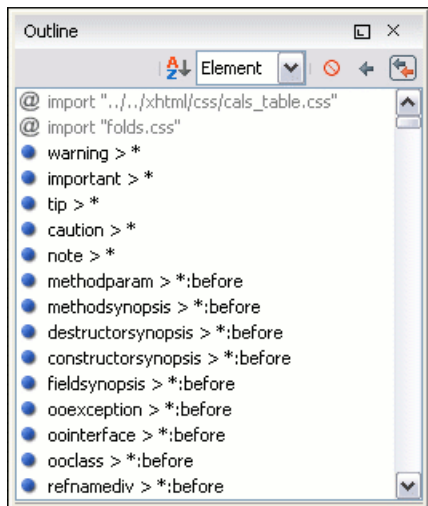
```



The properties and the values offered as proposals are dependent on the CSS Profile selected in the Options → Preferences+CSS Validator page, Profile combo box. The CSS 2.1 set of properties and property values is used for most of the profiles, excepting CSS 1 and CSS 3 for which specific proposal sets are used.

## CSS Outline View

The *CSS Outline View* presents the import declarations of other stylesheet files and all the selectors defined in the current CSS document. The selector entries can be presented in the order they appear in the document or sorted by element name used in the selector or the entire selector string representation. The selection in the outline view can be synchronized with the caret moves or the changes made in the stylesheet document. When selecting an entry from the outline view the corresponding import or selector will be highlighted in the CSS editor.

**Figure 4.37. CSS Outline View**

The selectors presented in the *CSS Outline View* can be quickly found using *key search*. When you press a sequence of character keys while the focus is in the outline view the first selector that starts with that sequence will be selected.

## Folding in CSS stylesheets

In a large CSS stylesheet document some styles may be collapsed so that only the needed styles remain in focus. The same folding features available for XML documents are also available in CSS stylesheets.

## Formatting and indenting CSS stylesheets (pretty print)

If the edited CSS stylesheet becomes unreadable because of the bad alignment of the text lines the pretty-print operation available for XML documents is also available for CSS stylesheets. It works in the same way as for XML documents and is available as the same menu and toolbar action.

## Other CSS editing actions

The CSS editor type offers a reduced version of the popup menu available in the XML editor type, that means only the folding actions, the edit actions and a part of the source actions (only the actions *To lower case*, *To upper case*, *Capitalize lines*).

## Integrating external tools

When your XML project requires to run an external tool different than a FO processor and which can be launched from the command line <oXygen/> offers you the option of integrating the tool by specifying just the command line for starting the executable file of the tool and its working directory. To integrate such a tool go to Options → Preferences+External Tools

If the external tool is applied on one of the files opened in <oXygen/> you should enable the option for saving all edited files automatically when an external tool is applied.

External tools can be launched from the *External tools* toolbar or from the submenu Tools → External tools. While the action is running its icon is a stop icon: ■ . When the tool has finished running it will change the icon back to the original run icon: ▶ . Please note that even though you can stop the external tool by invoking the action again while



it is running, that doesn't mean you can also stop the processes spawned by that external tool. This is especially a limiting factor when running a batch file as the batch will be stopped but without actually stopping the processes that the batch was running at the time.

## Integrating the Ant tool

As example let us integrate the Ant build tool [<http://ant.apache.org/>] in <oXygen/>. The procedure for this purpose is:

1. Download [<http://ant.apache.org/bindownload.cgi>] and install [<http://ant.apache.org/manual/install.html>] Ant on your computer.
2. Test your Ant installation from the command line in the directory where you want to use Ant from <oXygen/>, for example run the clean target of your build.xml file C:\projects\XMLproject\build.xml: **ant clean**
3. Go to Options → Preferences+External Tools
4. Create a new external tool entry with the name Ant tool, the working directory C:\projects\XMLproject and the command line "C:\projects\XMLproject\ant.bat" clean obtained by browsing to the ant.bat file from directory C:\projects\XMLproject
5. Run the tool from Tools → External Tools → Ant tool. You can see the output in the Command results panel:

```
Started: "C:\projects\XMLproject\ant.bat" clean
Buildfile: build.xml

clean:
[echo] Delete output files.
[delete] Deleting 5 files from C:\projects\XMLproject

BUILD SUCCESSFUL
Total time: 1 second
```

## Editing very large documents

For editing very large documents (file size up to 300 MB) a special memory optimization is implemented on loading such a file so that the total memory allocated for the application is not exceeded. The minimum file size that enables this large file optimization can be configured with the option Options → Preferences → Editor → Open/Save+Optimize loading in the Text page for files over (MB)

A temporary buffer file is created on disk so you should make sure that the available free disk space is at least double the size of the large file that you want to edit. For example <oXygen/> can load a 200 MB file using a minimum memory setting of 512 MB and at least 400 MB free disk space.

The increase of the maximum size of editable files comes with the following restrictions:

- A file with a size larger than the minimum size set with the above option is edited only in Text mode.
- The automatic validation is not available in a very large file.
- The XPath filter is disabled in the Find/Replace dialog.

- The bidirectional Unicode support (right-to-left writing) is disabled.
- The option *Format and indent the document on open* is disabled for non-XML documents. For XML documents it will be done optimizing the memory usage but without respecting the options set in the Oxygen 'Editor/Format' preferences page
- Less precise localizations for the results of an XPath expression.

## Insufficient memory

If you get an out of memory error for very large files the total memory that is available to the JVM is not enough. You should apply one or more steps from the following list for avoiding the error:

- Set more memory for the application at startup using the `-Xmx` parameter.
- If you have other opened files make sure you close other files before opening the large file.
- The large file should be opened in Text editing mode because the needed memory is less than other editing modes. You can set the default editing mode in the Preferences dialog.
- If you want only to view the file you can open it in Large File Viewer.

## Editing documents with long lines

The documents containing long lines can affect performance when opened in the text editor. If you choose to present the document with line wrap and is an XML document some of the features will be affected:

- The editor uses a Monospaced font.
- You cannot set font styles from Options → Preferences+Editor+Colors.
- Automatic validation is disabled.
- Automatic spell checking is disabled.
- XPath field is disabled in the Find/Replace dialog.
- Less precise localization for executed XPath. The XPath executions use SAX sources for smaller memory footprint.

The last two restrictions are valid only for XML documents.

## Large file viewer

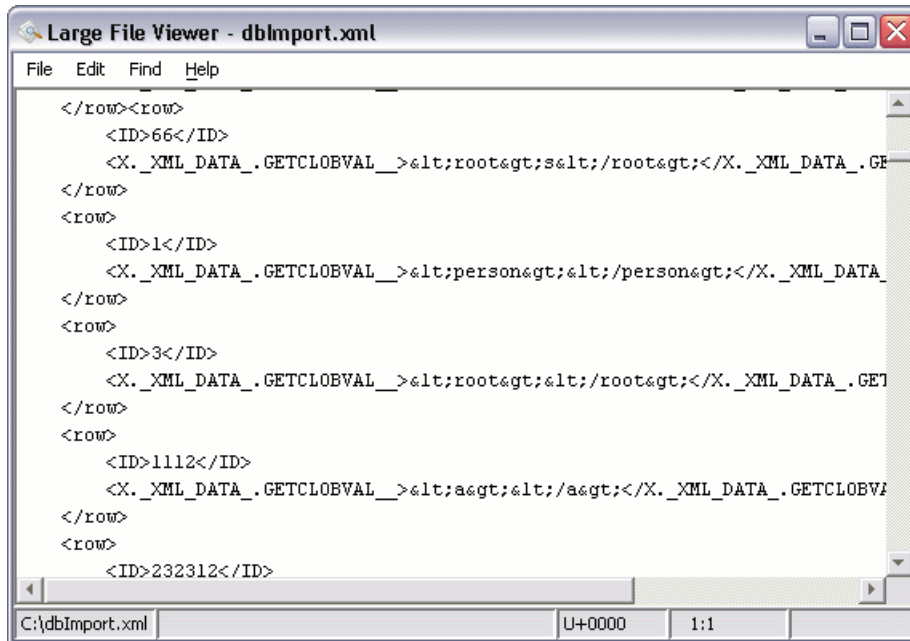
XML files tend to become larger and larger mostly because they are frequently used as a format for database export or for porting between different database formats. Traditional XML text editors simply cannot handle opening these huge export files, some having sizes exceeding one gigabyte, because of the necessity that all the file content must be loaded in memory before the user can actually view it.

The best performance of the viewer is obtained for encodings that use a fixed number of bytes per character, like UTF-16 or ASCII. The performance for UTF-8 is very good for documents that use mostly characters of the European languages. For the same encoding the rendering performance is high for files consisting of long lines (up to few thousands characters ) and may degrade for short lines. In fact the maximum size of a file that can be rendered in the Large File Viewer decreases when the total number of the text lines of the file increases. Trying to open a very large file, for example a file of 4 GB with a very high number of short lines (100 or 200 characters per line) may produce an OutOfMemory

error which would require either increasing the Java heap memory with the `-Xmx` startup parameter or decreasing the total number of lines in the file.

The powerful *Large File Viewer* is available from the Tools menu or as a standalone application. You can also right click a file in your project and choose to open it with the viewer. It uses an efficient structure for indexing the opened document. No information from the file is stored in the main memory, just a list of indexes in the file. In this way the viewer is capable of opening very large files, up to 10 gigabytes. If the opened file is XML, the encoding used to display the text is detected from the XML prolog of the file. In case of other files, the encoding is taken from the `<?xml encoding="..."/>` options. See Encoding for non XML files

**Figure 4.38. The Large File Viewer**



Large File Viewer components:

- The menu bar provides menu driven access to all the features and functions available in Large File Viewer.
  - File → Open provides access for opening files in the viewer (also available in the contextual pop-up menu).
  - File → Close provides access for closing the viewer.
  - Edit → Copy provides means to copy the selected text to clipboard (also available in the contextual pop-up menu).
  - Find → Find provides access to a reduced Find Dialog. The find dialog provides some basic search options like:
 

|                    |  |
|--------------------|--|
| Case sensitive     | When checked, operations are case sensitive.   |
| Regular Expression | When checked allows using any regular expression in PERL syntax.   |
| Wrap around        | Continues the find from the start (end) of the document after reaching the end (start) if the search is in forward (backward) direction. |
- Help → Help provides access to this User Manual.

- The status bar provides information about the current opened file path, the unicode representation of the character at caret position and the line and column in the opened document where the caret is located.

**Warning**

For faster computation the Large File Viewer uses a fixed font (plain, monospace font of size 12) for displaying characters. The font is *not* configurable from the <oXygen/> Preferences.

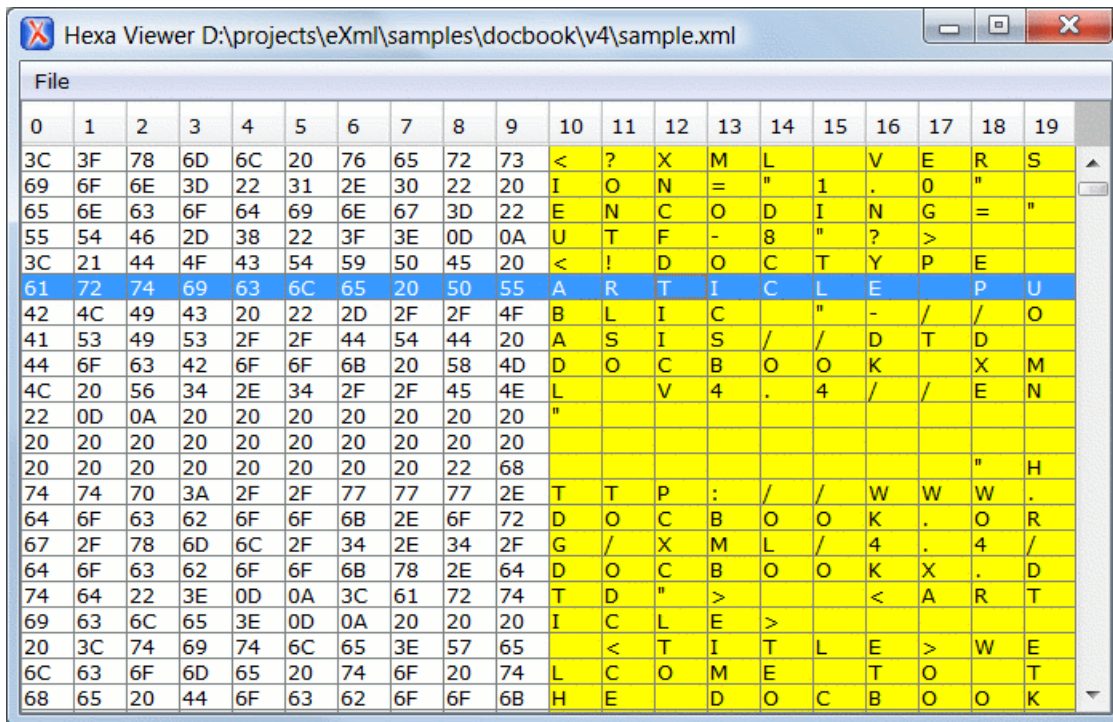
**Tip**

The best performance of the viewer is accomplished for encodings that use a fixed number of bytes per character, like UTF-16 or ASCII. The performance for UTF-8 is very good for documents that use mostly characters of the European languages. For the same encoding the rendering performance is high for files consisting of short lines (Up to a few thousand characters) and may degrade for long lines.

# Hex Viewer

When the Unicode characters that are visible in a text viewer or editor are not enough and you need to see the byte values of each character of a document you should start the hex viewer that is available on the *Tools* menu. It has two panels: the characters are rendered in the right panel and the bytes of each character are displayed in the left panel. There is a 1:1 correspondence between the characters and the characters: the bytes of a character are displayed in the same matrix position of the left panel as the position of the character in the matrix of the right panel.

**Figure 4.39. Hex Viewer**



## Scratch Buffer

A handy addition to the document editing is the *Scratch Buffer* view used for storing fragments of arbitrary text during the editing process. It can be used to drop bits of paragraphs (including arbitrary xml markup fragments) while rearranging and editing the document and also to drag and drop fragments of text from the scratch buffer to the editor panel. The Scratch Buffer is basically a text area offering XML syntax highlight. The view contextual menu contains basic edit actions: Cut, Copy, Paste a. o.

## Changing the user interface language

<oXygen/> XML Author comes with the user interface translated in English, French, German, Italian, Japanese and Dutch. If you want to use <oXygen/> in other language you have to translate all the messages and labels available in the user interface (menu action names, button names, checkbox texts, view titles, error messages, status bar messages, etc.) and provide a text file with all the translated messages to <oXygen/> in the form of a Java properties file. Such a file contains pairs of the form message key - translated message displayed in the user interface. In order to install the new set of translated messages you must copy this file to the [oXygen-install-folder]/lib folder, restart <oXygen/> and set the new language in the <oXygen/> preferences. You can get the keys of all the messages that must be translated from the properties file containing the English translation used in <oXygen/>. To get this file contact us at support@oxygenxml.com.

## Handling read-only files

If a file marked as read-only by the operating system is opened in <oXygen/> you will not be able to make modifications to it regardless of the page the file was opened in. You can check out the read-only state of the file by looking in the Properties view. If you modify the file's properties from the operating system and the file becomes writable you will be able to make modifications to it on the spot without having to reopen it.

The read-only state is also marked by a lock decoration which appears in the editor tab and specified in the tooltip for a certain tab.

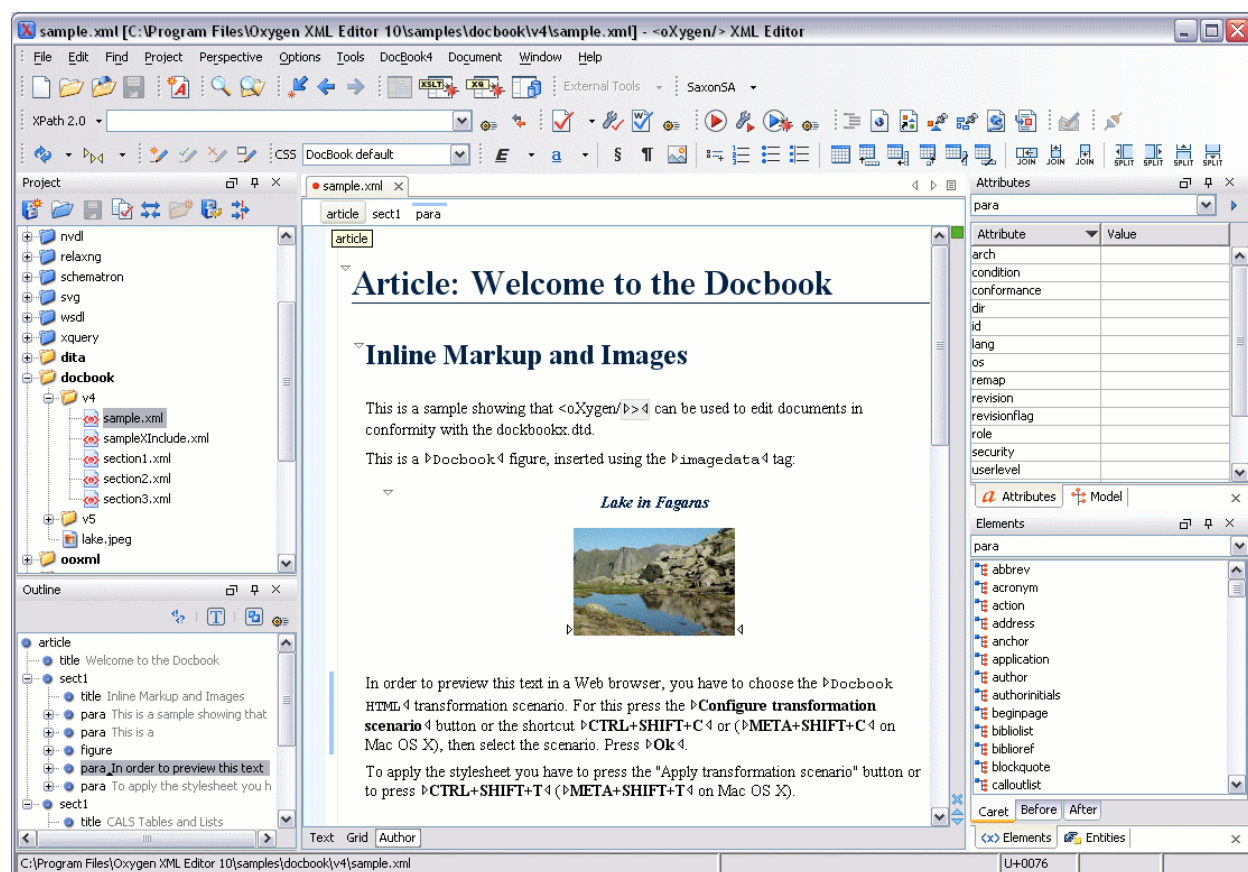
# Chapter 5. Authoring in the tagless editor

## Authoring XML documents without the XML tags

Once the structure of the XML document and the required restrictions on the elements and attributes are fixed with an XML schema the editing of the document is easier in a WYSIWYG (what-you-see-is-what-you-get) editor in which the XML markup is not visible.

This tagless editor is available as the Author mode of the XML editor. The Author mode is activated by pressing the Author button at the bottom of the editing area where the mode switches of the XML editor are available: Text, Grid and Author (see the following screenshot). The Author mode renders the content of the XML document visually based on a CSS stylesheet associated with the document. Many of the actions and features available in Text mode are also available in Author mode.

Figure 5.1. oXygen Author Editor



The tagless rendering of the XML document in the Author mode is driven by a CSS stylesheet which conforms to the version 2.1 of the CSS specification [<http://www.w3.org/TR/CSS21/>] from the W3C consortium. Also some CSS 3 features like namespaces and custom extensions of the CSS specification are supported.

The CSS specification is convenient for driving the tagless rendering of XML documents as it is an open standard maintained by the W3C consortium. A stylesheet conforming to this specification is very easy to develop and edit in <oXygen/> as it is a plain text file with a simple syntax.

The association of such a stylesheet with an XML document is also straightforward: an *xml-stylesheet* XML processing instruction with the attribute *type="text/css"* must be inserted at the beginning of the XML document. If it is an XHTML document, that is the root element is a **html** element, there is a second method for the association of a CSS stylesheet: an element **link** with the **href** and **type** attributes in the **head** child element of the **html** element as specified in the CSS specification [<http://www.w3.org/TR/REC-html40/present/styles.html#h-14.3.2>].


There are two main types of users of the Author mode: *developers* and *content authors*. A *developer* is a technical person with advanced XML knowledge who defines the framework for authoring XML documents in the tagless editor. Once the framework is created or edited by the developer it is distributed as a deliverable component ready to plug into the application to the content authors. A *content author* does not need to have advanced knowledge about XML tags or operations like validation of XML documents or applying an XPath expression to an XML document. He just plugs the framework set up by the developer into the application and starts editing the content of XML documents without editing the XML tags directly.

The framework set up by the developer is called *document type* and defines a type of XML documents by specifying all the details needed for editing the content of XML documents in tagless mode: the CSS stylesheet which drives the tagless visual rendering of the document, the rules for associating an XML schema with the document which is needed for content completion and validation of the document, transformation scenarios for the document, XML catalogs, custom actions available as buttons on the toolbar of the tagless editor.

The tagless editor comes with some ready to use predefined document types for XML frameworks largely used today like DocBook, DITA, TEI, XHTML.

## General Author Presentation

A content author edits the content of XML documents in tagless mode disregarding the XML tags as they are not visible in the editor. If he edits documents conforming to one of the predefined types he does not need to configure anything as the predefined document types are already configured when the application is installed. Otherwise he must plug the configuration of the document type into the application. This is as easy as unzipping an archive directly in the *frameworks* subfolder of the application's install folder.

In case the edited XML document does not belong to one of the document types set up in Preferences you can specify the CSSs to be used by inserting an *xml-stylesheet* processing instructions. You can insert the processing instruction by editing the document or by using the  Associate XSLT/CSS stylesheet action.

The syntax of such a processing instruction is:

```
<?xml-stylesheet type="text/css" media="media type" title="title"
href="URL" alternate="yes|no"?>
```

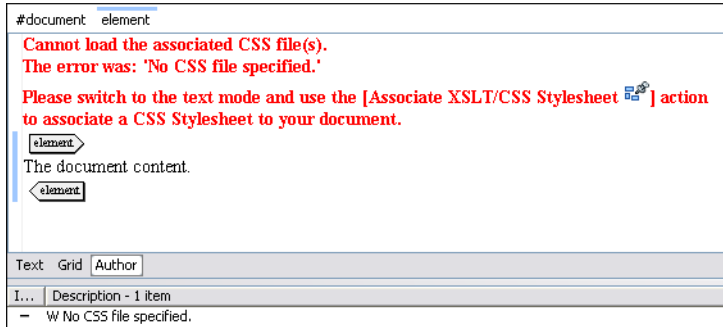
You can read more about associating a CSS to a document, the syntax and the use of the *xml-stylesheet* processing instruction in the section Author CSS Settings.

When the document has no CSS association or the referred stylesheet files cannot be loaded a default one will be used. A warning message will also be displayed at the beginning of the document presenting the reason why the CSS cannot be loaded.

### Note

In general it is recommended to associate a CSS while in Text mode so that the whitespace normalization rules specified in the stylesheets will be properly applied when switching to Author mode.

**Figure 5.2. Document with no CSS association default rendering**



## Author views

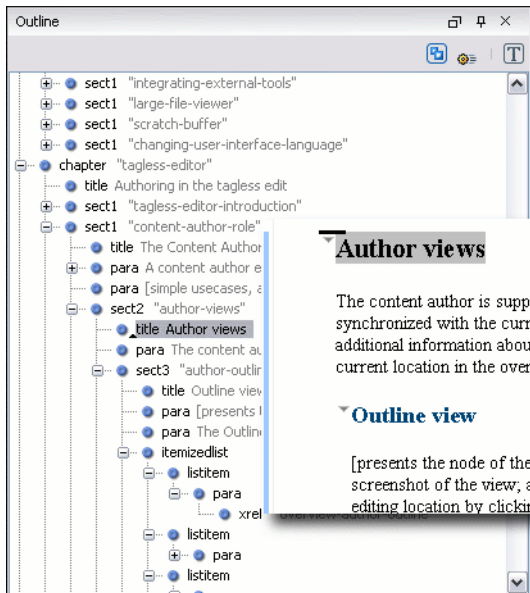
The content author is supported by special views which are automatically synchronized with the current editing context of the editor panel and which present additional information about this context thus helping the author to see quickly the current location in the overall document structure and the available editing options.

## Outline view

The Outline view has the following available functions:

- the section called “XML Document Overview”
- the section called “Modification Follow-up”
- the section called “Document Structure Change”

**Figure 5.3. The Outline View**





## XML Document Overview

The Outline view displays a general tag overview of the current edited XML Document. It also shows the correct hierarchical dependencies between the tag elements, making it easier for the user to be aware of the document's structure and the way tags are nested. It allows fast navigation of the document by displaying the start of the content of the child elements in the node of the parent element thus allowing to see quickly the content of an element without expanding it in the Outline tree. It also allows the user to insert or delete nodes using pop-up menu actions.

## Modification Follow-up

When editing, the Outline view dynamically follows the modifications introduced by the user, showing in the middle of the panel the node which is currently being modified. This gives the user a better insight on location inside the document and how the structure of the document is affected by one's modifications.

## Document Structure Change

Entire XML elements can be moved or copied in the edited document using only the mouse in the Outline view in drag-and-drop operations. If you drag an XML element in the Outline view and drop it on another one in the same panel then the dragged element will be moved after the drop target element. If you hold the mouse pointer over the drop target for a short time before the drop then the drop target element will be expanded first and the dragged element will be moved inside the drop target element after its opening tag. You can also drop an element before or after another element if you hold the mouse pointer towards the upper or lower part of the targeted element. A marker will indicate whether the drop will be performed before or after the target element. If you hold down the CTRL key after dragging, there will be performed a copy operation instead of a move one.

The drag and drop action in the Outline view can be disabled and enabled from the Preferences dialog.



### Tip

You can select and drag multiple nodes in the Author Outliner tree.

## The popup menu of the Outline tree

*Edit attributes* for the selected node. A dialog is presented allowing the user to see and edit the attributes of the selected node. See here for more details about editing attributes.

The *Append child*, *Insert before* and *Insert after* submenus of the outline tree popup menu allow to quickly insert new tags in the document at the place of the element correctly selected in the Outline tree. The *Append child* submenu lists the names of all the elements which are allowed by the schema associated with the current document as child of the current element. The effect is the same as typing the '<' character and selecting an element name from the popup menu offered by the content completion assistant. The *Insert before* and *Insert after* submenus of the Outline tree popup menu list the elements which are allowed by the schema associated with the current document as siblings of the current element inserted immediately before respectively after the current element.

The *Cut*, *Copy* and *Delete* items of the popup menu execute the same actions as the Edit menu items with the same name on the elements currently selected in the outline tree. You can insert a well-formed element before, after or as a child of the currently selected element by accessing the *Paste before*, *Paste after* or *Paste as Child* actions.

The *Toggle Comment* item of the outline tree popup menu encloses the currently selected element of the outline tree in an XML comment, if the element is not commented, or removes the comment if it is commented.

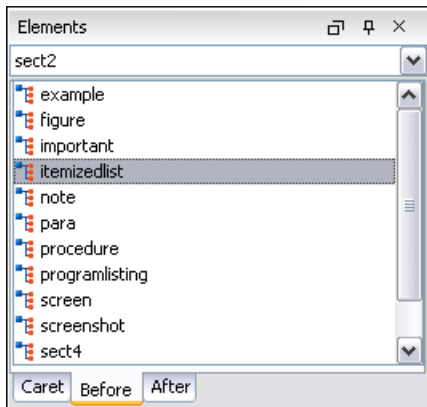
Using the *Rename Element* action the element from the caret position and the elements that have the same name as the current element can be renamed according with the options from the Rename dialog.

 **Tip**

You can Copy/Cut or Delete multiple nodes in the Outliner by using the contextual menu after selecting all the nodes in the tree.

## Elements view

**Figure 5.4. The Elements View**



Presents a list of all defined elements that you can insert in your document. All elements from a sequence are presented but the invalid proposals (which cannot be inserted in the current context) are grayed-out. The upper part of the view features a combo box that contains the current element's ordered ancestors. Selecting a new element in this combo box will update the list of the allowed elements in *Before* and *After* tabs.

Three tabs present information relative to the caret location:

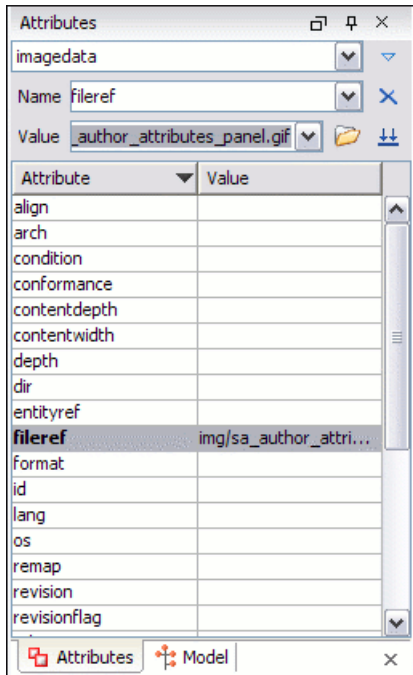
- *Caret* shows a list of all the elements allowed at the current caret location. Double-clicking any of the listed elements will insert that element at the caret position.
- *Before* shows a list of all elements that can be inserted before the element selected in the combo box. Double-clicking any of the listed elements will insert that element before the element at the caret position.
- *After* shows a list of all elements that can be inserted after the element selected in the combo box. Double-clicking any of the listed elements will insert that element after the element at the caret position.

Double clicking an element name in the list surrounds the current selection in the editor panel with the start tags and end tags of the element. If there is no selection just an empty element is inserted in the editor panel at the cursor position.

## Attributes view

The Attributes panel presents all the possible attributes of the current element allowed by the schema of the document and allows to insert attributes in the current element or change the value of the attributes already used in the element. The attributes already present in the document are painted with a bold font. Default values are painted with grey color. Clicking on the Value column of a table row will start editing the value of the attribute from the selected row. If the possible values of the attribute are specified as list in the schema associated with the edited document the Value column works as a combo box where you can select one of the possible values to be inserted in the document. The attributes table is sortable by clicking on the column names. Thus the table's contents can be sorted in ascending order, in descending order or in a custom order, where the used attributes are placed at the beginning of the table as they appear in the element followed by the rest of the allowed elements as they are declared in the associated schema.

**Figure 5.5. The Attributes View**

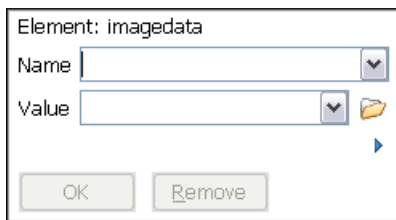


A combo box located in the upper part of the view allows you to edit the attributes of the ancestors of the current element.

The contextual menu of the view allows you to insert a new element (*Add* action) or delete an existing one (*Delete* action). Delete action can be invoked on a selected table entry by pressing *DEL* or *BACKSPACE*.

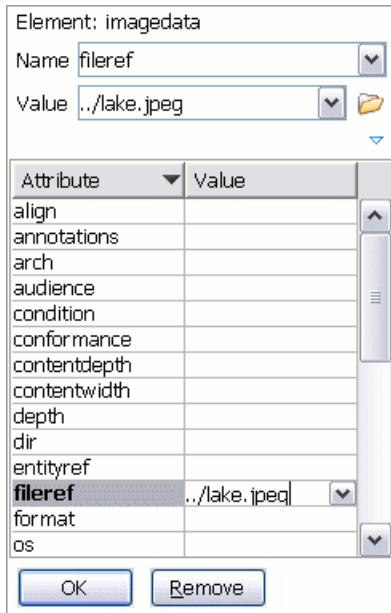
The attributes of an element can be edited also in place in the editor panel by pressing the shortcut *Alt + Enter* which pops up a small window with the same content of the Attributes view. In the initial form of the popup only the two text fields Name and Value are displayed, the list of all the possible attributes is collapsed.

**Figure 5.6. Edit attributes in place**



The small arrow button next to the Cancel button expands the list of possible attributes allowed by the schema of the document as in the Attributes panel.

**Figure 5.7. Edit attributes in place - full version**



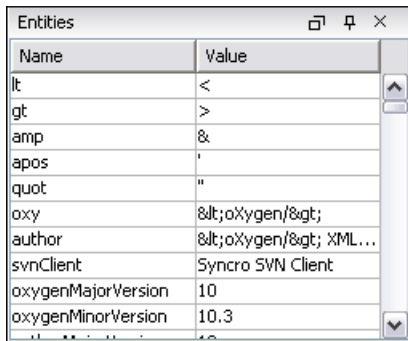
The Name field auto-completes the name of the attribute: the complete name of the attribute is suggested based on the prefix already typed in the field as the user types in the field.

Adding an attribute that is not in the list of all defined attributes that you can insert at the current caret position according to the associated schema is not possible when the Allow only insertion of valid elements and attributes schema aware option is enabled.

## Entities view

This view displays a list with all entities declared in the current document as well as built-in ones. Double clicking one of the entities will insert it at the current cursor position.

**Figure 5.8. The Entities View**



## The Author editor

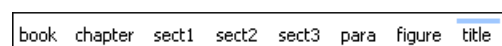
In order to view the XML file in Author view, the XML document must be associated with a CSS file that defines the way the XML file is rendered. The document can be edited as text, the XML markup being hidden by default.

## Navigating the document content

Fast navigating the document content can be done using the **Tab/Shift + Tab** for advancing forward / backwards. The caret will be moved to the next/previous editable position. Entities and hidden elements will be skipped.

A left-hand side stripe paints a vertical thin light blue bar indicating the vertical span of the element found at caret position. Also a top stripe called *breadcrumb* indicates the path from document root to the current element.

### Figure 5.9. Top stripe in Editor view



The last element is also highlighted by a thin light blue bar for easier identification. Clicking one element from the top stripe selects the entire element in the Editor view.

The tag names displayed in the breadcrumb can be customized with an Author extension class that implements `AuthorBreadcrumbCustomizer`. See the Author SDK [<http://www.oxygenxml.com/developer.html>] for details about using it.

The locations of selected text are stored in an internal list which allows navigating between them with the buttons `Ctrl+Alt+[ ← Back` and `Ctrl+Alt+] → Forward` that are available on the toolbar *Navigation*.


The *Append child*, *Insert before* and *Insert after* submenus of the top stripe pop-up menu allow to quickly insert new tags in the document at the place of the selected element. The *Append child* submenu lists the names of all the elements which are allowed by the schema associated with the current document as child of the current element. The effect is the same as typing the '<' character and selecting an element name from the popup menu offered by the content completion assistant. The *Insert before* and *Insert after* submenus list the elements which are allowed by the schema associated with the current document as siblings of the current element inserted immediately before respectively after the current element.

The *Cut*, *Copy*, *Paste* and *Delete* items of the popup menu execute the same actions as the Edit menu items with the same name on the elements currently selected in the stripe. The styles of the copied content is preserved by the *Cut* and *Copy* operations, for example the *display:block* property or the tabular format of the data from a set of table cells. The *Paste before*, *Paste after* and *Paste as Child* actions allow the user to insert an well-formed element before, after or as a child of the currently selected element.

The *Toggle Comment* item of the outline tree popup menu encloses the currently selected element of the top stripe in an XML comment, if the element is not commented, or removes the comment if it is commented.

Using the *Rename Element* action the selected element and the elements that have the same name as the current element can be renamed according with the options from the Rename dialog.







When working on a large document the **folding support** can be used to collapse some elements content leaving in focus only the ones you need to edit. Foldable elements are marked with a small triangle painted in the upper left corner. Hovering with the mouse pointer over that marker, the entire content of the element is highlighted by a dotted border for quick identification of the foldable area.

When working on a suite of documents that refer to one another (references, external entities, XInclude, DITA conref, etc), the **linking support** is useful for navigating between the documents. In the predefined customizations that are bundled with <Oxygen/> XML Author links are marked with an icon representing a chain link: . When hovering with the mouse pointer over the marker, the mouse pointer will change to indicate that the link can be followed and a tooltip will present the destination location. Clicking on a followable link will result in the referred resource being opened in an editor. The same effect can be obtained by using the action *Open file at caret* when the caret is in a followable link element.

To position the cursor at the beginning or at the end of the document you can use *Ctrl+Home* and *Ctrl+End*, respectively.

## Displaying the markup

In Author view, the amount of displayed markup can be controlled using the following dedicated actions:

-  Full Tags with Attributes - displays full name tags with attributes for both block level as well as in-line level elements.
-  Full Tags - displays full name tags without attributes for both block level as well as in-line level elements.
-  Block Tags - displays full name tags for block level elements and simple tags without names for in-line level elements.
-  Inline Tags - displays full name tags for in-line level elements, while block level elements are not displayed.
-  Partial Tags - displays simple tags without names for in-line level elements, while block level elements are not displayed.
-  No Tags - none of the tags is displayed. This is the most compact mode.

The default tags display mode can be configured in the Author options page. However, if the document opened in Author editor does not have an associated CSS stylesheet, then the *Full Tags* mode will be used.

Block-level elements are those elements of the source document that are formatted visually as blocks (e.g., paragraphs), while the inline level elements are distributed in lines (e.g., emphasizing pieces of text within a paragraph, in-line images, etc). The graphical format of the elements is controlled from the CSS sources via the *display* property.

## Bookmarks

A position in a document can be marked with a bookmark. Later the cursor can go quickly to the marked position with a keyboard shortcut or with a menu item. This is useful for easy navigation in a large document or for working on more than one document at a moment when the cursor must move between several marked positions.

A bookmark can be placed with one of the menu items available on the menu Edit → Bookmarks → Create or with the menu item Edit → Bookmarks → Bookmarks Quick Creation (F9) or with the keyboard shortcuts associated with these menu items and visible on the menu Edit → Bookmarks. A bookmark can be removed when a new bookmark is placed in the same position as an old one or with the action Edit → Bookmarks → Remove All. The cursor can go to a bookmark with one of the actions available on the menu Edit → Bookmarks → Go to.

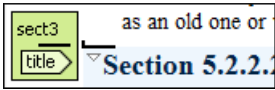
## Position information tooltip

When the caret is positioned inside a new context, a tooltip will be shown for a couple of seconds displaying the position of the caret relative to the current element context.

Here are the common situations that can be encountered:

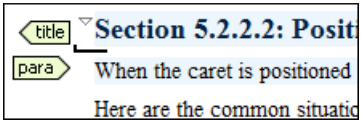
- The caret is positioned before the first block child of the current node.

**Figure 5.10. Before first block**



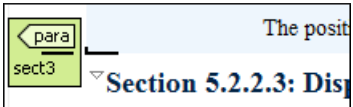
- The caret is positioned between two block elements.

**Figure 5.11. Between two block elements**



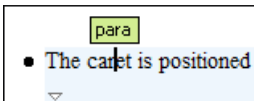
- The caret is positioned after the last block element child of the current node.

**Figure 5.12. After last block**



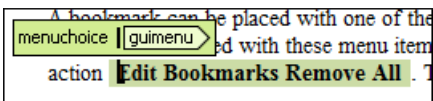
- The caret is positioned inside a node.

**Figure 5.13. Inside a node**



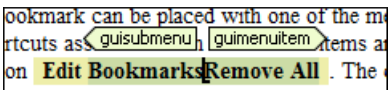
- The caret is positioned inside an element, before an inline child element.

**Figure 5.14. Before an inline element**



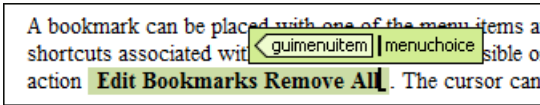
- The caret is positioned between two inline elements.

**Figure 5.15. Between two inline elements**



- The caret is positioned inside an element, after an inline child element.

**Figure 5.16. After an inline element**



The nodes in the previous cases are displayed in the tooltip window using their names.

You can deactivate this feature by unchecking Options → Preferences+Editor / Author+Show caret position tooltip checkbox. Even if this option is disabled, you can trigger the display of the position tooltip by pressing Shift+F2.

 **Note**

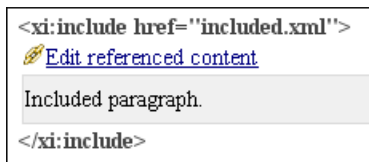
The position information tooltip is not displayed if one of the modes *Full Tags with Attributes* or *Full Tags* is selected.

## Displaying referred content

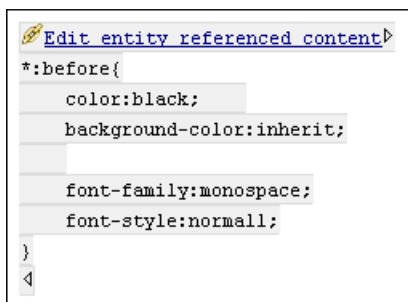
The referred content (entities, XInclude, DITA conref, etc) will be resolved and displayed by default. You can control this behavior from the Author options page.

The referred resources are loaded and displayed inside the element or entity that refers them, however the displayed content cannot be modified directly.


**Figure 5.17. XInclude reference**



**Figure 5.18. External entity reference**



When the referred resource cannot be resolved, an error will be presented inside the element that refers them instead of the content.

If you want to make modifications to the referred content, you must open the referred resource in an editor. The referred resource can be opened quickly by clicking on the link (marked with the icon ) which is displayed before the referred content. The referred resource is resolved through the XML Catalog set in **Preferences**.



To update the displayed referred content so that it reflects the latest modifications of the referred resource, you can use the Refresh references action. Please note that the content of the expanded external entities can only be refreshed by using the Reload action.

## Finding and replacing text

The Find/Replace dialog can be used in the Author page in the same way as in the Text page. However, there are some features which are disabled:

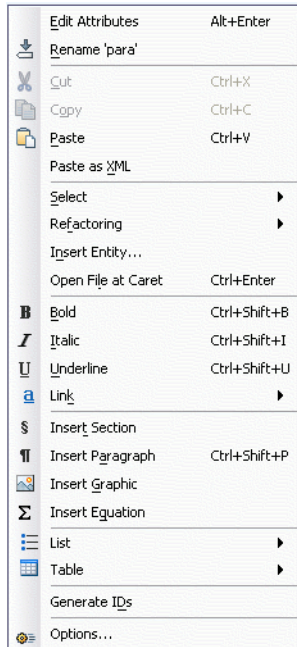
- search in XPath
- search in selection
- search in tags

These limitations can be compensated by using the Find All Elements dialog.

## Contextual menu

More powerful support for editing the XML markup is offered via actions included in the contextual menu. Two types of actions are available: **generic actions**(actions that not depends on a specific document type) and **document type actions**(actions that are configured for a specific document type).

**Figure 5.19. Contextual menu**



The generic actions are:

- **Rename** - the element from the caret position can be renamed quickly using the content completion window. If the Allow only insertion of valid elements and attributes schema aware option is enabled only the proposals from the content completion list are allowed, otherwise a custom element name can also be provided.
- **Cut, Copy, Paste** - common edit actions with the same functionality as those found in the text editor.

- **Paste As XML** - similar to **Paste** operation, except that the clipboard's content is considered to be XML.
- **Select** - contains the following actions:
  - **Select -> Select Element** - selects the entire element at the current caret position.
  - **Select -> Select Content** - selects the entire content of the element at the current caret position, excluding the start and end tag. Performing this action repeatedly will result in the selection of the content of the ancestor of the currently selected element content.
  - **Select -> Select Parent** - selects the parent of the element at the current caret position.

## **Note**

You can select an element by triple clicking inside its content. If the element is empty you can select it by double clicking it.

- **Refactoring** - contains a series of actions designed to alter the document's structure:
  - **Toggle Comment** - encloses the currently selected text in an XML comment, or removes the comment if it is commented;
  - **Split Element** - splits the content of the closest element that contains the caret's position. Thus, if the caret is positioned at the beginning or at the end of the element, the newly created sibling will be empty;
  - **Join Elements** - joins two adjacent elements that have the same name. The action is available only when the caret position is between the two adjacent elements. Also, joining two elements can be done by pressing the Delete or Backspace keys and the caret is positioned between the boundaries of these two elements.
  - **Surround with Tag...** - selected text in the editor is marked with the specified tag.
  - **Surround with '<Tag name>'** - selected text in the editor is marked with start and end tags of the last '**Surround with Tag...**' action.
  - **Rename Element** - the element from the caret position and the elements that have the same name as the current element can be renamed according with the options from the Rename dialog.
  - **Delete Element Tags** - deletes the tags of the closest element that contains the caret's position. This operation is also executed if the start or end tags of an element are deleted by pressing the *Delete* or *Backspace* keys.
- **Insert Entity** - allows the user to insert a predefined entity or a character entity. Surrogate character entities (range #x10000 to #x10FFFF) are also accepted.

Character entities can be entered in one of the following forms:

- `#<decimal value>` - e.g. #65
  - `&#<decimal value>;` - e.g. &#65;
  - `#x<hexadecimal value>` - e.g. #x41
  - `&#x<hexadecimal value>;` - e.g. &#x41;
- **Open File at Cursor** - opens in a new editor panel the file with the name under the current position of the caret in the current document. If the file does not exist at the specified location the error dialog that is displayed contains a Create new file action which displays the **New** file dialog. This allows you to choose the type or the template for

the file. If the action succeeds, the file is created with the referred location and name and is opened in a new editor panel. This is useful when you decide first on the file name and after that you want to create it in the exact location specified at the current cursor position.

Document type actions are specific to some document type. Examples of such actions can be found in section Predefined document types.

## Editing XML in <oxygen/> Author

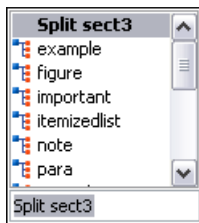
### Editing the XML markup

One of the most useful feature in Author editor is the content completion support. The fastest way to invoke it is to press Ctrl + Space (on *Mac OS X* the shortcut is Meta + Space).

Content completion window offers the following types of actions:

- inserting allowed elements for the current context according to the associated schema, if any;
- inserting element values if such values are specified in the schema for the current context;
- inserting new undeclared elements by entering their name in the text field;
- inserting CDATA sections, comments, processing instructions.

**Figure 5.20. Content completion window**



If you press *Enter* the displayed content completion window will contain as first entries the *Split <Element name>* items. Usually you can only split the closest block element to the caret position but if it is inside a list item, the list item will also be proposed for split. Selecting *Split <Element name>* splits the content of the specified element around the caret position. Thus, if the caret is positioned at the beginning or at the end of the element, the newly created sibling will be empty.

If the caret is positioned inside a space preserve element the first choice in the content completion window is *Enter* which inserts a new line in the content of the element. If there is a selection in the editor and you invoke content completion, a *Surround with* operation can be performed. The tag used will be the selected item from the content completion window.

By default you are not allowed to insert element names which are not considered by the associated schema as valid proposals in the current context. This can be changed by unchecking the *Allow only insertion of valid elements and attributes* checkbox from the Schema aware preferences page.

**Joining two elements.** You can choose to join the content of two sibling elements with the same name by using the Join elements action from the editor contextual menu.

The same action can be triggered also in the next situations:

- The caret is located before the end position of the first element and *Delete* key is pressed.


- The caret is located after the end position of the first element and *Backspace* key is pressed.
- The caret is located before the start position of the second element and *Delete* key is pressed.
- The caret is located after the start position of the second element and *Backspace* key is pressed.

In either of the described cases, if the element has no sibling or the sibling element has a different name, *Unwrap* operation will be performed automatically.

**Unwrapping the content of an element** You can unwrap the content of an element by deleting its tags using the Delete element tags action from the editor contextual menu.

The same action can be triggered in the next situations:

- The caret is located before the start position of the element and *Delete* key is pressed.
- The caret is located after the start position of the element and *Backspace* key is pressed.
- The caret is located before the end position of the element and *Delete* key is pressed.
- The caret is located after the end position of the element and *Backspace* key is pressed.

**Removing all the markup of an element** You can remove the markup of the current element and keep only the text content with the action  Remove All Markup available on the submenu **Refactoring** of the contextual menu and on the toolbar **XML Refactoring**.

When you press *Delete* or *Backspace* in the presented cases the element is unwrapped or it is joined with its sibling. If the current element is empty, the element tags will be deleted.

When you click on a marker representing the start or end tag of an element, the entire element will be selected. The contextual menu displayed when you right-click on the marker representing the start or end tag of an element contains *Append child*, *Insert Before* and *Insert After* submenus as first entries.

## Editing the XML content

By default you can type only in elements which accept text content. So if the element is declared as empty or element only in the associated schema you will not be allowed to insert text in it. This is also available if you try to insert *CDATA* inside an element. Instead a warning message will be shown:

**Figure 5.21. Editing in empty element warning**



You can disable this behavior by checking the *Allow Text in empty or element only content* checkbox in the Author preferences page.

Entire sections or chunks of data can be moved or copied by using the *Drag and Drop* support. The following situations can be encountered:

- when both the drag and drop sources are Author pages, an well-formed XML fragment is transferred. The section will be balanced before dropping it by adding matching tags when needed.


- when the drag source is the Author page but the drop target is a text based editor only the text inside the selection will be transferred as it is.
- the text dropped from another text editor or another application into the Author page will be inserted without changes.

The font size of the current WYSIWYG-like editor can be increased and decreased on the fly with the same actions as in the Text editor:

Ctrl-NumPad+ or Ctrl++ or Ctrl- mouse wheel      increase font size

Ctrl-NumPad- or Ctrl-- or Ctrl- mouse wheel      decrease font size

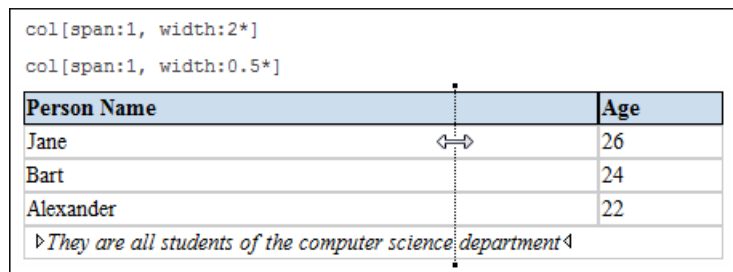
Ctrl-NumPad0 or Ctrl-0      restore font size to the size specified in Preferences

**Removing the text content of the current element** You can remove the text content of the current element and keep only the markup with the action  Remove Text available on the submenu **Refactoring** of the contextual menu and on the toolbar **XML Refactoring**. This is useful when the markup of an element must be preserved, for example a table structure but the text content must be replaced.

## Table layout and resizing

The support for editing data in tabular form can manage table width and column width specifications from the source document. The specified widths will be considered when rendering the tables and when visually resizing them using mouse drag gestures. These specifications are supported both in fixed and proportional dimensions. The predefined frameworks (DITA, DocBook and XHTML) already implement support for this feature. The layout of the tables from these types of documents takes into account the table width and the column width specifications particular to them. The tables and columns widths can be visually adjusted by dragging with the mouse their edges and the modifications will be committed back into the source document.

**Figure 5.22. Resizing a column in <oxygen/> Author editor**



## DocBook

The DocBook table layout supports two models: CALS and HTML.

In the CALS model column widths can be specified by using the `colwidth` attribute of the associated `colspec` element. The values can be fixed or proportional.

**Figure 5.23. CALS table**

▼ *Sample CALS Table with no specified width and proportional column widths*

```

colspec[colname:c1, colnum:1, colwidth:1*]
colspec[colname:c2, colnum:2, colwidth:1.5*]
colspec[colname:c3, colnum:3, colwidth:0.7*]
colspec[colname:c4, colnum:4, colwidth:0.5*]
colspec[colname:c5, colnum:5, colwidth:1.7*]
    
```

| Horizontal Span |              | a3        | a4        | a5         |
|-----------------|--------------|-----------|-----------|------------|
| <i>f1</i>       | <i>f2</i>    | <i>f3</i> | <i>f4</i> | <i>f5</i>  |
| b1              | b2           | b3        | b4        | ▷Vertical◁ |
| c1              | Spans ▷Both◁ |           | c4        | Span       |
| d1              | directions   |           | d4        | d5         |

**XHTML**

The HTML table model accepts both table and column widths by using the width attribute of the table element and the col element associated with each column. The values can be represented in fixed units, proportional units or percentages.

**Figure 5.24. HTML table**

*Sample HTML Table with fixed width and proportional column widths*

```

col[span:1, width:2.0*]
col[span:1, width:0.5*]
    
```

| Person Name  | Age |
|--|-----|
| Jane   | 26  |
| Bart   | 24  |
| Alexander  | 22  |
| ▷They are all students of the computer science department◁ |     |

**DITA**

The DITA table layout accepts CALS tables and simple tables.

The simple tables accept only relative column width specifications by using the relcolwidth attribute of the simptable element.

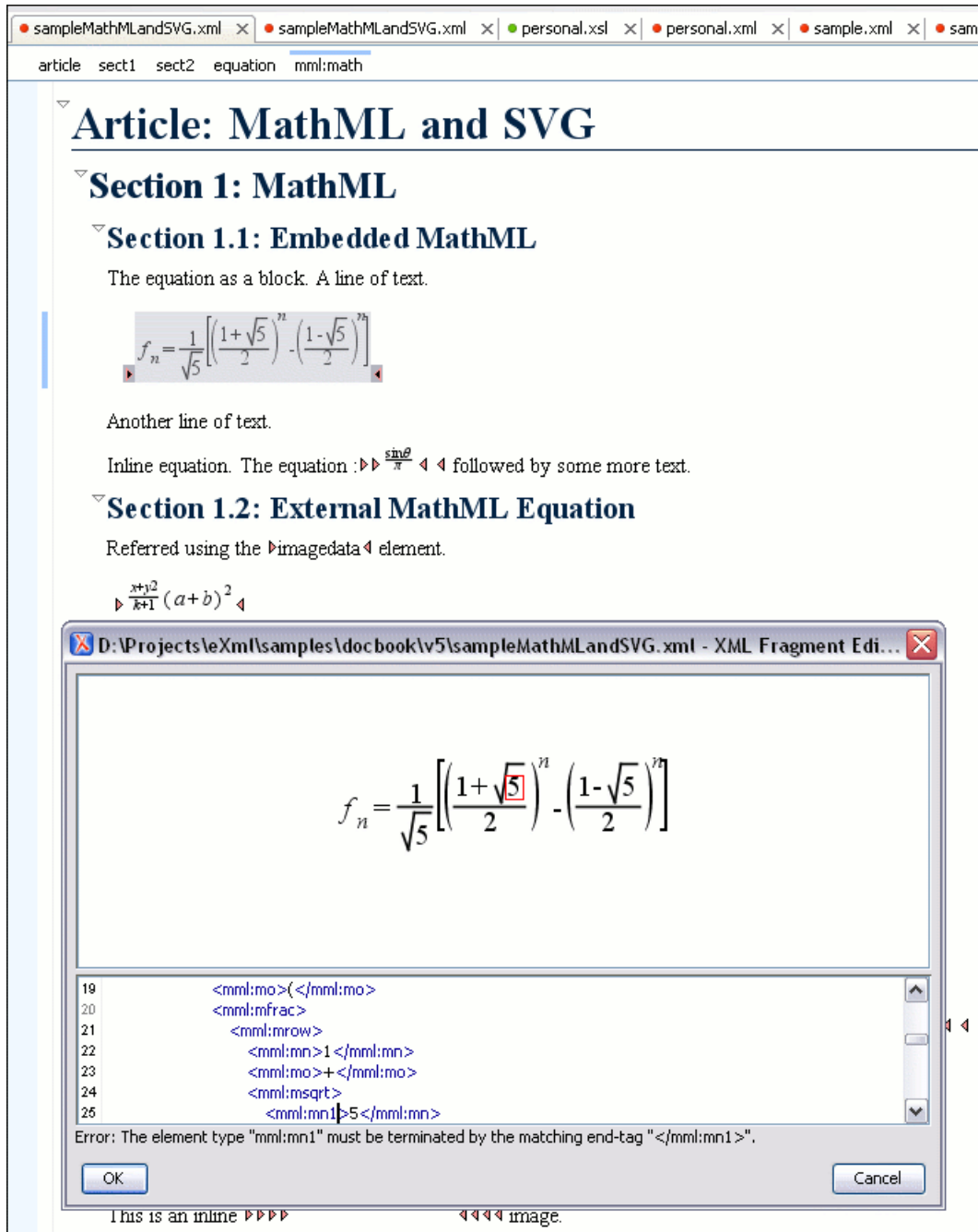
**Figure 5.25. DITA simple table**

| Header 1 | Header 2 |
|----------|----------|
| Column 1 | Column 2 |

**Editing MathML notations**

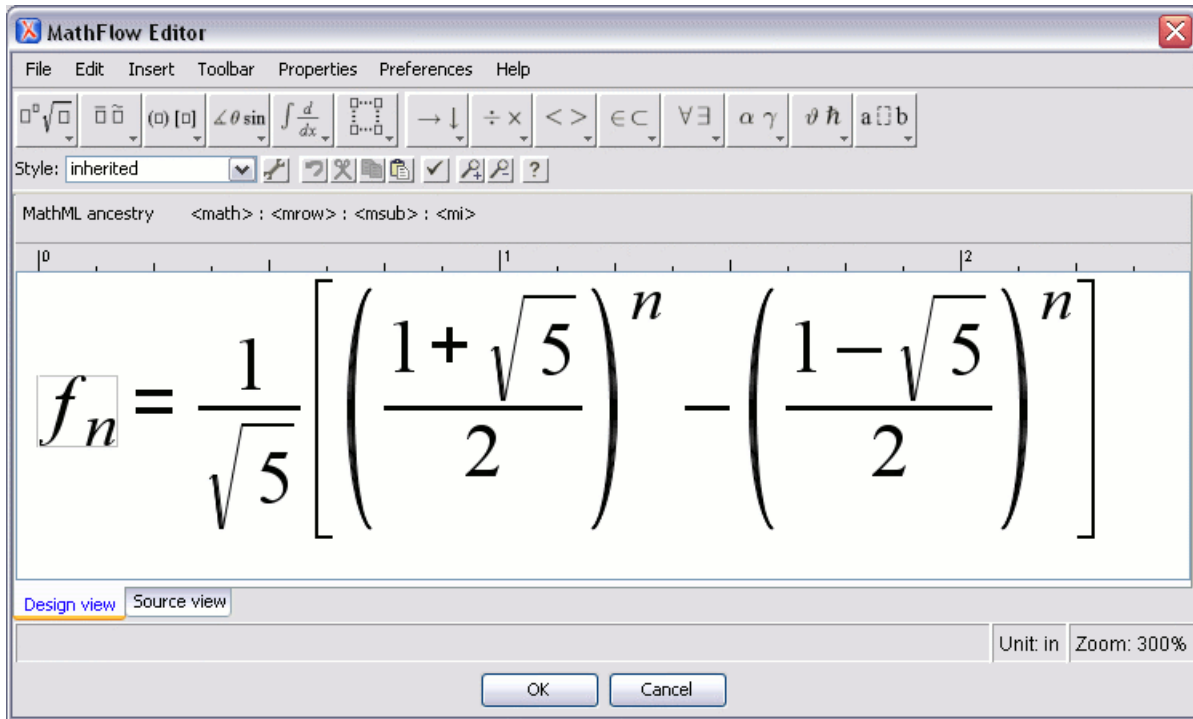
The Author editor includes a built-in editor for MathML notations. Double clicking inside a MathML notation starts the MathML editor in a new dialog where the mathematical symbols of the notation are edited.

**Figure 5.26. The default MathML editor**



The MathFlow Components (the MathFlow SDK) can replace the default MathML editor with a specialized MathML editor. You have to purchase a MathML component from Design Science [<http://www.dessci.com/en/products/mathflow/>] and configure it in  $<oxygen>$  with the following procedure:

**Figure 5.27. The default MathML editor**





1. Install MathFlow Components (the MathFlow SDK).
2. On Windows make sure there is a copy of the FLEXlm DLL, that is the file [MathFlow-install-folder]/resources/windows/lmgr10.dll, in a folder that is added to the PATH environment variable.
3. Set the path to the MathFlow install folder in the Preferences.
4. Set the path to the MathFlow license file in the Preferences.

The minimum font size for mathematical symbols and the MathFlow SDK configuration are set in the Preferences.

If a MathML file is included in the current project that is opened in the Project view it can be opened directly in the MathML editor with the action Open with → MathFlow editor that is available on the contextual menu of the Project view.

## Refreshing the content

On occasion you may need to reload the content of the document from the disk or reapply the CSS. This can be performed by using the  **Reload** action.

For refreshing the content of the referred resources you can use the action  **Refresh references**. This action affects the displayed referred content, such as: references, XInclude, DITA conref, etc. However, this action will not refresh the expanded external entities, to refresh those you will need to use the Reload action.

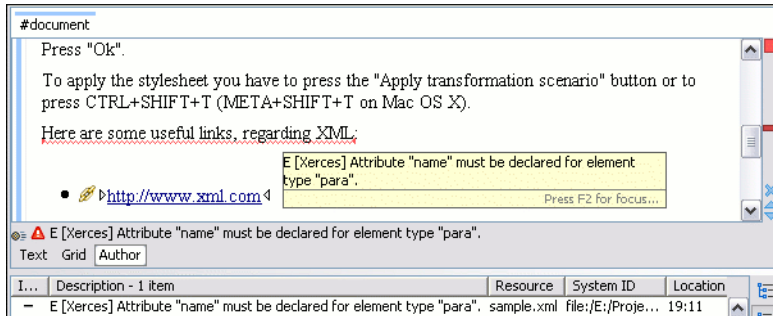
## Validation and error presenting

You can validate or check the XML form of the documents while editing them in Author Editor. Validate as you type as well as validate on request operations are available. Author editor offers validation features and configuring possibilities similar to text editor. You can read more about checking the XML form of documents in section Checking XML



form. A detailed description of the document validation process and its configuration is described in section Validating Documents.

**Figure 5.28. Error presenting in <oXygen/> Author editor**



A fragment with a validation error or warning will be marked in the editor panel by underlining the error region with a red color. The same will happen for a validation warning, only the color will be yellow instead of red.

The ruler on the right of the document is designed to display the errors found during the validation process and also to help the user to locate them more easily. The ruler contains the following areas:

- top area containing a success validation indicator that will turn green in case the validation succeeded or red otherwise.


A more detailed report of the errors is displayed in the tool tip. In case there are errors, only the first three of them will be presented in the tool tip;

- middle area where the errors markers are depicted in red (with a darker color tone for the current selected one). The number of markers shown can be limited by modifying the setting Options → Preferences+Editor / Document checking+Limit error markers to

Clicking on a marker will highlight the corresponding text area in the editor. The error message is displayed both in the tool tip and in the error area on the bottom of the editor panel.

The Document checking user preferences are easily accessible from the button displayed at the beginning of the error message on the bottom of the editor panel.

- bottom area containing two navigation arrows that will go to the next or to the previous error and a button for clearing all the error markers from the ruler. The same actions can be triggered from Document → Validate as you type (Ctrl + .)-> Next error and Document → Validate as you type (Ctrl + ,)-> Previous error.

The validation status area is the line at the bottom of the editor panel that presents the message of the current validation error. Clicking on  opens the document checking page in <oXygen/> user preferences.

Status messages from every validation action are logged into the Information view.

## Whitespace handling

There are several major aspects of white-space handling in the <oXygen/> Author editor when opening documents or switching to Author mode, saving documents or switching from Author mode to another one and editing documents.

Open documents                      When deciding if the white-spaces from a text node are to be preserved, normalized or stripped, the following rules apply:

- If the text node is inside an element context where the *xml:space="preserve"* is set then the white-spaces are preserved.
- If the CSS property *white-space* is set to *"pre"* for the node style then the white-spaces are preserved.
- If the text node contains other non-white-space characters then the white-spaces are normalized.
- If the text node contains only white-spaces:
  - If the node has a parent element with the CSS *display* property set to *inline* then the white-spaces are normalized.
  - If the left or right sibling is an element with the CSS *display* property set to *inline* then the white-spaces are normalized.
  - If one of its ancestors is an element with the CSS *display* property set to *table* then the white-spaces are striped.
  - Otherwise the white-spaces are ignored.

#### Save documents

The Author editor will try to format and indent the document while following the white-space handling rules:

- If text nodes are inside an element context where the *xml:space="preserve"* is set then the white-spaces are written without modifications.
- If the CSS property *white-space* is set to *"pre"* for the node style then the white-spaces are written without any changes.
- In other cases the text nodes are wrapped.

Also, when formatting and indenting an element that is not in a *space-preserve* context, additional *Line Separators* and white-spaces are added as follows:

- Before a text node that starts with a white-space.
- After a text node that ends with a white-space.
- Before and after CSS *block* nodes.
- If the current node has an ancestor that is a CSS *table* element.

#### Editing documents

You can insert *space* characters in any text nodes. *Line breaks* are permitted only in *space-preserve* elements. Tabs are marked in the space-preserve elements with a little marker.

#### **Note**

*CDATA sections, comments, processing instructions* have by default the *white-space* CSS property set to *"pre"* unless overridden in the CSS file you are using. Also they are considered to be *block* nodes.

### Minimize differences between versions saved on different computers

The number of differences between versions of the same file saved by different content authors on different computers can be minimized by imposing the same set of formatting options when saving the file, for all the content authors. An example for a procedure that minimizes the differences is:

1. Create an <oXygen/> project file that will be shared by all content authors.
2. Set your own preferences in the following panels of the Preferences dialog: Editor / Format and Editor / Format / XML.
3. Save the preferences of these two panels in the <oXygen/> project by selecting the button *Project Options* in these two panels.
4. Save the project and commit the project file to your versioning system so all the content authors can use it.
5. Make sure the project is opened in the *Project* view and open your XML files in the Author mode and save them.
6. Commit the saved XML files to your versioning system.

When other content authors will change the files only the changed lines will be displayed in your diff tool instead of one big change that does not allow to see the changes between two versions of the file.

## Change Tracking

Track Changes is a way to keep track of the changes you make to a document. You can activate change tracking for the current document by choosing Edit+Track Changes or by clicking the Track Changes button located on the Author toolbar. When *Track Changes* is enabled your modifications will be highlighted using a distinctive color. The name of the author who is currently making changes and the colors can be customized from the Track Changes preferences page.

**Figure 5.29. Change Tracking in <oXygen/> Author**

Docbook 4 supports also the **XHTML** tables:

*Sample XHTML Table with fixed width and proportional column widths*

```
col[span:1, width:2.08*]
col[span:1, width:0.46*]
```

| Person Name | Age |
|-------------|-----|
| Jane        | 26  |
| Bart        | 24  |
| Alexander   | 22  |
| John        | 25  |

They belongare all students of the computer science department

Inserted by John Doe  
Wed Apr 08 16:10:32 EEST 2009

This is a list of useful **XML** links:


When hovering a change the tooltip will display information about the author and modification time.

If the selection in the Author contains track changes and you Copy it the clipboard will contain the selection with all the changes *accepted*. This filtering will happen only if the selection is not entirely inside a tracked change.

 **Tip**

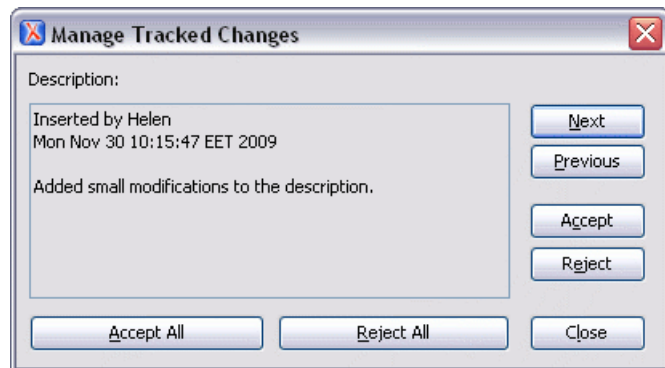
For each change the author name and the modification time are preserved. The changes are stored in the document as processing instructions and they do not interfere with validating and transforming it.

## Managing changes

You can review the changes made by you or other authors and then accept or reject them using the Track Changes toolbar buttons  or the similar actions from the Edit menu.

- Track Changes                      Enable or disable track changes for the current document.
- Accept Change(s)                  Accept the change located at the caret position or if a selection is available accept changes in the entire selected range. For an insert change this means keeping the inserted text and for a delete change this means removing the content from the document. The action is also available in the Author page contextual menu.
- Reject Change(s)                  Reject the change located at the caret position or if a selection is available reject changes in the entire selected range. For an insert change this means removing the inserted text and for a delete change this preserving the original content from the document. The action is also available in the Author page contextual menu.
- Comment Change                    You can decide to add additional comments to an already existing change. The additional description will appear on the tooltip when hovering the change and in the *Manage Tracked Changes* dialog when navigating changes. The action is also available in the Author page contextual menu.
- Manage Tracked Changes          This is a way to find and manage all changes in the current document.

**Figure 5.30. Manage Tracked Changes**



The dialog offers the following actions:

- Next                      Find the next change in the document.
- Previous                  Find the previous change in the document.
- Accept                    Accept the current change.
- Reject                    Reject the current change.

Accept All      Accept all changes in the document.

Reject All      Reject all changes in the document.

The dialog is not modal and it is reconfigured after switching between the dialog and one of the opened editors.

---

# Chapter 6. Author for DITA

## Creating DITA maps and topics

The basic building block for DITA information is the DITA topic. DITA provides the following topic types:

- *Concept*. For general, conceptual information such as a description of a product or feature.
- *Task*. For procedural information such as how to use a dialog.
- *Reference*. For reference information.

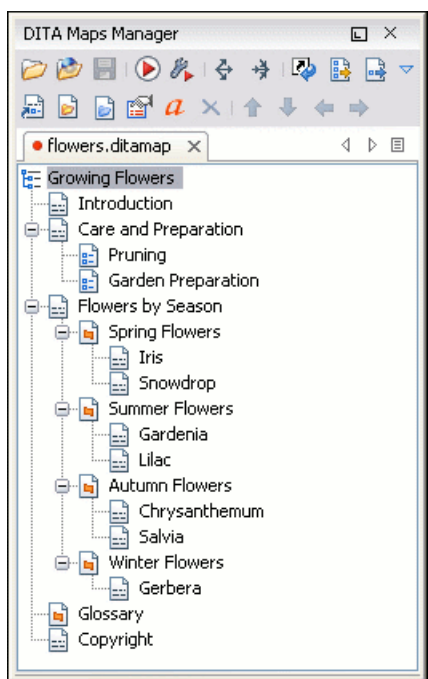
You can organize topics into a DITA map or bookmap. A map is a hierarchy of topics. A bookmap supports also book divisions such as chapters and book lists such as indexes. Maps do not contain the content of topics, but only references to them. These are known as topic references. Usually the maps and bookmaps are saved on disk or in a CMS with the extension '.ditamap'.

Maps can also contain relationship tables that establish relationships between the topics contained within the map. Relationship tables are also used to generate links in your published document.

You can use your map or bookmap to generate a deliverable using an output type such as XHTML, PDF, HTML Help or Eclipse Help.

## Editing DITA Maps

<oXygen/> provides a special view for editing DITA maps. The *DITA Maps Manager* view presents a map in a simplified table-of-contents manner allowing the user to easily navigate the referred topics and maps, make changes and perform transformations to various output formats using the DITA-OT framework bundled with <oXygen/>.

**Figure 6.1. The DITA Maps Manager view**

The Maps Manager view supports opening multiple documents at the same time.

All files which have the extension `.ditamap` and are opened in the application will be opened in the *DITA Maps Manager* view. In addition you can right click the file in the *Project* view and select *Open with*. After the map is opened in the Manager you can open it in the main editor for further customization using the *Open map in editor* toolbar action.

### **Tip**


If your map references other DITA Maps they will be shown expanded in the DITA Maps Tree and you will also be able to navigate their content. For editing you will have to open each referenced map in a separate editor. You can choose not to expand referenced maps in the *DITA Maps Manager* or referenced content in the opened editors by unchecking the `Display referred content` checkbox available in the Author preferences page.


### **Note**

A map opened from WebDAV can be locked when it is opened in *DITA Maps Manager* by checking the option `Lock WebDAV files on open` to protect it from concurrent modifications on the server by other users. If other user tries to edit the same map he will receive an error message and the name of the lock owner. The lock is released automatically when the map is closed from `<oXygen/> DITA Maps Manager`.

## Creating a map

The steps for creating a new DITA map are very simple:

1. Go to menu `File` → `New` or click on the  `New` toolbar button.

2. On the tab *From templates* of the *New* dialog select one of the *DITA Map* templates and click *OK*. A new tab is added in the *DITA Maps Manager* view.
3. Press the  Save button on the toolbar of the *DITA Maps Manager* view.
4. In the *Save As* dialog select a location and a file name for the map.


## Create a topic and add it to a map

You add a new topic to a map with the following steps:

1. In the view *DITA Maps Manager* click on the action *Insert Topic Reference* that is available on the toolbar and on the contextual menu. The action is available both on the submenu *Append Child* when you want to insert a topic reference in a map as a child of the current topic reference and on the submenu *Insert After* when you want to insert it as a sibling of the current topic reference. The toolbar action is the same as the action from the submenu *Insert After*.
2. Select a topic file in the file system dialog called *Insert Topic Reference*.
3. Press the *Insert* button or the *Insert and close* button in the dialog. A reference to the selected topic is added to the current map in the *DITA Maps Manager* view. The button *Insert and Close* closes the dialog.
4. If you clicked the *Insert* button you can continue inserting new topic references using the *Insert* button repeatedly in same file system dialog or you can close the dialog using the *Close* button.



## Organize topics in a map

You can understand better how to organize topics in a DITA map by working with a populated map. You should open the sample map called `flowers.ditamap` and located in the `samples/dita` folder.

1. Open the file `flowers.ditamap`.
2. Select the topic reference *Summer Flowers* and click the toolbar button with the *Down* arrow (  ) to change the order of the topic references *Summer Flowers* and *Autumn Flowers*.
3. Make sure *Summer Flowers* is selected and press the *Demote* toolbar button. This topic reference and all the nested ones are moved as a unit inside the *Autumn Flowers* topic reference.
4. Close the map without saving.

## Create a bookmap








The procedure for creating a bookmap is similar with that for creating a map.

1. Go to menu `File` → `New` or click on the  New toolbar button.
2. On the tab *From templates* of the *New* dialog select the *DITA Map - Bookmap* template and click *OK*. A new tab with the new bookmap is added in the *DITA Maps Manager* view.
3. Press the  Save button on the toolbar of the *DITA Maps Manager* view.
4. In the *Save As* dialog select a location and a file name for the map.



## Create relationships between topics

The DITA map offers the possibility of grouping different types of links between topics in a relationship table instead of specifying the links of each topic in that topic.

1. Open the DITA map file where you want to create the relationship table. Use the action  Open that is available on the toolbar of the *DITA Maps Manager* view.
2. Place the cursor at the location of the relationship table.
3. Run the action  Insert a DITA reltable that is available on the Author toolbar, on the menu DITA → Table and on the Table submenu of the contextual menu of the DITA map editor.
4. In the Insert Relationship Table dialog that is displayed by this action you set some parameters of the relationship table that will be created: the number of rows, the number of columns, a table title (optional), a table header (optional).
5. After setting the table parameters press OK in the **Insert Table** dialog for inserting a table in the edited DITA map.
6. Set the type of the topics in the header of each column. The header of the table (the *relheader* element) already contains a *relcolspec* element for each table column. You should set the value of the attribute *type* of each *relcolspec* element to a value like *concept*, *task*, *reference*. When you click in the header cell of a column (that is a *relcolspec* element) you can see all the attributes of that *relcolspec* element including the *type* attribute in the *Attributes* view. You can edit the attribute type in this view.
7. To insert a topic reference in a table cell just place the cursor in that cell and run the action  Insert Topic Reference that is available on the Author toolbar, on the menu DITA → Insert and on the Insert submenu of the contextual menu.
8. Optionally for adding a new row to the table/removing an existing row you should run the action  Insert Row/  
 Delete Row that is available on the Author toolbar, on the menu DITA → Table and on the Table submenu of the contextual menu.
9. Optionally for adding a new column to the table/removing an existing column you should run the action  Insert Column/  
 Delete Column that is available on the Author toolbar, on the menu DITA → Table and on the Table submenu of the contextual menu.

## Create an index entry

The index entries of are used for









## Editing actions

### Important

References can be made either by using the `href` attribute or by using the new `keyref` attribute to point to a key defined in the map. Oxygen tries to resolve both cases. `keyrefs` are solved relative to the current map.

In addition to being available on the toolbar and on the contextual menu, more navigation actions and all edit actions appear in the *DITA Maps* menu. The menu is only available when the view is active on screen.








The following general actions can be performed on an opened DITA Map:

- |   |  |
|---|--|
|  Open                                      | Allows opening the DITA Map in the DITA Maps Manager view. You can also open a DITA Map by dragging it in the DITA Maps Manager from the file system explorer.   |
|  Open URL                                  | Allows opening remote DITA Maps in the DITA Maps Manager view. See Open URL for details.   |
|  Save                                      | Allows saving the currently opened DITA Map.   |
|  Apply Transformation Scenario             | Allows the user to start the DITA ANT Transformation scenario associated with the opened map. For more transformation details see <a href="#">here</a> .   |
|  Configure Transformation Scenario         | Allows the user to configure a DITA ANT Transformation scenario for the opened map. For more transformation details see <a href="#">here</a> .   |
|  Refresh References                        | Sometimes after a topic was edited and its title changed the topic's title needs to be also updated in the DITA Maps manager view. You can use this action to refresh and update titles for all referred topics.                               |
|  Open map in editor                        | For complex operations which cannot be performed in the simplified DITA Maps view (like editing a relationship table) you can open the map in the main editing area. See more about editing a map in the main edit area <a href="#">here</a> . |
|  Open map in editor with resolved topics | Open the map in the main editing area with all the topic references expanded in the map content.   |

 **Tip**

The additional edit toolbar can be shown by clicking the "Show/Hide additional toolbar" expand button located on the general toolbar.

The following edit actions can be performed on an opened DITA Map:

- |  |   |
|--|---|
|  Insert Topic Reference | Inserts a reference to a topic file. See more about this action <a href="#">here</a> .  |
|  Insert Topic Heading   | Inserts a topic heading. See more about this action <a href="#">here</a>  |
|  Insert Topic Group     | Inserts a topic group. See more about this action <a href="#">here</a> .  |
|  Edit properties        | Edit the properties of a selected node. See more about this action <a href="#">here</a> .   |
|  Edit other attributes  | Edits all the attributes of a selected node. A dialog is presented allowing the user to see and edit the attributes of the selected node. See <a href="#">here</a> for more details about editing attributes. |
|  Delete                 | Deletes the selected nodes.   |
|  Move Up                | Moves the selected nodes in front of their respective previous siblings.  |

- ↓ Move Down                      Moves the selected nodes after their next respective siblings.
- ← Promote                         Moves the selected nodes after their respective parents as a siblings.
- Demote                         Moves the selected nodes as children to their respective previous siblings.

The contextual menu contains, in addition to the edit actions described above, the following actions:

|   |  |  |
|---|--|--|
| Find/Replace in Files                   | Find Replace in files using the scope of the current edited DITA Map. See more details here.     |  |
| Check Spelling in Files                 | Check spelling for the files in the scope of the current edited DITA Map. See more details here. |  |
| Open in editor                          | Open in the editor the resources referred by the selected nodes                                  |  |
| Open Map in Editor with resolved topics | Open the map in the main editing area with all the topic references expanded in the map content. |  |
| Cut, Copy, Paste, Undo, Redo            | Common edit actions with the same functionality as those found in the text editor                |  |
| Paste before, Paste after               | Will paste the content of the clipboard before respectively after the selected node.             |  |
| Append Child/Insert After               | Topic reference  | Append/Insert a topic reference as a child/sibling of the selected node                            |
|   | Topic reference to the current edited file   | Append/Insert a topic reference to the current edited file as a child/sibling of the selected node |
|   | Topic heading  | Append/Insert a topic heading as a child/sibling of the selected node                              |
|   | Topic group  | Append/Insert a topic group as a child/sibling of the selected node                                |

You can also arrange the nodes by dragging and dropping one or more nodes at a time. Drop operations can be performed before, after or as child of the targeted node. The relative location of the drop is indicated while hovering the mouse over a node before releasing the mouse button for the drop.

Drag and drop operations allow you to:

- Copy                                Select the nodes you want to copy and start dragging them. Before dropping them in the appropriate place, press and hold the **CTRL** key(**META** key on Mac). The mouse pointer should change to indicate that a copy operation will be performed.
- Move                                Select the nodes you want to move and drag and drop them in the appropriate place.
- Promote / Demote                You can move nodes between child and parent nodes which ensures both *Promote* and *Demote* operations.

 **Tip**

You can open and edit linked topics easily by double clicking the references or by right-clicking and choosing "Open in editor". If the referenced file does not exist you will be allowed to create it.

By right clicking the map root element you can open and edit it in the main editor area for more complex operations.

You can decide to open the reference directly in the Author page and keep this setting as a default.

 **Note**

Some of the common actions from the main application menu/toolbar also apply to the DITA Maps Manager when it has focus. These actions are:

File actions            Save, Save As, Save to URL, Save All, Print, Print preview, Close, Close others, Close all

Edit actions            Undo, Redo, Cut, Copy, Paste, Delete

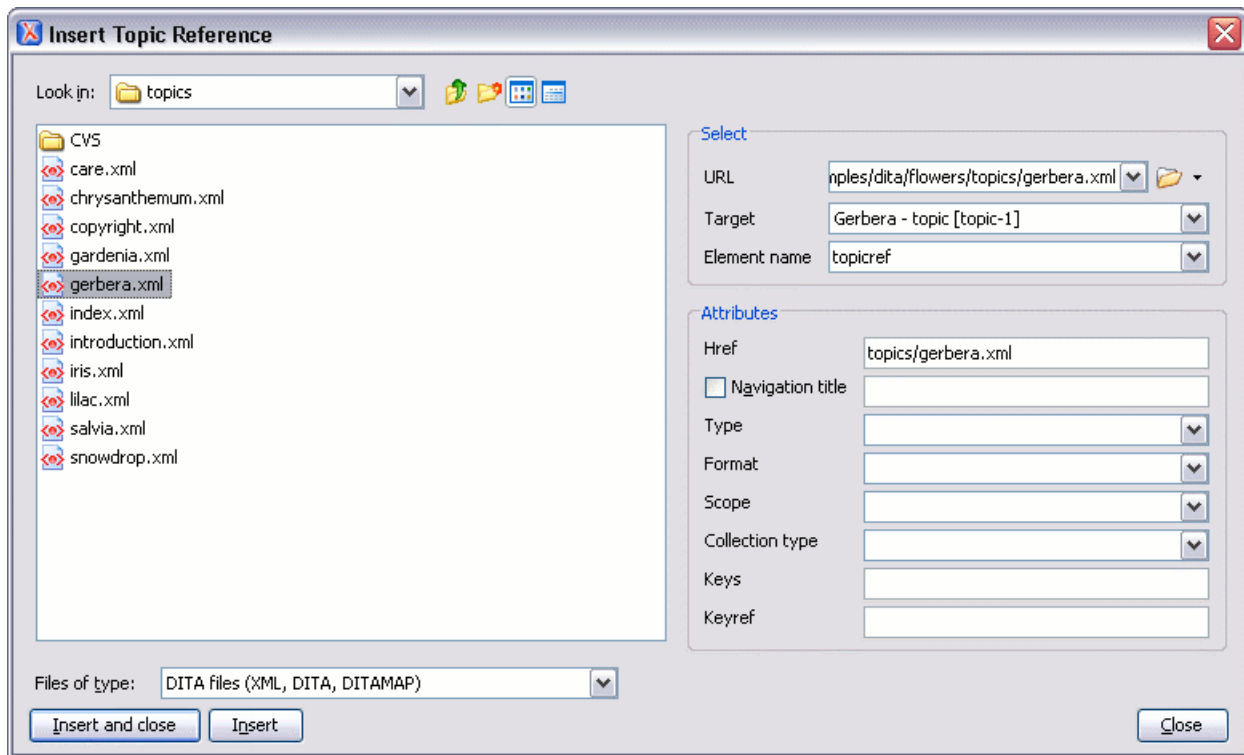
The *Save all* action applies to all editors opened in either <oxygen/> work area or the DITA Maps Manager.

## Advanced operations

### Inserting a Topic Reference

The *topicref* element identifies a topic (such as a concept, task, or reference) or other resource. A *topicref* can contain other *topicref* elements, allowing you to express navigation or table-of-contents hierarchies, as well as implying relationships between the containing *topicref* and its children. You can set the collection-type of a container *topicref* to determine how its children are related to each other. You can also express relationships among *topicref*s using group and table structures (using *topicgroup* and *reltable*). Relationships end up expressed as links in the output (with each participant in a relationship having links to the other participants by default).

A reference to a topic file may be inserted both from the toolbar action and the contextual node actions. The same dialog can be used to insert references to maps or links to non-dita files like pdf's.

**Figure 6.2. Insert Topic Reference Dialog**

By using the *Insert Topic Reference* Dialog you can easily browse for and select the source topic file. The *Target* combo box shows all available topics that can be targeted in the file. Selecting a target modifies the *Href* value to point to it. The *Format* and *Scope* combos are automatically filled based on the selected file. You can specify and enforce a custom navigation title by checking the *Navigation title* checkbox and entering the desired title.

The file chooser located in the dialog allows you to easily select the desired topic. The selected topic file will be added as a child/sibling of the current selected topic reference. You can easily insert multiple topic references by keeping the dialog opened and changing the selection in the DITA Maps Manager tree. You can also select multiple resources in the file explorer and then insert them all as topic references.

Another easy way to insert a topic reference is to directly drag and drop topic files from the Oxygen Project or the Explorer right in the DITA Maps tree.

You can also define keys using the *Keys* text field on the inserted `topicref` or `keydef` element or instead of using the *Href* to point to a location you can reference a key definition using the *Keyref* text field.

## Inserting a Topic Heading

The *topichead* element provides a title-only entry in a navigation map, as an alternative to the fully-linked title provided by the *topicref* element.

A topic heading can be inserted both from the toolbar action and the contextual node actions.

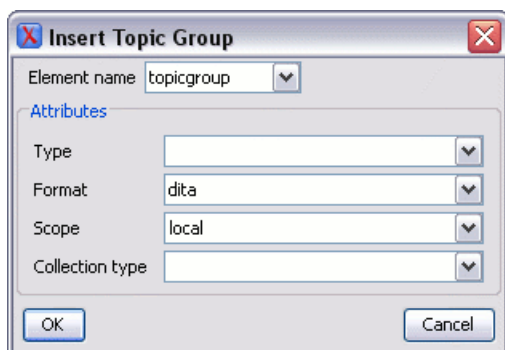
**Figure 6.3. Insert Topic Heading Dialog**

By using the *Insert Topic Heading* Dialog you can easily insert a *topichead* element. The *Navigation title* is required but other attributes can be specified as well from the dialog.

## Inserting a Topic Group

The *topicgroup* element identifies a group of topics (such as a concepts, tasks, or references) or other resources. A *topicgroup* can contain other *topicgroup* elements, allowing you to express navigation or table-of-contents hierarchies, as well as implying relationships between the containing *topicgroup* and its children. You can set the collection-type of a container *topicgroup* to determine how its children are related to each other. Relationships end up expressed as links in the output (with each participant in a relationship having links to the other participants by default).

A topic group may be inserted both from the toolbar action and the contextual node actions.

**Figure 6.4. Insert Topic Group Dialog**

By using the *Insert Topic Group* Dialog you can easily insert a *topicgroup* element. The *Type*, *Format*, *Scope* and *Collection type* attributes can be specified from the dialog.

## Edit properties

The *Edit properties* action, available both on the toolbar and on the contextual menu, is used to edit the properties of the selected node. Depending on the selected node, the action will perform the following tasks:

- If a *topicref* element is selected, the action will show a dialog similar with the *Insert Topic Reference* dialog allowing the editing of some important attributes.

- If a *topichead* element is selected, the action will show a dialog similar with the Insert Topic Heading dialog allowing the editing of some important attributes.
- If a *topicgroup* element is selected, the action will show a dialog similar with the Insert Topic Group dialog allowing the editing of some important attributes.
- If the map's root element is selected then the user will be able to easily edit the map's title using the *Edit Map title* dialog:

By using this dialog you can also specify whether the title will be specified as the *title* attribute to the map or as a *title* element (for DITA-OT 1.1 and 1.2) or specified in both locations.

## Transforming DITA Maps

<oXygen/> uses the DITA Open Toolkit (DITA-OT) to transform XML content into an output format. For this purpose both the DITA Open Toolkit 1.5 M24 and ANT 1.7 come bundled in <oXygen/>.

More informations about the DITA Open Toolkit are available at <http://dita-ot.sourceforge.net/>.

## Available Output Formats

You can publish DITA-based documents in any of the following formats:

|                        |   |
|------------------------|---|
| XHTML                  | DITA Map to XHTML   |
| PDF - DITA OT          | DITA Map to PDF using the DITA OT default PDF target  |
| PDF2 - IDIOM FO Plugin | DITA Map to PDF using the DITA OT IDIOM PDF plugin  |
| HTML Help (CHM)        | DITA Map to HTML Help. If HTML Help Workshop is installed on your computer then oXygen will detect it and use it to perform the transformation. When the transformation fails, the hhp (HTML Help Project) file is already generated and it needs to be compiled to obtain the chm file. Note that HTML Help Workshop fails when the files used for transformation contain diacritics in their names, due to different encodings used when writing the hhp and hhc files. |
| JavaHelp               | DITA Map to JavaHelp  |
| Eclipse Help           | DITA Map to Eclipse Help  |
| Eclipse Content        | DITA Map to Eclipse Content   |
| TocJS                  | A JavaScript file that can be included in an HTML file to display in a tree-like manner the table of contents of the transformed DITA map.  |
| RTF                    | DITA Map to Rich Text Format  |
| TROFF                  | DITA Map to Text Processor for Typesetters  |
| Docbook                | DITA Map to Docbook   |


Because the *TocJS* transformation does not generate all the files needed to display the tree-like table of contents, you need to follow this procedure:

1. Run the XHTML transformation on the same DITA map. Make sure the output gets generated in the same output folder;

2. Copy the content of `${frameworks}/dita/DITA-OT/demo/tocjs/basefiles` folder in the transformation's output folder;
3. Copy the `${frameworks}/dita/DITA-OT/demo/tocjs/sample/basefiles/frameset.html` file in the transformation's output folder;
4. Edit `frameset.html` and locate element `<frame name="contentwin" src="concepts/about.html">`. Replace `"concepts/about.html"` with `"index.html"`.

## Configuring a DITA transformation

Creating DITA Map transformation scenarios is similar to creating scenarios in the main editing area. See here for more details about creating scenarios in the main editing area.

The Configure transformation scenario dialog is opened from the toolbar action  Configure Transformation Scenario of the DITA Map Manager. Select as *Scenario type* `DITA OT transformation` then press the *New* button. Next step involves choosing the type of output the DITA-OT ANT scenario will generate:

**Figure 6.5. Select DITA Transformation type**



Depending on the chosen type of output `<oXygen/>` will generate values for the default ANT parameters so that you can execute the scenario right away without further customization.

### Tip

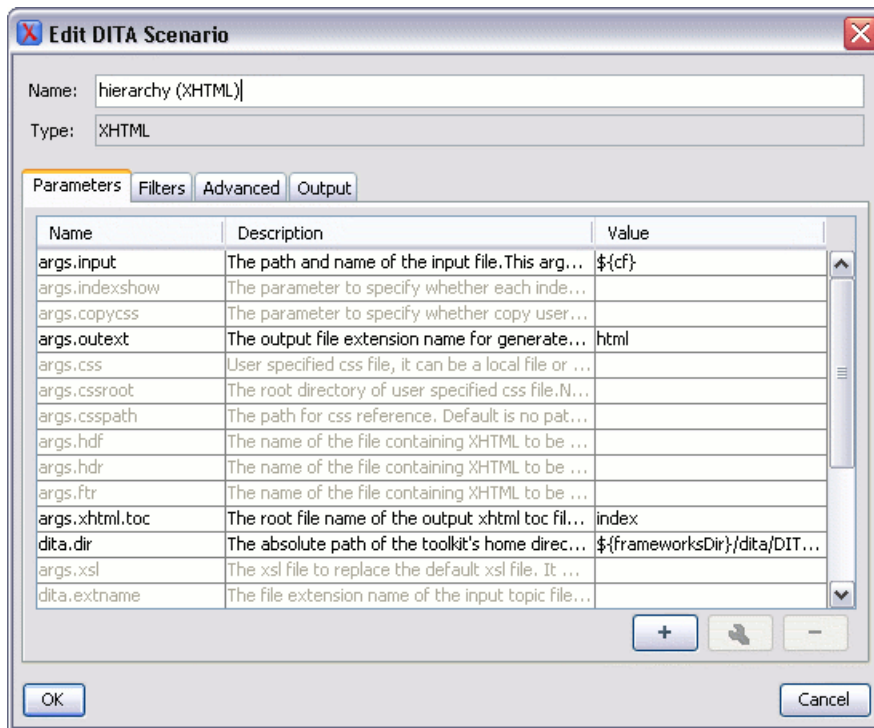
If you want to transform your DITA topics to various formats using the DITA Open Toolkit you can open them in the DITA Maps Manager view using the "Open" button located on the internal toolbar and transform them from here.

## Customizing the DITA scenario

### The *Parameters* tab

In the Scenario Edit Parameters Tab you can customize all the parameters which will be sent to the DITA-OT build file.



**Figure 6.6. Edit DITA Ant transformation parameters**

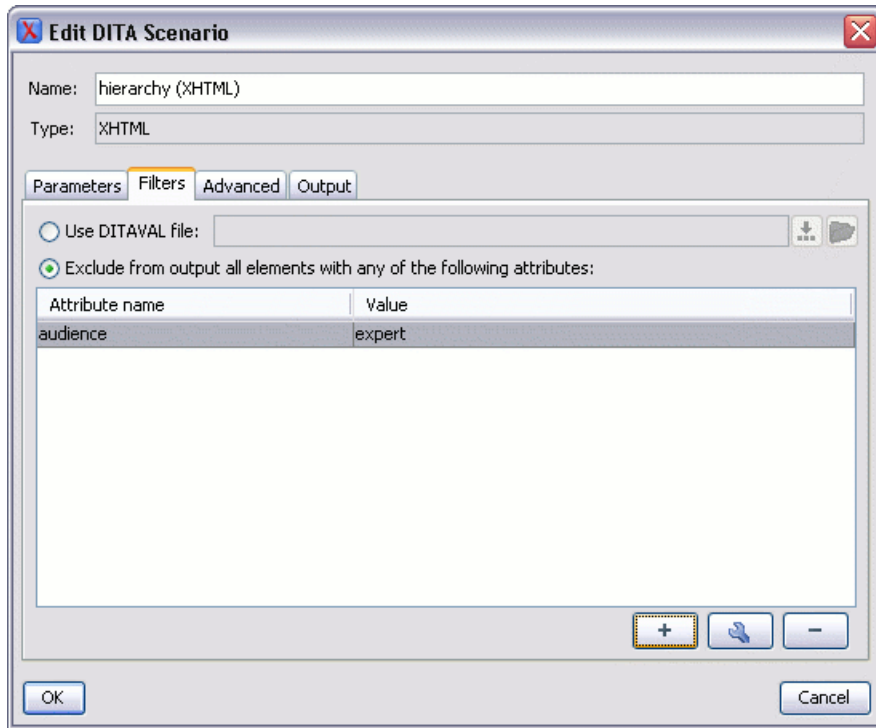
All the parameters that can be set to the DITA-OT build files for the chosen type of transformation (eg: XHTML) are listed along with their description. The values for some important parameters are already filled in. You can find more information about each parameter in the DITA OT Documentation [<http://dita-ot.sourceforge.net/doc/DITA-antscript.html>]

Using the toolbar buttons you can Add, Edit or Remove a parameter.

Depending on the parameter type the parameter value will be a simple text field for simple parameter values, a combo box with some predefined values or will have a file chooser and an editor variables selector to simplify setting a file path as value to a parameter.

### The *Filters* tab

In the Scenario Filters Tab you can add filters to remove certain content elements from the generated output.

**Figure 6.7. Edit Filters tab**

You have two ways in which to define filters:

Use DITAVAL file

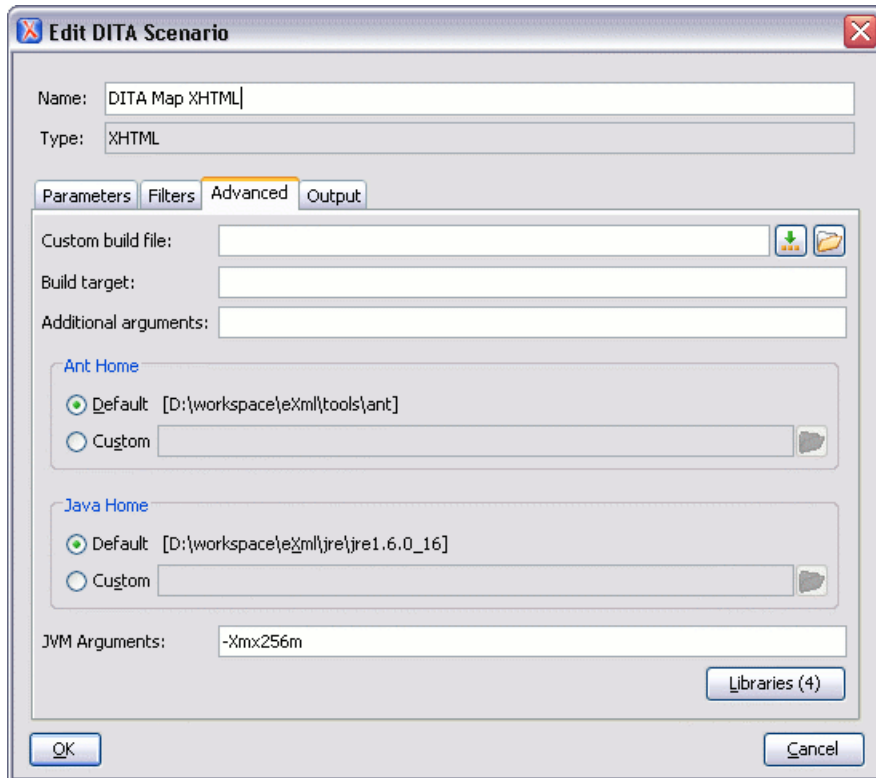
If you already have a DITAVAL file associated with the transformed map you can specify the path to it and it will be used when filtering content. You can find out more about constructing a DITAVAL file in the DITA OT Documentation [<http://docs.oasis-open.org/dita/v1.1/CD01/langspec/common/about-ditaval.html>].

Exclude from output all elements with any of the following attributes

You can configure a simple list of attribute (name, value) pairs which when present on an element in the input will remove it from output.

### **The *Advanced* tab**

In the Advanced Tab you can specify advanced options for the transformation.

**Figure 6.8. Advanced settings tab**

You have several parameters that you can specify here:

|                      |  |
|----------------------|--|
| Custom build file    | If you use a custom DITA-OT build file you can specify the path to the customized build file. If empty, the <code>build.xml</code> file from the <code>dita.dir</code> directory configured in the <i>Parameters</i> tab will be used. |
| Build target         | You can specify a build target to the build file. By default no target is necessary and the default "init" target is used.   |
| Additional arguments | You can specify additional command line arguments to be passed to the ANT transformation like <code>-verbose</code> .  |
| Ant Home             | You can specify a custom ANT installation to run the DITA Map transformation. By default it is the ANT installation bundled with <oXygen/>.  |
| Java Home            | You can specify a custom Java Virtual Machine to run the ANT transformation. By default it is the Java Virtual Machine used by <oXygen/>.  |
| JVM Arguments        | This parameter allows you to set specific parameters to the Java Virtual Machine used by ANT. By default it is set to <code>-Xmx256m</code> which means the transformation process is allowed to use 256 megabytes of memory.          |

### Example 6.1. Increasing the memory for the ANT process

Sometimes, when performing a large DITA map transformation you may want to increase the memory allocated to the Java Virtual Machine from the default value (64 MB) to a higher value (256MB). You can do this easily by setting the value `'-Xmx256m'` without quotes to the "JVM Arguments" text field. In this way you can avoid the Out of Memory ( `OutOfMemoryError` ) messages received from the ANT process.

#### Libraries

Oxygen adds by default as high priority libraries which are not transformation-dependent and also patches for certain DITA Open Toolkit bugs. You can specify all the additional libraries (jar files or additional class paths) which will be used by the ANT transformer. You can also decide to control all libraries added to the classpath.

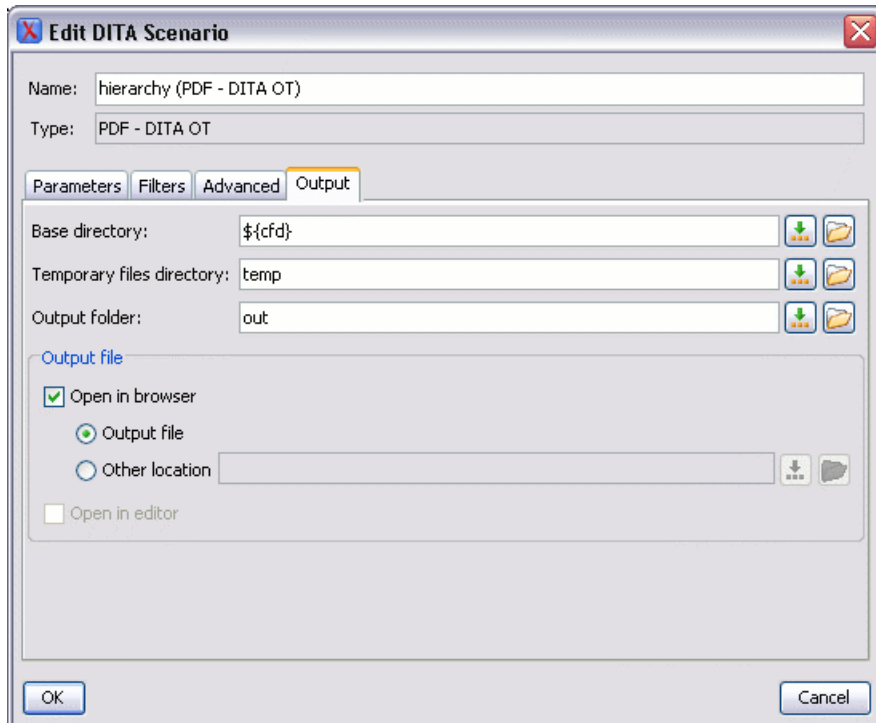
### Example 6.2. Additional jars specified for XHTML

For example the additional jars specified for XHTML are the DITA-OT *dost* and *resolver* jars, *xerces* and *saxon* 6 jars.

## The *Output* tab

In the Output Tab you can configure options related to the place where the output will be generated.

**Figure 6.9. Output settings tab**



You have several parameters that you can specify here:

#### Base directory

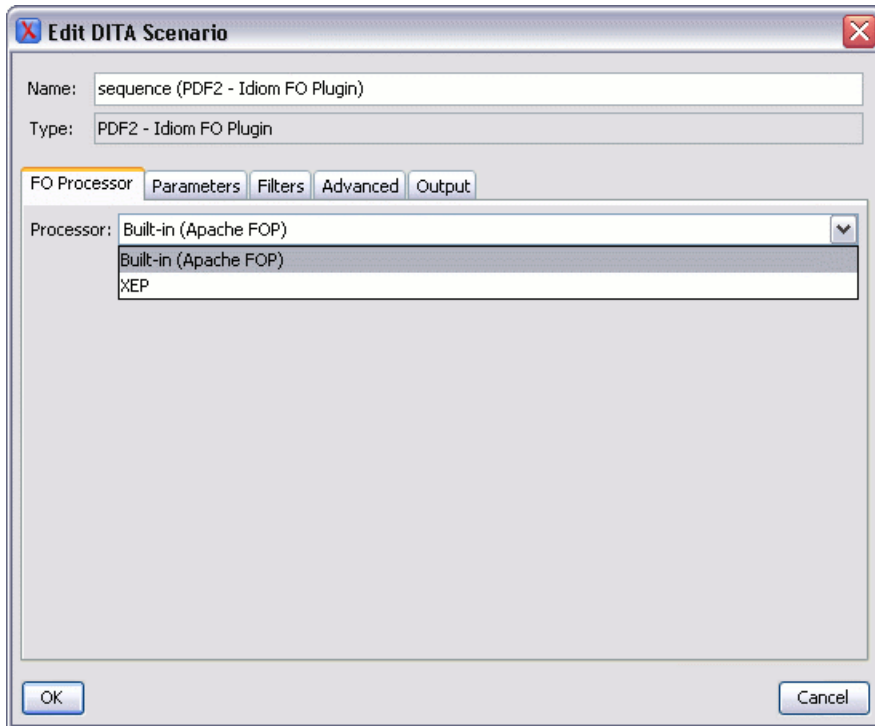
All the relative paths which appear as values in parameters are considered relative to the base directory. The default value is the directory where the transformed map is located.

|                           |  |
|---------------------------|--|
| Temporary files directory | This directory will be used to store pre-processed temporary files until the final output is obtained. |
| Output folder             | The folder where the final output content will be copied.  |
| Output file options       | The transformation output can then be opened in a browser or even in the editor if specified.          |

## The *FO Processor* tab

This tab appears only when selecting to generate PDF output using the IDIOM FO Plugin and allows you to choose the FO Processor.

**Figure 6.10. FO Processor configuration tab**



You can choose between three processors:

**Apache FOP** This processor comes bundled with <oXygen/>. You can find more information about it here.

**XEP** The RenderX [<http://www.renderx.com/>] XEP processor. You can add it very easy from here.

If you select *XEP* in the combo and *XEP* was already installed in <oXygen/> you can see the detected installation path appear under the combo.

XEP is considered as installed if it was detected from one of the following sources:

XEP was added as an external FO Processor in the <oXygen/> preferences. See here.

The system property "com.oxygenxml.xep.location" was set to point to the XEP executable file for the platform (eg: xep.bat on Windows).

XEP was installed in the `frameworks/dita/DITA-OT/demo/fo/lib` directory of the <oXygen/> installation directory.

Antenna House      The Antenna House [http://www.antennahouse.com/] AH (v5) or XSL (v4) Formatter processor. You can add it very easy from here.

If you select *Antenna House* in the combo and Antenna House was already installed in <oXygen/> you can see the detected installation path appear under the combo.

Antenna House is considered as installed if it was detected from one of the following sources:

Environment variable set by Antenna House installation (the newest installation version will be used, v5 being preferred over v4).

Antenna House was added as an external FO Processor in the <oXygen/> preferences. See here.

### **Tip**

The DITA-OT contributors recommend the use of the IDIOM FO Plugin to transform DITA Maps to PDF as opposed to using the standard PDF target in the DITA-OT framework.

As IDIOM is also bundled with <oXygen/> the *PDF2 - IDIOM FO Plugin* output format should be your first choice in transforming your map to PDF. If you do not have a commercial license for XEP or Antenna House you can transform using the Apache FO Processor.

## Set a font for PDF output generated with Apache FOP

When a DITA map is transformed to PDF using the Apache FOP processor and it contains some Unicode characters that cannot be rendered by the default PDF fonts then a font that is capable to render these characters must be configured and embedded in the PDF result.

The settings that must be modified for configuring a font for the Apache FOP processor are detailed in this section.

## Running a DITA Map ANT transformation

The transformation is run as an external ANT process so you can continue using the application as the transformation unfolds. All output from the process appears in the *DITA Transformation* tab.

### **Tip**

The HTTP proxy settings from <oXygen/> are also used for the ANT transformation so if the transformation fails because it cannot connect to an external location you can check the HTTP/Proxy Configuration.

## DITA OT customization support

### Support for transformation customizations

You can change all DITA transformation parameters to customize your needs. See here for more details. In addition, you can specify a custom build file, parameters to the JVM and many more for the transformation.

### Using your own DITA OT toolkit from <oXygen/>

The DITA-OT toolkit which comes with <oXygen/> is located in the {INSTALLATION\_DIRECTORY}/frameworks/dita/DITA-OT directory.

You can configure another DITA-OT toolkit directory for use in <oXygen/> To do this you must edit the transformation scenario that you are using and in the Parameters tab change the "dita.dir" parameter to your custom DITA-OT installation directory. Also in the Advanced tab (the Libraries button) you have to add:

- the `dost.jar` and `resolver.jar` libraries as file paths that point to the libraries from your custom DITA-OT installation directory
- the installation directory of your custom DITA-OT and the `lib` subdirectory of that installation directory as directory paths

## Using your custom build file

You can specify a custom build file to be used in DITA-OT ANT transformations by editing the transformation scenario that you are using and in the Advanced tab change the *Custom build file* path to point to the custom build file.

## Customizing the <oXygen/> Ant tool

The ANT 1.7 tool which comes with <oXygen/> is located in the `{INSTALLATION_DIRECTORY}/tools/ant` directory. Any additional libraries for ANT must be copied to the <oXygen/> ANT `lib` directory.

### Example 6.3. Enabling JavaScript in ANT build files

If you are using Java 1.6 to run <oXygen/> the ANT tool should need to additional libraries to process JavaScript in build files.

If you are using Java 1.5 you have to copy the `bsf.jar` [<http://jakarta.apache.org/bsf/>] and `js.jar` [<http://www.mozilla.org/rhino/download.html>] libraries in the <oXygen/> ANT `lib` directory.

## Upgrading to a new version of DITA OT

The DITA OT framework bundled in <oXygen/> is located in the `{INSTALLATION_DIRECTORY}/frameworks/dita/DITA-OT` directory.

### Important

There are a couple of modifications made to the DITA OT framework which will be overwritten if you choose to copy the new DITA-OT version over the bundled one:

The DTD's in the framework have been enriched with documentation for each element. If you overwrite you will lose the documentation which is usually shown when hovering an element or in the Model View

The IDIOM FO Plugin comes pre-installed in the bundled DITA-OT framework

Several build files from the IDIOM plugin have been modified to allow transformation using the <oXygen/> Apache Built-in FOP libraries and usage of the <oXygen/> classpath while transforming.

## Increasing the memory for the Ant process

You can give custom JVM Arguments to the ANT process. See here for more details.

## Resolving topic references through an XML catalog

If you customized your map to refer topics using URI's instead of local paths or you have URI content references in your DITA topic files and you want to resolve the URIs with an XML catalog when the DITA map is transformed then you have to add the catalog to <oXygen/>. The DITA Maps Manager view will solve the displayed topic refs through

the added XML catalog and also the DITA map transformations (for PDF output, for XHTML output, etc) will solve the URI references through the added XML catalog.

## DITA specializations support

### Integration of a DITA specialization

A DITA specialization includes DTD definitions for new elements as extensions of existing DITA elements and optionally specialized processing, that is new XSLT template rules that match the extension part of the *class* attribute values of the new elements and thus extend the default processing available in DITA Open Toolkit. A specialization can be integrated in <oxygen/> XML Author with minimum effort.

If the DTDs that define the extension elements are located in a folder outside the DITA Open Toolkit folder you should add new rules to the DITA OT catalog file for resolving the DTD references from the DITA files that use the specialized elements to that folder. This allows correct resolution of DTD references to your local DTD files and is needed for both validation and transformation of the DITA maps or topics. The DITA OT catalog file is called `catalog-dita.xml` and is located in the root folder of the DITA Open Toolkit.

If there is specialized processing provided by XSLT stylesheets that override the default stylesheets from DITA OT these new stylesheets must be called from the Ant build scripts of DITA OT.

#### Important

If you are using DITA specialization elements in your DITA files it is recommended that you activate the *Enable DTD processing in document type detection* checkbox in the Document Type Association page.

### Editing DITA Map specializations

In addition to recognizing the default DITA map formats: *map* and *bookmap* the DITA Maps Manager can also be used to open and edit specializations of DITA Maps.

All advanced edit actions available for the map like insertion of topic refs, heads, properties editing, allow the user to specify the element to insert in an editable combo. Moreover the elements which appear initially in the combo are all the elements which are allowed to appear at the insert position for the given specialization.

The topic titles rendered in the DITA Maps Manager are collected from the target files by matching the *class* attribute and not a specific element name.

When editing DITA specializations of maps in the main editor the insertions of topic reference, topic heading, topic group and conref actions should work without modification. For the table actions you have to modify each action by hand to insert the correct element name at caret position. You can go to the *DITA Map* document type from the Document Type Association page and edit the table actions to insert the element names as specified in your specialization. See this section for more details.

### Editing DITA Topic specializations

In addition to recognizing the default DITA topic formats: *topic*, *task*, *concept*, *reference* and *composite*, topic specializations can also be edited in the Author page.

The Content Completion should work without additional modifications and you can choose the tags which are allowed at the caret position.

The CSS styles in which the elements are rendered should also work on the specialized topics without additional modifications.



The toolbar/menu actions should be customized to insert the correct element names if this is the case. You can go to the *DITA* document type from the Document Type Association page and edit the actions to insert the element names as specified in your specialization. See this section for more details.

## Use a new DITA Open Toolkit in <oXygen/>

Apply the following steps for using a new DITA Open Toolkit:

- Edit your transformation scenarios and in the "Parameters" tab change the value for the "dita.dir" directory to point to the new directory.
- If you want to use exclusively the libraries that come with the new DITA Open Toolkit you have to go to the "Advanced" tab, click the "Libraries" button, uncheck the checkbox "Allow <oXygen/> to add high priority libraries to classpath" and configure all libraries that will be used by the ANT process.
- If there are also changes in the DTD's and you want to use the new versions for content completion and validation, go to the <oXygen/> preferences in the Document Type Association page, edit the "DITA" and "DITA Map" document types and modify the catalog entry in the "Catalogs" tab to point to the custom "catalog-dita.xml".

## Reusing content

The DITA framework allows reusing content from other DITA files with a content reference in the following ways:

- You can select content in a topic, create a reusable component from it and reference the component in other locations using the actions *Create Reusable Component* and *Insert Reusable Component*. A reusable component is a file, usually shorter than a topic. You also have the option of replacing the selection with the component that you are in the process of creating.
- You can add, edit and remove a content reference (*conref*) attribute to/from an existing element. The actions *Add/Edit Content Reference* and *Remove Content Reference* are available on the contextual menu of the Author editor and on the DITA menu. When a content reference is added or an existing content reference is edited you can select any topic ID or interval of topic IDs (set also the *conrefend* field in the dialog for adding/editing the content reference) from a target DITA topic file.
- You can insert an element with a content reference (*conref* or *conkeyref*) attribute using one of the actions *Insert Content Reference* and *Insert Content Key Reference* that are available on the DITA menu, the Author custom actions toolbar and the contextual menu of the Author editor.

DITA makes the distinction between local content, that is the text and graphics that are actually present in the element, and referenced content that is referred by the element but is located in a different file. You have the option of displaying referenced content by setting the option *Display referred content* that is available from menu Options → Preferences+Editor+Pages+Author.

## Working with content references

The DITA feature called *conref* (short for "content reference") enables a piece of content to be included by reference in multiple contexts. When you need to update that content, you need to update it in only one place. Typical uses of content references are for product names, warnings, definitions or process steps.

You can use either or both of the following strategies for managing content references:

- Reusable components: With this strategy, you create a new file for each piece of content that you want to reuse.


- Arbitrary content references: You may prefer to keep many pieces of reusable content in one file. For example, you might want one file to consist of a list of product names, with each product name in a "phrase" (<ph> element) within the file. Then, wherever you need to display a product name, you can insert a content reference that points to the appropriate <ph> element in this file.

This strategy requires more setup than Reusable Components, but makes easier centrally managing the reused content.

<oXygen/> XML Author creates a reference to the external content by adding a *conref* attribute to an element in the local document. The *conref* attribute defines a link to the referenced content, made up of a path to the file and the topic ID within the file. The path may also reference a specific element ID within the topic. Referenced content is not physically copied to the referencing file, but <oXygen/> XML Author displays it as if it is there in the referencing file. You can also choose to view local content instead of referenced content, to edit the attributes or contents of the referencing element.

## Reusable component

When you need to reuse a part of a DITA topic in different places (in the same topic or in different topics) it is recommended to create a separate component and insert only a reference to the new component in all places. Below are the steps for extracting a reusable component, inserting a reference to the component and quickly editing the content inside the component.

1. Select with the mouse the content that you want to reuse in the DITA file opened in Author mode.
2. Start the action *Create Reusable Component* that is available on the DITA menu, the Author framework actions toolbar and the contextual menu of the Author editor.
3. In the combo box *Reuse Content* select the DITA element with the content that you want to extract in a separate component. The combo box contains the current DITA element where the cursor is located (for example a *p* element - a paragraph - or a *step* or a *tbody* or a *tbody* etc.) and also all the ancestor elements of the current element.
4. In the *Description* area you should enter a textual description for quick identification by other users of the component.
5. If you want to replace the extracted content with a reference to the new component you should leave the checkbox *Replace selection with content reference* with the default value (selected).
6. Press the *Save* button which will open a file system dialog where you have to select the folder and enter the name of the file that will store the reusable component.
7. Press the *Save* button in the file system dialog to save the the reusable component in a file. If the checkbox was selected in the *Create Reusable Component* dialog the *conref* attribute will be added to the element that was extracted as a separate component. In Author mode the content that is referenced by the *conref* attribute is displayed with grey background and is read-only because it is stored in other file.
8. Optionally, to insert a reference to the same component in other location just place the cursor at the insert location and run the action *Insert Reusable Component* that is available on the DITA menu, the Author framework actions toolbar and the contextual menu of the Author editor. Just select in the file system dialog the file that stores the component and press the *OK* button. The action will add a *conref* attribute to the DITA element at the insert location. The referenced content will be displayed in Author mode with grey background to indicate that it is not editable.
9. Optionally, to edit the content inside the component just click on the open icon  at the start of the grey background area which will open the component in a separate editor.

## Insert a direct content reference

You should follow these steps for inserting an element with a content reference (*conref*) attribute that points to an element that is not in a reusable component file.

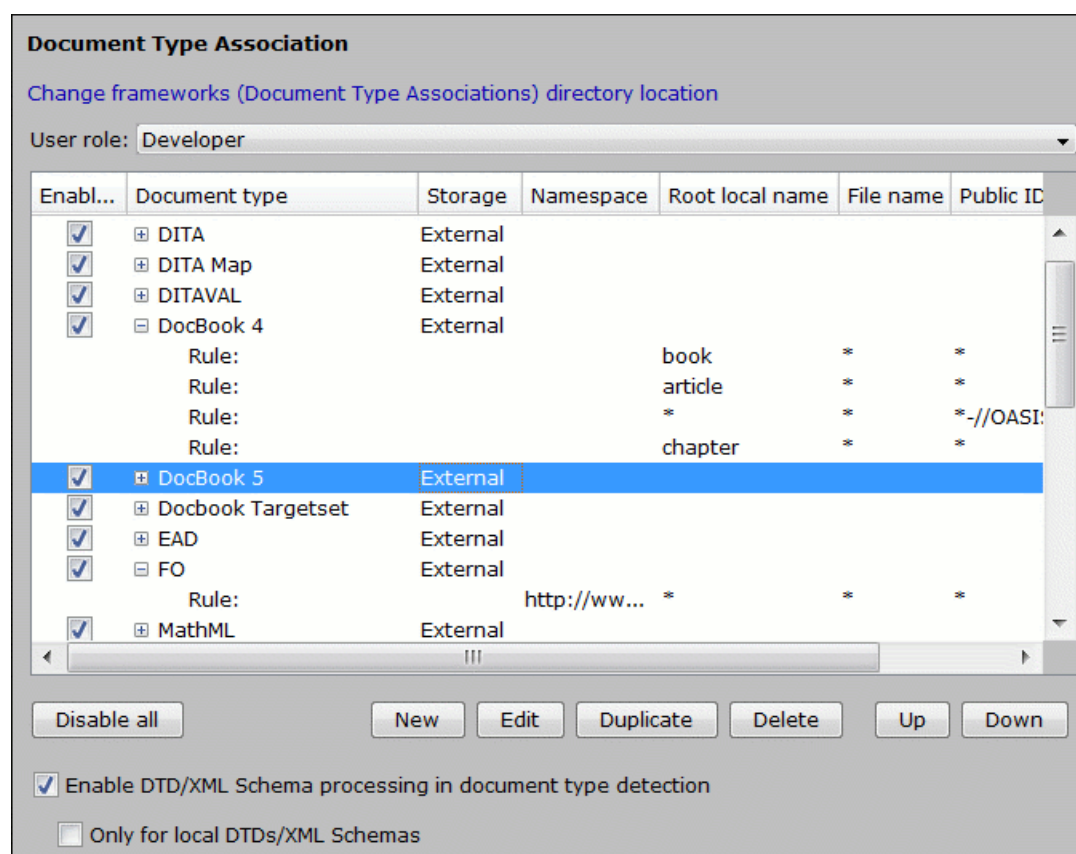
1. Start one of the actions *Insert a DITA Content Reference* and *Insert a DITA Content Key Reference*.
2. In the dialog *Insert Content Reference* select the file with the referenced content in the *URL* field.
3. In the tree that presents the DITA elements of the specified file that have an *id* attribute you have to select the element or the interval of elements that you want to reference. The *conref* field will be filled automatically with the *id* value of the selected element. If you select an interval of elements the *conrefend* field will be filled with the *id* value of the element that ends the selected interval.
4. Press the OK button to insert in the current DITA file an element with the same name and with the same *conref* attribute value (and optionally with the same *conrefend* attribute value) as the element(s) selected in the dialog.

# Chapter 7. Predefined document types

A document type is associated to an XML file according to its defined rules and it specifies many settings used to improve editing the category of XML files it applies for. These settings include specifying a default grammar used for validation and content completion, default scenarios used for transformation, specifying directories with file templates, specifying catalogs and a lot of settings which can be used to improve editing in the Tagless editor.

The tagless editor comes with some predefined document types already configured when the application is installed on the computer. These document types describe well-known XML frameworks largely used today for authoring XML documents. Editing a document which conforms to one of these types is as easy as opening it or creating it from one of the predefined document templates which also come with the application.

**Figure 7.1. Document Type preferences page**



## The DocBook V4 document type

**DocBook** is a very popular set of tags for describing books, articles, and other prose documents, particularly technical documentation.

### Association rules

A file is considered to be a DocBook document when either of the following occurs:

- root element name is a *book* or *article*;

- public id of the document contains *-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML*.

## Schema

The schema used for DocBook documents is in */\${frameworks}/docbook/dtd/docbookx.dtd*, where */\${frameworks}* is a subdirectory of the <Oxygen/> install directory.

## Author extensions

The CSS file used for rendering DocBook content is located in */\${frameworks}/docbook/css/docbook.css*.

Specific actions for DocBook documents are:

- **B** Bold emphasized text - emphasizes the selected text by surrounding it with *<emphasis role="bold"/>* tag.
- *I* Italic emphasized text - emphasizes the selected text by surrounding it with *<emphasis role="italic"/>* tag.
- U Underline emphasized text - emphasizes the selected text by surrounding it with *<emphasis role="italic"/>* tag.



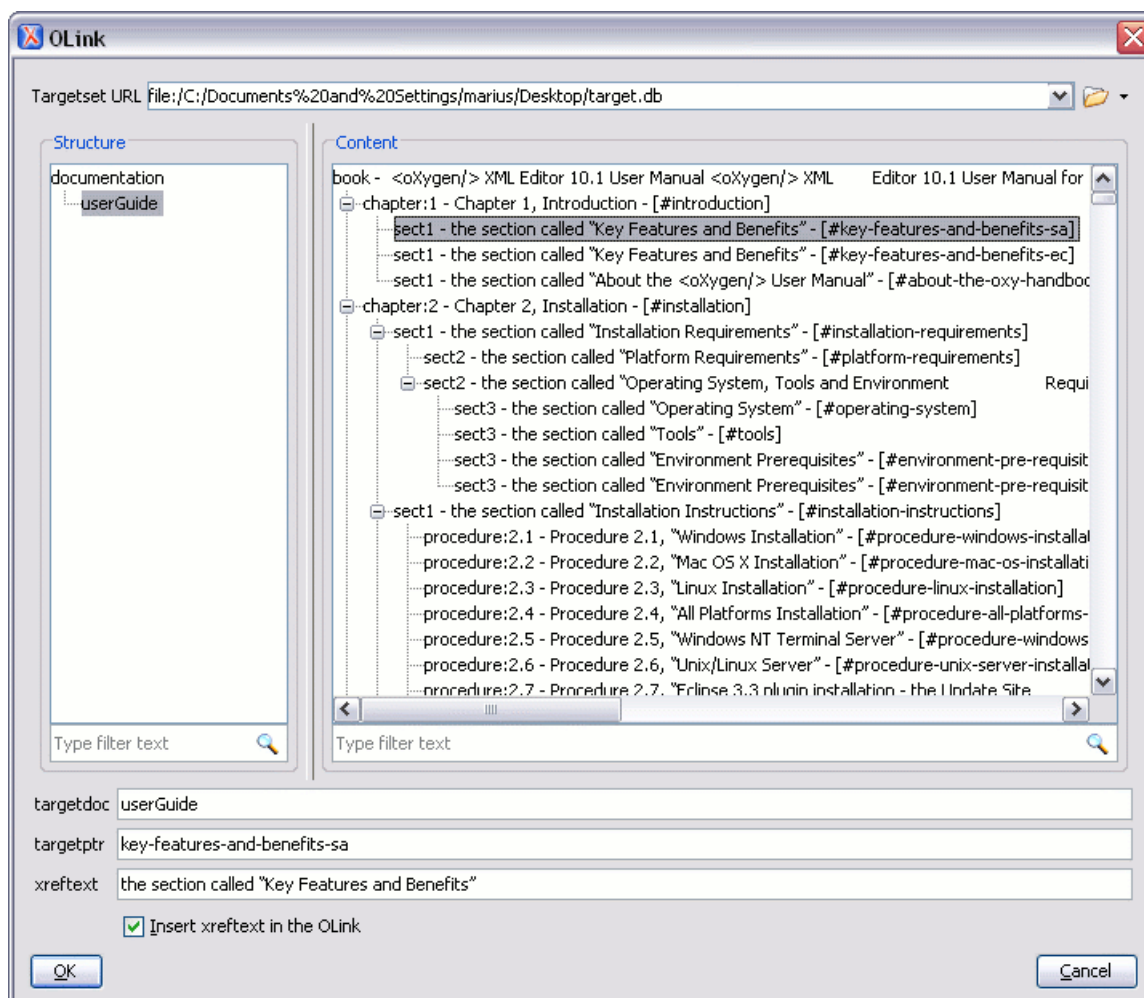
### Note

For all of the above actions if there is no selection then a new 'emphasis' tag with specific role will be inserted. These actions are available in any document context.

These actions are grouped under the *Emphasize* toolbar actions group.

- link - inserts a hypertext link.
- ulink - inserts a link that address its target by means of an URL (Universal Resource Locator).
- olink - inserts a link that address its target indirectly, using the *targetdoc* and *targetptr* values which are present in a *Targetset* file.

Figure 7.2. Insert OLink Dialog










After you choose the Targetset URL the structure of the target documents is presented. For each target document (targetdoc) the content is displayed allowing for easy identification of the targetptr for the olink element which will be inserted. You can use the Search fields to quickly identify a target. If you already know the values for the targetdoc and targetptr you can insert them directly in the corresponding fields. You have also the possibility to edit an olink using the action **Edit OLink** available on the contextual menu. The action make sense only if the dialog was already displayed with a proper Targetset.

- uri - inserts an URI element. The URI identifies a Uniform Resource Identifier (URI) in content.
- xref - inserts a cross reference to another part of the document. The initial content of the xref is automatically detected from the target.

### Note









These actions are grouped under the *Link* toolbar actions group.





- § Insert Section - inserts a new section/subsection in the document, depending on the current context. For example if the current context is *sect1* then a *sect2* will be inserted and so on.

-  Insert Paragraph - inserts a new paragraph depending on the current context. If current context is a paragraph context (one of the ancestors of the element at caret position is 'para') then a new paragraph will be inserted after the paragraph at caret. Otherwise a new paragraph is inserted at caret position.
-  Insert Graphic - inserts a graphic object at the caret position. This is done by inserting either `<figure>` or `<inlinegraphic>` element depending on the current context. The following graphical formats are supported: GIF, JPG, JPEG, BMP, PNG, SVG.
-  Insert Ordered List - inserts an ordered list with one list item.
-  Insert Itemized List - inserts an itemized list with one list item.
-  Insert Variable List - inserts a DocBook variable list with one list item.
-  Insert List Item - inserts a new list item for in any of the above three list types.
-  Insert Table - opens a dialog that allows you to configure the table to be inserted. The dialog allows the user to configure the number of rows and columns of the table, if the header and footer will be generated and how the table will be framed. Also, *CALS* or *HTML* table model can be selected.

## Note

Unchecking the *Title* checkbox an 'informaltable' element will be inserted.

-  Insert Row - inserts a new table row with empty cells. The action is available when the caret position is inside a table.
-  Insert Column - inserts a new table column with empty cells after the current column. The action is available when the caret position is inside a table.
-  Insert Cell - inserts a new empty cell depending on the current context. If the caret is positioned between two cells, a new one will be inserted at caret's position. If the caret is inside a cell, then the new one will be created after the current cell.
-  Delete Column - deletes the table column where the caret is located.
-  Delete Row - deletes the table row where the caret is located.
-  Join Row Cells - joins the content of the selected cells. The operation is available if the selected cells are from the same row and they have the same row span. The action is also available when the selection is missing, but the caret is positioned between two cells.
-  Join Cell Above - joins the content of cell from current caret position with that of the cell above it. Note that this action works only if both cells have the same column span.
-  Join Cell Below - joins the content of cell from current caret position with that of the cell below it. Note that this action works only if both cells have the same column span.

-  Split Cell To The Left - splits the cell from current caret position in two, inserting a new empty table cell to the left. Note that this action works only if the current cell spans over more than one column. The column span of the source cell will be decreased with one.
-  Split Cell To The Right - splits the cell from current caret position in two, inserting a new empty table cell to the right. Note that this action works only if the current cell spans over more than one column. The column span of the source cell will be decreased with one.
-  Split Cell Above - splits the cell from current caret position in two, inserting a new empty table cell above. Note that this action works only if the current cell spans over more than one row. The row span of the source cell will be decreased with one.
-  Split Cell Below - splits the cell from current caret position in two, inserting a new empty table cell below. Note that this action works only if the current cell spans over more than one row. The row span of the source cell will be decreased with one.

### Note

DocBook v4 supports only CALS table model. HTML table model is supported in DocBook v5.

### Caution

Column specifications are required for table actions to work properly.

- Generate IDs -allows you to generate ID for the current selection or for the element at caret position if the element appears in **ID Generation** dialog.

In this dialog you can specify the elements for which <oXygen/> should generate an ID. You can choose to automatically generate an ID for these elements by selecting Auto generate ID's for elements. You can choose a pattern for the generated ID using the field ID Pattern. If the element already has an ID, this ID is preserved.

All actions described above are available in the contextual menu, main menu (**Docbook4** submenu) and in the **Author custom actions** toolbar.

## Templates

Default templates are available for DocBook 4. They are stored in `${frameworksDir}/docbook/templates/Docbook 4` folder and they can be used for easily creating a book or article with or without XInclude.

These templates are available when creating new documents from templates.

|                                   |                                      |
|-----------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| Docbook 4 - Article               | New Docbook 4 Article                |
| Docbook 4 - Article with XInclude | New Docbook 4 XInclude-aware Article |
| Docbook 4 -Book                   | New Docbook 4 Book                   |
| Docbook 4 -Book with XInclude     | New Docbook 4 XInclude-aware Book    |

## Catalogs

The default catalog is stored in `${frameworksDir}/docbook/catalog.xml`.



## Transformation Scenarios

The following default transformation scenarios are available:

- **DocBook4 -> DocBook5 Conversion** - converts a DocBook4-compliant document to DocBook5;
- **DocBook HTML** - transforms a DocBook document into a HTML document;
- **DocBook PDF** - transforms a DocBook document into a PDF document using the Apache FOP engine.
- **DocBook HTML - chunk** - transforms a DocBook document in multiple HTML documents.

## The DocBook V5 document type

Customization for DocBook V.5 is similar with that for DocBook V.4 with the following exceptions:

### Association rules

A file is considered to be a DocBook V.5 document when the namespace is 'http://docbook.org/ns/docbook'.

### Schema

DocBook v5 documents use a RelaxNG and Schematron schema located in `/${frameworks}/docbook/5.0/rng/docbookxi.rng`, where `/${frameworks}` is a subdirectory of the `<oxygen/>` install directory.

### Author extensions

DocBook 5 extensions contain all DocBook 4 extensions plus support for HTML table.

### Templates

Default templates are available for DocBook 5. They are stored in `/${frameworksDir}/docbook/templates/Docbook5` folder and they can be used for easily creating a book or article with or without XInclude.

These templates are available when creating new documents from templates.

|                                   |                                      |
|-----------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| Docbook 5 - Article               | New Docbook 5 Article                |
| Docbook 5 - Article with XInclude | New Docbook 5 XInclude-aware Article |
| Docbook 5 -Book                   | New Docbook 5 Book                   |
| Docbook 5 -Book with XInclude     | New Docbook 5 XInclude-aware Book    |

### Catalogs

The default catalog is stored in `/${frameworksDir}/docbook/5.0/catalog.xml`.

## Transformation Scenarios

The following default transformation scenarios are available:

- **DocBook HTML** - transforms a DocBook document into HTML document;

- **DocBook PDF** - transforms a DocBook document into a PDF document using the Apache FOP engine.
- **DocBook HTML - chunk** - transforms a DocBook document in multiple HTML documents.

## The DocBook Targetset document type

This document type is provided to edit or create a targetset file which is used to resolve cross references with olinks.

### Association rules

A file is considered to be a DocBook Targetset document when the root name is 'targetset'.

### Schema

DocBook Targetset documents use a DTD and schema located in `/${frameworks}/docbook/xsl/common/targetdatabase.dtd`, where `/${frameworks}` is a subdirectory of the <Oxygen/> install directory.

### Author extensions

#### Templates

A default template is available for DocBook Targetset. It is stored in `/${frameworksDir}/docbook/templates/Targetset` folder and can be used for easily creating a targetset.

This template is available when creating new documents from templates.

Docbook Targetset - Map

New Targetset Map

## The DITA Topics document type

The Darwin Information Typing Architecture (DITA) is an XML-based architecture for authoring, producing, and delivering technical information. It divides content into small, self-contained topics that can be reused in different deliverables. The extensibility of DITA permits organizations to define specific information structures and still use standard tools to work with them.

### Association rules

A file is considered to be a dita topic document when either of the following occurs:

- root element name is one of the following: *concept*, *task*, *reference*, *dita*, *topic*;
- public id of the document is one of the public id's for the elements above.
- the root element of the file has an attribute named "DITAArchVersion" attribute from the "http://dita.oasis-open.org/architecture/2005/" namespace. This enhanced case of matching is only applied when the *Enable DTD processing* option from the Document Type Detection option page is enabled.

### Schema

The default schema used for DITA topic documents is located in `/${frameworks}/dita/dtd/ditabase.dtd`, where `/${frameworks}` is a subdirectory of the <Oxygen/> install directory.

## Author extensions

The CSS file used for rendering DITA content is located in `$(frameworks)/dita/css/dita.css`.

Specific actions for DITA topic documents are:

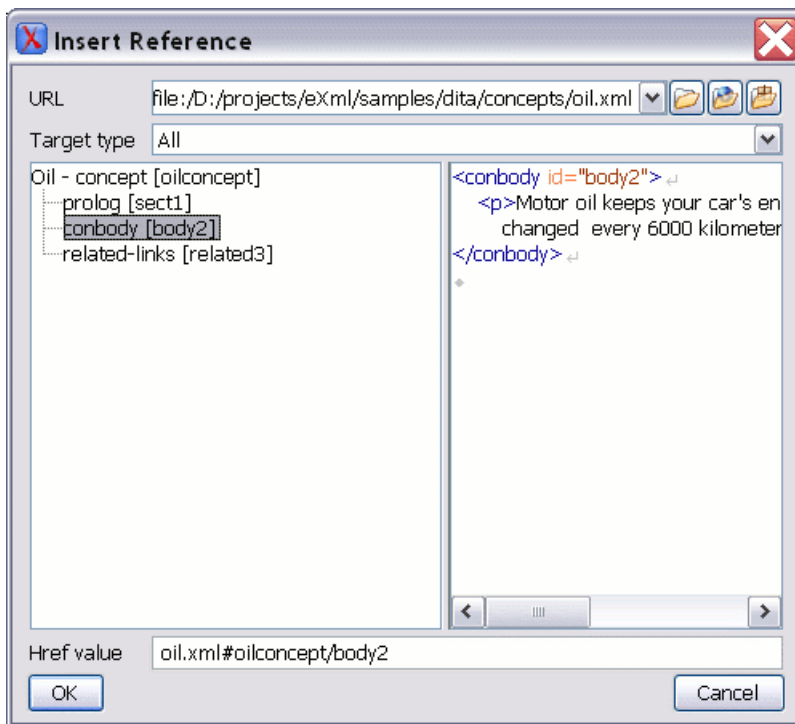
- **B** Bold - surrounds the selected text with *b* tag.
- *I* Italic - surrounds the selected text with *i* tag.
- U Underline - surrounds the selected text with *u* tag.

### Note

For all of the above actions if there is no selection then a new specific tag will be inserted. These actions are available in any document context.

- Cross Reference - inserts an *xref* element with the value of attribute *format* set to "dita". The target of the *xref* is selected in a dialog which lists all the IDs available in a file selected by the user.

**Figure 7.3. Insert a cross reference in a DITA document**



- Key Reference - inserts a user specified element with the value of attribute *keyref* attribute set to a specific key name. As stated in the DITA 1.2 specification keys can be defined at map level which can be then referenced. The target of the *keyref* is selected in a dialog which lists all the keys available in the current opened map from the DITA Maps Manager.

You can also reference elements at sub-topic level by pressing the Sub-topic button and choosing the target.




## **Important**





All keys which are presented in the dialog are gathered from the current opened DITA Map. Elements which have the `keyref` attribute set are displayed as links. The current opened DITA Map is also used to resolve references when navigating keyref links in the Author page. Image elements which use key references are rendered as images.

- File Reference - inserts an *xref* element with the value of attribute *format* set to "xml".
- Web Link - inserts an *xref* element with the value of attribute *format* set to "html", and *scope* set to "external".
- Related Link to Topic - inserts a *link* element inside a *related-links* parent.
- Related Link to File - inserts a *link* element with the *format* attribute set to "xml" inside a *related-links* parent.
- Related Link to Web Page - inserts a *link* element with the attribute *format* set to "html" and *scope* set to "external" inside a *related-links* parent.

## **Note**

The actions for inserting references described above are grouped inside *link* toolbar actions group.

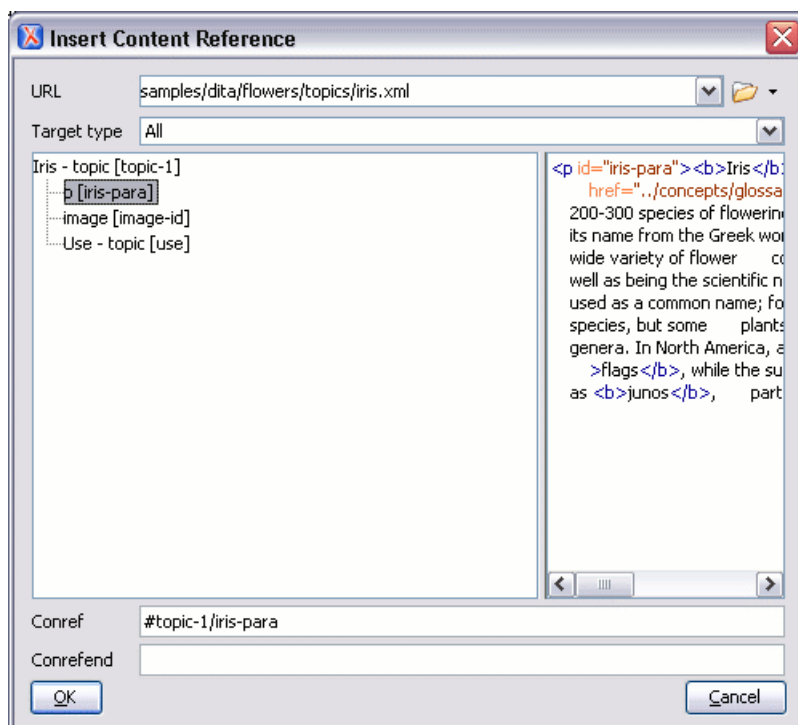
-  **§** Insert Section/Step - inserts a new section/step in the document, depending on the current context. A new section will be inserted in either one of the following contexts:
  - section context, when the value of 'class' attribute of the current element or one of its ancestors contains 'topic' or 'section'.
  - topic's body context, when the value of 'class' attribute of the current element contains 'topic/body'.A new step will be inserted in either one of the following contexts:
  - task step context, when the value of 'class' attribute of the current element or one of its ancestors contains 'task/step'.
  - task steps context, when the value of 'class' attribute of the current element contains 'task/steps'.
-  **¶** Insert Paragraph - inserts a new paragraph depending on the current context. If current context is a paragraph context (the value of 'class' attribute of the current element or one of its ancestors contains 'topic/p') then a new paragraph will be inserted after this paragraph. Otherwise a new paragraph is inserted at caret position.
-  **CONC** Insert Concept - inserts a new concept. Concepts provide background information that users must know before they can successfully work with a product or interface. This action is available in one of the following contexts:
  - concept context, one of the current element ancestors is a *concept*. In this case an empty *concept* will be inserted after the current *concept*.
  - concept or dita context, current element is a *concept* or *dita*. In this case an empty *concept* will be inserted at current caret position.
  - dita topic context, current element is a *topic* child of a *dita* element. In this case an empty *concept* will be inserted at current caret position.

- dita topic context, one of the current element ancestors is a dita's *topic*. In this case an empty *concept* will be inserted after the first *topic* ancestor.
-  Insert Task - inserts a new task. Tasks are the main building blocks for task-oriented user assistance. They generally provide step-by-step instructions that will enable a user to perform a task. This action is available in one of the following contexts:
  - task context, one of the current element ancestors is a *task*. In this case an empty *task* will be inserted after the last child of the first *concept*'s ancestor.
  - task context, the current element is a *task*. In this case an empty *task* will be inserted at current caret position.
  - topic context, the current element is a *dita*'s *topic*. An empty *task* will be inserted at current caret position.
  - topic context, one of the current element ancestors is a *dita*'s *topic*. An empty *task* will be inserted after the last child of the first ancestor that is a *topic*.
-  Insert Reference - inserts a new reference in the document. A reference is a top-level container for a reference topic. This action is available in one of the following contexts:
  - reference context, one of the current element ancestors is a *reference*. In this case an empty *reference* will be inserted after the last child of the first ancestor that is a *reference*.
  - *reference* or *dita* context, the current element is either a *dita* or a *reference*. An empty *reference* will be inserted at caret position.
  - topic context, the current element is *topic* descendant of *dita* element. An empty *reference* will be inserted at caret position.
  - topic context, the current element is descendant of *dita* element and descendant of *topic* element. An empty *reference* will be inserted after the last child of the first ancestor that is a *topic*.
-  Insert Graphic - inserts a graphic object at the caret position. This is done by inserting either `<figure>` or `<inlinemediaobject>` element depending on the current context.. The following graphical formats are supported: GIF, JPG, JPEG, BMP, PNG, SVG.
-  Insert Content Reference - inserts a content reference at the caret position.

The DITA `conref` attribute provides a mechanism for reuse of content fragments. The `conref` attribute stores a reference to another element and is processed to replace the referencing element with the referenced element. The element containing the content reference acts as a placeholder for the referenced element. The identifier for the referenced element must be either absolute or resolvable in the context of the referencing element. See here [<http://docs.oasis-open.org/dita/v1.0/archspec/conref.html>] for more details.


`<oXygen/>` will display the referred content of a DITA `conref` if it can resolve it to a valid resource. If you use URI's instead of local paths and you have a catalog used in the DITA OT transformation you can add the catalog to `<oXygen/>` and if the URI's can be resolved the referred content will be displayed.

A content reference is inserted with the action *Insert a DITA Content Reference* available on the toolbar *Author custom actions* and on the menu *DITA → Insert*.

**Figure 7.4. Insert Content Reference Dialog**

In the URL chooser you can choose the file from which you want to reuse content. Depending on the *Target type* filter you will see a tree of elements which can be referred (which have id's). For each element the XML content is shown in the preview area. The *Conref value* is computed automatically for the selected tree element. After pressing OK an element with the same name as the target element and having the attribute *conref* with the value specified in the *Conref value* field will be inserted at caret position.

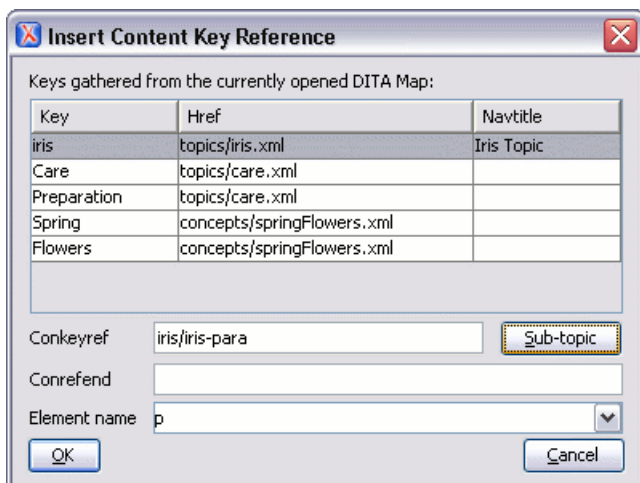
According to the DITA 1.2 specification the *conrefend* attribute can be used to specify content reference ranges. This is a very useful feature when referencing multiple consecutive steps or list items. If you use multiple contiguous sibling selection the *conrefend* value will also be set to the value of the last selected ID path. Oxygen will present the entire referenced range as read-only content.

-  Insert Content Key Reference - inserts a content key reference at the caret position.

As stated in the DITA 1.2 specification the *conkeyref* attribute provides a mechanism for reuse of content fragments similar with the *conref* mechanism. Keys are defined at map level which can be referenced using *conkeyref*. The *conkeyref* attribute contains a key reference to another element and is processed to replace the referencing element with the referenced element. The element containing the content key reference acts as a placeholder for the referenced element. The identifier for the referenced element must be either absolute or resolvable in the context of the referencing element.

<Oxygen/> will display the key referred content of a DITA *conkeyref* if it can resolve it to a valid resource in the context of the current opened DITA Map.

A content key reference is inserted with the action *Insert a DITA Content Key Reference* available on the toolbar *Author custom actions* and on the menu *DITA → Insert*.







**Figure 7.5. Insert Content Key Reference Dialog**











To reference target elements at sub-topic level just press the Sub-topic button and choose the target.

According to the DITA 1.2 specification the `conrefend` attribute can be used to specify content reference ranges. This is a very useful feature when referencing multiple consecutive steps or list items. If you use multiple contiguous sibling selection for IDs at sub-topic level the `conrefend` value will also be set to the value of the last selected ID path. Oxygen will present the entire referenced range as read-only content.

### Important

All keys which are presented in the dialog are gathered from the current opened DITA Map. Elements which have the `conkeyref` attribute set are displayed by default with the target content expanded. The current opened DITA Map is also used to resolve references when navigating `conkeyref` links in the Author page.

- Replace conref/conkeyref reference with content - Replace the content reference fragment or the conkeyref at caret position with the referenced content. This action is useful when you want to make changes to the content but decide to keep the referenced fragment unchanged.
-  Insert Ordered List - inserts an ordered list with one list item.
-  Insert Unordered List - inserts an unordered list with one list item.
-  Insert List Item - inserts a new list item for in any of the above two list types.
-  Insert Table - opens a dialog that allows you to configure the table to be inserted. The dialog allows the user to configure the number of rows and columns of the table, if the header will be generated, if the title will be added and how the table will be framed.
-  Insert Row - inserts a new table row with empty cells. The action is available when the caret position is inside a table.
-  Insert Column - inserts a new table column with empty cells after the current column. The action is available when the caret position is inside a table.

-  Insert Cell - inserts a new empty cell depending on the current context. If the caret is positioned between two cells, a new one will be inserted at caret's position. If the caret is inside a cell, then the new one will be created after the current cell.
-  Delete Column - deletes the table column where the caret is located.
-  Delete Row - deletes the table row where the caret is located.
-  Join Row Cells - joins the content of the selected cells. The operation is available if the selected cells are from the same row and they have the same row span. The action is also available when the selection is missing, but the caret is positioned between two cells.
-  Join Cell Above - joins the content of cell from current caret position with that of the cell above it. Note that this action works only if both cells have the same column span.
-  Join Cell Below - joins the content of cell from current caret position with that of the cell below it. Note that this action works only if both cells have the same column span.
-  Split Cell To The Left - splits the cell from current caret position in two, inserting a new empty table cell to the left. Note that this action works only if the current cell spans over more than one column. The column span of the source cell will be decreased with one.
-  Split Cell To The Right - splits the cell from current caret position in two, inserting a new empty table cell to the right. Note that this action works only if the current cell spans over more than one column. The column span of the source cell will be decreased with one.
-  Split Cell Above - splits the cell from current caret position in two, inserting a new empty table cell above. Note that this action works only if the current cell spans over more than one row. The row span of the source cell will be decreased with one.
-  Split Cell Below - splits the cell from current caret position in two, inserting a new empty table cell below. Note that this action works only if the current cell spans over more than one row. The row span of the source cell will be decreased with one.

### Note

DITA supports CALS table model similar with DocBook document type in addition to the *simpletable* element specific for DITA.

### Caution

Column specifications are required for table actions to work properly.

- Generate IDs - allows you to generate ID for the current selection or for the element at caret position if the element appears in **ID Generation** dialog.

In this dialog you can specify the elements for which <Oxygen/> should generate an ID. You can choose to automatically generate an ID for these elements by selecting Auto generate ID's for elements. You can choose a pattern for the generated ID using the field ID Pattern. If the element already has an ID, this ID is preserved.



All actions described above are available in the contextual menu, main menu (**DITA** submenu) and in the **Author custom actions** toolbar.

## Templates

Default templates available for DITA topics are stored in `${frameworksDir}/dita/templates/topic` folder. They can be used for easily creating a DITA's *concept*, *reference*, *task* or *topic*.

These templates are available when creating new documents from templates.

|                            |   |
|----------------------------|---|
| DITA - Composite           | New DITA Composite  |
| DITA - Concept             | New DITA Concept  |
| DITA - Glossentry          | New DITA Glossentry   |
| DITA - Reference           | New DITA Reference  |
| DITA - Task                | New DITA Task   |
| DITA - Topic               | New DITA Topic  |
| DITA - Learning Assessment | New DITA Learning Assessment (learning specialization in DITA 1.2). |
| DITA - Learning Content    | New DITA Learning Content (learning specialization in DITA 1.2).    |
| DITA - Learning Summary    | New DITA Learning Summary (learning specialization in DITA 1.2).    |
| DITA - Learning Overview   | New DITA Learning Overview (learning specialization in DITA 1.2).   |

## Catalogs

The default catalog is stored in `${frameworks}/dita/catalog.xml`.

## Transformation Scenarios

The following default transformation scenarios are available for DITA Topics:

- **DITA XHTML** - transforms a DITA topic to XHTML using DITA Open Toolkit 1.5 M24;
- **DITA PDF (Idiom FO Plugin)** - transforms a DITA topic to PDF using the DITA Open Toolkit 1.5 M24 and the Apache FOP engine.

## The DITA MAP document type

DITA maps are documents that collect and organize references to DITA topics to indicate the relationships among the topics. They can also serve as outlines or tables of contents for DITA deliverables and as build manifests for DITA projects.

Maps allow scalable reuse of content across multiple contexts. They can be used by information architects, writers, and publishers to plan, develop, and deliver content.

## Association rules

A file is considered to be a dita map document when either of the following occurs:

- root element name is one of the following: *map*, *bookmap*;
- public id of the document is *../OASIS//DTD DITA Map* or *../OASIS//DTD DITA BookMap*.
- the root element of the file has an attribute named "class" which contains the value "map/map" and a "DITAArchVersion" attribute from the "http://dita.oasis-open.org/architecture/2005/" namespace. This enhanced case of matching is only applied when the *Enable DTD processing* option from the Document Type Detection option page is enabled.











## Schema

The default schema used for DITA Map documents is located in */\${frameworks}/dita/DITA-OT/dtd/map.dtd*, where */\${frameworks}* is a subdirectory of the <oxygen/> install directory.

## Author extensions

The CSS file used for rendering DocBook content is located in */\${frameworks}/dita/css/dita.css*.

Specific actions for DITA Map documents are:

-  Insert Topic Reference - inserts a reference to a topic. You can find more information about this action here.
-  Insert Content Reference - inserts a content reference at the caret position. See more about this action here [138].
-  Insert Content Key Reference - inserts a content reference at the caret position. See more about this action here [139].
-  Insert Topic Heading - inserts a topic heading. You can find more information about this action here.
-  Insert Topic Group - inserts a topic group. You can find more information about this action here.
-  Insert Table - opens a dialog that allows you to configure the relationship table to be inserted. The dialog allows the user to configure the number of rows and columns of the relationship table, if the header will be generated and if the title will be added.
-  Insert Row - inserts a new table row with empty cells. The action is available when the caret position is inside a table.
-  Insert Column - inserts a new table column with empty cells after the current column. The action is available when the caret position is inside a table.
-  Delete Column - deletes the table column where the caret is located.
-  Delete Row - deletes the table row where the caret is located.

All actions described above are available in the contextual menu, main menu (**DITA** submenu) and in the **Author custom actions** toolbar.

## Templates

Default templates available for DITA Maps are stored in `${frameworksDir}/dita/templates/map` folder. They can be used for easily creating a DITA *map* and *bookmap* files.

These templates are available when creating new documents from templates.

|                             |   |
|-----------------------------|---|
| DITA Map - Bookmap          | New DITA Bookmap  |
| DITA Map - Map              | New DITA Map  |
| DITA Map - Learning Map     | New DITA learning and training content specialization map     |
| DITA Map - Learning Bookmap | New DITA learning and training content specialization bookmap |
| DITA Map - Eclipse Map      | New DITA learning and training content specialization bookmap |

## Catalogs

The default catalog is stored in `${frameworks}/dita/catalog.xml`.

## Transformation Scenarios

The following predefined transformation scenarios are available for DITA Maps:

- **DITA Map XHTML** - transforms a DITA Map to XHTML using DITA Open Toolkit 1.5 M24;
- **DITA Map PDF (Idiom FO Plugin)** - transforms a DITA Map to PDF using the DITA Open Toolkit 1.5 M24 and the Apache FOP engine.

## The XHTML document type

The Extensible HyperText Markup Language, or XHTML, is a markup language that has the same depth of expression as HTML, but also conforms to XML syntax.

## Association rules

A file is considered to be a XHTML document when the root element name is a *html*.

## Schema

The schema used for these documents is located in `${frameworks}/xhtml/dtd/xhtml1-strict.dtd`, where `${frameworks}` is a subdirectory of the `<oXygen/>` install directory.

## CSS

The default CSS options for the XHTML document type are set to merge the CSSs specified in the document with the CSSs defined in the XHTML document type.

## Author extensions












The CSS file used for rendering XHTML content is located in `${frameworks}/xhtml/css/xhtml.css`.








Specific actions are:

- **B** Bold - changes the style of the selected text to *bold* by surrounding it with *b* tag.
- *I* Italic - changes the style of the selected text to *italic* by surrounding it with *i* tag.
- U Underline - changes the style of the selected text to *underline* by surrounding it with *u* tag.

## **Note**

For all of the above actions if there is no selection then a new specific tag will be inserted. These actions are available in any document context.

- **H** Headings - groups actions for inserting *h1*, *h2*, *h3*, *h4*, *h5*, *h6* elements.
- ¶ Insert Paragraph - inserts a new paragraph depending on the current context. If current context is a paragraph context (one of the ancestors of the element at caret position is *p*) then a new paragraph will be inserted after the paragraph at caret. Otherwise a new paragraph is inserted at caret position.
-  Insert Graphic - inserts a graphic object at the caret position. This is done by inserting an *img* element regardless of the current context. The following graphical formats are supported: GIF, JPG, JPEG, BMP, PNG, SVG.
-  Insert Ordered List - inserts an ordered list (*ol* element) with one list item (*li* child element).
-  Insert Unordered List - inserts an unordered list (*ul* element) with one list item (*li* child element).
-  Insert Definition List - inserts a definition list (*dl* element) with one list item (a *dt* child element and a *dd* child element).
-  Insert List Item - inserts a new list item for in any of the above two list types.
-  Insert Table - opens a dialog that allows you to configure the table to be inserted. The dialog allows the user to configure the number of rows and columns of the table, if the header and footer will be generated and how the table will be framed.
-  Insert Row - inserts a new table row with empty cells. The action is available when the caret position is inside a table.
-  Insert Column - inserts a new table column with empty cells after the current column. The action is available when the caret position is inside a table.
-  Insert Cell - inserts a new empty cell depending on the current context. If the caret is positioned between two cells, a new one will be inserted at caret's position. If the caret is inside a cell, then the new one will be created after the current cell.
-  Delete Column - deletes the table column where the caret is located.
-  Delete Row - deletes the table row where the caret is located.

-  Join Row Cells - joins the content of the selected cells. The operation is available if the selected cells are from the same row and they have the same row span. The action is also available when the selection is missing, but the caret is positioned between two cells.
-  Join Cell Above - joins the content of cell from current caret position with that of the cell above it. Note that this action works only if both cells have the same column span.
-  Join Cell Below - joins the content of cell from current caret position with that of the cell below it. Note that this action works only if both cells have the same column span.
-  Split Cell To The Left - splits the cell from current caret position in two, inserting a new empty table cell to the left. Note that this action works only if the current cell spans over more than one column. The column span of the source cell will be decreased with one.
-  Split Cell To The Right - splits the cell from current caret position in two, inserting a new empty table cell to the right. Note that this action works only if the current cell spans over more than one column. The column span of the source cell will be decreased with one.
-  Split Cell Above - splits the cell from current caret position in two, inserting a new empty table cell above. Note that this action works only if the current cell spans over more than one row. The row span of the source cell will be decreased with one.
-  Split Cell Below - splits the cell from current caret position in two, inserting a new empty table cell below. Note that this action works only if the current cell spans over more than one row. The row span of the source cell will be decreased with one.

All actions described above are available in the contextual menu, main menu (**XHTML** submenu) and in the **Author custom actions** toolbar.

## Templates

Default templates are available for XHTML. They are stored in `${frameworksDir}/xhtml/templates` folder and they can be used for easily creating basic XHTML documents.

These templates are available when creating new documents from templates.

|   |   |
|---|---|
| XHTML - 1.0 Strict                            | New Strict XHTML 1.0                          |
| XHTML - 1.0 Transitional                      | New Transitional XHTML 1.0                    |
| XHTML - 1.1 DTD Based                         | New DTD-based XHTML 1.1                       |
| XHTML - 1.1 DTD Based + Math-ML 2.0 + SVG 1.1 | New XHTML 1.1 with MathML and SVG insertions. |
| XHTML - 1.1 Schema based                      | New XHTML 1.1 XML Schema based.               |

## Catalogs

There are three default catalogs for XHTML document type: `${frameworks}/xhtml/dtd/xhtmlcatalog.xml`, `${frameworks}/xhtml11/dtd/xhtmlcatalog.xml` and `${frameworks}/xhtml11/schema/xhtmlcatalog.xml`.

## Transformation Scenarios

The following default transformation scenarios are available for XHTML:

- **XHTML to DITA concept** - converts an XHTML document to a DITA concept document;
- **XHTML to DITA reference** - converts an XHTML document to a DITA reference document;
- **XHTML to DITA task** - converts an XHTML document to a DITA task document;
- **XHTML to DITA topic** - converts an XHTML document to a DITA topic document;

## The TEI P4 document type

The Text Encoding Initiative (TEI) Guidelines is an international and interdisciplinary standard that enables libraries, museums, publishers, and individual scholars to represent a variety of literary and linguistic texts for online research, teaching, and preservation.

### Association rules

A file is considered to be a TEI P4 document when either of the following occurs:

- the root's local name is **TEI.2**
- the document's public id is **-//TEI P4**

### Schema

The DTD schema used for these documents is located in `/${frameworks}/tei/tei2.xml.dtd`, where `/${frameworks}` is a subdirectory of the <Oxygen/> install directory.

### Author extensions

The CSS file used for rendering TEI P4 content is located in `/${frameworks}/tei/xml/tei/css/tei_oxygen.css`.

















Specific actions are:




- **B** Bold - changes the style of the selected text to *bold* by surrounding it with *hi* tag and setting the *rend* attribute to *bold*.
- **I** Italic - changes the style of the selected text to *italic* by surrounding it with *hi* tag and setting the *rend* attribute to *italic*.
- **U** Underline - changes the style of the selected text to *underline* by surrounding it with *hi* tag and setting the *rend* attribute to *ul*.



#### Note

For all of the above actions if there is no selection then a new specific tag will be inserted. These actions are available in any document context.

-  Insert Section - inserts a new section/subsection, depending on the current context. For example if the current context is *div1* then a *div2* will be inserted and so on.
-  Insert Paragraph - inserts a new paragraph depending on the current context. If current context is a paragraph context (one of the ancestors of the element at caret position is *p*) then a new paragraph will be inserted after the paragraph at caret. Otherwise a new paragraph is inserted at caret position.
-  Insert Image - inserts a graphic object at the caret position. The following dialog is displayed allowing the user to specify the *entity* that refers the image itself:
-  Insert Ordered List - inserts an ordered list (*list* element with *type* attribute set to *ordered*) with one list item (*item* element).
-  Insert Itemized List - inserts an unordered list (*list* element with *type* attribute set to *bulleted*) with one list item (*item* element).
-  Insert List Item - inserts a new list item for in any of the above two list types.
-  Insert Table - opens a dialog that allows you to configure the table to be inserted. The dialog allows the user to configure the number of rows and columns of the table and if the header will be generated.
-  Insert Row - inserts a new table row with empty cells. The action is available when the caret position is inside a table.
-  Insert Column - inserts a new table column with empty cells after the current column. The action is available when the caret position is inside a table.
-  Insert Cell - inserts a new empty cell depending on the current context. If the caret is positioned between two cells, a new one will be inserted at caret's position. If the caret is inside a cell, then the new one will be created after the current cell.
-  Delete Column - deletes the table column where the caret is located.
-  Delete Row - deletes the table row where the caret is located.
-  Join Row Cells - joins the content of the selected cells. The operation is available if the selected cells are from the same row and they have the same row span. The action is also available when the selection is missing, but the caret is positioned between two cells.
-  Join Cell Above - joins the content of cell from current caret position with that of the cell above it. Note that this action works only if both cells have the same column span.
-  Join Cell Below - joins the content of cell from current caret position with that of the cell below it. Note that this action works only if both cells have the same column span.
-  Split Cell To The Left - splits the cell from current caret position in two, inserting a new empty table cell to the left. Note that this action works only if the current cell spans over more than one column. The column span of the source cell will be decreased with one.

-  Split Cell To The Right - splits the cell from current caret position in two, inserting a new empty table cell to the right. Note that this action works only if the current cell spans over more than one column. The column span of the source cell will be decreased with one.
-  Split Cell Above - splits the cell from current caret position in two, inserting a new empty table cell above. Note that this action works only if the current cell spans over more than one row. The row span of the source cell will be decreased with one.
-  Split Cell Below - splits the cell from current caret position in two, inserting a new empty table cell below. Note that this action works only if the current cell spans over more than one row. The row span of the source cell will be decreased with one.
- Generate IDs - allows you to generate ID for the current selection or for the element at caret position if the element appears in **ID Generation** dialog.

In this dialog you can specify the elements for which <oxygen/> should generate an ID. You can choose to automatically generate an ID for these elements by selecting Auto generate ID's for elements. You can choose a pattern for the generated ID using the field ID Pattern. If the element already has an ID, this ID is preserved.

All actions described above are available in the contextual menu, main menu (**TEI P4** submenu) and in the **Author custom actions** toolbar.

## Templates

Default templates are available for XHTML. They are stored in `${frameworksDir}/tei/templates/TEI P4` folder and they can be used for easily creating basic TEI P4 documents.

These templates are available when creating new documents from templates.

|                       |                               |
|-----------------------|-------------------------------|
| TEI P4 - Lite         | New TEI P4 Lite.              |
| TEI P4 - New Document | New TEI P4 standard document. |

## Catalogs

There are two default catalogs for TEI P4 document type: `${frameworks}/tei/xml/teip4/schema/dtd/catalog.xml` and `${frameworks}/tei/xml/teip4/custom/schema/dtd/catalog.xml`.

## Transformation Scenarios

The following default transformations are available:

- **TEI HTML** - transforms a TEI document into a HTML document;
- **TEI P4 -> TEI P5 Conversion** - convert a TEI P4 document into a TEI P5 document;
- **TEI PDF** - transforms a TEI document into a PDF document using the Apache FOP engine.

## The TEI P5 document type

Customization for TEI P5 is similar with that for TEI P4 with the following exceptions:



## Association rules

A file is considered to be a TEI P5 document when the namespace is *http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0*.

## Schema

The RNG schema used for these documents is located in *#{frameworks}/tei/xml/tei/custom/schema/relaxng/tei\_all-Plus.rng*, where *#{frameworks}* is a subdirectory of the <oxygen/> install directory.

## Author extensions

The CSS file used for rendering TEI P5 content and custom actions are the same with those configured for TEI P4.

## Templates

Default templates are available for TEI P5. They are stored in *#{frameworksDir}/tei/templates/TEI P5* folder and they can be used for easily creating basic TEI P5 documents.

These templates are available when creating new documents from templates.

|                   |                                 |
|-------------------|---------------------------------|
| TEI P5 - All      | New TEI P5 All.                 |
| TEI P5 - Bare     | New TEI P5 Bare.                |
| TEI P5 - Lite     | New TEI P5 Lite.                |
| TEI P5 - Math     | New TEI P5 Math.                |
| TEI P5 - Speech   | New TEI P5 Speech.              |
| TEI P5 - SVG      | New TEI P5 with SVG extensions. |
| TEI P5 - XInclude | New TEI P5 XInclude aware.      |

## Catalogs

XML catalogs used for TEI P4 are used also for TEI P5.

## Transformation Scenarios

The following default transformations are available:

- **TEI P5 XHTML** - transforms a TEI document into a XHTML document;
- **TEI P5 PDF** - transforms a TEI document into a PDF document using the Apache FOP engine.

## The MathML document type

Mathematical Markup Language (MathML) is an application of XML for describing mathematical notations and capturing both its structure and content. It aims at integrating mathematical formulae into World Wide Web documents.

<oxygen/> offers support for editing and validating MathML 2.0 documents.

## Association rules

A file is considered to be a MathML document when the root element name is a *math* or its namespace is `http://www.w3.org/1998/Math/MathML`.

## Schema

The schema used for these documents is located in `/${frameworks}/mathml2/dtd/mathml2.dtd`, where `/${frameworks}` is a subdirectory of the `<oXygen/>` install directory.

## Templates

Default templates are available for MathML. They are stored in the `/${frameworksDir}/mathml2/templates` folder.

These templates are available when creating new documents from templates.

MathML - Equation      Simple MathML template file.

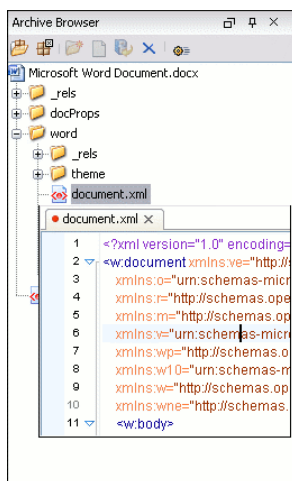
## The Microsoft Office OOXML document type

Office Open XML (also referred to as OOXML or OpenXML) is a free and open Ecma [<http://www.ecma-international.org/publications/standards/Ecma-376.htm>] international standard document format, and a proposed ISO/IEC standard for representing spreadsheets, charts, presentations and word processing documents.

OOXML uses a file package conforming to the Open Packaging Convention. This format uses the ZIP file format and contains the individual files that form the basis of the document. In addition to Office markup, the package can also include embedded files such as images, videos, or other documents.

`<oXygen/>` offers support for editing, transforming and validating documents composing the OOXML package directly through the archive support.

**Figure 7.6. Editing OOXML packages in `<oXygen/>`**



## Association rules

A file is considered to be an OOXML document when it has one of the following namespaces:

- <http://schemas.openxmlformats.org/wordprocessingml/2006/main>
- <http://schemas.openxmlformats.org/package/2006/content-types>
- <http://schemas.openxmlformats.org/drawingml/2006/main>
- <http://schemas.openxmlformats.org/package/2006/metadata/core-properties>
- <http://schemas.openxmlformats.org/package/2006/relationships>
- <http://schemas.openxmlformats.org/presentationml/2006/main>
- <http://schemas.openxmlformats.org/officeDocument/2006/custom-properties>
- <http://schemas.openxmlformats.org/officeDocument/2006/extended-properties>
- <http://schemas.openxmlformats.org/spreadsheetml/2006/main>
- <http://schemas.openxmlformats.org/drawingml/2006/chart>

## Schema

The NVDL schema used for these documents is located in `/${frameworks}/ooxml/schemas/main.nvdl`, where `/${frameworks}` is a subdirectory of the <code>oXygen</code> install directory. The schema can be easily customized to allow user defined extension schemas for use in the OOXML files. See the Markup Compatibility and Extensibility [http://www.ecma-international.org/news/TC45\_current\_work/Office%20Open%20XML%20Part%205%20-%20Markup%20Compatibility%20and%20Extensibility.pdf] Ecma PDF document for more details.

## Templates

Default templates are available for OOXML. They are stored in the `/${frameworksDir}/ooxml/templates` folder.

These templates are available when creating new documents from templates.

OOXML - Microsoft Excel Workbook      Simple Microsoft Excel *XLSX* template file.

OOXML - Microsoft PowerPoint Presentation      Simple Microsoft PowerPoint *PPTX* template file.

OOXML - Microsoft Word Document      Simple Microsoft Word *DOCX* template file.

## The Open Office ODF document type

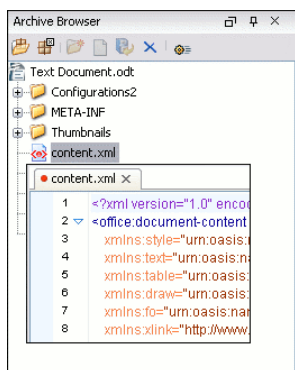
The OpenDocument format (ODF) is a free and open file format for electronic office documents, such as spreadsheets, charts, presentations and word processing documents. The standard [http://www.oasis-open.org/committees/office/] was developed by the Open Office XML technical committee of the Organization for the Advancement of Structured Information Standards (OASIS) consortium and based on the XML format originally created and implemented by the OpenOffice.org office suite.

A basic OpenDocument file consists of an XML document that has <code>document</code> as its root element. OpenDocument files can also take the format of a ZIP compressed archive containing a number of files and directories; these can contain binary content and benefit from ZIP's lossless compression to reduce file size. OpenDocument benefits from

separation of concerns by separating the content, styles, metadata and application settings into four separate XML files.

<oXygen/> offers support for editing, manipulating and validating documents composing the ODF package directly through the archive support.

**Figure 7.7. Editing ODF packages in <oXygen/>**



## Association rules

A file is considered to be an ODF document when it has the following namespace: `urn:oasis:names:tc:open-document:xmlns:office:1.0`

## Schema

The RelaxNG schema used for these documents is located in `${frameworks}/odf/schemas/OpenDocument-schema-v1.1.rng`, where `${frameworks}` is a subdirectory of the <oXygen/> install directory.

## Templates

Default templates are available for ODF. They are stored in the `${frameworksDir}/odf/templates` folder.

These templates are available when creating new documents from templates.

ODF - Presentation                      Simple Open Office Presentation *ODP* template file.

ODF - Spreadsheet                      Simple Open Office Spreadsheet *ODS* template file.

ODF - Text Document                      Simple Open Office Text Document *ODT* template file.

## The OASIS XML Catalog document type

The OASIS [<http://www.oasis-open.org/committees/entity/spec-2001-08-06.html>] XML catalog is a document describing a mapping between external entity references or URI's and locally-cached equivalents. You can read more about using catalogs in <oXygen/> [here](#).

## Association rules

A file is considered to be an XML Catalog document when it has the following namespace: `urn:oasis:names:tc:entity:xmlns:xml:catalog` or when its root element name is `catalog`.

## Schema

The OASIS 1.1 XSD schema used for these documents is located in `/${frameworks}/xml/catalog1.1.xsd`, where `/${frameworks}` is a subdirectory of the `<oXygen/>` install directory.

## Templates

Default templates are available for XML catalogs creation. They are stored in the `/${frameworksDir}/xml/templates` folder.

These templates are available when creating new documents from templates.

OASIS XML Catalog - 1.0            Sample OASIS 1.0 XML Catalog.

OASIS XML Catalog - 1.1            Sample OASIS 1.1 XML Catalog.

## The XML Schema document type

This document type is used to associated CSS stylesheets to an XML Schema so it can be visualized in the Author page.

## Association rules

A file is considered to be an XML Schema document when the root name is 'schema' and namespace is 'http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema'.

## Author extensions

The following CSS alternatives are proposed for visualizing XML Schemas in the Author page.

|  |   |
|--|---|
| <code>/\${frameworks}/xmlschema/schema-main.css</code>         | Documentation - representation of XML Schema optimized for editing and viewing documentation. |
| <code>/\${frameworks}/xmlschema/schemaISOSchematron.css</code> | XMLSchema+ISOSchematron - representation of XML Schema with embedded ISO Schematron rules.    |
| <code>/\${frameworks}/xmlschema/schemaSchematron.css</code>    | XMLSchema+Schematron - representation of XML Schema with embedded Schematron rules.           |
| <code>/\${frameworks}/xmlschema/default.css</code>             | XMLSchema+Schematron - representation of XML Schema for general editing.                      |

## The RelaxNG document type

This document type is used to associated CSS stylesheets to an RelaxNG file so it can be visualized in the Author page.

## Association rules

A file is considered to be an RelaxNG document when the namespace is 'http://relaxng.org/ns/structure/1.0'.

## Author extensions

The following CSS alternatives are proposed for visualizing RelaxNG schemas in the Author page.

|  |  |
|--|--|
| <code>\${frameworks}/relaxng/relaxng-main.css</code>         | Relax NG - representation of Relax NG optimized for editing in the Author mode.  |
| <code>\${frameworks}/relaxng/relaxngISOSchematron.css</code> | RelaxNG (XML Syntax)+ISOSchematron - representation of RelaxNG (XML syntax) with embedded ISO Schematron rules. Embedded Schematron rules are not supported in Relax NG schemas with compact syntax. |
| <code>\${frameworks}/relaxng/relaxngSchematron.css</code>    | RelaxNG (XML Syntax)+Schematron - representation of RelaxNG (XML syntax) with embedded Schematron rules. Embedded Schematron rules are not supported in Relax NG schemas with compact syntax.        |

## The NVDL document type

This document type is used to associated CSS stylesheets to a NVDL file so it can be visualized in the Author page.

## Association rules

A file is considered to be a NVDL document when the namespace is 'http://purl.oclc.org/dsdl/nvdl/ns/structure/1.0'.

## Author extensions

The following CSS is proposed for visualizing NVDL schemas in the Author page.

|   |  |
|---|--|
| <code>\${frameworks}/nvdl/nvdl.css</code> | Representation of Relax NG optimized for editing in the Author mode. |
|---|--|

## The Schematron document type

This document type is used to associated CSS stylesheets to a Schematron file so it can be visualized in the Author page.

## Association rules

A file is considered to be a Schematron document when the namespace is 'http://purl.oclc.org/dsdl/schematron'.

## Author extensions

The following CSS is proposed for visualizing Schematron schemas in the Author page.

|   |  |
|---|--|
| <code>\${frameworks}/schematron/iso-schematron.css</code> | Representation of Schematron optimized for editing in the Author mode. |
|---|--|

## The Schematron 1.5 document type

This document type is used to associated CSS stylesheets to a Schematron 1.5 file so it can be visualized in the Author page.

### Association rules

A file is considered to be a Schematron 1.5 document when the namespace is 'http://www.ascc.net/xml/schematron'.

### Author extensions

The following CSS is proposed for visualizing Schematron 1.5 schemas in the Author page.

`${frameworks}/schematron/schematron15.css` Representation of Schematron 1.5 optimized for editing in the Author mode.

## The XSLT document type

This document type is used to associated CSS stylesheets to an XSLT stylesheet file so it can be visualized in the Author page.

### Association rules

A file is considered to be a XSLT document when the namespace is 'http://www.w3.org/1999/XSL/Transform'.

### Author extensions

The following CSS is proposed for visualizing XSLT stylesheets in the Author page.

`${frameworks}/xslt/xslt.css` Representation of XSLT optimized for editing in the Author mode.

## The XMLSpec document type

XMLSpec is a markup language for W3C specifications and other technical reports.

### Association rules

A file is considered to be an XMLSpec document when the root name is 'spec'.

### Schema

XMLSpec documents use a RelaxNG schema located in `${frameworks}/xmlspec/schema/xmlspec.rng`, where `${frameworks}` is a subdirectory of the <oxyen> install directory.

## Author extensions

### Templates

Default templates are available for XMLSpec. They are stored in `${frameworksDir}/xmlspec/templates` folder and they can be used for easily creating an XMLSpec.

These templates are available when creating new documents from templates.

XMLSpec - New Document      New XMLSpec document

### Catalogs

The default catalog is stored in `${frameworks}/xmlspec/catalog.xml`.

### Transformation Scenarios

The following default transformation scenarios are available:

- **XMLSpec PDF** - transforms an XMLSpec document into PDF document using the Apache FOP engine;
- **XMLSpec HTML** - transforms an XMLSpec document into HTML document;
- **XMLSpec HTML Diff** - produces "color-coded" HTML from *diff* markup;
- **XMLSpec HTML Slices** - produces "chunked" HTML specifications;

## The FO document type

FO describes the formatting of XML data for output to screen, paper or other media.

### Association rules

A file is considered to be an FO document when the it's namespace is `http://www.w3.org/1999/XSL/Format`.

### Schema

FO documents use a XML Schema located in `${frameworks}/fo/xsd/fo.xsd`, where `${frameworks}` is a subdirectory of the `<oXygen/>` install directory.

## Author extensions

### Transformation Scenarios

The following default transformation scenarios are available:

- **FO PDF** - transforms an FO document into PDF document using the Apache FOP engine;



## The EAD document type

EAD Document Type Definition (DTD) is a standard for encoding archival finding aids using Extensible Markup Language (XML). The standard is maintained in the Network Development and MARC Standards Office of the Library of Congress (LC) in partnership with the Society of American Archivists.

### Association rules

A file is considered to be a FO document when the it's namespace is `urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9` or it's public ID is `//DTD ead.dtd (Encoded Archival Description (EAD) Version 2002)//EN`.

### Schema

EAD documents use a Relax NG Schema located in `/${frameworks}/ead/rng/ead.rng`, where `/${frameworks}` is a sub-directory of the `<oxygen/>` install directory.

### Author extensions

#### Templates

Default templates are available for EAD. They are stored in `/${frameworksDir}/ead/templates` folder and they can be used for easily creating an EAD document.

These templates are available when creating new documents from templates.

EAD - NWDA Template 2008-04-08      New EAD document

### Catalogs

The default catalog is stored in `/${frameworks}/ead/catalog.xml`.

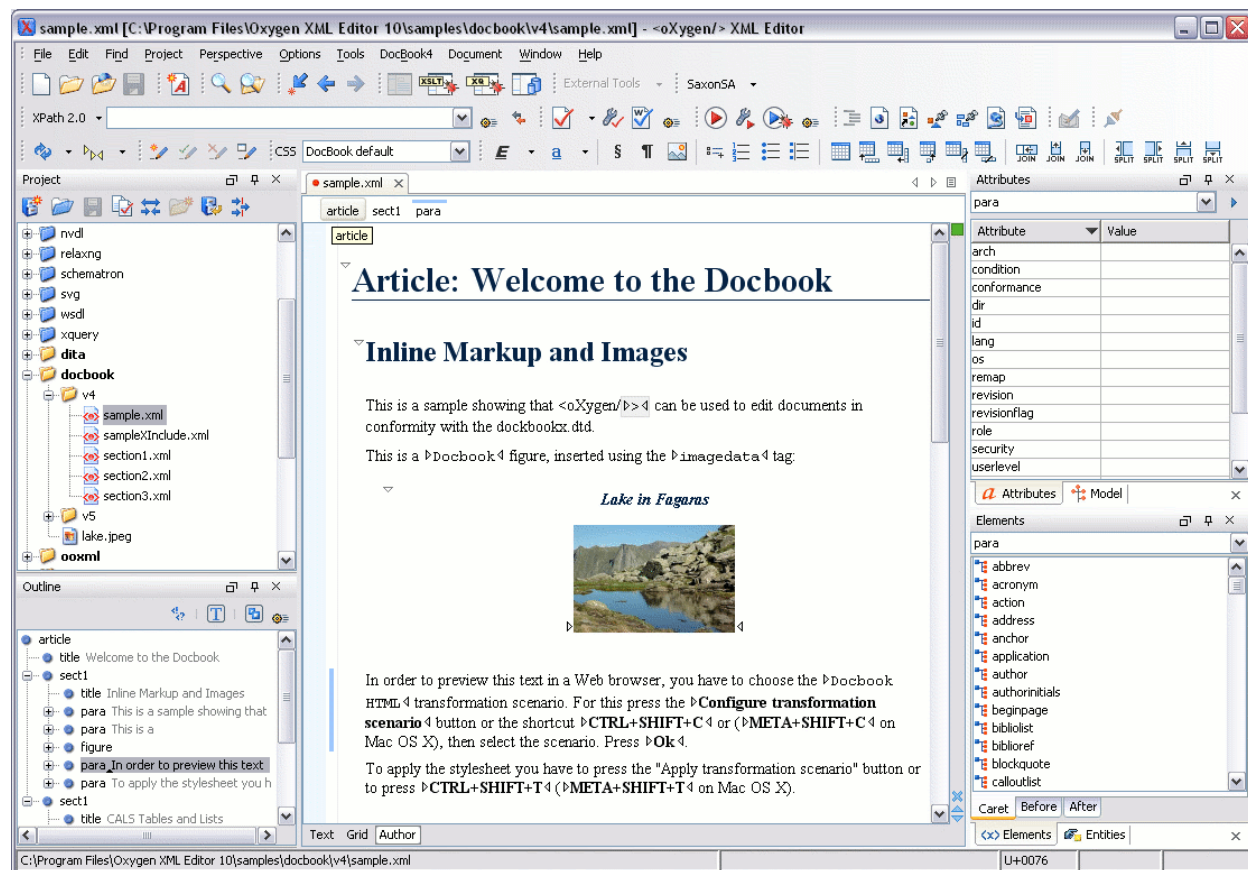
# Chapter 8. Author Developer Guide

## Introduction

Starting with version 9, <oXygen/> adds extensive support for customization.

The Author mode from <oXygen/> was designed for bridging the gap between the XML source editing and a friendly user interface. The main achievement is the fact that the Author combines the power of the source editing and the intuitive interface of a text editor.

Figure 8.1. oXygen Author Editor



Although <oXygen/> comes with already configured frameworks for DocBook, DITA, TEI, XHTML, you might need to create a customization of the editor to handle other types of documents. For instance in the case you have a collection of XML document types used to define the structure of the documents that are used in your organisation and you want them visually edited by people who are not experienced in using XML.

There are several ways to customize the editor:

1. Create a CSS file defining styles for the XML elements the user will work with, and create XML files that refer the CSS through an `xml-stylesheet` processing instruction.
2. Fully configure a document type association. This involves putting together the CSSs, the XML schemes, actions, menus, etc, bundling them and distributing an archive. The CSS and the GUI elements are settings of the <oXygen/>

Author. The other settings like the templates, catalogs, transformation scenarios are general settings and are enabled whenever the association is active, no matter the editing mode (Text, Grid or Author).

Both approaches will be discussed in the following sections.

# Simple Customization Tutorial

## XML Schema

Let's consider the following XML Schema, `test_report.xsd` defining a report with results of a testing session. The report consists of a title, few lines describing the test suite that was run and a list of test results, each with a name and a boolean value indicating if the test passed or failed.

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<xs:schema xmlns:xs="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema">
  <xs:element name="report">
    <xs:complexType>
      <xs:sequence>
        <xs:element ref="title"/>
        <xs:element ref="description"/>
        <xs:element ref="results"/>
      </xs:sequence>
    </xs:complexType>
  </xs:element>
  <xs:element name="title" type="xs:string"/>
  <xs:element name="description">
    <xs:complexType>
      <xs:sequence maxOccurs="unbounded">
        <xs:element name="line">
          <xs:complexType mixed="true">
            <xs:sequence minOccurs="0"
              maxOccurs="unbounded">
              <xs:element name="important"
                type="xs:string"/>
            </xs:sequence>
          </xs:complexType>
        </xs:element>
      </xs:sequence>
    </xs:complexType>
  </xs:element>
  <xs:element name="results">
    <xs:complexType>
      <xs:sequence maxOccurs="unbounded">
        <xs:element name="entry">
          <xs:complexType>
            <xs:sequence>
              <xs:element name="test_name"
                type="xs:string"/>
              <xs:element name="passed"
                type="xs:boolean"/>
            </xs:sequence>
          </xs:complexType>
        </xs:element>
      </xs:sequence>
    </xs:complexType>
  </xs:element>

```

```

        </xs:complexType>
    </xs:element>
</xs:sequence>
</xs:complexType>
</xs:element>
</xs:schema>

```

The use-case is that several users are testing a system and must send report results to a content management system. The Author customization should provide a visual editor for this kind of documents.

## Writing the CSS

A set of rules must be defined for describing how the XML document is to be rendered into the <Oxygen/> Author. This is done using Cascading Style Sheets or CSS on short. CSS is a language used to describe how an HTML or XML document should be formatted by a browser. CSS is widely used in the majority of websites.

### Note

For more information regarding CSS, please read the specification <http://www.w3.org/Style/CSS/>. A tutorial is available here : [http://www.w3schools.com/css/css\\_intro.asp](http://www.w3schools.com/css/css_intro.asp)

The elements from an XML document are displayed in the layout as a series of boxes. Some of the boxes contain text and may flow one after the other, from left to right. These are called in-line boxes. There are also other type of boxes that flow one below the other, like paragraphs. These are called block boxes.

For example consider the way a traditional text editor arranges the text. A paragraph is a block, because it contains a vertical list of lines. The lines are also blocks. But any block that contains inline boxes is arranging its children in a horizontal flow. That is why the paragraph lines are also blocks, but the traditional "bold" and "italic" sections are represented as inline boxes.

The CSS allows us to specify that some elements are displayed as tables. In CSS a table is a complex structure and consists of rows and cells. The "table" element must have children that have "table-row" style. Similarly, the "row" elements must contain elements with "table-cell" style.

To make it easy to understand, the following section describes the way each element from the above schema is formatted using a CSS file. Please note that this is just one from an infinite number of possibilities of formatting the content.

**report** This element is the root element of the report document. It should be rendered as a box that contains all other elements. To achieve this the display type is set to **block**. Additionally some margins are set for it. The CSS rule that matches this element is:

```

report {
    display: block;
    margin: 1em;
}

```

**title** The title of the report. Usually titles have a larger font. The **block** display should also be used - the next elements will be placed below it, and change its font to double the size of the normal text.

```

title {
    display: block;
}

```

```
font-size:2em;
}
```

**description** This element contains several lines of text describing the report. The lines of text are displayed one below the other, so the description will have the same **block** display. To make it stand out the background color is changed.

```
description {
  display:block;
  background-color:#EEEEFF;
  color:black;
}
```

**line** A line of text in the description. A specific aspect is not defined for it, just indicate that the display should be **block**.

```
line {
  display:block;
}
```

**important** The **important** element defines important text from the description. Because it can be mixed with text, its display property must be set to **inline**. To make it easier to spot, the text will be emphasized.

```
important {
  display:inline;
  font-weight:bold;
}
```

**results** The **results** element shows the list of test\_names and the result for each one. To make it easier to read, it is displayed as a **table** with a green border and margins.

```
results{
  display:table;
  margin:2em;
  border:1px solid green;
}
```

**entry** An item in the results element. The results are displayed as a table so the entry is a row in the table. Thus, the display is **table-row**.

```
entry {
  display:table-row;
}
```

**test\_name, passed** The name of the individual test, and its result. They are cells in the results table with display set to **table-cell**. Padding and a border are added to emphasize the table grid.

```
test_name, passed{
```

```
        display:table-cell;
        border:1px solid green;
        padding:20px;
    }

    passed{
        font-weight:bold;
    }
```

The full content of the CSS file `test_report.css` is:

```
report {
    display:block;
    margin:1em;
}

description {
    display:block;
    background-color:#EEEEFF;
    color:black;
}

line {
    display:block;
}

important {
    display:inline;
    font-weight:bold;
}

title {
    display:block;
    font-size:2em;
}

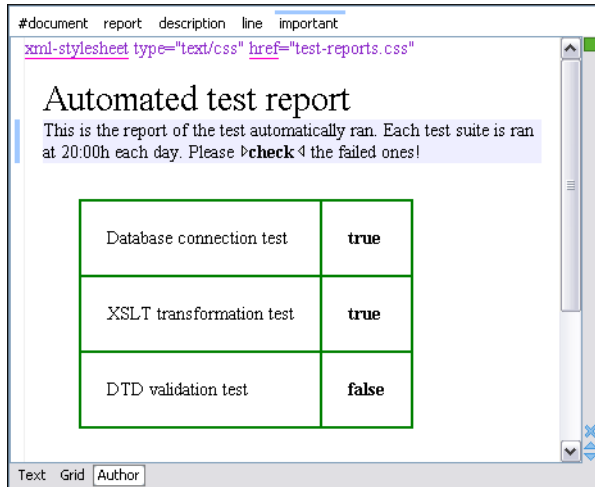
results{
    display:table;
    margin:2em;
    border:1px solid green;
}

entry {
    display:table-row;
}

test_name, passed{
    display:table-cell;
    border:1px solid green;
    padding:20px;
}
```

```
passed{
    font-weight:bold;
}
```

**Figure 8.2. A report opened in the Author**



## The XML Instance Template

Based on the XML Schema and the CSS file the <oxygen/> Author can help the content author in loading, editing and validating the test reports. An XML file template must be created, a kind of skeleton, that the users can use as a starting point for creating new test reports.

The template must be generic enough and refer the XML Schema file and the CSS stylesheet. This is an example:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<?xml-stylesheet type="text/css" href="test_report.css"?>
<report xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
  xsi:noNamespaceSchemaLocation="test_report.xsd">
  <title>Test report title</title>
  <description>
    <line>This is the report
      <important>description</important>.</line>
  </description>
  <results>
    <entry>
      <test_name>Sample test1</test_name>
      <passed>true</passed>
    </entry>
    <entry>
      <test_name>Sample test2</test_name>
      <passed>true</passed>
    </entry>
  </results>
</report>
```

The processing instruction `xml-stylesheet` associates the CSS stylesheet to the XML file. The href pseudo attribute contains the URI reference to the stylesheet file. In our case the CSS is in the same directory as the XML file.

The next step is to place the XSD file and the CSS file on a web server and modify the template to use the HTTP URLs, like this:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<?xml-stylesheet type="text/css"
      href="http://www.mysite.com/reports/test_report.css"?>
<report xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
      xsi:noNamespaceSchemaLocation=
        "http://www.mysite.com/reports/test_report.xsd">
  <title>Test report title</title>
  <description>
  .....
```

The alternative is to create an archive containing the `test_report.xml`, `test_report.css` and `test_report.xsd` and send it to the content authors.

## Advanced Customization Tutorial - Document Type Associations

<oXygen/> Author is highly customizable. Practically you can associate an entire class of documents (grouped logically by some common features like namespace, root element name or filename) to a bundle consisting of a CSS stylesheets, validation schemas, catalog files, templates for new files, transformation scenarios and even custom actions. This is called a **Document Type Association**.

### Creating the Basic Association

In this section a **Document Type Association** will be created for a set of documents. As an example a light documentation framework will be created, similar to DocBook and create a complete customization of the Author editor.

You can find the complete files that were used in this tutorial in the Example Files Listings.

#### First step. XML Schema.

Our documentation framework will be very simple. The documents will be either `articles` or `books`, both composed of sections. The sections may contain titles, paragraphs, figures, tables and other sections. To complete the picture, each section will include a `def` element from another namespace.

The first schema file:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<xs:schema xmlns:xs="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"
  targetNamespace="http://www.oxygenxml.com/sample/documentation"
  xmlns:doc="http://www.oxygenxml.com/sample/documentation"
  xmlns:abs="http://www.oxygenxml.com/sample/documentation/abstracts"
  elementFormDefault="qualified">

  <xs:import namespace=
    "http://www.oxygenxml.com/sample/documentation/abstracts"
    schemaLocation=
```



```
"abs.xsd" />
```

The namespace of the documents will be `http://www.oxygenxml.com/sample/documentation`. The namespace of the `def` element is `http://www.oxygenxml.com/sample/documentation/abstracts`.

Now let's define the structure of the sections. They all start with a title, then have the optional `def` element then either a sequence of other sections, or a mixture of paragraphs, images and tables.

```
<xs:element name="book" type="doc:sectionType" />
<xs:element name="article" type="doc:sectionType" />
<xs:element name="section" type="doc:sectionType" />

<xs:complexType name="sectionType">
  <xs:sequence>
    <xs:element name="title" type="xs:string" />
    <xs:element ref="abs:def" minOccurs="0" />
    <xs:choice>
      <xs:sequence>
        <xs:element ref="doc:section" maxOccurs="unbounded" />
      </xs:sequence>
      <xs:choice maxOccurs="unbounded">
        <xs:element ref="doc:para" />
        <xs:element ref="doc:image" />
        <xs:element ref="doc:table" />
      </xs:choice>
    </xs:choice>
  </xs:sequence>
</xs:complexType>
```

The paragraph contains text and other styling markup, such as bold (`b`) and italic (`i`) elements.

```
<xs:element name="para" type="doc:paragraphType" />

<xs:complexType name="paragraphType" mixed="true">
  <xs:choice minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <xs:element name="b" />
    <xs:element name="i" />
  </xs:choice>
</xs:complexType>
```

The image element has an attribute with a reference to the file containing image data.

```
<xs:element name="image">
  <xs:complexType>
    <xs:attribute name="href" type="xs:anyURI" use="required" />
  </xs:complexType>
</xs:element>
```

The table contains a header row and then a sequence of rows (`tr` elements) each of them containing the cells. Each cell has the same content as the paragraphs.

```
<xs:element name="table">
  <xs:complexType>
    <xs:sequence>
```

```

<xs:element name="header">
  <xs:complexType>
    <xs:sequence>
      <xs:element name="td" maxOccurs="unbounded"
        type="doc:paragraphType" />
    </xs:sequence>
  </xs:complexType>
</xs:element>
<xs:element name="tr" maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <xs:complexType>
    <xs:sequence>
      <xs:element name="td" type="doc:tdType"
        maxOccurs="unbounded" />
    </xs:sequence>
  </xs:complexType>
</xs:element>
</xs:sequence>
</xs:complexType>
</xs:element>

<xs:complexType name="tdType">
  <xs:complexContent>
    <xs:extension base="doc:paragraphType">
      <xs:attribute name="row_span" type="xs:integer" />
      <xs:attribute name="column_span" type="xs:integer" />
    </xs:extension>
  </xs:complexContent>
</xs:complexType>

```

The def element is defined as a text only element in the imported schema abs.xsd:

```

<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<xs:schema xmlns:xs="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"
  targetNamespace=
    "http://www.oxygenxml.com/sample/documentation/abstracts">
  <xs:element name="def" type="xs:string" />
</xs:schema>

```

Now the XML data structure will be styled.

## Second step. The CSS.

If you read the Simple Customization Tutorial then you already have some basic notions about creating simple styles. The example document contains elements from different namespaces, so you will use CSS Level 3 extensions supported by the <oXygen/> layout engine to associate specific properties with that element.

### Note

Please note that the CSS Level 3 is a standard under development, and has not been released yet by the W3C. However, it addresses several important issues like selectors that are namespace aware and values for the CSS properties extracted from the attributes of the XML documents. Although not (yet) conforming with the current CSS standard these are supported by the <oXygen/> Author.

## Defining the General Layout.

Now the basic layout of the rendered documents is created.

Elements that are stacked one on top of the other are: `book`, `article`, `section`, `title`, `figure`, `table`, `image`. These elements are marked as having `block` style for display. Elements that are placed one after the other in a flowing sequence are: `b`, `i`. These will have `inline` display.

```
/* Vertical flow */
book,
section,
para,
title,
image,
ref {
    display:block;
}

/* Horizontal flow */
b,i {
    display:inline;
}
```

### Important

Having `block` display children in an `inline` display parent, makes `<oXygen/>` Author change the style of the parent to `block` display.

## Styling the `section` Element.

The title of any section must be bold and smaller than the title of the parent section. To create this effect a sequence of CSS rules must be created. The `*` operator matches any element, it can be used to match titles having progressive depths in the document.

```
title{
    font-size: 2.4em;
    font-weight:bold;
}
* * title{
    font-size: 2.0em;
}
* * * title{
    font-size: 1.6em;
}
* * * * title{
    font-size: 1.2em;
}
```

### Note

CSS rules are combined as follows:

- All the rules that match an element are kept as a list. The more specific the rule is, the further it will be placed to the end of the list.

- If there is no difference in the specificity of the rules, they are placed in the list in the same order as they appear in the CSS document.
- The list is then iterated, and all the properties from the rules are collected, overwriting the already collected values from the previous rules. That is why the font-size is changed depending on the depth of the element, while the font-weight property remains unchanged - no other rule is overwriting it.

It's useful to have before the title a constant text, indicating that it refers to a section. This text can include also the current section number. The `:before` and `:after` pseudo elements will be used, plus the CSS counters.

First declare a counter named `sect` for each book or article. The counter is set to zero at the beginning of each such element:

```
book,  
article{  
    counter-reset:sect;  
}
```

The `sect` counter is incremented with each section, that is the a direct child of a book or an article element.

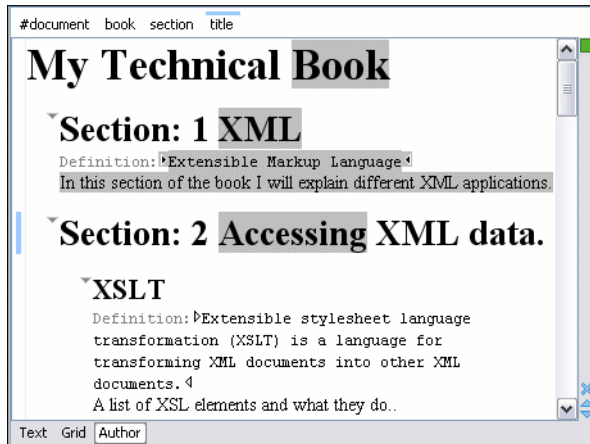
```
book > section,  
article > section{  
    counter-increment:sect;  
}
```

The "static" text that will prefix the section title is composed of the constant "Section ", followed by the decimal value of the `sect` counter and a dot.

```
book > section > title:before,  
article > section > title:before{  
    content: "Section " counter(sect) ". ";  
}
```

To make the documents easy to read, you add a margin to the sections. In this way the higher nesting level, the larger the left side indent. The margin is expressed relatively to the parent bounds:

```
section{  
    margin-left:1em;  
    margin-top:1em;  
}
```

**Figure 8.3. A sample of nested sections and their titles.**

In the above screenshot you can see a sample XML document rendered by the CSS stylesheet. The selection "avoids" the text that is generated by the CSS "content" property. This happens because the CSS generated text is not present in the XML document and is just a visual aid.

### Styling the table Element.

There are standard CSS properties used to indicate what elements are tables, table rows and table cells. What CSS is missing is the possibility to indicate the cell spanning. <oxygen/> Author offers support for adding an extension to solve this problem. This will be presented in the next chapters.

The table in this example is a simple one. The header must be formatted in a different way than the ordinary rows, so it will have a background color.

```
table{
    display:table;
    border:1px solid navy;
    margin:1em;
    max-width:1000px;
    min-width:150px;
}

table[width]{
    width:attr(width, length);
}

tr, header{
    display:table-row;
}

header{
    background-color: silver;
    color:inherit
}

td{
    display:table-cell;
    border:1px solid navy;
```

```
padding: 1em;
}
```

 **Note**

Children elements with `block` or `table-caption` display placed at the beginning or the end of an element displayed as a table, will be grouped and presented as blocks at the top or the bottom of the table.

 **Note**

Mixing elements having `table-cell`, `table-group`, `table-row`, etc.. display type with others that have `block` or `inline` display or with text content breaks the layout of the table. In such cases the table is shown as a block.

 **Note**

Having child elements that do not have `table-cell` or `table` display in a parent with `table-row` display breaks the table layout. In this case the `table` display is supported for the children of the `table-row` element in order to allow sub-tables in the parent table.

 **Note**

<oXygen/> Author can automatically detect the spanning of a cell, without the need to write a Java extension for this.

This happens if the span of the cell element is specified using the **colspan** and **rowspan** attributes, just like in HTML, or **cols** and **rows** attributes.

For instance, the following XML code:

```
<table>
  <tr>
    <td>Cell 1.1</td>
    <td>Cell 1.2</td>
    <td>Cell 1.3</td>
  </tr>
  <tr>
    <td>Cell 2.1</td>
    <td colspan="2" rowspan="2">
      Cell spanning 2 rows and 2 columns.
    </td>
  </tr>
  <tr><td>Cell 3.1</td></tr>
</table>
```

using the CSS:

```
table{
  display: table;
}
tr{
  display: table-row;
}
td{
```

```
display: table-cell;
}
```

is rendered correctly:

**Table 8.1. Built-in Cell Spanning**

|          |                                    |          |
|----------|------------------------------------|----------|
| Cell 1.1 | Cell 1.2                           | Cell 1.3 |
| Cell 2.1 | Cell spanning 2 rows and 2 columns |          |
| Cell 3.1 |                                    |          |

Because in the schema the `td` tag has the attributes **row\_span** and **column\_span** that are not automatically recognized by <oxygen/> Author, a Java extension will be implemented which will provide information about the cell spanning. See the section [Configuring a Table Cell Span Provider](#).

Because the column widths are specified by the attributes **width** of the elements `customcol` that are not automatically recognized by <oxygen/> Author, it is necessary to implement a Java extension which will provide information about the column widths. See the section [Configuring a Table Column Width Provider](#).

### Styling the Inline Elements.

The "bold" style is obtained by using the `font-weight` CSS property with the value `bold`, while the "italic" style is specified by the `font-style` property:

```
b {
    font-weight:bold;
}

i {
    font-style:italic;
}
```

### Styling Elements from other Namespace

In the CSS Level 1, 2, and 2.1 there is no way to specify if an element X from the namespace Y should be presented differently from the element X from the namespace Z. In the upcoming CSS Level 3, it is possible to differentiate elements by their namespaces. <oxygen/> Author supports this CSS Level 3 functionality. For more information see the [Namespace Selectors](#) section.

To match the `def` element its namespace will be declared, bind it to the `abs` prefix, and then write a CSS rule:

```
@namespace abs "http://www.oxygenxml.com/sample/documentation/abstracts";

abs|def{
    font-family:monospace;
    font-size:smaller;
}
abs|def:before{
    content:"Definition:";
    color:gray;
}
```

## Styling images

The CSS 2.1 does not specify how an element can be rendered as an image. To overpass this limitation, <oXygen/> Author supports a CSS Level 3 extension allowing to load image data from an URL. The URL of the image must be specified by one of the element attributes and it is resolved through the catalogs specified in <oXygen/>.

### Note

<oXygen/> Author recognizes the following image file formats: JPEG, GIF, PNG and SVG. The oXygen Author for Eclipse does not render the SVG files.

```
image{
  display:block;
  content: attr(href, url);
  margin-left:2em;
}
```

Our image element has the required attribute href of type xs:anyURI. The href attribute contains an image location so the rendered content is obtained by using the function:

```
attr(href, url)
```

### Important

The first argument is the name of the attribute pointing to the image file. The second argument of the attr function specifies the type of the content. If the type has the url value, then <oXygen/> identifies the content as being an image. If the type is missing, then the content will be the text representing the attribute value.

### Important

<oXygen/> Author handles both absolute and relative specified URLs. If the image has an *absolute* URL location (e.g: "http://www.oasis-open.org/images/standards/oasis\_standard.jpg") then it is loaded directly from this location. If the image URL is *relative* specified to the XML document (e.g: "images/my\_screenshot.jpg") then the location is obtained by adding this value to the location of the edited XML document.

An image can also be referenced by the name of a DTD entity which specifies the location of the image file. For example if the document declares an entity **graphic** which points to a JPEG image file:

```
<!ENTITY graphic SYSTEM "depo/keyboard_shortcut.jpg" NDATA JPEG>
```

and the image is referenced in the XML document by specifying the name of the entity as the value of an attribute:

```
<mediaobject>
  <imageobject>
    <imagedata entityref="graphic" scale="50"/>
  </imageobject>
</mediaobject>
```

The CSS should use the functions **url**, **attr** and **unparsed-entity-uri** for displaying the image in the Author mode:

### Note

Note that the scale attribute of the imagedata element will be considered without the need of a CSS customization and the image will be scaled accordingly.

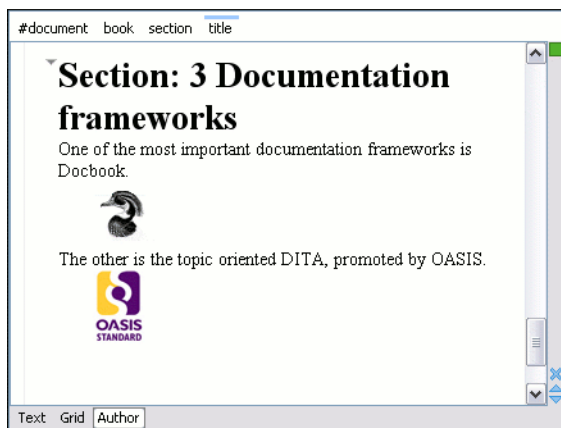


```
imagedata[entityref]{
  content: url(unparsed-entity-uri(attr(entityref)));
}
```

To take into account the value of the `width` attribute of the `imagedata` and use it for resizing the image, the CSS can define the following rule:

```
imagedata[width]{
  width:attr(width, length);
}
```

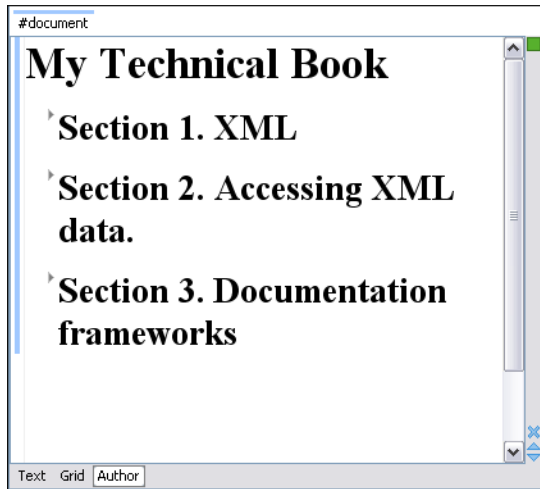
**Figure 8.4. Samples of images in Author**



## Marking elements as foldable

You can specify what elements are collapsible. The collapsible elements are rendered having a small triangle icon in the top left corner. Clicking on this icon hides or shows the children of the element. The `section` elements will be marked as foldable. You will leave only the `title` child elements visible.

```
section{
  foldable:true;
  not-foldable-child: title;
}
```

**Figure 8.5. Folded Sections**

## Marking elements as links

You can specify what elements are links. The text content specified in the `:before` pseudo element will be underlined. When hovering the mouse over that content the mouse pointer will change to indicate that it can follow the link. Clicking on a link will result in the referred resource being opened in an editor. The `link` elements will be marked as links with the `href` attribute indicating the referred location.

```
link[href]:before{
  display:inline;
  link:attr(href);
  content: "Click to open: " attr(href);
}
```

### Note

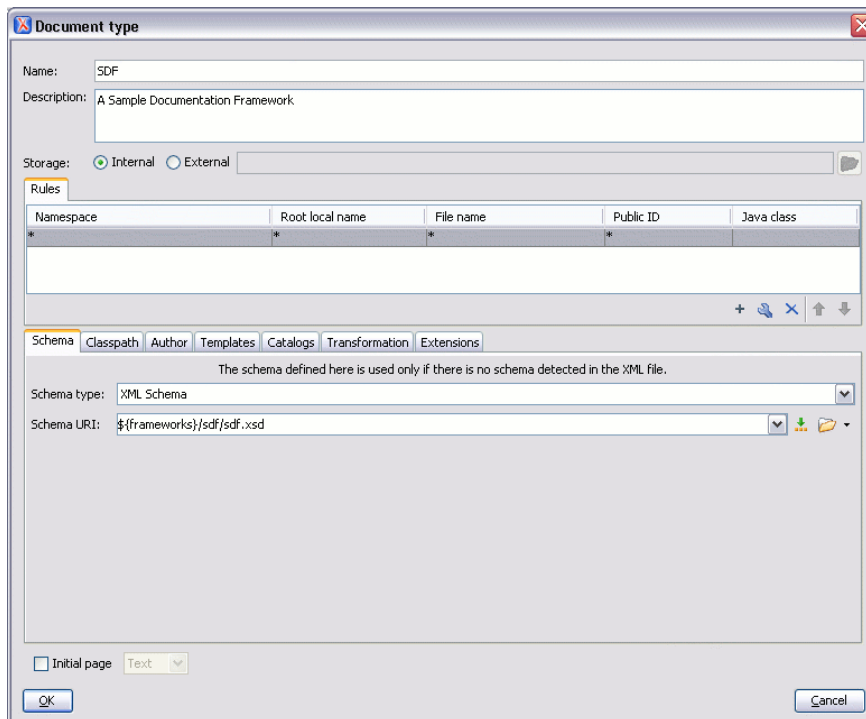
If you plan to use IDs as references for links, the value of the link property should start with a sharp sign(#). This will ensure that the default link target reference finder implementation will work and clicking on the link will send you to the indicated location in the document. For more details about the link target reference finder read the section [Configuring a Link target reference finder](#).

### Example 8.1. IDs as references for links

```
link[linkend]:before{
  display:inline;
  link: "#" attr(linkend);
  content: "Click to open: " attr(linkend);
}
```

## Third Step. The Association.

After creating the XML Schema and the CSS stylesheet for the documents that will be edited a distributable framework package can be created for content authors.

**Figure 8.6. The Document Type Dialog**

## Organizing the Framework Files

First create a new folder called `sdf` (from "Simple Documentation Framework") in `{oxygen_installation_directory}/frameworks`. This folder will be used to store all files related to the documentation framework. The following folder structure will be created:

```
oxygen
  frameworks
    sdf
      schema
      css
```

### ! Important

The `frameworks` directory is the container where all the oXygen framework customizations are located.

Each subdirectory contains files related to a specific type of XML documents: schemas, catalogs, stylesheets, CSSs, etc.

Distributing a framework means delivering a framework directory.

### ! Important

It is assumed that you have the right to create files and folder inside the oXygen installation directory. If you do not have this right, you will have to install another copy of the program in a folder you have access to, the home directory for instance, or your desktop. You can download the "all platforms" distribution from the oXygen website and extract it in the chosen folder.

To test your framework distribution you will need to copy it in the `frameworks` directory of the newly installed application and start oXygen by running the provided start-up script files.

You should copy the created schema files `abs.xsd` and `sdf.xsd`, `sdf.xsd` being the master schema, to the schema directory and the CSS file `sdf.css` to the `css` directory.

## Association Rules

You must specify when <oXygen/> should use the files created in the previous section by creating a document type association. Open the Document Type dialog by following the procedure:

1. Open the Options Dialog, and select the Document Types Association option pane.
2. Select the **Developer** user role from the **User role** combo box at the top of the dialog. This is important, because it will allow us to save the document type association in a file on disk, instead of <oXygen/> options.
3. Click on the **New** button.

In the displayed dialog, fill in the following data:

|             |  |           |  |
|-------------|--|-----------|--|
| Name        | Enter <b>SDF</b> - This is the name of the document type.  |           |  |
| Description | Enter <b>Simple Documentation Framework</b> - This is a short description helping the other users understand the purpose of the Document Type.   |           |  |
| Storage     | <p>The storage refers to the place where the Document Type settings are stored. Internal means the Document Types are stored in the default &lt;oXygen/&gt; preferences file. Since you want to share the Document Type to other users, you must select External, and choose a file.</p> <p>The file must be in the <code>{oxygen_installation_directory}/frameworks/sdf</code> directory. A possible location is <code>/Users/{user_name}/Desktop/oxygen/frameworks/sdf/sdf.framework</code>. The framework directory structure will be:</p> <pre> oxygen   frameworks     sdf       sdf.framework       schema         sdf.xsd       css         sdf.css           </pre>  |           |  |
| Rules       | <p>If a document opened in &lt;oXygen/&gt; matches one of the rules defined for the Document Type, then it is activated.</p> <p>Press the <b>+ Add</b> button from the Rules section. Using the newly displayed dialog, you add a new rule that matches documents with the root from the namespace: <code>http://www.oxygenxml.com/sample/documentation</code>. The root name, file name or PublicID are not relevant.</p> <p>A document matches a rule when it fulfills the conditions imposed by each field of the rule:</p> <table border="0" style="width: 100%;"> <tr> <td style="vertical-align: top;">Namespace</td> <td>the namespace of the root element declared in the XML documents of the current document type. A value of ANY_VALUE matches any namespace in an XML document. Value may contain wildcards(*, ?) and editor variables. Multiple values separated by comma(,) are accepted.</td> </tr> </table> | Namespace | the namespace of the root element declared in the XML documents of the current document type. A value of ANY_VALUE matches any namespace in an XML document. Value may contain wildcards(*, ?) and editor variables. Multiple values separated by comma(,) are accepted. |
| Namespace   | the namespace of the root element declared in the XML documents of the current document type. A value of ANY_VALUE matches any namespace in an XML document. Value may contain wildcards(*, ?) and editor variables. Multiple values separated by comma(,) are accepted.   |           |  |

|                 |  |
|-----------------|--|
| Root local name | The local name of the root element of the XML documents of the current document type. A value of ANY_VALUE matches any local name of the root element. Value may contain wildcards(*, ?) and editor variables. Multiple values separated by comma(,) are accepted. |
| File name       | The file name of the XML documents of the current document type. A value of ANY_VALUE matches any file name. Value may contain wildcards(*, ?) and editor variables. Multiple values separated by comma(,) are accepted.   |
| Public ID       | The public ID of the XML documents of the current document type (for a document validated against a DTD). A value of ANY_VALUE matches any public ID. Value may contain wildcards(*, ?) and editor variables. Multiple values separated by comma(,) are accepted.  |
| Java class      | The full name of a Java class that has access to all root element attributes and the above 4 values in order to decide if the document matches the rule.   |

### Java API: Rules implemented in Java

An alternative to the rule you defined for the association is to write the entire logic in Java.

1. Create a new Java project, in your IDE.

Create the `lib` directory in the Java project directory and copy there the `oxygen.jar` file from the `{oxygen_installation_directory}/lib`. The `oxygen.jar` contains the Java interfaces you have to implement and the available Author API needed to access its features.

2. Create the class `simple.documentation.framework.CustomRule`. This class must implement the `ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.DocumentTypeCustomRuleMatcher` interface.

The interface defines two methods: `matches`, and `getDescription`.

1. The `matches` method is the one that is invoked when the edited document must be checked against the document type association. It takes as arguments the root local name, its namespace, the document location URI, the PublicID and the root element attributes. It must return `true` when the document matches the association.
2. The `getDescription` method returns a description of the rule.

Here is the implementation of these two methods. The implementation of `matches` is just a Java equivalent of the rule we defined earlier.

```
public boolean matches(
    String systemID,
    String rootNamespace,
    String rootLocalName,
    String doctypePublicID,
    Attributes rootAttributes) {

    return "http://www.oxygenxml.com/sample/documentation"
        .equals(rootNamespace);
}

public String getDescription() {
    return "Checks if the current Document Type Association"
```

```
+ " is matching the document.";
}
```

The complete source code is found in the Example Files Listings, the Java Files section.

3. Package the compiled class into a *jar* file. Here is an example of an ANT script that packages the `classes` directory content into a *jar* archive named `sdf.jar`:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<project name="project" default="dist">
  <target name="dist">
    <jar destfile="sdf.jar" basedir="classes">
      <fileset dir="classes">
        <include name="**/*" />
      </fileset>
    </jar>
  </target>
</project>
```

4. Copy the `sdf.jar` file into the `frameworks/sdf` directory.
5. Add the `sdf.jar` to the Author classpath. To do this select **SDF Document Type** from the **Document Type Association** options page and press the Edit button.

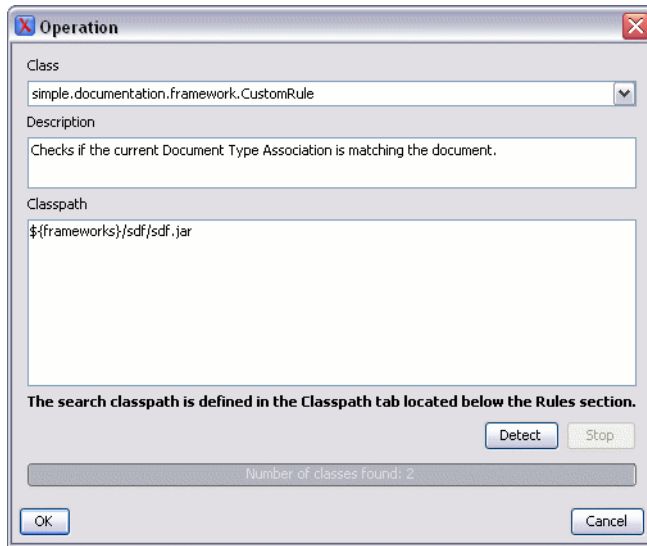
Select the Classpath tab in the lower part of the dialog.

Press the **+** Add button . In the displayed dialog enter the location of the jar file, relative to the `<oXygen/>` `frameworks` directory. If you are in the process of developing the extension actions you can also specify a path to a directory which holds compiled Java classes.

6. Clear the rules you defined before by using the **-** Remove button.

Press the **+** Add button from the Rules section.

Press the Choose button that follows the Java class value. The following dialog is displayed:

**Figure 8.7. Selecting a Java association rule.**

To test the association, open the `sdf.xml` sample and validate it.

## Deciding the initial page

You can decide to impose an initial page for opening files which match the association rules. For example if the files are usually edited in the *Author* page you can set it as the initial page for files matching your rules.

## Schema Settings

In the dialog for editing the Document Type properties, in the bottom section there are a series of tabs. The first one refers to the schema that is used for validation of the documents that match the defined association **Rules**.

### ! Important

If the document refers a schema, using for instance a `DOCTYPE` declaration or a `xsi:schemaLocation` attribute, the schema from the document type association will not be used when validating.

Schema Type      Select from the combo box the value **XML Schema**.

Schema URI      Enter the value `${frameworks}/sdf/schema/sdf.xsd`. We should use the `${frameworks}` editor variable in the schema URI path instead of a full path in order to be valid for different `<Oxygen/>` installations.

### ! Important

The `${frameworks}` variable is expanded at the validation time into the absolute location of the directory containing the frameworks.

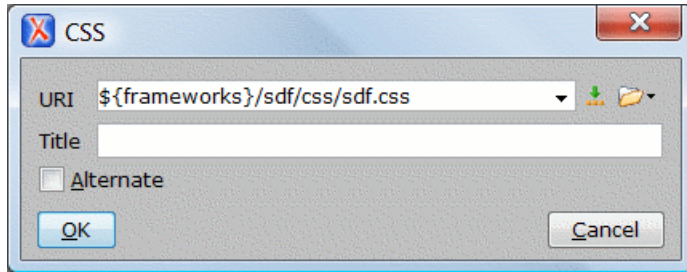
## Author CSS Settings

Select the Author tab from the Document Type edit dialog. By clicking on the CSS label in the right part of the tab the list of associated CSSs is shown.

Here you can also specify how should the CSSs defined in the document type be treated when there are CSSs specified in the document(with `xml-stylesheet` processing instructions). The CSSs from the document can either replace the CSSs defined in the document type association or merge with them.

Add the URI of the CSS file `sdf.css` you already defined. You should use the `${frameworks}` editor variable in the file path.

**Figure 8.8. CSS settings dialog**



The Title text field refers to a symbolic name for the stylesheet. When adding several stylesheets with different titles to a Document Type association, the content author can select what CSS will be used for editing from the **Author CSS Alternatives** toolbar.

This combo-box from the toolbar is also populated in case your XML document refers CSSs directly using `xml-stylesheet` processing instructions, and the processing instructions define titles for the CSSs.

### Note

The CSS settings dialog allows to create a *virtual* `xml-stylesheet` processing instructions. The CSSs defined in the Document Type Association dialog and the `xml-stylesheet` processing instructions from the XML document are processed together, as being all a list of processing instructions.

<oXygen/> Author fully implements the W3C recommendation regarding "Associating Style Sheets with XML documents". For more information see: <http://www.w3.org/TR/xml-stylesheet/http://www.w3.org/TR/REC-html40/present/styles.html#h-14.3.2>

## Testing the Document Type Association

To test the new Document Type create an XML instance that is conforming with the Simple Document Format. You will not specify an XML Schema location directly in the document, using an `xsi:schemaLocation` attribute; <oXygen/> will detect instead its associated document type and use the specified schema.

```
<book xmlns="http://www.oxygenxml.com/sample/documentation"
      xmlns:abs="http://www.oxygenxml.com/sample/documentation/abstracts">

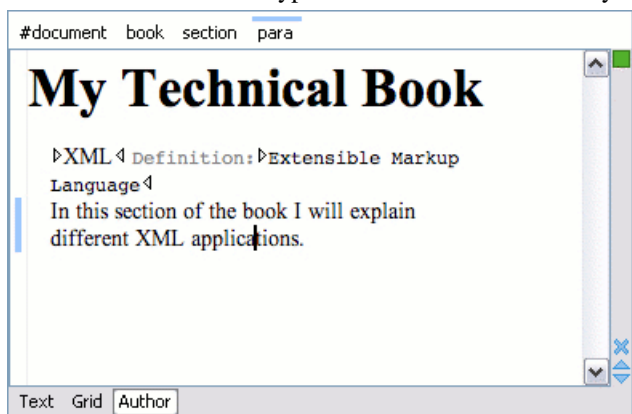
  <title>My Technical Book</title>
  <section>
    <title>XML</title>
    <abs:def>Extensible Markup Language</abs:def>
    <para>In this section of the book I will
      explain different XML applications.</para>
  </section>
</book>
```



When trying to validate the document there should be no errors. Now modify the `title` to `title2`. Validate again. This time there should be one error:

```
cvc-complex-type.2.4.a: Invalid content was found starting with element
'title2'. One of '{"http://www.oxygenxml.com/sample/documentation":title}'
is expected.
```

Undo the tag name change. Press on the Author button at the bottom of the editing area. <oXygen/> should load the CSS from the document type association and create a layout similar to this:



## Packaging and Deploying

Using a file explorer, go to the <oXygen/> `frameworks` directory. Select the `sdf` directory and make an archive from it. Move it to another <oXygen/> installation (eventually on another computer). Extract it in the `frameworks` directory. Start <oXygen/> and test the association as explained above.

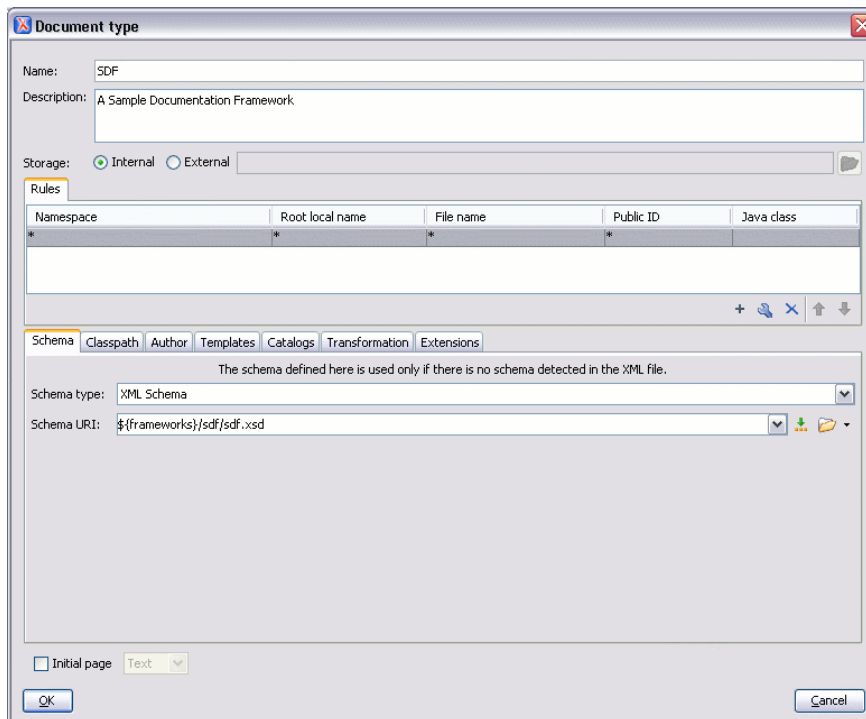
If you create multiple document type associations and you have a complex directory structure it might be easy from the deployment point of view to use an <oXygen/> all platforms distribution. Add your framework files to it, repackage it and send it to the content authors.

### Warning

When deploying your customized `sdf` directory please make sure that your `sdf` directory contains the `sdf.framework` file (that is the file defined as External Storage in Document Type Association dialog shall always be stored inside the `sdf` directory). If your external storage points somewhere else <oXygen/> will not be able to update the Document Type Association options automatically on the deployed computers.

## Author Settings

You can add a new *Document Type Association* or edit the properties of an existing one from the Options+Preferences+Document Type Association option pane. All the changes can be made into the *Document type* edit dialog.

**Figure 8.9. The Document Type Dialog**

## Configuring Actions, Menus and Toolbars

The <oXygen/> Author toolbars and menus can be changed to provide a productive editing experience for the content authors. You can create a set of actions that are specific to a document type.

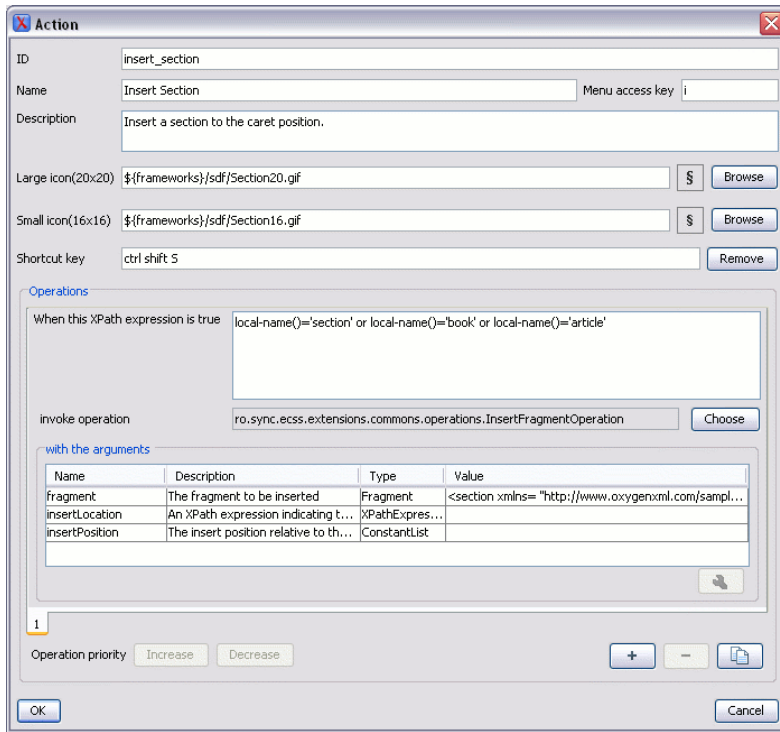
In the example with the `sdf` framework, you created the stylesheet and the validation schema. Now let's add some actions for inserting a `section` and a `table`. To add a new action, follow the procedure:

1. Open the Options Dialog, and select the Document Types Association option pane.
2. In the lower part of the Document Type Association dialog, click on the Author tab, then select the Actions label.
3. To add a new action click on the **+** Add button.

### The Insert Section Action

This paragraph describes how you can define the action for adding a section. We assume the icon files `§Section16.gif` for the menu item and `§Section20.gif` for the toolbar, are already available. Although we could use the same icon size for both menu and toolbar, usually the icons from the toolbars are larger than the ones placed in the menus. These files should be placed in the `frameworks/sdf` directory.

**Figure 8.10. The Action Edit Dialog**



- ID** An unique identifier for the action. You can use **insert\_section**.
- Name** The name of the action. It is displayed as a tooltip when the action is placed in the toolbar, or as the menu item name. Use **Insert section**.
- Menu access key** On Windows, the menu items can be accessed using (ALT + letter) combination, when the menu is visible. The letter is visually represented by underlining the first letter from the menu item name having the same value. Since the name is **Insert section**, you can use as a menu access key the letter **s**.
- Description** You can add a short description for the action. In our case **Adds a section element** will suffice.
- Large icon (20x20)** The path to the file that contains the toolbar image for the action. A good practice is to store the image files inside the framework directory. This way we can use the editor variable `${frameworks}` to make the image file relative to the framework location. Insert **`${frameworks}/sdf/Section20.gif`**

 **Note**

If the images are bundled in a jar archive together with some Java operations implementation for instance, it might be convenient for you to refer the images not by the file name, but by their relative path location in the class-path.

If the image file `Section20.gif` is located in the directory `images` inside the jar archive, you can refer to it by using **`/images/Section20.gif`**. The jar file must be added into the Classpath list.

|                    |   |
|--------------------|---|
| Small icon (16x16) | The path to the file that contains the menu image. Insert <code>\${frameworks}/sdf/Section16.gif</code>   |
| Shortcut key       | A shortcut key combination for triggering the action. To define it, click in the text field and press the desired key combination. You can choose <b>Ctrl+Shift+s</b> . |

 **Note**

The shortcut is enabled only by adding the action to the main menu of the Author mode which contains all the actions that the author will have in a menu for the current document type.

At this time the action has no functionality added to it. Next you must define how this action operates. An action can have multiple operation modes, each of them activated by the evaluation of an XPath version 2.0 expression.

 **Note**

The XPath expression of an operation mode is evaluated relative to the **current element**. The current element is the one where the caret is positioned. In fact there is hierarchy of elements containing the caret position, but you are considering only the closest one. A simple expression like:

```
title
```

is a relative one and checks if the current element has a "title" child element. To check that the current element is a *section* you can use the expression:

```
local-name()='section'
```

 **Note**

<oxygen/> Author determines the operation to be executed by iterating through the defined operation modes. The first operation whose XPath expression "matched" the current document context gets executed, while the others are being ignored. Make sure you order correctly your operations by placing the ones with more specific XPath selectors before the ones having more generic selectors.

For instance the expression

```
person[@name='Cris' and @age='24']
```

is more specific than

```
person[@name='Cris']
```

The action mode using the first expression must be placed before the one using the second expression in the action modes list.

You decide that you can add sections only if the current element is either a book, article, or another section.

|                  |  |
|------------------|--|
| XPath expression | Set the value to:  |
|                  | <code>local-name()='section' or local-name()='book' or local-name()='article'</code> |

Invoke operation      A set of built-in operations is available. A complete list is found in the Author Default Operations section. To this set you can add your own Java operation implementations. In our case, you will use the **InsertFragmentOperation** built-in operation, that inserts an XML fragment at the caret position.

Configure the arguments by setting the following values:

```
fragment                <section xmlns=
                         "http://www.oxygenxml.com/sample/documentation">
                         <title/>
                         </section>
```

insertLocation        Leave it empty. This means the location will be the element at the caret position.

insertPosition        Select "Inside".

## The Insert Table Action

You will create an action that inserts into the document a table with three rows and three columns. The first row is the table header. Similarly to the insert section action, you will use the **InsertFragmentOperation**.

The icon files are Table16.gif for the menu item and Table20.gif for the toolbar and are already available. These files must be placed in the `frameworks/sdf` directory.

The action properties:

|                 |  |
|-----------------|--|
| ID              | You can use <b>insert_table</b> .                  |
| Name            | Insert <b>Insert table</b> .                       |
| Menu access key | Enter the <b>t</b> letter.                         |
| Description     | You can use <b>Adds a section element</b> .        |
| Toolbar icon    | Use <code>\${frameworks}/sdf/Table20.gif</code>    |
| Menu icon       | Insert <code>\${frameworks}/sdf/Table16.gif</code> |
| Shortcut key    | You can choose <b>Ctrl+Shift+t</b> .               |

Now let's set up the operation the action uses.

XPath expression      Set it to the value  
`true()`

### **Note**

`true()` is equivalent with leaving this field empty.

Invoke operation      You will use **InsertFragmentOperation** built-in operations that inserts an XML fragment at the caret position.

Configure its arguments by setting the values:

```
fragment      <table xmlns=
              "http://www.oxygenxml.com/sample/documentation">
                <header><td/><td/><td/></header>
                <tr><td/><td/><td/></tr>
                <tr><td/><td/><td/></tr>
              </table>
```

insertLocation In our example we will always add tables at the end of the section that contains the caret position. Use:

```
ancestor::section/*[last()]
```

insertPosition Select "After".

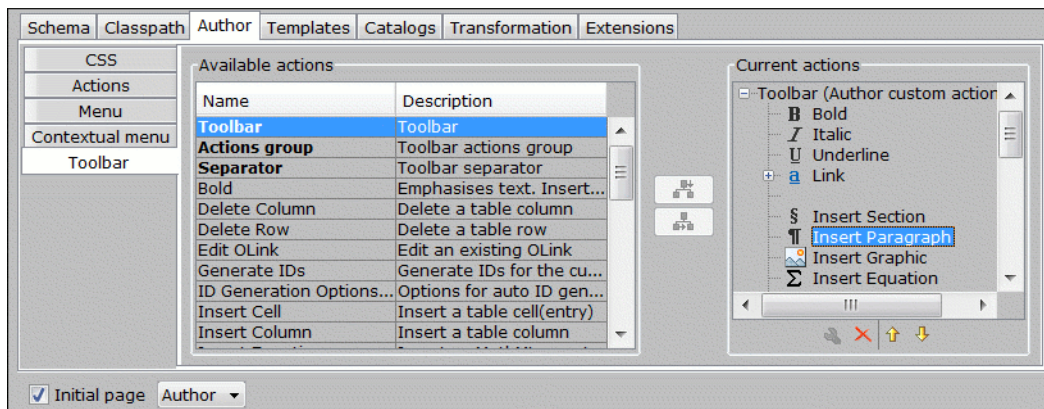
## Configuring the Toolbars

Now that you have defined the two actions you can add them to the toolbar. You can configure additional toolbars on which to add your custom actions.

The first thing to check is that the toolbar Author custom actions should be displayed when switching to the **Author** mode: Right click in the application window upper part, in the area that contains the toolbar buttons and check Author custom actions in the displayed menu if it is unchecked.

Open the Document Type edit dialog for the **SDF** framework and select on the Author tab. Next click on the Toolbar label.

**Figure 8.11. Configuring the Toolbar**



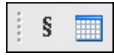
The panel is divided in two sections: the left side contains a list of actions, while the right one contains an action tree, displaying the list of actions added in the toolbar. The special entry called *Separator* allows you to visually separate the actions in the toolbar.

Select the Insert section action in the left and the Toolbar label in the right, then press the Add as child button.

Now select the Insert table action in the left and the Insert section in the right. Press the Add as sibling button.

When opening a **Simple Documentation Framework** test document in Author mode, the toolbar below will be displayed at the top of the editor.

**Figure 8.12. Author Custom Actions Toolbar**



**Tip**

If you have many custom toolbar actions or want to group actions according to their category you can add additional toolbars with custom names and split the actions to better suit your purpose.

**Configuring the Main Menu**

Defined actions can be grouped into customized menus in the <Oxygen/> menu bar. For this open the Document Type dialog for the **SDF** framework and click on the Author tab. Next click on the Menu label.

In the left side you have the list of actions and some special entries:

Submenu      Creates a submenu. You can nest an unlimited number of menus.

Separator      Creates a separator into a menu. In this way you can logically separate the menu entries.

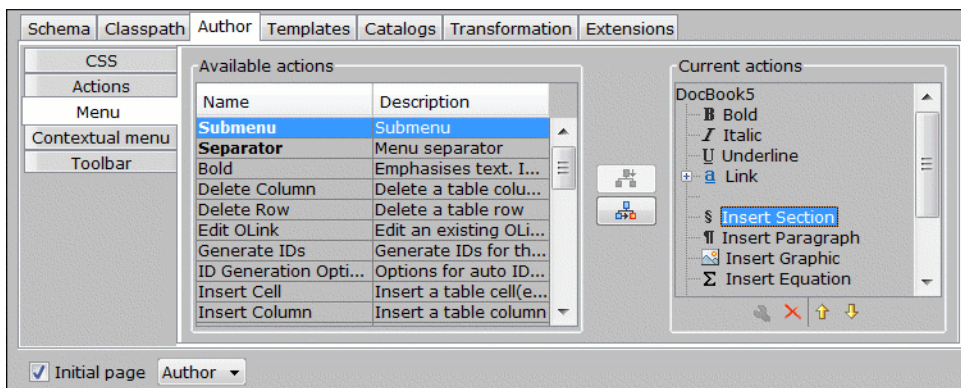
In the right side you have the menu tree, having the Menu entry as root. To change its name click on this label to select it, then press the Edit button. Enter **SD Framework** as name, and **D** as menu access key.

Select the Submenu label in the left and the SD Framework label in the right, then press the Add as child button. Change the submenu name to Table, using the Edit button.

Select the Insert section action in the left and the Table label in the right, then press the Add as sibling button.

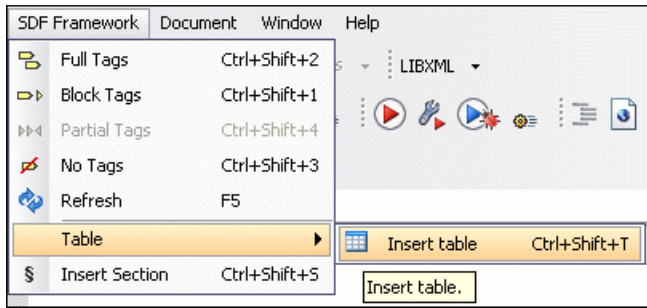
Now select the Insert table action in the left and the Table in the right. Press the Add as child button.

**Figure 8.13. Configuring the Menu**



When opening a **Simple Documentation Framework** test document in Author mode, the menu you created is displayed in the editor menu bar, between the Debugger and the Document menus. In the menu you find the Table submenu and the two actions:

**Figure 8.14. Author Menu**



**Note**

The shortcut of an action defined for the current document type is enabled only if the action is added to the main menu. Otherwise the author can run the action only from the toolbar.

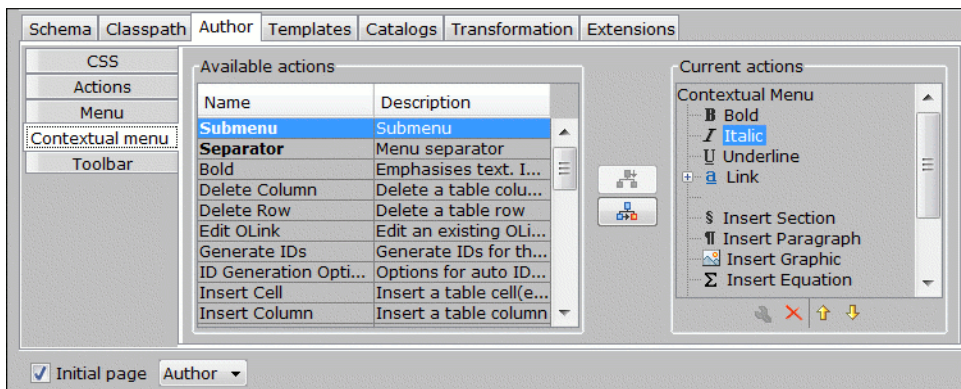
**Configuring the Contextual Menu**

The contextual menu is shown when you right click (on Mac OS X it is used the combination **ctrl** and mouse click) in the Author editing area. In fact you are configuring the bottom part of the menu, since the top part is reserved for a list of generic actions like Copy, Paste, Undo, etc..

Open the Document Type dialog for the **SDF** framework and click on the Author tab. Next click on the Contextual Menu label.

Follow the same steps as explained above in the Configuring the Main Menu, except changing the menu name - the contextual menu has no name.

**Figure 8.15. Configuring the Contextual Menu**



To test it, open the test file, and click to open the contextual menu. In the lower part there is shown the Table sub-menu and the Insert section action:

**Author Default Operations**

Below are listed all the operations and their arguments.

**InsertFragmentOperation**                      Inserts an XML fragment at the current cursor position. The selection - if there is one, remains unchanged. The fragment will be inserted in the current context



of the cursor position. That means that if the current XML document uses some namespace declarations then the inserted fragment must use the same declarations. The inserted fragment will not be copied and pasted to the cursor position, but the namespace declarations of the fragment will be adapted if needed to the existing namespace declarations of the XML document. Examples of namespace adjusting when the fragment is inserted and the descriptions of the arguments are described here.

|                                  |  |
|----------------------------------|--|
| InsertOrReplaceFragmentOperation | Similar to <b>InsertFragmentOperation</b> , except it removes the selected content before inserting the fragment.  |
| InsertOrReplaceTextOperation     | <p>Inserts a text. It removes the selected content before inserting the text section.</p> <p>text     The text section to insert.</p>  |
| SurroundWithFragmentOperation    | Surrounds the selected content by a fragment. Since the fragment can have multiple nodes, the surrounded content will be always placed in the first leaf element. If there is no selection, the operation will simply insert the fragment at the caret position. The arguments are described here.   |
| SurroundWithTextOperation        | <p>The surround with text operation takes two arguments, two text values that will be inserted before and after the selected content. If there is no selected content, the two sections will be inserted at the caret position. The arguments of the operation are:</p> <p>header     The text that will be placed before the selection.</p> <p>footer     The test that will be placed after the selection.</p> |

### The arguments of **InsertFragmentOperation**

fragment     The value for this argument is a text. This is parsed by the <oXygen/> Author as it was already in the document at the caret position. You can use entities references declared in the document and it is namespace aware. The fragment may have multiple roots.

 **Note**

You can use even namespace prefixes that are not declared in the inserted fragment, if they are declared in the document where the insertion is done. For clarity, you should always to prefix and declare namespaces in the inserted fragment!

 **Note**

If there are namespace declarations in the fragment that are identical to the in the document insertion context, the namespace declaration attributes are removed from the fragment elements.

### Example 8.2. Prefixes that are not bound explicitly

For instance, the fragment:

```
<x:item id="dty2"/>
&ent;
<x:item id="dty3"/>
```

Can be correctly inserted in the document: (| marks the insertion point):

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<!DOCTYPE x:root [
  <!ENTITY ent "entity">
]>

<x:root xmlns:x="nsp">
  |
</x:root>
```

Result:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<!DOCTYPE x:root [
  <!ENTITY ent "entity">
]>
<x:root xmlns:x="nsp">
  <x:item id="dty2"/>
  &ent;
  <x:item id="dty3"/>
</x:root>
```

### Example 8.3. Default namespaces

If there is a default namespace declared in the document and the document fragment does not declare a namespace, the elements from the fragment are considered to be in **no namespace**.

For instance the fragment:

```
<item id="dty2"/>
<item id="dty3"/>
```

Inserted in the document:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<root xmlns="nsp">
  |
</root>
```

Gives the result document:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<root xmlns="nsp">
  <item xmlns="" id="dty2"/>
  <item xmlns="" id="dty3"/>
</root>
```

|                |  |
|----------------|--|
| insertLocation | An XPath expression that is relative to the current node. It selects the reference node for the fragment insertion.  |
| insertPosition | One of the three constants: "Inside", "After", or "Before" , showing where the insertion is made relative to the reference node selected by the <b>insertLocation</b> . "Inside" has the meaning of the first child of the reference node. |

### The arguments of SurroundWithFragmentOperation

fragment     The XML fragment that will surround the selection.

### Example 8.4. Surrounding with a fragment

Let's consider the fragment:

```
<F>
  <A></A>
  <B>
    <C></C>
  </B>
</F>
```

And the document:

```
<doc>
  <X></X>
  <Y></Y>
  <Z></Z>
</doc>
```

Considering the selected content that is to be surrounded is the sequence of elements X and Y, then the result is:

```
<doc>
  <F>
    <A>
      <X></X>
      <Y></Y>
    </A>
    <B>
      <C></C>
    </B>
  </F>
  <Z></Z>
</doc>
```

Because the element A was the first leaf in the fragment, it received the selected content. The fragment was then inserted in the place of the selection.

## Java API - Extending Author Functionality through Java

<oXygen/> Author has a built-in set of operations covering the insertion of text and XML fragments (see the Author Default Operations) and the execution of XPath expressions on the current document edited in Author mode. However, there are situations in which you need to extend this set. For instance if you need to enter an element whose attributes

should be edited by the user through a graphical user interface. Or the users must send the selected element content or even the whole document to a server, for some kind of processing or the content authors must extract pieces of information from a server and insert it directly into the edited XML document. Or you need to apply an XPath expression on the current Author document and process the nodes of the result nodeset.

In the following sections you are presenting the Java programming interface (API) available to the developers. You will need the Oxygen Author SDK [<http://www.oxygenxml.com/InstData/Editor/Developer/oxygenAuthorSDK.zip>] available on the <oxygen/> website [<http://www.oxygenxml.com/developer.html>] which includes the source code of the Author operations in the predefined document types and the full documentation in Javadoc format of the public API available for the developer of Author custom actions.

The next Java examples are making use of AWT classes. If you are developing extensions for the <oxygen/> XML Editor plugin for Eclipse you will have to use their SWT counterparts.

It is assumed you already read the Configuring Actions, Menus, Toolbar section and you are familiar with the <oxygen/> Author customization. You may find the XML schema, CSS and XML sample in the Example Files Listings.

### **Warning**

Make sure the Java classes of your custom Author operations are compiled with the same Java version that is used by <oxygen/> XML Author . Otherwise the classes may not be loaded by the Java virtual machine. For example if you run <oxygen/> XML Author with a Java 1.5 virtual machine but the Java classes of your custom Author operations are compiled with a Java 1.6 virtual machine then the custom operations cannot be loaded and used by the Java 1.5 virtual machine.

### **Example 1. Step by Step Example. Simple Use of a Dialog from an Author Operation.**

Let's start adding functionality for inserting images in the **Simple Documentation Framework** (shortly SDF). The images are represented by the `image` element. The location of the image file is represented by the value of the `href` attribute. In the Java implementation you will show a dialog with a text field, in which the user can enter a full URL, or he can browse for a local file.

1. Create a new Java project, in your IDE.

Create the directory `lib` in the Java project directory and copy in it the `oxygen.jar` file from the `{oxygen_installation_directory}/lib` directory. The `oxygen.jar` contains the Java interfaces you have to implement and the API needed to access the Author features.

2. Create the class `simple.documentation.framework.InsertImageOperation`. This class must implement the `ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorOperation` interface.

The interface defines three methods: `doOperation`, `getArguments` and `getDescription`.

1. The `doOperation` method is invoked when the action is performed either by pressing the toolbar button, selecting the menu item or through the shortcut. It takes as arguments an object of type `AuthorAccess` and a map or argument names and values.
2. The `getArguments` method is used by <oxygen/> when the action is configured, it returns the list of arguments (name and type) that are accepted by the operation.
3. The `getDescription` method is also used by <oxygen/> when the operation is configured and its return value describes what the operation does.

Here is the implementation of these three methods.

```

/**
 * Performs the operation.
 */
public void doOperation(
    AuthorAccess authorAccess,
    ArgumentsMap arguments)
    throws IllegalArgumentException,
        AuthorOperationException {

    JFrame oxygenFrame = (JFrame) authorAccess.getParentFrame();
    String href = displayURLDialog(oxygenFrame);
    if (href.length() != 0) {
        // Creates the image XML fragment.
        String imageFragment =
            "<image xmlns='http://www.oxygenxml.com/sample/documentation' href='"
            + href + "'/>";

        // Inserts this fragment at the caret position.
        int caretPosition = authorAccess.getCaretOffset();
        authorAccess.insertXMLFragment(imageFragment, caretPosition);
    }
}

/**
 * Has no arguments.
 *
 * @return null.
 */
public ArgumentDescriptor[] getArguments() {
    return null;
}

/**
 * @return A description of the operation.
 */
public String getDescription() {
    return "Inserts an image element. Asks the user for a URL reference.";
}

```

The complete source code of this operation is found in the Example Files Listings, the Java Files section.

### **Important**

Make sure you always specify the namespace of the inserted fragments.

3. Package the compiled class into a jar file. An example of an ANT script that packages the classes directory content into a jar archive named sdf.jar is listed below:

```

<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<project name="project" default="dist">
    <target name="dist">

```



```
<jar destfile="sdf.jar" basedir="classes">
  <fileset dir="classes">
    <include name="**/*" />
  </fileset>
</jar>
</target>
</project>
```

4. Copy the `sdf.jar` file into the `frameworks/sdf` directory.
5. Add the `sdf.jar` to the Author class path. To do this, Open the options Document Type Dialog, select **SDF** and press the Edit button.

Select the Classpath tab in the lower part of the dialog.

Press the **+** Add button . In the displayed dialog enter the location of the jar file, relative to the `<oXygen/>` `frameworks` directory:

6. Let's create now the action which will use the defined operation. Click on the Actions label.

The icon files are  `Image16.gif` for the menu item and  `Image20.gif` for the toolbar and are already available. Place these files in the `frameworks/sdf` directory.

Define the action properties:

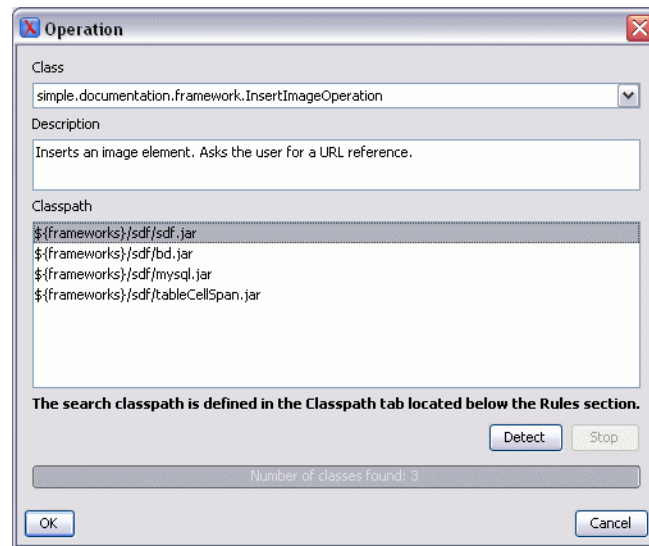
|                 |  |
|-----------------|--|
| ID              | An unique identifier for the action. Use <b>insert_image</b> . |
| Name            | The name of the action. Use <b>Insert image</b> .              |
| Menu access key | Use the <b>i</b> letter.                                       |
| Description     | Enter the text <b>Inserts an image</b> .                       |
| Toolbar icon    | Enter here: <b><code>\${frameworks}/sdf/Image20.gif</code></b> |
| Menu icon       | Enter here: <b><code>\${frameworks}/sdf/Image16.gif</code></b> |
| Shortcut key    | You will use: <b>Ctrl+Shift+i</b> .                            |

Now let's set up the operation.

You are adding images only if the current element is a section, book or article.

|                  |   |
|------------------|---|
| XPath expression | Set the value to:<br><br><code>local-name()='section' or local-name='book'</code><br><code>or local-name='article'</code> |
|------------------|---|

|                  |  |
|------------------|--|
| Invoke operation | In this case, you will use the Java operation you defined earlier. Press the Choose button, then select <code>simple.documentation.framework.InsertImageOperation</code> . |
|------------------|--|

**Figure 8.16. Selecting the Operation**

This operation has no arguments.

7. Add the action to the toolbar, using the Toolbar panel.

To test the action, you can open the `sdf.xml` sample, then place the caret inside a `section` between two `para` elements for instance. Press the button associated with the action from the toolbar. In the dialog select an image URL and press Ok. The image is inserted into the document.

## Example 2. Operations with Arguments. Report from Database Operation.

In this example you will create an operation that connects to a relational database and executes an SQL statement. The result should be inserted in the edited XML document as a `table`. To make the operation fully configurable, it will have arguments for the *database connection string*, the *user name*, the *password* and the *SQL expression*.

1. Create a new Java project, in your IDE.

Create the directory `lib` in the Java project directory and copy in it the `oxygen.jar` file from the `{oxygen_installation_directory}/lib` directory.

2. Create the class `simple.documentation.framework.QueryDatabaseOperation`. This class must implements the `ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorOperation` interface.

```
import ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.ArgumentDescriptor;
import ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.ArgumentsMap;
import ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorAccess;
import ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorOperation;
import ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorOperationException;
```

```
public class QueryDatabaseOperation implements AuthorOperation{
```

Let's define the arguments of the operation. For each of them you will use a `String` constant representing the argument name:

```
private static final String ARG_JDBC_DRIVER = "jdbc_driver";
private static final String ARG_USER = "user";
private static final String ARG_PASSWORD = "password";
private static final String ARG_SQL = "sql";
private static final String ARG_CONNECTION = "connection";
```

You must describe each of the argument name and type. To do this implement the `getArguments` method which will return an array of argument descriptors:

```
public ArgumentDescriptor[] getArguments() {
    ArgumentDescriptor args[] = new ArgumentDescriptor[] {
        new ArgumentDescriptor(
            ARG_JDBC_DRIVER,
            ArgumentDescriptor.TYPE_STRING,
            "The name of the Java class that is the JDBC driver."),
        new ArgumentDescriptor(
            ARG_CONNECTION,
            ArgumentDescriptor.TYPE_STRING,
            "The database URL connection string."),
        new ArgumentDescriptor(
            ARG_USER,
            ArgumentDescriptor.TYPE_STRING,
            "The name of the database user."),
        new ArgumentDescriptor(
            ARG_PASSWORD,
            ArgumentDescriptor.TYPE_STRING,
            "The database password."),
        new ArgumentDescriptor(
            ARG_SQL,
            ArgumentDescriptor.TYPE_STRING,
            "The SQL statement to be executed.")
    };
    return args;
}
```

These names, types and descriptions will be listed in the Arguments table when the operation is configured.

When the operation is invoked, the implementation of the `doOperation` method extracts the arguments, forwards them to the method that connects to the database and generates the XML fragment. The XML fragment is then inserted at the caret position.

```
public void doOperation(AuthorAccess authorAccess, ArgumentsMap map)
    throws IllegalArgumentException, AuthorOperationException {

    // Collects the arguments.
    String jdbcDriver =
        (String)map.getArgumentValue(ARG_JDBC_DRIVER);
    String connection =
        (String)map.getArgumentValue(ARG_CONNECTION);
    String user =
        (String)map.getArgumentValue(ARG_USER);
    String password =
        (String)map.getArgumentValue(ARG_PASSWORD);
    String sql =
```



```

    (String)map.getArgumentValue(ARG_SQL);

    int caretPosition = authorAccess.getCaretOffset();
    try {
        authorAccess.insertXMLFragment(
            getFragment(jdbcDriver, connection, user, password, sql),
            caretPosition);
    } catch (SQLException e) {
        throw new AuthorOperationException(
            "The operation failed due to the following database error: "
            + e.getMessage(), e);
    } catch (ClassNotFoundException e) {
        throw new AuthorOperationException(
            "The JDBC database driver was not found. Tried to load ' "
            + jdbcDriver + "'", e);
    }
}

```

The `getFragment` method loads the JDBC driver, connects to the database and extracts the data. The result is a table element from the `http://www.oxygenxml.com/sample/documentation` namespace. The header element contains the names of the SQL columns. All the text from the XML fragment is escaped. This means that the '<' and '&' characters are replaced with the '&lt;' and '&amp;' character entities to ensure the fragment is well-formed.

```

private String getFragment(
    String jdbcDriver,
    String connectionURL,
    String user,
    String password,
    String sql) throws
    SQLException,
    ClassNotFoundException {

    Properties pr = new Properties();
    pr.put("characterEncoding", "UTF8");
    pr.put("useUnicode", "TRUE");
    pr.put("user", user);
    pr.put("password", password);

    // Loads the database driver.
    Class.forName(jdbcDriver);
    // Opens the connection
    Connection connection =
        DriverManager.getConnection(connectionURL, pr);
    java.sql.Statement statement =
        connection.createStatement();
    ResultSet resultSet =
        statement.executeQuery(sql);

    StringBuffer fragmentBuffer = new StringBuffer();
    fragmentBuffer.append(
        "<table xmlns=" +
        "'http://www.oxygenxml.com/sample/documentation'>");

```

```
//
// Creates the table header.
//
fragmentBuffer.append("<header>");
ResultSetMetaData metaData = resultSet.getMetaData();
int columnCount = metaData.getColumnCount();
for (int i = 1; i <= columnCount; i++) {
    fragmentBuffer.append("<td>");
    fragmentBuffer.append(
        xmlEscape(metaData.getColumnName(i)));
    fragmentBuffer.append("</td>");
}
fragmentBuffer.append("</header>");

//
// Creates the table content.
//
while (resultSet.next()) {
    fragmentBuffer.append("<tr>");
    for (int i = 1; i <= columnCount; i++) {
        fragmentBuffer.append("<td>");
        fragmentBuffer.append(
            xmlEscape(resultSet.getObject(i)));
        fragmentBuffer.append("</td>");
    }
    fragmentBuffer.append("</tr>");
}

fragmentBuffer.append("</table>");

// Cleanup
resultSet.close();
statement.close();
connection.close();
return fragmentBuffer.toString();
}
```

The complete source code of this operation is found in the Example Files Listings, the Java Files section.


3. Package the compiled class into a jar file.
4. Copy the jar file and the JDBC driver files into the `frameworks/sdf` directory.
5. Add the jars to the Author class path. For this, Open the options Document Type Dialog, select **SDF** and press the Edit button.

Select the Classpath tab in the lower part of the dialog.

6. Click on the Actions label.

The action properties are:

|      |  |
|------|--|
| ID   | An unique identifier for the action. Use <b>clients_report</b> . |
| Name | The name of the action. Use <b>Clients Report</b> .              |

|                 |   |
|-----------------|---|
| Menu access key | Use the letter <b>r</b> .   |
| Description     | Enter the text <b>Connects to the database and collects the list of clients.</b>  |
| Toolbar icon    | Enter here: <b>\${frameworks}/sdf/TableDB20.gif</b><br><br>The image  TableDB20.gif for the toolbar action is already present in the frameworks/sdf directory. |
| Menu icon       | Leave empty.  |
| Shortcut key    | You will use: <b>Ctrl+Shift+c</b> .   |

Let's set up the operation. The action will work only if the current element is a `section`.

XPath expression      Set the value to:  
  
`local-name()='section'`

Invoke operation      In this case, you will use the Java operation you defined earlier. Press the Choose button, then select `simple.documentation.framework.QueryDatabaseOperation`.

Once selected, the list of arguments is displayed.

In the figure below the first argument, `jdbc_driver`, represents the class name of the MySQL JDBC driver.

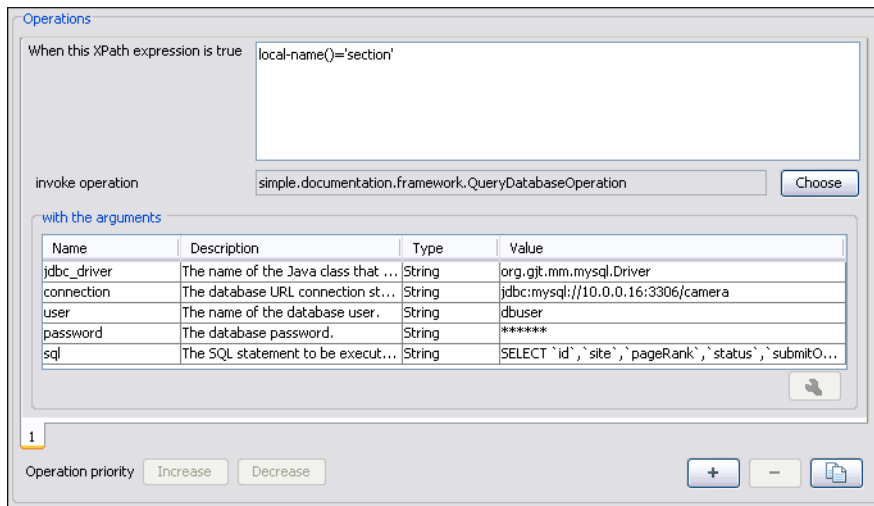
The connection string has the URL syntax : `jdbc://<database_host>:<database_port>/<database_name>`.


The SQL expression used in the example is:

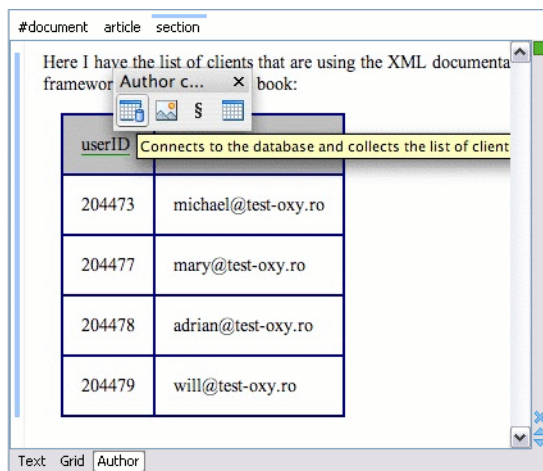
```
SELECT userID, email FROM users
```

but it can be any valid SELECT expression which can be applied to the database.

7. Add the action to the toolbar, using the Toolbar panel.

**Figure 8.17. Java Operation Arguments Setup**

To test the action you can open the `sdf.xml` sample place the caret inside a `section` between two `para` elements for instance. Press the  Create Report button from the toolbar. You can see below the toolbar with the action button and sample table inserted by the Clients Report action.

**Figure 8.18. Table Content Extracted from the Database**

## Configuring New File Templates

You will create a set of document templates that the content authors will use as starting points for creating new *Simple Document Framework* books and articles.

Each of the Document Type Associations can point to a directory usually named `templates` containing the file templates. All the files that are found here are considered templates for the respective document type. The template name is taken from the name of the file, and the template kind is detected from the file extension.

Create the `templates` directory into the `frameworks/SDF` directory. The directory tree for the documentation framework is now:

```
oxygen
  frameworks
    sdf
      schema
      css
      templates
```

Now let's create in this `templates` directory two files, one for the *book* template and another for the *article* template.

The `Book.xml` file:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<book xmlns="http://www.oxygenxml.com/sample/documentation"
xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
xmlns:abs="http://www.oxygenxml.com/sample/documentation/abstracts">
  <title>Book Template Title</title>
  <section>
    <title>Section Title</title>
    <abs:def/>
    <para>This content is copyrighted:</para>
    <table>
      <header>
        <td>Company</td>
        <td>Date</td>
      </header>
      <tr>
        <td/>
        <td/>
      </tr>
    </table>
  </section>
</book>
```

The `Article.xml` file:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<article
  xmlns="http://www.oxygenxml.com/sample/documentation"
  xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance">
  <title></title>
  <section>
    <title></title>
    <para></para>
    <para></para>
  </section>
</article>
```

You can also use editor variables in the template files' content and they will be expanded when the files are opened.

Open the Document Type dialog for the **SDF** framework and click on the Templates tab. Enter in the Templates directory text field the value `${frameworksDir}/sdf/templates`. As you already seen before, it is recommended that all the file references made from a Document Type Association to be relative to the `${frameworksDir}` directory. Binding a Document Type Association to an absolute file (e.g: "C:\some\_dir\templates") makes the association difficult to share between users.

To test the templates settings, press the File/New menu item to display the New dialog. The names of the two templates are prefixed with the name of the Document Type Association, in our case **SDF**. Selecting one of them should create a new XML file with the content specified in the template file.

## Configuring XML Catalogs

You can add catalog files to your Document Type Association using the Catalogs tab from the Document Type dialog.

### Important

<oXygen/> XML Editor collects all the catalog files listed in the installed frameworks. No matter what the Document Type Association matches the edited file, all the catalog mappings are considered when resolving external references.

### Important

The catalog files settings are available for all editing modes, not only for the **Author** mode.

In the XML sample file for **SDF** you did not use a `xsi:schemaLocation` attribute, but instead you let the editor use the schema from the association. However there are cases in which you must refer for instance the location of a schema file from a remote web location. In such cases the catalog may be used to map the web location to a local file system entry.

In the following section it will be presented an use-case for the XML catalogs, by modifying our `sdf.xsd` XML Schema file from the Example Files Listings.

The `sdf.xml` file refers the other file `abs.xsd` through an `import` element:

```
<xs:import namespace=
  "http://www.oxygenxml.com/sample/documentation/abstracts"
  schemaLocation="abs.xsd"/>
```

The `schemaLocation` attribute references the `abs.xsd` file located in the same directory. What if the file was on the web, at the `http://www.oxygenxml.com/SDF/abs.xsd` location for instance? In this case the attribute value will be:

```
<xs:import namespace=
  "http://www.oxygenxml.com/sample/documentation/abstracts"
  schemaLocation="http://www.oxygenxml.com/SDF/abs.xsd"/>
```

There is a problem with this approach. What happens if an Internet connection is not available? How will you check the document for errors if a part of the schema is not available? The answer is to create a catalog file that will help the parser locate the missing piece containing the mapping:

```
http://www.oxygenxml.com/SDF/abs.xsd -> ../local_path/abs.xsd
```

To do this create a new XML file called `catalog.xml` and save it into the `{oXygen_installation_directory}/frameworks/sdf` directory. The content of the file should be:

```
<?xml version="1.0"?>
<catalog xmlns="urn:oasis:names:tc:entity:xmlns:xml:catalog">
  <system
    systemId="http://www.oxygenxml.com/SDF/abs.xsd"
    uri="schema/abs.xsd"/>
```

```
<uri name="http://www.oxygenxml.com/SDF/abs.xsd" uri="schema/abs.xsd"/>
</catalog>
```

This means that all the references to `http://www.oxygenxml.com/SDF/abs.xsd` must be resolved to the `abs.xsd` file located in the `schema` directory. The `uri` element is used by URI resolvers, for example for resolving a URI reference used in an XSLT stylesheet.

## Note

The references in the XML catalog files are relative to the directory that contains the catalog.

Save the catalog file and modify the `sdf.xsd` file by changing its `import` element, then add the catalog to the Document Type association. You can do this in the **Catalogs** tab by pressing the New button. Enter `${frameworks}/sdf/catalog.xml` in the displayed dialog.

To test the catalog settings, restart <Oxygen/> and try to validate a new sample **Simple Documentation Framework** document. There should be no errors.

## Configuring Transformation Scenarios

When distributing a framework to the users, it is a good idea to have the transformation scenarios already configured. This would help the content authors publish their work in different formats. Being contained in the **Document Type Association** the scenarios can be distributed along with the actions, menus, toolbars, catalogs, etc.

In the following section you will create a transformation scenario for your framework.

Create the directory `xsl` in the directory `frameworks/sdf`. The directory structure for the documentation framework should be:

```
oxygen
  frameworks
    sdf
      schema
      css
      templates
      xsl
```

Create the `sdf.xsl` file in the `xsl` directory. The complete content of the `sdf.xsl` file is found in the Example Files Listings.

Open the Options/Preferences/Document Type Associations. Open the Document Type dialog for the **SDF** framework then choose the Transformation tab. Click on the New. In the Edit Scenario dialog, fill the following fields:

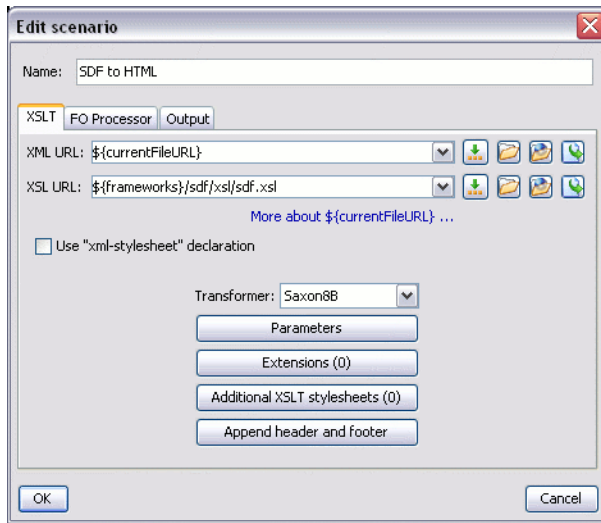
|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Name        | The name of the transformation scenario. Enter <i>SDF to HTML</i> . |
| XSL URL     | <code>\${frameworks}/sdf/xsl/sdf.xsl</code>                         |
| Transformer | Saxon 9B.   |

Change to the Output tab. Change the fields:

|                 |  |
|-----------------|--|
| Save as         | <code>\${cfd}/\${cfn}.html</code> This means the transformation output file will have the name of the XML file and the <i>html</i> extension and will be placed in the same directory. |
| Open in browser | Enable this option.  |

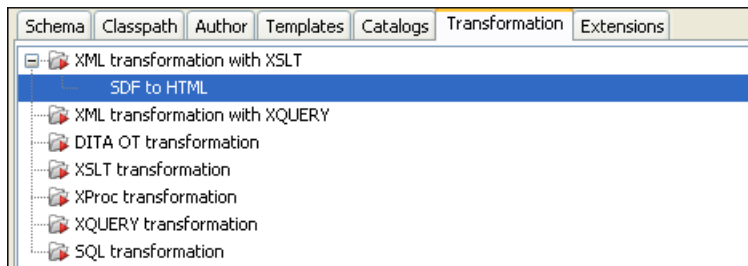
Saved file                      Enable this checkbox.


**Figure 8.19. Configuring a transformation scenario**



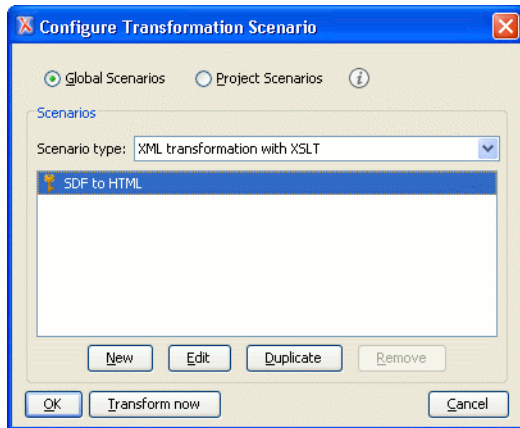
Now the scenario is listed in the Transformation tab:

**Figure 8.20. The transformation tab**




To test the transformation scenario you created, open the **SDF XML** sample from the Example Files Listings. Click on the  Apply Transformation Scenario button. The Configure Transformation Dialog is displayed. Its scenario list contains the scenario you defined earlier *SDF to HTML*. Click on it then choose Transform now. The HTML file should be saved in the same directory as the XML file and opened in the browser.



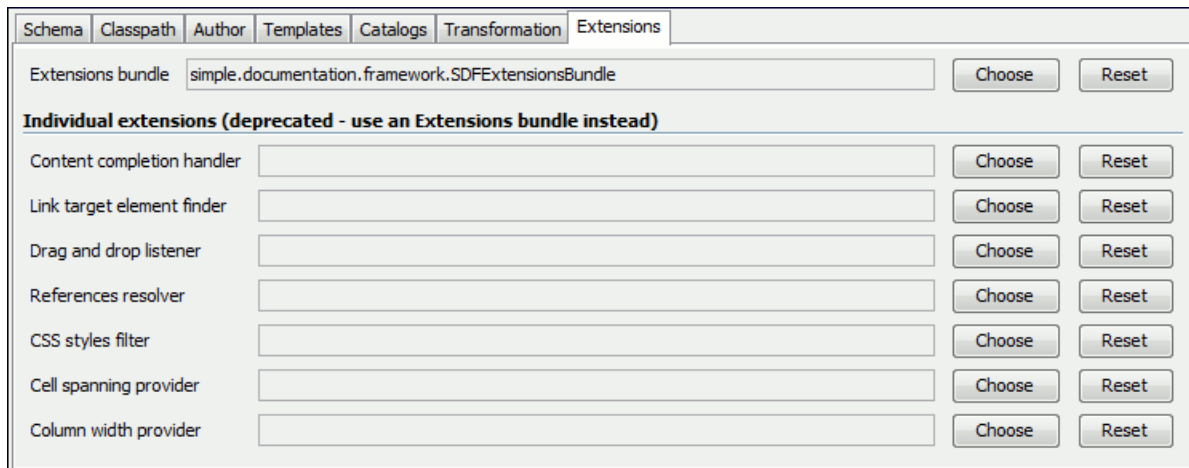
**Figure 8.21. Selecting the predefined scenario**

### Note

The key  symbol indicates that the scenario is read-only. It has this state because the scenario was loaded from a Document Type Association. The content authors can still change parameters and other settings if they are duplicating the scenario and edit the duplicate. In this case the copy of the scenario is created in the user local settings.

## Configuring Extensions

You can add extensions to your Document Type Association using the Extensions tab from the Document Type dialog.

**Figure 8.22. Configure extensions for a document type**

### Configuring an Extensions Bundle

Starting with <oXygen/> 10.3 version a single bundle was introduced acting as a provider for all other extensions. The individual extensions can still be set and if present they take precedence over the single provider, but this practice is being discouraged and the single provider should be used instead.

The extensions bundle is represented by the `ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.ExtensionsBundle` class. The provided implementation of the `ExtensionsBundle` is instantiated when the rules of the Document Type Association defined for the custom framework match a document opened in the editor. Therefore references to objects which need to be persistent throughout the application running session must not be kept in the bundle because the next detection event can result in creating another `ExtensionsBundle` instance.

1. Create a new Java project, in your IDE.

Create the `lib` directory in the Java project directory and copy in it the `oxygen.jar` file from the `{oxygen_installation_directory}/lib` directory.

2. Create the class `simple.documentation.framework.SDFExtensionsBundle` which must extend the abstract class `ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.ExtensionsBundle`.

```
public class SDFExtensionsBundle extends ExtensionsBundle {
```

A **Document Type ID** and a short description should be defined first by implementing the methods `getDocumentTypeID` and `getDescription`. The Document Type ID is used to uniquely identify the current framework. Such an ID must be provided especially if options related to the framework need to be persistently stored and retrieved between sessions.

```
    public String getDocumentTypeID() {
        return "Simple.Document.Framework.document.type";
    }

    public String getDescription() {
        return "A custom extensions bundle used for the Simple Document" +
            "Framework document type";
    }
}
```

In order to be notified about the activation of the custom Author extension in relation with an opened document an `ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorExtensionStateListener` should be implemented. The **activation** and **deactivation** events received by this listener should be used to perform custom initializations and to register/remove listeners like `ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorListener`, `ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorMouseListener` or `ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorCaretListener`. The custom author extension state listener should be provided by implementing the method `createAuthorExtensionStateListener`.

```
    public AuthorExtensionStateListener createAuthorExtensionStateListener() {
        return new SDFAuthorExtensionStateListener();
    }
}
```

The `AuthorExtensionStateListener` is instantiated and notified about the activation of the framework when the rules of the Document Type Association match a document opened in the Author editor page. The listener is notified about the deactivation when another framework is activated for the same document, the user switches to another page or the editor is closed. A complete description and implementation of an `ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorExtensionStateListener` can be found in the Implementing an Author Extension State Listener.

If Schema Aware mode is active in Oxygen, all actions that can generate invalid content will be redirected toward the `AuthorSchemaAwareEditingHandler`. The handler can either resolve a specific case, let the default implementation take place or reject the edit entirely by throwing an `InvalidEditException`. The actions that are forwarded to this handler include typing, delete or paste.

See the Implementing an Author Schema Aware Editing Handler section for more details about this handler.

Customizations of the content completion proposals are permitted by creating a schema manager filter extension. The interface that declares the methods used for content completion proposals filtering is `ro.sync.content-completion.xml.SchemaManagerFilter`. The filter can be applied on elements, attributes or on their values. Responsible for creating the content completion filter is the method `createSchemaManagerFilter`. A new `SchemaManagerFilter` will be created each time a document matches the rules defined by the Document Type Association which contains the filter declaration.

```
public SchemaManagerFilter createSchemaManagerFilter() {
    return new SDFSchemaManagerFilter();
}
```

A detailed presentation of the schema manager filter can be found in [Configuring a Content completion handler section](#).

The `<oXygen/>` Author supports link based navigation between documents and document sections. Therefore, if the document contains elements defined as links to other elements, for example links based on the **id** attributes, the extension should provide the means to find the referred content. To do this an implementation of the `ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.link.ElementLocatorProvider` interface should be returned by the `createElementLocatorProvider` method. Each time an element pointed by a link needs to be located the method is invoked.

```
public ElementLocatorProvider createElementLocatorProvider() {
    return new DefaultElementLocatorProvider();
}
```

The section that explains how to implement an element locator provider is [Configuring a Link target element finder](#).

The drag and drop functionality can be extended by implementing the `ro.sync.exml.editor.xmleditor.pageauthor.AuthorDndListener` interface. Relevant methods from the listener are invoked when the mouse is dragged, moved over, or exits the author editor page, when the drop action changes, and when the drop occurs. Each method receives the `DropTargetEvent` containing information about the drag and drop operation. The drag and drop extensions are available on Author page for both `<oXygen/>` Eclipse plugin and standalone application. The Text page corresponding listener is available only for `<oXygen/>` Eclipse plugin. The methods corresponding to each implementation are: `createAuthorAWTDndListener`, `createTextSWTDndListener` and `createAuthorSWTDndListener`.

```
public AuthorDndListener createAuthorAWTDndListener() {
    return new SDFAuthorDndListener();
}
```

For more details about the Author drag and drop listeners see the [Configuring a custom Drag and Drop listener section](#).

Another extension which can be included in the bundle is the reference resolver. In our case the references are represented by the **ref** element and the attribute indicating the referred resource is **location**. To be able to obtain the content of the referred resources you will have to implement a Java extension class which implements the `ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorReferenceResolver`. The method responsible for creating the custom references resolver is `createAuthorReferenceResolver`. The method is called each time a document opened in an Author editor page matches the Document Type Association where the extensions bundle is defined. The instantiated references resolver object is kept and used until another extensions bundle corresponding to another Document Type is activated as result of the detection process.

```
public AuthorReferenceResolver createAuthorReferenceResolver() {
    return new ReferencesResolver();
}
```

A more detailed description of the references resolver can be found in the [Configuring a References Resolver](#) section.

To be able to dynamically customize the default CSS styles for a certain `AuthorNode` an implementation of the `ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.StylesFilter` can be provided. The extensions bundle method responsible for creating the `StylesFilter` is `createAuthorStylesFilter`. The method is called each time a document opened in an Author editor page matches the document type association where the extensions bundle is defined. The instantiated filter object is kept and used until another extensions bundle corresponding to another Document Type is activated as result of the detection process.

```
public StylesFilter createAuthorStylesFilter() {
    return new SDFStylesFilter();
}
```

See the [Configuring CSS styles filter](#) section for more details about the styles filter extension.

In order to edit data in custom tabular format implementations of the `ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorTableCellSpanProvider` and the `ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorTableColumnWidthProvider` interfaces should be provided. The two methods from the `ExtensionsBundle` specifying these two extension points are `createAuthorTableCellSpanProvider` and `createAuthorTableColumnWidthProvider`.

```
public AuthorTableCellSpanProvider createAuthorTableCellSpanProvider() {
    return new TableCellSpanProvider();
}

public AuthorTableColumnWidthProvider
    createAuthorTableColumnWidthProvider() {
    return new TableColumnWidthProvider();
}
```

The two table information providers are not reused for different tables. The methods are called for each table in the document so new instances should be provided every time. Read more about the cell span and column width information providers in [Configuring a Table Cell Span Provider](#) and [Configuring a Table Column Width Provider](#) sections.

If the functionality related to one of the previous extension point does not need to be modified then the developed `ExtensionsBundle` should not override the corresponding method and leave the default base implementation to return **null**.

3. Package the compiled class into a jar file.
4. Copy the jar file into the `frameworks/sdf` directory.
5. Add the jar file to the Author class path.
6. Register the Java class by clicking on the Extensions tab. Press the Choose button and select from the displayed dialog the name of the class: `SDFExtensionsBundle`.

The complete source code of the `SDFExtensionsBundle` implementation is found in the [Example Files Listings](#), the [Java Files](#) section.

## Implementing an Author Extension State Listener

The `ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorExtensionStateListener` implementation is notified when the Author extension where the listener is defined is activated or deactivated in the Document Type detection process.

```
import ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorAccess;
import ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorExtensionStateListener;

public class SDFAuthorExtensionStateListener implements
    AuthorExtensionStateListener {
    private AuthorListener sdfAuthorDocumentListener;
    private AuthorMouseListener sdfMouseListener;
    private AuthorCaretListener sdfCaretListener;
    private OptionListener sdfOptionListener;
```

The **activation** event received by this listener when the rules of the Document Type Association match a document opened in the Author editor page, should be used to perform custom initializations and to register listeners like `ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorListener`, `ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorMouseListener` or `ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorCaretListener`.

```
    public void activated(AuthorAccess authorAccess) {
        // Get the value of the option.
        String option = authorAccess.getOptionsStorage().getOption(
            "sdf.custom.option.key", "");
        // Use the option for some initializations...

        // Add an option listener.
        authorAccess.getOptionsStorage().addOptionListener(sdfOptionListener);

        // Add author document listeners.
        sdfAuthorDocumentListener = new SDFAuthorListener();
        authorAccess.getDocumentController().addAuthorListener(
            sdfAuthorDocumentListener);

        // Add mouse listener.
        sdfMouseListener = new SDFAuthorMouseListener();
        authorAccess.getEditorAccess().addAuthorMouseListener(sdfMouseListener);

        // Add caret listener.
        sdfCaretListener = new SDFAuthorCaretListener();
        authorAccess.getEditorAccess().addAuthorCaretListener(sdfCaretListener);

        // Other custom initializations...
    }
```

The `authorAccess` parameter received by the `activated` method can be used to gain access to Author specific actions and informations related to components like the editor, document, workspace, tables, change tracking a.s.o.

If options specific to the custom developed Author extension need to be stored or retrieved, a reference to the `OptionsStorage` can be obtained by calling the `getOptionsStorage` method from the author access. The same object can be used to register `OptionListener` listeners. An option listener is registered in relation with an option **key** and will be notified about the value changes of that option.

An `AuthorListener` can be used if events related to the Author document modifications are of interest. The listener can be added to the `AuthorDocumentController`. A reference to the document controller is returned by the `getDocumentController` method from the author access. The document controller can also be used to perform operations involving document modifications.

To provide access to Author editor component related functionality and informations, the author access has a reference to the `AuthorEditorAccess` that can be obtained when calling the `getEditorAccess` method. At this level `AuthorMouseListener` and `AuthorCaretListener` can be added which will be notified about mouse and caret events occurring in the Author editor page.

The **deactivation** event is received when another framework is activated for the same document, the user switches to another editor page or the editor is closed. The `deactivate` method is typically used to unregister the listeners previously added on the `activate` method and to perform other actions. For example options related to the deactivated author extension can be saved at this point.

```
public void deactivated(AuthorAccess authorAccess) {
    // Store the option.
    authorAccess.getOptionsStorage().setOption(
        "sdf.custom.option.key", optionValue);

    // Remove the option listener.
    authorAccess.getOptionsStorage().removeOptionListener(sdfOptionListener);

    // Remove document listeners.
    authorAccess.getDocumentController().removeAuthorListener(
        sdfAuthorDocumentListener);

    // Remove mouse listener.
    authorAccess.getEditorAccess().removeAuthorMouseListener(sdfMouseListener);

    // Remove caret listener.
    authorAccess.getEditorAccess().removeAuthorCaretListener(sdfCaretListener);

    // Other actions...
}
```

## Implementing an Author Schema Aware Editing Handler

You can implement your own handler for actions like typing, delete or paste by providing an implementation of `ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorSchemaAwareEditingHandler`. The Schema Aware Editing must be **On** or **Custom** in order for this handler to be called. The handler can either resolve a specific case, let the default implementation take place or reject the edit entirely by throwing an `InvalidEditException`.

```
package simple.documentation.framework.extensions;

/**
 * Specific editing support for SDF documents.
 * Handles typing and paste events inside section and tables.
 */
public class SDFSchemaAwareEditingHandler implements AuthorSchemaAwareEditingHandler {
```

Typing events can be handled using the `handleTyping` method. For example, the `SDFSchemaAwareEditingHandler` checks if the schema is not a learned one, was loaded successfully and Smart Paste is active. If these conditions are met, the event will be handled.

```
/**
 * @see ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorSchemaAwareEditingHandler#handleTyping(int, char)
 */
public boolean handleTyping(int offset, char ch, AuthorAccess authorAccess)
throws InvalidEditException {
    boolean handleTyping = false;
    AuthorSchemaManager authorSchemaManager = authorAccess.getDocumentController().getAuthorSchemaManager();
    if (!authorSchemaManager.isLearnSchema() &&
        !authorSchemaManager.hasLoadingErrors() &&
        authorSchemaManager.getAuthorSchemaAwareOptions().isEnabledSmartTyping()) {
        try {
            AuthorDocumentFragment characterFragment =
                authorAccess.getDocumentController().createNewDocumentTextFragment(String.valueOf(ch));
            handleTyping = handleInsertionEvent(offset, new AuthorDocumentFragment[] {characterFragment});
        } catch (AuthorOperationException e) {
            throw new InvalidEditException(e.getMessage(), "Invalid typing event: " + e.getMessage());
        }
    }
    return handleTyping;
}
```

Implementing the `AuthorSchemaAwareEditingHandler` gives the possibility to handle other events like: the keyboard delete event at the given offset (using Delete or Backspace keys), delete element tags, delete selection, join elements or paste fragment.

The complete source code of the implementation is found in the Example Files Listings, the Java Files section.

## Configuring a Content completion handler

You can filter or contribute to items offered for content completion by implementing the `ro.sync.contentcompletion.xml.SchemaManagerFilter` interface.

```
import java.util.List;

import ro.sync.contentcompletion.xml.CIAttribute;
import ro.sync.contentcompletion.xml.CIElement;
import ro.sync.contentcompletion.xml.CIValue;
import ro.sync.contentcompletion.xml.Context;
import ro.sync.contentcompletion.xml.SchemaManagerFilter;
import ro.sync.contentcompletion.xml.WhatAttributesCanGoHereContext;
import ro.sync.contentcompletion.xml.WhatElementsCanGoHereContext;
import ro.sync.contentcompletion.xml.WhatPossibleValuesHasAttributeContext;

public class SDFSchemaManagerFilter implements SchemaManagerFilter {
```

You can implement the various callbacks of the interface either by returning the default values given by `<oXygen/>` or by contributing to the list of proposals. The filter can be applied on elements, attributes or on their values. Attributes filtering can be implemented using the `filterAttributes` method and changing the default content completion list of `ro.sync.contentcompletion.xml.CIAttribute` for the element provided by the current `ro.sync.contentcompletion.xml.WhatAttributesCanGoHereContext` context. For example, the

SDFSchemaManagerFilter checks if the element from the current context is the table element and add the frame attribute to the table list of attributes.

```

/**
 * Filter attributes of the "table" element.
 */
public List<CIAttribute> filterAttributes(List<CIAttribute> attributes,
    WhatAttributesCanGoHereContext context) {
    // If the element from the current context is the 'table' element add the
    // attribute named 'frame' to the list of default content completion proposals
    if (context != null) {
        ContextElement contextElement = context.getParentElement();
        if ("table".equals(contextElement.getQName())) {
            CIAttribute frameAttribute = new CIAttribute();
            frameAttribute.setName("frame");
            frameAttribute.setRequired(false);
            frameAttribute.setFixed(false);
            frameAttribute.setDefaultValue("void");
            if (attributes == null) {
                attributes = new ArrayList<CIAttribute>();
            }
            attributes.add(frameAttribute);
        }
    }
    return attributes;
}

```

The elements that can be inserted in a specific context can be filtered using the filterElements method. The SDFSchemaManagerFilter uses this method to replace the td child element with the th element when header is the current context element.

```

public List<CIElement> filterElements(List<CIElement> elements,
    WhatElementsCanGoHereContext context) {
    // If the element from the current context is the 'header' element remove the
    // 'td' element from the list of content completion proposals and add the
    // 'th' element.
    if (context != null) {
        Stack<ContextElement> elementStack = context.getElementStack();
        if (elementStack != null) {
            ContextElement contextElement = context.getElementStack().peek();
            if ("header".equals(contextElement.getQName())) {
                if (elements != null) {
                    for (Iterator<CIElement> iterator = elements.iterator(); iterator.hasNext();) {
                        CIElement element = iterator.next();
                        // Remove the 'td' element
                        if ("td".equals(element.getQName())) {
                            elements.remove(element);
                            break;
                        }
                    }
                }
            } else {
                elements = new ArrayList<CIElement>();
            }
            // Insert the 'th' element in the list of content completion proposals

```



```
        CIElement thElement = new SDFElement();
        thElement.setName("th");
        elements.add(thElement);
    }
} else {
    // If the given context is null then the given list of content completion elements con
    // global elements.
}
return elements;
}
```

The elements or attributes values can be filtered using the `filterElementValues` or `filterAttributeValues` methods.

The complete source code of the `SDFSchemaManagerFilter` implementation is found in the Example Files Listings, the Java Files section.

## Configuring a Link target element finder

The link target reference finder represents the support for finding references from links which indicate specific elements inside an XML document. This support will only be available if a schema is associated with the document type.

If you do not define a custom link target reference finder, the `DefaultElementLocatorProvider` implementation will be used by default. The interface which should be implemented for a custom link target reference finder is `ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.link.ElementLocatorProvider`. As an alternative, the `ro.sync.ecss.extensions.commons.DefaultElementLocatorProvider` implementation can also be extended.

The used `ElementLocatorProvider` will be queried for an `ElementLocator` when a link location must be determined (when user clicks on a link). Then, to find the corresponding (linked) element, the obtained `ElementLocator` will be queried for each element from the document.

### The `DefaultElementLocatorProvider` implementation

The `DefaultElementLocatorProvider` implementation offers support for the most common types of links:

- links based on ID attribute values
- XPointer element() scheme

The method `getElementLocator` determines what `ElementLocator` should be used. In the default implementation it checks if the link is an XPointer element() scheme otherwise it assumes it is an ID. A non-null `IDTypeVerifier` will always be provided if a schema is associated with the document type.

The link string argument is the "anchor" part of the of the URL which is composed from the value of the link property specified for the link element in the CSS.

```
public ElementLocator getElementLocator(IDTypeVerifier idVerifier,
                                       String link) {
    ElementLocator elementLocator = null;
    try {
        if(link.startsWith("element(")){
            // xpointer element() scheme
            elementLocator = new XPointerElementLocator(idVerifier, link);
        }
    }
}
```

```

    } else {
        // Locate link element by ID
        elementLocator = new IDElementLocator(idVerifier, link);
    }
} catch (ElementLocatorException e) {
    logger.warn("Exception when create element locator for link: "
        + link + ". Cause: " + e, e);
}
return elementLocator;
}

```

### The XPointerElementLocator implementation

The XPointerElementLocator is an implementation of the abstract class `ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.link.ElementLocator` for links that have one of the following XPointer element() scheme patterns:

|                                     |   |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| <code>element(elementID)</code>     | locate the element with the specified id  |
| <code>element(/1/2/3)</code>        | A child sequence appearing alone identifies an element by means of stepwise navigation, which is directed by a sequence of integers separated by slashes (/); each integer n locates the nth child element of the previously located element. |
| <code>element(elementID/3/4)</code> | A child sequence appearing after a NCName identifies an element by means of stepwise navigation, starting from the element located by the given name.   |

The constructor separates the id/integers which are delimited by slashes(/) into a sequence of identifiers (an XPointer path). It will also check that the link has one of the supported patterns of the XPointer element() scheme.

```

public XPointerElementLocator(IDTypeVerifier idVerifier, String link)
    throws ElementLocatorException {
    super(link);
    this.idVerifier = idVerifier;

    link = link.substring("element(".length(), link.length() - 1);

    StringTokenizer stringTokenizer = new StringTokenizer(link, "/", false);
    xpointerPath = new String[stringTokenizer.countTokens()];
    int i = 0;
    while (stringTokenizer.hasMoreTokens()) {
        xpointerPath[i] = stringTokenizer.nextToken();
        boolean invalidFormat = false;

        // Empty xpointer component is not supported
        if(xpointerPath[i].length() == 0){
            invalidFormat = true;
        }

        if(i > 0){
            try {
                Integer.parseInt(xpointerPath[i]);
            } catch (NumberFormatException e) {
                invalidFormat = true;
            }
        }
    }
}

```

```

    if(invalidFormat){
        throw new ElementLocatorException(
            "Only the element() scheme is supported when locating XPointer links."
            + "Supported formats: element(elementID), element(/1/2/3),
              element(elemID/2/3/4).");
    }
    i++;
}

if(Character.isDigit(xpointerPath[0].charAt(0))){
    // This is the case when xpointer have the following pattern /1/5/7
    xpointerPathDepth = xpointerPath.length;
} else {
    // This is the case when xpointer starts with an element ID
    xpointerPathDepth = -1;
    startWithElementID = true;
}
}
}

```

The method `startElement` will be invoked at the beginning of every element in the XML document (even when the element is empty). The arguments it takes are

|                        |   |
|------------------------|---|
| <code>uri</code>       | the namespace URI, or the empty string if the element has no namespace URI or if namespace processing is disabled |
| <code>localName</code> | the local name of the element   |
| <code>qName</code>     | the qualified name of the element   |
| <code>atts</code>      | the attributes attached to the element. If there are no attributes, it will be empty.                             |

The method returns `true` if the processed element is found to be the one indicated by the link.

The `XPointerElementLocator` implementation of the `startElement` will update the depth of the current element and keep the index of the element in its parent. If the `xpointerPath` starts with an element ID then the current element ID is verified to match the specified ID. If this is the case the depth of the XPointer is updated taking account of the depth of the current element.

If the XPointer path depth is the same as the current element depth then the kept indices of the current element path are compared to the indices in the XPointer path. If all of them match then the element has been found.

```

public boolean startElement(String uri, String localName,
    String name, Attr[] atts) {
    boolean linkLocated = false;
    // Increase current element document depth
    startElementDepth ++;

    if (endElementDepth != startElementDepth) {
        // The current element is the first child of the parent
        currentElementIndexStack.push(new Integer(1));
    } else {
        // Another element in the parent element
        currentElementIndexStack.push(new Integer(lastIndexInParent + 1));
    }
}

```

```

if (startWithElementID) {
    // This the case when xpointer path starts with an element ID.
    String xpointerElement = xpointerPath[0];
    for (int i = 0; i < atts.length; i++) {
        if(xpointerElement.equals(atts[i].getValue())){
            if(idVerifier.hasIDType(
                localName, uri, atts[i].getQName(), atts[i].getNamespace())){
                xpointerPathDepth = startElementDepth + xpointerPath.length - 1;
                break;
            }
        }
    }
}

if (xpointerPathDepth == startElementDepth){
    // check if xpointer path matches with the current element path
    linkLocated = true;
    try {
        int xpointerIdx = xpointerPath.length - 1;
        int stackIdx = currentElementIndexStack.size() - 1;
        int stopIdx = startWithElementID ? 1 : 0;
        while (xpointerIdx >= stopIdx && stackIdx >= 0) {
            int xpointerIndex = Integer.parseInt(xpointerPath[xpointerIdx]);
            int currentElementIndex =
                ((Integer)currentElementIndexStack.get(stackIdx)).intValue();
            if(xpointerIndex != currentElementIndex) {
                linkLocated = false;
                break;
            }

            xpointerIdx--;
            stackIdx--;
        }

    } catch (NumberFormatException e) {
        logger.warn(e,e);
    }
}
return linkLocated;
}

```

The method `endElement` will be invoked at the end of every element in the XML document (even when the element is empty).

The `XPointerElementLocator` implementation of the `endElement` updates the depth of the current element path and the index of the element in its parent.

```

public void endElement(String uri, String localName, String name) {
    endElementDepth = startElementDepth;
    startElementDepth --;
    lastIndexInParent = ((Integer)currentElementIndexStack.pop()).intValue();
}

```

## The IDElementLocator implementation

The IDElementLocator is an implementation of the abstract class `ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.link.ElementLocator` for links that use an **id**.

The constructor only assigns field values and the method `endElement` is empty for this implementation.

The method `startElement` checks each of the element's attribute values and when one matches the link, it considers the element found if one of the following conditions is satisfied:

- the qualified name of the attribute is `xml:id`
- the attribute is of type ID

The type of the attribute is checked with the help of the method `IDTypeVerifier.hasIDType`.

```
public boolean startElement(String uri, String localName,
    String name, Attr[] atts) {
    boolean elementFound = false;
    for (int i = 0; i < atts.length; i++) {
        if (link.equals(atts[i].getValue())) {
            if ("xml:id".equals(atts[i].getQName())) {
                // xml:id attribute
                elementFound = true;
            } else {
                // check if attribute has ID type
                String attrLocalName =
                    ExtensionUtil.getLocalName(atts[i].getQName());
                String attrUri = atts[i].getNamespace();
                if (idVerifier.hasIDType(localName, uri, attrLocalName, attrUri)) {
                    elementFound = true;
                }
            }
        }
    }
}

return elementFound;
}
```

## Creating a customized link target reference finder

If you need to create a custom link target reference finder you can do so by following these steps.

Create the class which will implement the `ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.link.ElementLocatorProvider` interface. As an alternative, your class could extend `ro.sync.ecss.extensions.commons.DefaultElementLocatorProvider`, the default implementation.

As a start point you can use the source code of the `DefaultElementLocatorProvider` implementation which is found in the Example Files Listings, the Java Files section. There you will also find the implementations for `XPointerElementLocator` and `IDElementLocator`.

## Configuring a custom Drag and Drop listener

You can add your own drag and drop listener implementation of `ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.DnDHandler`. You can choose from three interfaces to implement depending on whether you are using the framework with the <oXygen/> Eclipse plugin or the standalone version or if you want to add the handler for the Text or Author pages.

**Table 8.2. Interfaces for the DnD listener**

| Interface  | Description  |
|--|--|
| <code>ro.sync.exml.editor.xmleditor.pageauthor.AuthorCustomDnDHandler</code> | Receives callbacks from the <oXygen/> standalone application for Drag And Drop in Author |
| <code>com.oxygenxml.editor.editors.author.AuthorDnDListener</code>           | Receives callbacks from the <oXygen/> Eclipse plugin for Drag And Drop in Author         |
| <code>com.oxygenxml.editor.editors.TextDnDListener</code>                    | Receives callbacks from the <oXygen/> Eclipse plugin for Drag And Drop in Text           |

## Configuring a References Resolver

You need to provide a handler for resolving references and obtain the content they refer. In our case the element which has references is **ref** and the attribute indicating the referred resource is **location**. You will have to implement a Java extension class for obtaining the referred resources.

Create the class `simple.documentation.framework.ReferencesResolver`. This class must implement the `ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorReferenceResolver` interface.

```
import ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorReferenceResolver;
import ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorAccess;
import ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.node.AttrValue;
import ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.node.AuthorElement;
import ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.node.AuthorNode;
```

```
public class ReferencesResolver
    implements AuthorReferenceResolver {
```

The method `hasReferences` verifies if the handler considers the node to have references. It takes as argument an `AuthorNode` that represents the node which will be verified. The method will return `true` if the node is considered to have references. In our case, to be a reference the node must be an element with the name `ref` and it must have an attribute named `location`.

```
public boolean hasReferences(AuthorNode node) {
    boolean hasReferences = false;
    if (node.getType() == AuthorNode.NODE_TYPE_ELEMENT) {
        AuthorElement element = (AuthorElement) node;
        if ("ref".equals(element.getLocalName())) {
            AttrValue attrValue = element.getAttribute("location");
            hasReferences = attrValue != null;
        }
    }
    return hasReferences;
}
```

The method `getDisplayname` returns the display name of the node that contains the expanded referred content. It takes as argument an `AuthorNode` that represents the node for which the display name is needed. The referred content

engine will ask this `AuthorReferenceResolver` implementation what is the display name for each node which is considered a reference. In our case the display name is the value of the `location` attribute from the `ref` element.

```
public String getDisplayName(AuthorNode node) {
    String displayName = "ref-fragment";
    if (node.getType() == AuthorNode.NODE_TYPE_ELEMENT) {
        AuthorElement element = (AuthorElement) node;
        if ("ref".equals(element.getLocalName())) {
            AttrValue attrValue = element.getAttribute("location");
            if (attrValue != null) {
                displayName = attrValue.getValue();
            }
        }
    }
    return displayName;
}
```

The method `resolveReference` resolves the reference of the node and returns a `SAXSource` with the parser and the parser's input source. It takes as arguments an `AuthorNode` that represents the node for which the reference needs resolving, the `systemID` of the node, the `AuthorAccess` with access methods to the Author data model and a `SAX EntityResolver` which resolves resources that are already opened in another editor or resolve resources through the XML catalog. In the implementation you need to resolve the reference relative to the `systemID`, and create a parser and an input source over the resolved reference.

```
public SAXSource resolveReference(
    AuthorNode node,
    String systemID,
    AuthorAccess authorAccess,
    EntityResolver entityResolver) {
    SAXSource saxSource = null;

    if (node.getType() == AuthorNode.NODE_TYPE_ELEMENT) {
        AuthorElement element = (AuthorElement) node;
        if ("ref".equals(element.getLocalName())) {
            AttrValue attrValue = element.getAttribute("location");
            if (attrValue != null) {
                String attrStringVal = attrValue.getValue();
                try {
                    URL absoluteUrl = new URL(new URL(systemID),
                        authorAccess.correctURL(attrStringVal));

                    InputSource inputSource = entityResolver.resolveEntity(null,
                        absoluteUrl.toString());
                    if(inputSource == null) {
                        inputSource = new InputSource(absoluteUrl.toString());
                    }

                    XMLReader xmlReader = authorAccess.newNonValidatingXMLReader();
                    xmlReader.setEntityResolver(entityResolver);

                    saxSource = new SAXSource(xmlReader, inputSource);
                } catch (MalformedURLException e) {
                    logger.error(e, e);
                } catch (SAXException e) {

```

```

        logger.error(e, e);
    } catch (IOException e) {
        logger.error(e, e);
    }
}
}
}

return saxSource;
}

```

The method `getReferenceUniqueID` should return an unique identifier for the node reference. The unique identifier is used to avoid resolving the references recursively. It takes as argument an `AuthorNode` that represents the node with the reference. In the implementation the unique identifier is the value of the `location` attribute from the `ref` element.

```

public String getDisplayName(AuthorNode node) {
    String displayName = "ref-fragment";
    if (node.getType() == AuthorNode.NODE_TYPE_ELEMENT) {
        AuthorElement element = (AuthorElement) node;
        if ("ref".equals(element.getLocalName())) {
            AttrValue attrValue = element.getAttribute("location");
            if (attrValue != null) {
                displayName = attrValue.getValue();
            }
        }
    }
    return displayName;
}

```

The method `getReferenceSystemID` should return the `systemID` of the referred content. It takes as arguments an `AuthorNode` that represents the node with the reference and the `AuthorAccess` with access methods to the Author data model. In the implementation you use the value of the `location` attribute from the `ref` element and resolve it relatively to the XML base URL of the node.

```

public String getReferenceSystemID(AuthorNode node,
                                   AuthorAccess authorAccess) {
    String systemID = null;
    if (node.getType() == AuthorNode.NODE_TYPE_ELEMENT) {
        AuthorElement element = (AuthorElement) node;
        if ("ref".equals(element.getLocalName())) {
            AttrValue attrValue = element.getAttribute("location");
            if (attrValue != null) {
                String attrStringVal = attrValue.getValue();
                try {
                    URL absoluteUrl = new URL(node.getXMLBaseURL(),
                                             authorAccess.correctURL(attrStringVal));
                    systemID = absoluteUrl.toString();
                } catch (MalformedURLException e) {
                    logger.error(e, e);
                }
            }
        }
    }
}

```



```
    return systemID;
}
```

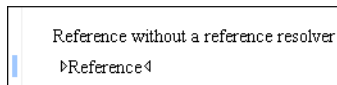
The complete source code of the implementation is found in the Example Files Listings, the Java Files section.

In the listing below, the XML document contains the **ref** element:

```
<ref location="referred.xml">Reference</ref>
```

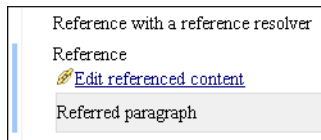
When no reference resolver is specified, the reference has the following layout:

**Figure 8.23. Reference with no specified reference resolver**



When the above implementation is configured, the reference has the expected layout:

**Figure 8.24. Reference with reference resolver**



## Configuring CSS Styles Filter

You can modify the CSS styles for each `ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.node.AuthorNode` rendered in the Author page using an implementation of `ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.StylesFilter`. You can implement the various callbacks of the interface either by returning the default value given by `<oXygen/>` or by contributing to the value. The received styles `ro.sync.ecss.css.Styles` can be processed and values can be overwritten with your own. For example you can override the `KEY_BACKGROUND_COLOR` style to return your own implementation of `ro.sync.xml.view.graphics.Color` or override the `KEY_FONT` style to return your own implementation of `ro.sync.xml.view.graphics.Font`.

For instance in our simple document example the filter can change the value of the `KEY_FONT` property for the `table` element:

```
package simple.documentation.framework;

import ro.sync.ecss.css.Styles;
import ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.StylesFilter;
import ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.node.AuthorNode;
import ro.sync.xml.view.graphics.Font;

public class SDFStylesFilter implements StylesFilter {

    public Styles filter(Styles styles, AuthorNode authorNode) {
        if (AuthorNode.NODE_TYPE_ELEMENT == authorNode.getType()
            && "table".equals(authorNode.getName())) {
            styles.setProperty(Styles.KEY_FONT, new Font(null, Font.BOLD, 12));
        }
    }
}
```

```

        return styles;
    }
}

```

## Configuring a Table Column Width Provider

In the documentation framework the `table` element and the table columns can have specified widths. In order for these widths to be considered by <oXygen/> Author we need to provide the means to determine them. As explained in the Styling the Table Element section which describes the CSS properties needed for defining a table, if you use the table element attribute **width** <oXygen/> can determine the table width automatically. In this example the table has `col` elements with **width** attributes that are not recognized by default. You will need to implement a Java extension class for determining the column widths.

Create the class `simple.documentation.framework.TableColumnWidthProvider`. This class must implement the `ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorTableColumnWidthProvider` interface.

```

import ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorAccess;
import ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorOperationException;
import ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorTableColumnWidthProvider;
import ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.WidthRepresentation;
import ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.node.AuthorElement;

```

```

public class TableColumnWidthProvider
    implements AuthorTableColumnWidthProvider {

```

The method `init` is taking as argument the `AuthorElement` that represents the XML `table` element. In our case the column widths are specified in `col` elements from the `table` element. In such cases you must collect the span information by analyzing the table element.

```

    public void init(AuthorElement tableElement) {
        this.tableElement = tableElement;
        AuthorElement[] colChildren = tableElement.getElementsByLocalName("customcol");
        if (colChildren != null && colChildren.length > 0) {
            for (int i = 0; i < colChildren.length; i++) {
                AuthorElement colChild = colChildren[i];
                if (i == 0) {
                    colsStartOffset = colChild.getStartOffset();
                }
                if (i == colChildren.length - 1) {
                    colsEndOffset = colChild.getEndOffset();
                }
                // Determine the 'width' for this col.
                AttrValue colWidthAttribute = colChild.getAttribute("width");
                String colWidth = null;
                if (colWidthAttribute != null) {
                    colWidth = colWidthAttribute.getValue();
                    // Add WidthRepresentation objects for the columns this 'customcol' specification
                    // spans over.
                    colWidthSpecs.add(new WidthRepresentation(colWidth, true));
                }
            }
        }
    }
}

```

The method `isTableAcceptingWidth` should check if the table cells are `td`.

```
public boolean isTableAcceptingWidth(String tableCellsTagName) {
    return "td".equals(tableCellsTagName);
}
```

The method `isTableAndColumnsResizable` should check if the table cells are `td`. This method determines if the table and columns can be resized by dragging with the mouse the edge of a column.

```
public boolean isTableAndColumnsResizable(String tableCellsTagName) {
    return "td".equals(tableCellsTagName);
}
```

The methods `getTableWidth` and `getCellWidth` are used for determining the table width and the column width. The table layout engine will ask this `AuthorTableColumnWidthProvider` implementation what is the table width for each table element and the cell width for each cell element from the table that was marked as cell in the CSS using the property `display:table-cell`. The implementation is simple and just parses the value of the **width** attribute. The methods must return `null` for the tables/cells that do not have a specified width.

```
public WidthRepresentation getTableWidth(String tableCellsTagName) {
    WidthRepresentation toReturn = null;
    if (tableElement != null && "td".equals(tableCellsTagName)) {
        AttrValue widthAttr = tableElement.getAttribute("width");
        if (widthAttr != null) {
            String width = widthAttr.getValue();
            if (width != null) {
                toReturn = new WidthRepresentation(width, true);
            }
        }
    }
    return toReturn;
}
```

```
public List<WidthRepresentation> getCellWidth(AuthorElement cellElement, int colNumberStart,
    int colSpan) {
    List<WidthRepresentation> toReturn = null;
    int size = colWidthSpecs.size();
    if (size >= colNumberStart && size >= colNumberStart + colSpan) {
        toReturn = new ArrayList<WidthRepresentation>(colSpan);
        for (int i = colNumberStart; i < colNumberStart + colSpan; i++) {
            // Add the column widths
            toReturn.add(colWidthSpecs.get(i));
        }
    }
    return toReturn;
}
```

The methods `commitTableWidthModification` and `commitColumnWidthModifications` are used for committing changes made to the width of the table or its columns when using the mouse drag gestures.

```
public void commitTableWidthModification(AuthorDocumentController authorDocumentController,
    int newTableWidth, String tableCellsTagName) throws AuthorOperationException {
    if ("td".equals(tableCellsTagName)) {
        if (newTableWidth > 0) {
            if (tableElement != null) {
```

```

String newWidth = String.valueOf(newTableWidth);

authorDocumentController.setAttribute(
    "width",
    new AttrValue(newWidth),
    tableElement);
} else {
    throw new AuthorOperationException("Cannot find the element representing the table.")
}
}
}
}

public void commitColumnWidthModifications(AuthorDocumentController authorDocumentControll
    WidthRepresentation[] colWidths, String tableCellsTagName) throws AuthorOperationExcept
if ("td".equals(tableCellsTagName)) {
    if (colWidths != null && tableElement != null) {
        if (colsStartOffset >= 0 && colsEndOffset >= 0 && colsStartOffset < colsEndOffset) {
            authorDocumentController.delete(colsStartOffset,
                colsEndOffset);
        }
        String xmlFragment = createXMLFragment(colWidths);
        int offset = -1;
        AuthorElement[] header = tableElement.getElementsByLocalName("header");
        if (header != null && header.length > 0) {
            // Insert the cols elements before the 'header' element
            offset = header[0].getStartOffset();
        }
        if (offset == -1) {
            throw new AuthorOperationException("No valid offset to insert the columns width speci
        }
        authorDocumentController.insertXMLFragment(xmlFragment, offset);
    }
}
}

private String createXMLFragment(WidthRepresentation[] widthRepresentations) {
    StringBuffer fragment = new StringBuffer();
    String ns = tableElement.getNamespace();
    for (int i = 0; i < widthRepresentations.length; i++) {
        WidthRepresentation width = widthRepresentations[i];
        fragment.append("<customcol");
        String strRepresentation = width.getWidthRepresentation();
        if (strRepresentation != null) {
            fragment.append(" width=\"\" + width.getWidthRepresentation() + \"\"");
        }
        if (ns != null && ns.length() > 0) {
            fragment.append(" xmlns=\"\" + ns + \"\"");
        }
        fragment.append(">");
    }
    return fragment.toString();
}
}

```

The following three methods are used to determine what type of column width specifications the table column width provider support. In our case all types of specifications are allowed:

```
public boolean isAcceptingFixedColumnWidths(String tableCellsTagName) {
    return true;
}

public boolean isAcceptingPercentageColumnWidths(String tableCellsTagName) {
    return true;
}

public boolean isAcceptingProportionalColumnWidths(String tableCellsTagName) {
    return true;
}
```

The complete source code of the implementation is found in the Example Files Listings, the Java Files section.

In the listing below, the XML document contains the table element:

```
<table width="300">
  <customcol width="50.0px"/>
  <customcol width="1*"/>
  <customcol width="2*"/>
  <customcol width="20%"/>
  <header>
    <td>C1</td>
    <td>C2</td>
    <td>C3</td>
    <td>C4</td>
  </header>
  <tr>
    <td>cs=1, rs=1</td>
    <td>cs=1, rs=1</td>
    <td row_span="2">cs=1, rs=2</td>
    <td row_span="3">cs=1, rs=3</td>
  </tr>
  <tr>
    <td>cs=1, rs=1</td>
    <td>cs=1, rs=1</td>
  </tr>
  <tr>
    <td column_span="3">cs=3, rs=1</td>
  </tr>
</table>
```

When no table column width provider is specified, the table has the following layout:

**Figure 8.25. Table layout when no column width provider is specified**

| C1            | C2            | C3            | C4            |
|---------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|
| cs=1,<br>rs=1 | cs=1,<br>rs=1 | cs=1,<br>rs=2 | cs=1,<br>rs=3 |
| cs=1,<br>rs=1 | cs=1,<br>rs=1 |               |               |
| cs=3, rs=1    |               |               |               |

When the above implementation is configured, the table has the correct layout:

**Figure 8.26. Columns with custom widths**

| C1            | C2            | C3         | C4            |
|---------------|---------------|------------|---------------|
| cs=1,<br>rs=1 | cs=1,<br>rs=1 | cs=1, rs=2 | cs=1,<br>rs=3 |
| cs=1,<br>rs=1 | cs=1,<br>rs=1 |            |               |
| cs=3, rs=1    |               |            |               |

## Configuring a Table Cell Span Provider

In the documentation framework the `table` element can have cells that span over multiple columns and rows. As explained in the Styling the Table Element section which describes the CSS properties needed for defining a table, you need to indicate `<oxygen>` Author a method to determine the cell spanning. If you use the cell element attributes **rowspan** and **colspan** or **rows** and **cols**, `<oxygen>` can determine the cell spanning automatically. In our example the `td` element uses the attributes **row\_span** and **column\_span** that are not recognized by default. You will need to implement a Java extension class for defining the cell spanning.

Create the class `simple.documentation.framework.TableCellSpanProvider`. This class must implement the `ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorTableCellSpanProvider` interface.

```
import ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorTableCellSpanProvider;
import ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.node.AttrValue;
import ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.node.AuthorElement;
```

```
public class TableCellSpanProvider
    implements AuthorTableCellSpanProvider {
```

The method `init` is taking as argument the `AuthorElement` that represents the XML `table` element. In our case the cell span is specified for each of the cells so you leave this method empty. However there are cases like the table CALS model when the cell spanning is specified in the `table` element. In such cases you must collect the span information by analyzing the `table` element.

```
public void init(AuthorElement table) {
}
```

The method `getColSpan` is taking as argument the table cell. The table layout engine will ask this `AuthorTableSpanSupport` implementation what is the column span and the row span for each XML element from the table that was marked as cell in the CSS using the property `display:table-cell`. The implementation is simple and just parses the value of `column_span` attribute. The method must return `null` for all the cells that do not change the span specification.

```
public Integer getColSpan(AuthorElement cell) {
    Integer colSpan = null;

    AttrValue attrValue = cell.getAttribute("column_span");
    if(attrValue != null) {
        // The attribute was found.
        String cs = attrValue.getValue();
        if(cs != null) {
            try {
                colSpan = new Integer(cs);
            } catch (NumberFormatException ex) {
                // The attribute value was not a number.
            }
        }
    }
    return colSpan;
}
```

The row span is determined in a similar manner:

```
public Integer getRowSpan(AuthorElement cell) {
    Integer rowSpan = null;

    AttrValue attrValue = cell.getAttribute("row_span");
    if(attrValue != null) {
        // The attribute was found.
        String rs = attrValue.getValue();
        if(rs != null) {
            try {
                rowSpan = new Integer(rs);
            } catch (NumberFormatException ex) {
                // The attribute value was not a number.
            }
        }
    }
    return rowSpan;
}
```

The method `hasColumnSpecifications` always returns `true` considering column specifications always available.

```
public boolean hasColumnSpecifications(AuthorElement tableElement) {
    return true;
}
```

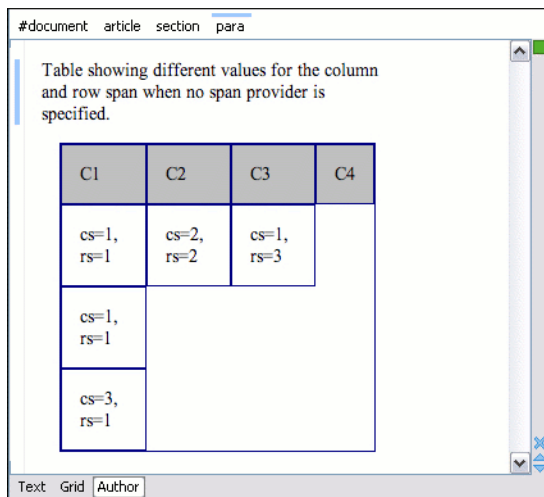
The complete source code of the implementation is found in the Example Files Listings, the Java Files section.

In the listing below, the XML document contains the table element:

```
<table>
  <header>
    <td>C1</td>
    <td>C2</td>
    <td>C3</td>
    <td>C4</td>
  </header>
  <tr>
    <td>cs=1, rs=1</td>
    <td column_span="2" row_span="2">cs=2, rs=2</td>
    <td row_span="3">cs=1, rs=3</td>
  </tr>
  <tr>
    <td>cs=1, rs=1</td>
  </tr>
  <tr>
    <td column_span="3">cs=3, rs=1</td>
  </tr>
</table>
```

When no table cell span provider is specified, the table has the following layout:

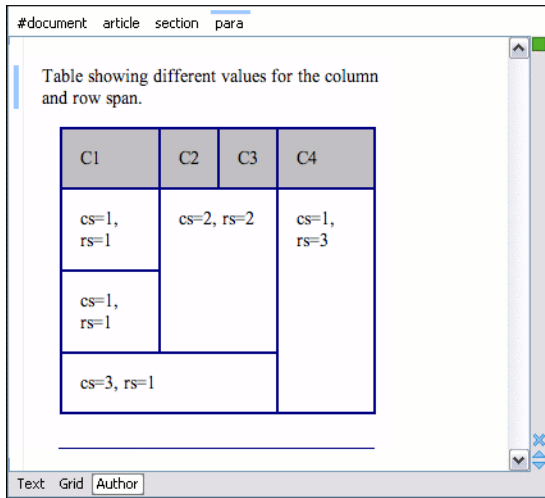
**Figure 8.27. Table layout when no cell span provider is specified**



When the above implementation is configured, the table has the correct layout:



**Figure 8.28. Cells spanning multiple rows and columns.**



## Configuring an Unique Attributes Recognizer

The `ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.UniqueAttributesRecognizer` interface can be implemented if you want to provide for your framework the following features:

### Automatic ID generation

You can automatically generate unique IDs for newly inserted elements. Implementations are already available for the DITA and Docbook frameworks. The following methods can be implemented to accomplish this:

```
/**
 * Assign unique IDs between a start
 * and an end offset in the document
 * @param startOffset Start offset
 * @param endOffset End offset
 */
void assignUniqueIDs(int startOffset, int endOffset);

/**
 * @return true if auto
 */
boolean isAutoIDGenerationActive();
```

### Avoiding copying unique attributes when "Split" is called inside an element

You can split the current block element by pressing the "Enter" key and then choosing "Split". This is a very useful way to create new paragraphs. All attributes are by default copied on the new element but if those attributes are IDs you sometimes want to avoid creating validation errors in the editor. Implementing the following method, you can decide whether an attribute should be copied or not during the split:

```
/**
 * Check if the attribute specified by QName can
 * be considered as a valid attribute to copy
 * when the element is split.
 *
 * @param attrQName The attribute qualified name
```

```

* @param element The element
* @return true if the attribute should be copied
* when Split is performed.
*/
boolean copyAttributeOnSplit(String attrQName,
    AuthorElement element);

```

 **Tip**

The `ro.sync.ecss.extensions.commons.id.DefaultUniqueAttributesRecognizer` class is an implementation of the interface which can be extended by your customization to provide easy assignment of IDs in your framework. You can also check out the DITA and Docbook implementations of `ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.UniqueAttributesRecognizer` to see how they were implemented and connected to the extensions bundle.

## Customizing the default CSS of a document type

The easiest way of customizing the default CSS stylesheet of a document type is to create a new CSS stylesheet in the same folder as the customized one, import the customized CSS stylesheet and set the new stylesheet as the default CSS of the document type. For example let us customize the default CSS for DITA documents by changing the background color of the *task* and *topic* elements to red. First you create a new CSS stylesheet called *my\_dita.css* in the folder `/${frameworks}/dita/css_classed` where the default stylesheet called *dita.css* is located. `/${frameworks}` is the subfolder *frameworks* of the Oxygen XML Editor. The new stylesheet *my\_dita.css* contains:

```

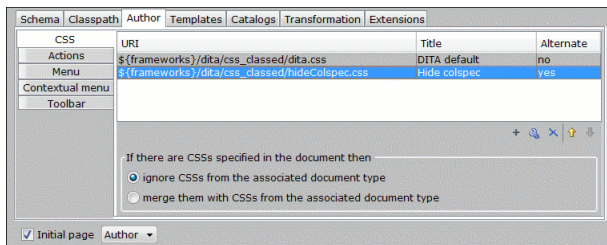
@import "dita.css";

task, topic{
    background-color:red;
}

```

To set the new stylesheet as the default CSS stylesheet for DITA documents first open the Document Type Association preferences panel from menu `Options → Preferences+Document Type Association`. Select the DITA document type and start editing it by pressing the Edit button. The user role must be set to *Developer* otherwise a warning is displayed and a duplicate copy of the DITA document type is created and edited. This check makes sure that regular content authors who just edit the content of XML documents do not accidentally modify the document type. In the Author tab of the document type edit dialog change the URI of the default CSS stylesheet from `/${frameworks}/dita/css_classed/dita.css` to `/${frameworks}/dita/css_classed/my_dita.css`.

**Figure 8.29. Set the location of the default CSS stylesheet**



Press OK in all the dialogs to validate the changes. Now you can start editing DITA documents based on the new CSS stylesheet. You can edit the new CSS stylesheet itself at any time and see the effects on rendering DITA XML documents in the Author mode by running the *Refresh* action available on the Author toolbar and on the DITA menu.

## Document type sharing

A document type can be shared between authors in two ways:

- save the document type at global level in the Document Type Association panel and distribute a zip file that includes all the files of the document type (CSS stylesheets, jar files with custom actions, etc). Each user will unzip the zip file in a subdirectory of the `frameworks` directory and will restart the application for adding the new document type to the list of the Document Type Association panel
- save the document type at project level in the Document Type Association panel and distribute both the Oxygen project file and the files of the document type (CSS stylesheets, jar files with custom actions, etc). Each user will copy the files of the document type in the subdirectory of the `frameworks` directory that corresponds to the document type and will load the Oxygen project file in the *Project* view.

## CSS support in <oxygen/> Author

### CSS 2.1 features

#### Supported selectors

The following CSS level 2.1 selectors are supported by the <oxygen/> Author:

**Table 8.3. Supported CSS 2.1 selectors**

| Expression           | Name                          | Description/Example  |
|----------------------|-------------------------------|--|
| *                    | Universal selector            | Matches any element  |
| E                    | Type selector                 | Matches any E element (i.e an element with the local name E)   |
| E F                  | Descendant selector           | Matches any F element that is a descendant of an E element.  |
| E > F                | Child selectors               | Matches any F element that is a child of an element E.   |
| E:first-child        | The :first-child pseudo-class | Matches element E when E is the first child of its parent.   |
| E:lang(c)            | The :lang() pseudo-class      | Matches element of type E if it is in (human) language c (the document language specifies how language is determined).             |
| E + F                | Adjacent selector             | Matches any F element immediately preceded by a sibling element E.   |
| E[foo]               | Attribute selector            | Matches any E element with the "foo" attribute set (whatever the value).   |
| E[foo="warning"]     | Attribute selector            | Matches any E element whose "foo" attribute value is exactly equal to "warning".   |
| E[foo~="warning"]    | Attribute selector            | Matches any E element whose "foo" attribute value is a list of space-separated values, one of which is exactly equal to "warning". |
| E[lang = "en"]       | Attribute selector            | Matches any E element whose "lang" attribute has a hyphen-separated list of values beginning (from the left) with "en".            |
| E:before and E:after | Pseudo elements               | The ':before' and ':after' pseudo-elements can be used to insert generated content before or after an element's content.           |

## Unsupported selectors

The following CSS level 2.1 selectors are **not supported** by the <oXygen/> Author:

**Table 8.4. Unsupported CSS 2.1 selectors**

| Expression                 | Name                           | Description/Example  |
|----------------------------|--------------------------------|--|
| E#myid                     | ID selectors                   | Matches any E element with ID equal to "myid".   |
| E:link, E:visited          | The link pseudo-class          | Matches element E if E is the source anchor of a hyperlink of which the target is not yet visited (:link) or already visited (:visited).   |
| E:active, E:hover, E:focus | The dynamic pseudo-classes     | Matches E during certain user actions.   |
| E:first-line               | The :first-line pseudo-class   | The :first-line pseudo-element applies special styles to the contents of the first formatted line of a paragraph.  |
| E:first-letter             | The :first-letter pseudo-class | The :first-letter pseudo-element must select the first letter of the first line of a block, if it is not preceded by any other content (such as images or inline tables) on its line. The :first-letter pseudo-element may be used for "initial caps" and "drop caps", which are common typographical effects. |

## Properties Support Table

All the properties belonging to the *aural* and *paged* categories are **not supported** in <oXygen/> Author. The properties from the table below belong to the *visual* category.

**Table 8.5. CSS Level 2.1 Properties and their support in <oXygen/> Author**

| Name  | Supported Values   | Not Supported Values                                    |
|---|--|---|
| 'background-attachment'   |  | ALL   |
| 'background-color'  | <color>   inherit  | transparent   |
| 'background-image'  |  | ALL   |
| 'background-position'   |  | ALL   |
| 'background-repeat'   |  | ALL   |
| 'background'  |  | ALL   |
| 'border-collapse'   |  | ALL   |
| 'border-color'  | <color>   inherit  | transparent   |
| 'border-spacing'  |  | ALL   |
| 'border-style'  | <border-style>   inherit   |   |
| 'border-top' 'border-right' 'border-bottom' 'border-left'                         | [ <border-width>    <border-style>    'border-top-color' ]   inherit   |   |
| 'border-top-color' 'border-right-color' 'border-bottom-color' 'border-left-color' | <color>   inherit  | transparent   |
| 'border-top-style' 'border-right-style' 'border-bottom-style' 'border-left-style' | <border-style>   inherit   |   |
| 'border-top-width' 'border-right-width' 'border-bottom-width' 'border-left-width' | <border-width>   inherit   |   |
| 'border-width'  | <border-width>   inherit   |   |
| 'border'  | [ <border-width>    <border-style>    'border-top-color' ]   inherit   |   |
| 'bottom'  |  | ALL   |
| 'caption-side'  |  | ALL   |
| 'clear'   |  | ALL   |
| 'clip'  |  | ALL   |
| 'color'   | <color>   inherit  |   |
| 'content'   | normal   none   [ <string>   <uri>   <counter>   attr( <identifier> )   open-quote   close-quote ]+   inherit  | no-open-quote   no-close-quote                          |
| 'counter-increment'   | [ <identifier> <integer> ? ]+   none   inherit   |   |
| 'counter-reset'   | [ <identifier> <integer> ? ]+   none   inherit   |   |
| 'cursor'  |  | ALL   |
| 'direction'   | ltr  | rtl   inherit   |
| 'display'   | inline   block   list-item   table   table-row-group   table-header-group   table-footer-group   table-row   table-column-group   table-column   table-cell   table-caption   none   inherit | run-in   inline-block   inline-table - considered block |
| 'empty-cells'   | show   hide   inherit  |   |
| 'float'   |  | ALL   |
| 'font-family'   | [ [ <family-name>   <generic-family> ] [ , <family-name>   <generic-family> ]* ]   inherit   |   |

| Name  | Supported Values  | Not Supported Values  |
|---|---|---|
| 'font-size'   | <absolute-size>   <relative-size>   <length>   <percentage>   inherit   |   |
| 'font-style'  | normal   italic   oblique   inherit   |   |
| 'font-variant'  |   | ALL   |
| 'font-weight'   | normal   bold   bolder   lighter   100   200   300   400   500   600   700   800   900   inherit                                      |   |
| 'font'  | [ [ 'font-style'    'font-weight' ]? 'font-size' [ / 'line-height' ]? 'font-family' ]   inherit                                       | 'font-variant' 'line-height' caption   icon   menu   message-box   small-caption   status-bar |
| 'height'  |   | ALL   |
| 'left'  |   | ALL   |
| 'letter-spacing'  |   | ALL   |
| 'line-height'   | normal   <number>   <length>   <percentage>   inherit   |   |
| 'list-style-image'  |   | ALL   |
| 'list-style-position'   |   | ALL   |
| 'list-style-type'   | disc   circle   square   decimal   lower-roman   upper-roman   lower-latin   upper-latin   lower-alpha   upper-alpha   none   inherit | lower-greek   armenian   georgian   |
| 'list-style'  | [ 'list-style-type' ]   inherit   | 'list-style-position'    'list-style-image'   |
| 'margin-right' 'margin-left'                                  | <margin-width>   inherit  |   |
| 'margin-top' 'margin-bottom'                                  | <margin-width>   inherit  |   |
| 'margin'  | <margin-width>   inherit  |   |
| 'max-height'  |   | ALL   |
| 'max-width'   | <length>   <percentage>   none   inherit - supported for block-level and replaced elements, e.g. images, tables, table cells.         |   |
| 'min-height'  |   | ALL   |
| 'min-width'   | <length>   <percentage>   inherit - supported for block-level and replaced elements, e.g. images, tables, table cells.                |   |
| 'outline-color'   |   | ALL   |
| 'outline-style'   |   | ALL   |
| 'outline-width'   |   | ALL   |
| 'outline'   |   | ALL   |
| 'overflow'  |   | ALL   |
| 'padding-top' 'padding-right' 'padding-bottom' 'padding-left' | <padding-width>   inherit   |   |
| 'padding'   | <padding-width>   inherit   |   |
| 'position'  |   | ALL   |

| Name              | Supported Values  | Not Supported Values    |
|-------------------|---|-------------------------|
| 'quotes'          |   | ALL                     |
| 'right'           |   | ALL                     |
| 'table-layout'    | auto  | fixed   inherit         |
| 'text-align'      | left   right   center   inherit   | justify                 |
| 'text-decoration' | none   [ underline    overline    line-through ]   inherit  | blink                   |
| 'text-indent'     |   | ALL                     |
| 'text-transform'  |   | ALL                     |
| 'top'             |   | ALL                     |
| 'unicode-bidi'    |   | ALL                     |
| 'vertical-align'  | baseline   sub   super   top   text-top   middle   bottom   text-bottom   inherit   | <percentage>   <length> |
| 'visibility'      | visible   hidden   inherit  | collapse                |
| 'white-space'     | normal   pre   nowrap   pre-wrap   pre-line   |                         |
| 'width'           | <length>   <percentage>   auto   inherit - supported for block-level and replaced elements, e.g. images, tables, table cells. |                         |
| 'word-spacing'    |   | ALL                     |
| 'z-index'         |   | ALL                     |

## <oXygen/> CSS Extensions

### Media Type oxygen

The style sheets can specify how a document is to be presented on different media: on the screen, on paper, speech synthesiser, etc. You can specify that some of the features of your CSS stylesheet should be taken into account only in the <oXygen/> Author and ignored in the rest. This can be accomplished by using the media type oxygen.

For instance using the following CSS:

```
b{
  font-weight:bold;
  display:inline;
}

@media oxygen{
  b{
    text-decoration:underline;
  }
}
```

would make a text bold if the document was opened in a web browser who does not recognize @media oxygen and bold and underlined in <oXygen/> Author.

You can use this media type to group specific <oXygen/> CSS features and also to hide them when opening the documents with other viewers.



## Supported Features from CSS Level 3

### Namespace Selectors

In the current CSS 2.1 standard the element selectors are ignoring the namespaces of the elements they are matching. Only the local name of the elements are considered in the selector matching process.

<oxygen/> Author uses a different approach similar to the CSS Level 3 specification. If the element name from the CSS selector is not preceded by a namespace prefix it is considered to match an element with the same local name as the selector value and ANY namespace, otherwise the element must match both the local name and the namespace.

In CSS up to version 2.1 the name tokens from the selectors are matching all elements from ANY namespace that have the same local name. Example:

```
<x:b xmlns:x="ns_x" />
<y:b xmlns:y="ns_y" />
```

Are both matched by the rule:

```
b {font-weight:bold}
```

Starting with CSS Level 3 you can create selectors that are namespace aware.

### Example 8.5. Defining both prefixed namespaces and the default namespace

Given the namespace declarations:

```
@namespace sync "http://sync.example.org";
@namespace "http://example.com/foo";
```

In a context where the default namespace applies:

sync|A represents the name A in the http://sync.example.org namespace.

|B represents the name B that belongs to NO NAMESPACE.

\*|C represents the name C in ANY namespace, including NO NAMESPACE.

D represents the name D in the http://example.com/foo namespace.

### Example 8.6. Defining only prefixed namespaces

Given the namespace declaration:

```
@namespace sync "http://sync.example.org";
```

Then:

sync|A represents the name A in the http://sync.example.org namespace.

|B represents the name B that belongs to NO NAMESPACE.

\*|C represents the name C in ANY namespace, including NO NAMESPACE.

D represents the name D in ANY namespace, including NO NAMESPACE.

## The `attr()` function: Properties Values Collected from the Edited Document.

In CSS Level 2.1 you may collect attribute values and use them as content *only* for the pseudo elements. For instance the `:before` pseudo-element can be used to insert some content before an element. This is valid in CSS 2.1:

```
title:before{
  content: "Title id=(" attr(id) ")";
}
```

If the `title` element from the XML document is:

```
<title id="title12">My title.</title>
```

Then the title will be displayed as:

**Title id=(title12) My title.**

In `<oXygen/>` Author the use of `attr()` function is available not only for the `content` property, but also for any other property. This is similar to the CSS Level 3 working draft: <http://www.w3.org/TR/2006/WD-css3-values-20060919/#functional>. The arguments of the function are:

```
attr(attribute_name, attribute_type, default_value);
```

```
attribute_name ;
attribute_type ;
default_value ;
```

|                             |  |
|-----------------------------|--|
| <code>attribute_name</code> | The name of the attribute. This argument is required.  |
| <code>attribute_type</code> | The type of the attribute. This argument is optional. If it is missing the type of the argument is considered <code>string</code> . This argument indicates what is the meaning of the attribute value and helps to perform conversions of this value. <code>&lt;oXygen/&gt;</code> Author accepts one of the following types: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><code>color</code>            The value represents a color. The attribute may specify a color in different formats. <code>&lt;oXygen/&gt;</code> Author supports colors specified either by name: <code>red</code>, <code>blue</code>, <code>green</code>, etc. or as an RGB hexadecimal value <code>#FFEEFF</code>.</li> <li><code>url</code>                The value is an URL pointing to a media object. <code>&lt;oXygen/&gt;</code> Author supports only images. The attribute value can be a complete URL, or a relative one to the XML document. Please note that this URL is also resolved through the catalog resolver.</li> <li><code>integer</code>            The value must be interpreted as an integer.</li> <li><code>number</code>            The value must be interpreted as a float number.</li> <li><code>length</code>            The value must be interpreted as an integer.</li> <li><code>percentage</code>        The value must be interpreted relative to another value (length, size) expressed in percents.</li> <li><code>em</code>                 The value must be interpreted as a size. 1 <code>em</code> is equal to the <i>font-size</i> of the relevant font.</li> </ul> |

|               |   |
|---------------|---|
| ex            | The value must be interpreted as a size. 1 ex is equal to the <i>height</i> of the <b>x</b> character of the relevant font. |
| px            | The value must be interpreted as a size expressed in pixels relative to the viewing device.                                 |
| mm            | The value must be interpreted as a size expressed in millimeters.   |
| cm            | The value must be interpreted as a size expressed in centimeters.   |
| in            | The value must be interpreted as a size expressed in inches. 1 inch is equal to 2.54 centimeters.                           |
| pt            | The value must be interpreted as a size expressed in points. The points used by CSS2 are equal to 1/72th of an inch.        |
| pc            | The value must be interpreted as a size expressed in picas. 1 pica is equal to 12 points.                                   |
| default_value | This argument specifies a value that is used by default if the attribute value is missing. This argument is optional.       |

## Example 8.7. Usage samples for the attr() function

Consider the following XML instance:

```
<sample>
  <para bg_color="#AAAAFF">Blue paragraph.</para>
  <para bg_color="red">Red paragraph.</para>
  <para bg_color="red" font_size="2">Red paragraph with large font.</para>
  <para bg_color="#00AA00" font_size="0.8" space="4">
    Green paragraph with small font and margin.</para>
</sample>
```

The `para` elements have `bg_color` attributes with RGB color values like `#AAAAFF`. You can use the `attr()` function to change the elements appearance in the editor based on the value of this attribute:

```
background-color:attr(bg_color, color);
```

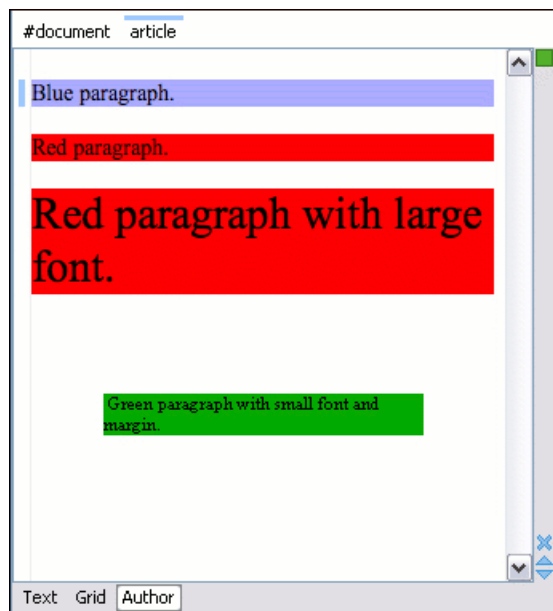
The attribute `font_size` represents the font size in *em* units. You can use this value to change the style of the element:

```
font-size:attr(font_size, em);
```

The complete CSS rule is:

```
para{
  display:block;
  background-color:attr(bg_color, color);
  font-size:attr(font_size, em);
  margin:attr(space, em);
}
```

The document is rendered as:



## Additional Custom Selectors

Oxygen Author provides support for selecting additional types of nodes. These custom selectors apply to: *document*, *doctype sections*, *processing-instructions*, *comments*, *CDATA sections*, and *entities*. In order for the custom selectors

to work in your CSSs you will have to declare the Author extensions namespace at the beginning of the stylesheet documents:

```
@namespace oxy url('http://www.oxygenxml.com/extensions/author');
```

Example rules:

- *document*

```
oxy|document {  
    display:block;  
}
```

- *doctype sections*

```
oxy|doctype {  
    display:block;  
    color:blue;  
    background-color:transparent;  
}
```

- *processing-instructions*

```
oxy|processing-instruction {  
    display:block;  
    color:purple;  
    background-color:transparent;  
}
```

- *comments*

```
oxy|comment {  
    display:block;  
    color:green;  
    background-color:transparent;  
}
```

- *CDATA sections*

```
oxy|cdata{  
    display:block;  
    color:gray;  
    background-color:transparent;  
}
```

- *entities*

```
oxy|entity {  
    display:morph;  
    editable:false;  
    color:orange;
```

```
background-color:transparent;
}
```

A sample document rendered using these rules:

```
#document
<!DOCTYPE root [
<ELEMENT root ANY>
<ENTITY ent "Some entity">
]>
xml-stylesheet type="text/css" href="test.css"
Some text.
A comment.
CDATA section.
Some entity
```

## Additional Properties

### Folding elements: `foldable` and `not-foldable-child` properties

<oXygen/> Author allows you to declare some elements to be *foldable* (collapsible). This is especially useful when working with large documents organized in logical blocks, editing a large DocBook article or book for instance.

To define the element whose content can be folded by the user, you must use the property: `foldable:true;`.

When collapsing an element, it is useful to keep some of its content visible, like a short description of the collapsed region. The property `not-foldable-child` is used to identify the child elements that are kept visible. It accepts as value an element name or a list of comma separated element names. If the element is marked as foldable (`foldable:true;`) but it doesn't have the property `not-foldable-child` or none of the specified non-foldable children exists then the element will still be foldable. In this case the element that will be kept visible when folded will be the before pseudo element.

#### Note

Both `foldable` and `not-foldable-child` are non standard properties and are recognized only by <oXygen/> Author.

## Example 8.8. Folding DocBook Elements

All the elements below can have a `title` child element and are considered to be logical sections. You mark them as being foldable leaving the `title` element visible.

```
set,  
book,  
part,  
reference,  
chapter,  
preface,  
article,  
sect1,  
sect2,  
sect3,  
sect4,  
section,  
appendix,  
figure,  
example,  
table {  
    foldable:true;  
    not-foldable-child: title;  
}
```

### Link elements

<Oxygen/> Author allows you to declare some elements to be *links*. This is especially useful when working with many documents which refer each other. The links allow for an easy way to get from one document to another. Clicking on the link marker will open the referred resource in an editor.

To define the element which should be considered a link, you must use the property `link` on the before or after pseudo element. The value of the property indicates the location of the linked resource. Since links are usually indicated by the value of an attribute in most cases it will have the a value similar to `attr(href)`

#### **Note**

`link` is a non standard property and is recognized only by <Oxygen/> Author.

## Example 8.9. Docbook Link Elements

All the elements below are defined to be links on the before pseudo element and their value is defined by the value of an attribute.

```
*[href]:before{
  link:attr(href);
  content: "Click " attr(href) " for opening" ;
}

ulink[url]:before{
  link:attr(url);
  content: "Click to open: " attr(url);
}

olink[targetdoc]:before{
  link: attr(targetdoc);
  content: "Click to open: " attr(targetdoc);
}
```

## Display Tag Markers

<oXygen/> Author allows you to choose whether tag markers of an element should never be presented or the current Display mode should be respected. This is especially useful when working with `:before` and `:after` pseudo elements in which case the element range is already visually defined so the tag markers are redundant.

The property is named `display-tags`. Its possible values are :

- *none* Tags markers must not be presented regardless of the current Display mode.
- *default* The tag markers will be created depending on the current Display mode.
- *inherit* The value of the property is inherited from an ancestor element.

```
display-tags
  Value: none | default | inherit
  Initial: default
  Applies to: all nodes(comments, elements, CDATA, etc)
  Inherited: false
  Media: all
```



### Note

`display-tags` is a non standard property and is recognized only by <oXygen/> Author.



### Example 8.10. Docbook Para elements

In this example the para element from Docbook is using an `:before` and `:after` element so you don't want its tag markers to be visible.

```
para:before{
    content: "{";
}

para:after{
    content: "}";
}

para{
    display-tags: none;
    display:block;
    margin: 0.5em 0;
}
```

### <oXygen/> Custom CSS functions

In <oXygen/> Author there are implemented a few <oXygen/> specific custom CSS functions. Imbricated custom functions are also supported.

#### Example 8.11. Imbricated functions

The result of the functions below will be the local name of the current node with the first letter capitalized.

```
capitalize(local-name())
```

#### The `local-name()` function

This function evaluates the local name of the current node. It does not have any arguments

#### The `name()` function

This function evaluates the qualified name of the current node. It does not have any arguments

#### The `url()` function

This function evaluates the URL of a location relative to the CSS file location and appends each of the relative path components to the final location.

```
url(location, loc_1, loc_2);(...);

location ;
loc_1 ;
loc_2 ;
```

location                      The location as string. If not absolute, will be solved relative to the CSS file URL.

loc\_1 ... loc\_n                Relative location path components as string. (optional)

### The `base-uri()` function

This function evaluates the base URL in the context of the current node. It does not have any arguments and takes into account the `xml:base` context of the current node. See the XML Base specification [<http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlbase/>] for more details.

### The `parent-url()` function

This function evaluates the parent URL of an URL received as string.

```
parent-url(url);
```

```
url ;
```

`url`    The url as string.

### The `capitalize()` function

This function capitalizes the first letter of the text received as argument.

```
capitalize(text);
```

```
text ;
```

`text`    The text for which the first letter will be capitalized.

### The `uppercase()` function

This function transforms to upper case the text received as argument.

```
uppercase(text);
```

```
text ;
```

`text`    The text to be capitalized.

### The `lowercase()` function

This function transforms to lower case the text received as argument.

```
lowercase(text);
```

```
text ;
```

`text`    The text to be lower cased.

### The `concat()` function

This function concatenates the received string arguments.

```
concat(str_1, str_2);(...);
```

```
str_1 ;
```

```
str_2 ;
```

`str_1 ... str_n`        The string arguments to be concatenated.

## The `replace()` function

This function has two signatures:

- `replace(text, target, replacement);`

```
text ;
target ;
replacement ;
```

This function replaces each substring of the text that matches the literal target string with the specified literal replacement string.

`text`            The text in which the replace will occur.

`target`          The target string to be replaced.

`replacement`    The string replacement.

- `replace(text, target, replacement, isRegExp);`

```
text ;
target ;
replacement ;
isRegExp ;
```

This function replaces each substring of the text that matches the target string with the specified replacement string.

`text`                            The text in which the replace will occur.

`target`                          The target string to be replaced.

`replacement`                    The string replacement.

`isRegExp`                        If *true* the target and replacement arguments are considered regular expressions in PERL syntax, if *false* they are considered literal strings.

## The `unparsed-entity-uri()` function

This function returns the uri value of an unparsed entity name.

```
unparsed-entity-uri(unparsedEntityName);
```

```
unparsedEntityName ;
```

`unparsedEntityName`            The name of an unparsed entity defined in the DTD.

This function can be useful to display images which are referred with unparsed entity names.

### Example 8.12. CSS for displaying the image in Author for an *imagedata* with *entityref* to an unparsed entity

```
imagedata[entityref]{
content: url(unparsed-entity-uri(attr(entityref)));
}
```

## The attributes() function

This function concatenates the attributes for an element and returns the serialization.

```
attributes();
```

### Example 8.13. attributes()

For the following XML fragment: `<element att1="x" xmlns:a="2" x="&quot;"/>` the `attributes()` function will return `att1="x" xmlns:a="2" x=" " "`.

# Example Files Listings

## The Simple Documentation Framework Files

### XML Schema files

#### sdf.xsd

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<xs:schema xmlns:xs="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"
  targetNamespace="http://www.oxygenxml.com/sample/documentation"
  xmlns:doc="http://www.oxygenxml.com/sample/documentation"
  xmlns:abs="http://www.oxygenxml.com/sample/documentation/abstracts"
  elementFormDefault="qualified">

  <xs:import
    namespace="http://www.oxygenxml.com/sample/documentation/abstracts"
    schemaLocation="abs.xsd"/>

  <xs:element name="book" type="doc:sectionType"/>
  <xs:element name="article" type="doc:sectionType"/>
  <xs:element name="section" type="doc:sectionType"/>

  <xs:complexType name="sectionType">
    <xs:sequence>
      <xs:element name="title" type="xs:string"/>
      <xs:element ref="abs:def" minOccurs="0"/>
      <xs:choice>
        <xs:sequence>
          <xs:element ref="doc:section"
            maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
        </xs:sequence>
        <xs:choice maxOccurs="unbounded">
          <xs:element ref="doc:para"/>
          <xs:element ref="doc:ref"/>
          <xs:element ref="doc:image"/>
          <xs:element ref="doc:table"/>
        </xs:choice>
      </xs:choice>
    </xs:sequence>
  </xs:complexType>
```

```

<xs:element name="para" type="doc:paragraphType"/>

<xs:complexType name="paragraphType" mixed="true">
  <xs:choice minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <xs:element name="b"/>
    <xs:element name="i"/>
    <xs:element name="link"/>
  </xs:choice>
</xs:complexType>

<xs:element name="ref">
  <xs:complexType>
    <xs:attribute name="location" type="xs:anyURI"
      use="required"/>
  </xs:complexType>
</xs:element>

<xs:element name="image">
  <xs:complexType>
    <xs:attribute name="href" type="xs:anyURI"
      use="required"/>
  </xs:complexType>
</xs:element>

<xs:element name="table">
  <xs:complexType>
    <xs:sequence>
      <xs:element name="customcol" maxOccurs="unbounded">
        <xs:complexType>
          <xs:attribute name="width" type="xs:string"/>
        </xs:complexType>
      </xs:element>
      <xs:element name="header">
        <xs:complexType>
          <xs:sequence>
            <xs:element name="td"
              maxOccurs="unbounded"
              type="doc:paragraphType"/>
          </xs:sequence>
        </xs:complexType>
      </xs:element>
      <xs:element name="tr" maxOccurs="unbounded">
        <xs:complexType>
          <xs:sequence>
            <xs:element name="td"
              type="doc:tdType"
              maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
          </xs:sequence>
        </xs:complexType>
      </xs:element>
    </xs:sequence>
    <xs:attribute name="width" type="xs:string"/>
  </xs:complexType>

```

```

</xs:element>

<xs:complexType name="tdType">
  <xs:complexContent>
    <xs:extension base="doc:paragraphType">
      <xs:attribute name="row_span"
        type="xs:integer" />
      <xs:attribute name="column_span"
        type="xs:integer" />
    </xs:extension>
  </xs:complexContent>
</xs:complexType>
</xs:schema>

```

### abs.xsd

```

<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<xs:schema xmlns:xs="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"
  targetNamespace=
    "http://www.oxygenxml.com/sample/documentation/abstracts">
  <xs:element name="def" type="xs:string"/>
</xs:schema>

```

## CSS Files

### sdf.css

```

/* Element from another namespace */
@namespace abs "http://www.oxygenxml.com/sample/documentation/abstracts";

abs|def{
  font-family:monospace;
  font-size:smaller;
}
abs|def:before{
  content:"Definition:";
  color:gray;
}

/* Vertical flow */
book,
section,
para,
title,
image,
ref {
  display:block;
}

/* Horizontal flow */
b,i {
  display:inline;
}

```

```
}

section{
  margin-left:1em;
  margin-top:1em;
}

section{
  foldable:true;
  not-foldable-child: title;
}

link[href]:before{
  display:inline;
  link:attr(href);
  content: "Click to open: " attr(href);
}

/* Title rendering*/
title{
  font-size: 2.4em;
  font-weight:bold;
}

* * title{
  font-size: 2.0em;
}

* * * title{
  font-size: 1.6em;
}

* * * * title{
  font-size: 1.2em;
}

book,
article{
  counter-reset:sect;
}
book > section,
article > section{
  counter-increment:sect;
}
book > section > title:before,
article > section > title:before{
  content: "Section: " counter(sect) " ";
}

/* Inlines rendering*/
b {
  font-weight:bold;
}

i {
  font-style:italic;
}
```

```

}

/*Table rendering */
table{
    display:table;
    border:1px solid navy;
    margin:1em;
    max-width:1000px;
    min-width:150px;
}

table[width]{
    width:attr(width, length);
}

tr, header{
    display:table-row;
}

header{
    background-color: silver;
    color:inherit
}

td{
    display:table-cell;
    border:1px solid navy;
    padding:1em;
}

image{
    display:block;
    content: attr(href, url);
    margin-left:2em;
}

```

## XML Files

### **sdf\_sample.xml**

```

<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<book xmlns="http://www.oxygenxml.com/sample/documentation"
    xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
    xmlns:abs="http://www.oxygenxml.com/sample/documentation/abstracts">
    <title>My Technical Book</title>
    <section>
        <title>XML</title>
        <abs:def>Extensible Markup Language</abs:def>
        <para>In this section of the book I will explain
            different XML applications.</para>
    </section>
    <section>
        <title>Accessing XML data.</title>

```



```

<section>
  <title>XSLT</title>
  <abs:def>Extensible stylesheet language
    transformation (XSLT) is a language for
    transforming XML documents into other XML
    documents.</abs:def>
  <para>A list of XSL elements and what they do..</para>
  <table>
    <header>
      <td>XSLT Elements</td>
      <td>Description</td>
    </header>
    <tr>
      <td>
        <b>xsl:stylesheet</b>
      </td>
      <td>The <i>xsl:stylesheet</i> element is
        always the top-level element of an
        XSL stylesheet. The name
        <i>xsl:transform</i> may be used
        as a synonym.</td>
    </tr>
    <tr>
      <td>
        <b>xsl:template</b>
      </td>
      <td>The <i>xsl:template</i> element has
        an optional mode attribute. If this
        is present, the template will only
        be matched when the same mode is
        used in the invoking
        <i>xsl:apply-templates</i>
        element.</td>
    </tr>
    <tr>
      <td>
        <b>for-each</b>
      </td>
      <td>The xsl:for-each element causes
        iteration over the nodes selected by
        a node-set expression.</td>
    </tr>
    <tr>
      <td colspan="2">End of the list</td>
    </tr>
  </table>
</section>
<section>
  <title>XPath</title>
  <abs:def>XPath (XML Path Language) is a terse
    (non-XML) syntax for addressing portions of
    an XML document. </abs:def>
  <para>Some of the XPath functions.</para>
  <table>

```

```

<header>
  <td>Function</td>
  <td>Description</td>
</header>
<tr>
  <td>format-number</td>
  <td>The format-number function
    converts its first argument to a
    string using the format pattern
    string specified by the second
    argument and the decimal-format
    named by the third argument, or the
    default decimal-format, if there is
    no third argument</td>
</tr>
<tr>
  <td>current</td>
  <td>The current function returns
    a node-set that has the current node
    as its only member.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
  <td>generate-id</td>
  <td>The generate-id function
    returns a string that uniquely
    identifies the node in the argument
    node-set that is first in document
    order.</td>
</tr>
</table>
</section>
</section>
<section>
  <title>Documentation frameworks</title>
  <para>One of the most important documentation
    frameworks is Docbook.</para>
  <image
    href="http://www.xmlhack.com/images/docbook.gif"/>
  <para>The other is the topic oriented DITA, promoted
    by OASIS.</para>
  <image
    href="http://www.oasis-open.org/images/standards/oasis_standard.jpg"
    />
</section>
</book>

```

## XSL Files

### sdf.xsl

```

<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<xsl:stylesheet
  xmlns:xsl="http://www.w3.org/1999/XSL/Transform" version="2.0"

```

```
xpath-default-namespace=
"http://www.oxygenxml.com/sample/documentation">

<xsl:template match="/">
  <html><xsl:apply-templates/></html>
</xsl:template>

<xsl:template match="section">
  <xsl:apply-templates/>
</xsl:template>

<xsl:template match="image">
  
</xsl:template>

<xsl:template match="para">
  <p>
    <xsl:apply-templates/>
  </p>
</xsl:template>

<xsl:template match="abs:def"
  xmlns:abs=
  "http://www.oxygenxml.com/sample/documentation/abstracts">
  <p>
    <u><xsl:apply-templates/></u>
  </p>
</xsl:template>

<xsl:template match="title">
  <h1><xsl:apply-templates/></h1>
</xsl:template>

<xsl:template match="b">
  <b><xsl:apply-templates/></b>
</xsl:template>

<xsl:template match="i">
  <i><xsl:apply-templates/></i>
</xsl:template>

<xsl:template match="table">
  <table frame="box" border="1px">
    <xsl:apply-templates/>
  </table>
</xsl:template>

<xsl:template match="header">
  <tr>
    <xsl:apply-templates/>
  </tr>
</xsl:template>

<xsl:template match="tr">
```

```
        <tr>
            <xsl:apply-templates/>
        </tr>
    </xsl:template>

    <xsl:template match="td">
        <td>
            <xsl:apply-templates/>
        </td>
    </xsl:template>

    <xsl:template match="header/header/td">
        <th>
            <xsl:apply-templates/>
        </th>
    </xsl:template>

</xsl:stylesheet>
```

## Java Files

### InsertImageOperation.java

```
package simple.documentation.framework;

import java.awt.GridBagConstraints;
import java.awt.GridBagLayout;
import java.awt.event.ActionEvent;
import java.awt.event.ActionListener;
import java.awt.event.WindowAdapter;
import java.awt.event.WindowEvent;
import java.io.File;
import java.net.MalformedURLException;

import javax.swing.BorderFactory;
import javax.swing.JButton;
import javax.swing.JDialog;
import javax.swing.JFileChooser;
import javax.swing.JFrame;
import javax.swing.JLabel;
import javax.swing.JPanel;
import javax.swing.JTextField;
import javax.swing.filechooser.FileFilter;

import ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.ArgumentDescriptor;
import ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.ArgumentsMap;
import ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorAccess;
import ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorOperation;
import ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorOperationException;

public class InsertImageOperation implements AuthorOperation {

    //
```

```

// Implementing the Author Operation Interface.
//

/**
 * Performs the operation.
 */
public void doOperation(AuthorAccess authorAccess,
    ArgumentsMap arguments)
    throws IllegalArgumentException,
        AuthorOperationException {

    JFrame oxygenFrame = (JFrame) authorAccess.getParentFrame();
    String href = displayURLDialog(oxygenFrame);
    if (href.length() != 0) {
        // Creates the image XML fragment.
        String imageFragment =
            "<image xmlns='http://www.oxygenxml.com/sample/documentation'" +
                " href='" + href + "'/>";

        // Inserts this fragment at the caret position.
        int caretPosition = authorAccess.getCaretOffset();
        authorAccess.insertXMLFragment(imageFragment, caretPosition);
    }
}

/**
 * Has no arguments.
 *
 * @return null.
 */
public ArgumentDescriptor[] getArguments() {
    return null;
}

/**
 * @return A description of the operation.
 */
public String getDescription() {
    return "Inserts an image element. Asks the" +
        " user for a URL reference.";
}

//
// End of interface implementation.
//

//
// Auxiliary methods.
//

/**
 * Displays the URL dialog.
 *
 * @param parentFrame The parent frame for

```

```

* the dialog.
* @return The selected URL string value,
* or the empty string if the user canceled
* the URL selection.
*/
private String displayURLDialog(JFrame parentFrame) {

    final JDialog dlg = new JDialog(parentFrame,
"Enter the value for the href attribute", true);
    JPanel mainContent = new JPanel(new GridBagLayout());

    // The text field.
    GridBagConstraints cstr = new GridBagConstraints();
    cstr.gridx = 0;
    cstr.gridy = 0;
    cstr.weightx = 0;
    cstr.gridwidth = 1;
    cstr.fill = GridBagConstraints.HORIZONTAL;
    mainContent.add(new JLabel("Image URI:"), cstr);

    cstr.gridx = 1;
    cstr.weightx = 1;
    final JTextField urlField = new JTextField();
    urlField.setColumns(15);
    mainContent.add(urlField, cstr);

    // Add the "Browse button."
    cstr.gridx = 2;
    cstr.weightx = 0;
    JButton browseButton = new JButton("Browse");
    browseButton.addActionListener(new ActionListener() {

        /**
         * Shows a file chooser dialog.
         */
        public void actionPerformed(ActionEvent e) {
            JFileChooser fileChooser = new JFileChooser();

            fileChooser.setMultiSelectionEnabled(false);
            // Accepts only the image files.
            fileChooser.setFileFilter(new FileFilter() {
                public String getDescription() {
                    return "Image files";
                }
            });

            public boolean accept(File f) {
                String fileName = f.getName();
                return f.isFile() &&
                    ( fileName.endsWith(".jpeg")
                    || fileName.endsWith(".jpg")
                    || fileName.endsWith(".gif")
                    || fileName.endsWith(".png")
                    || fileName.endsWith(".svg"));
            }
        }
    });
}

```

```

    });
    if (fileChooser.showOpenDialog(dlg)
        == JFileChooser.APPROVE_OPTION) {
        File file = fileChooser.getSelectedFile();
        try {
            // Set the file into the text field.
            urlField.setText(file.toURL().toString());
        } catch (MalformedURLException ex) {
            // This should not happen.
            ex.printStackTrace();
        }
    }
}
});
mainContent.add(browseButton, cstr);

// Add the "Ok" button to the layout.
cstr.gridx = 0;
cstr.gridy = 1;
cstr.weightx = 0;
JButton okButton = new JButton("Ok");
okButton.addActionListener(new ActionListener() {
    public void actionPerformed(ActionEvent e) {
        dlg.setVisible(false);
    }
});
mainContent.add(okButton, cstr);
mainContent.setBorder(
    BorderFactory.createEmptyBorder(10, 5, 10, 5));

// Add the "Cancel" button to the layout.
cstr.gridx = 2;
JButton cancelButton = new JButton("Cancel");
cancelButton.addActionListener(new ActionListener() {
    public void actionPerformed(ActionEvent e) {
        urlField.setText("");
        dlg.setVisible(false);
    }
});
mainContent.add(cancelButton, cstr);

// When the user closes the dialog
// from the window decoration,
// assume "Cancel" action.
dlg.addWindowListener(new WindowAdapter() {
    public void windowClosing(WindowEvent e) {
        urlField.setText("");
    }
});

dlg.getContentPane().add(mainContent);
dlg.pack();
dlg.setLocationRelativeTo(parentFrame);
dlg.setVisible(true);

```

```

return urlField.getText();
}

/**
 * Test method.
 *
 * @param args The arguments are ignored.
 */
public static void main(String[] args) {
    InsertImageOperation operation =
        new InsertImageOperation();
    System.out.println("Chosen URL: " +
        operation.displayURLDialog(new JFrame()));
}
}

```

### **QueryDatabaseOperation.java**

```

package simple.documentation.framework;

import java.sql.Connection;
import java.sql.DriverManager;
import java.sql.ResultSet;
import java.sql.ResultSetMetaData;
import java.sql.SQLException;
import java.util.Properties;

import ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.ArgumentDescriptor;
import ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.ArgumentsMap;
import ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorAccess;
import ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorOperation;
import ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorOperationException;

public class QueryDatabaseOperation implements AuthorOperation{

    private static String ARG_JDBC_DRIVER ="jdbc_driver";
    private static String ARG_USER ="user";
    private static String ARG_PASSWORD ="password";
    private static String ARG_SQL ="sql";
    private static String ARG_CONNECTION ="connection";

    /**
     * @return The array of arguments the developer must specify when
     * configuring the action.
     */
    public ArgumentDescriptor[] getArguments() {
        ArgumentDescriptor args[] = new ArgumentDescriptor[] {
            new ArgumentDescriptor(
                ARG_JDBC_DRIVER,
                ArgumentDescriptor.TYPE_STRING,
                "The name of the Java class that is the JDBC driver."),
            new ArgumentDescriptor(
                ARG_CONNECTION,
                ArgumentDescriptor.TYPE_STRING,

```



```

        "The database URL connection string."),
    new ArgumentDescriptor(
        ARG_USER,
        ArgumentDescriptor.TYPE_STRING,
        "The name of the database user."),
    new ArgumentDescriptor(
        ARG_PASSWORD,
        ArgumentDescriptor.TYPE_STRING,
        "The database password."),
    new ArgumentDescriptor(
        ARG_SQL,
        ArgumentDescriptor.TYPE_STRING,
        "The SQL statement to be executed.")
};
return args;
}

/**
 * @return The operation description.
 */
public String getDescription() {
    return "Executes a database query and puts the result in a table.";
}

public void doOperation(AuthorAccess authorAccess, ArgumentsMap map)
    throws IllegalArgumentException, AuthorOperationException {

    // Collects the arguments.
    String jdbcDriver =
        (String)map.getArgumentValue(ARG_JDBC_DRIVER);
    String connection =
        (String)map.getArgumentValue(ARG_CONNECTION);
    String user =
        (String)map.getArgumentValue(ARG_USER);
    String password =
        (String)map.getArgumentValue(ARG_PASSWORD);
    String sql =
        (String)map.getArgumentValue(ARG_SQL);

    int caretPosition = authorAccess.getCaretOffset();
    try {
        authorAccess.insertXMLFragment(
            getFragment(jdbcDriver, connection, user, password, sql),
            caretPosition);
    } catch (SQLException e) {
        throw new AuthorOperationException(
            "The operation failed due to the following database error: " +
            e.getMessage(), e);
    } catch (ClassNotFoundException e) {
        throw new AuthorOperationException(
            "The JDBC database driver was not found. Tried to load ' " +
            jdbcDriver + "'", e);
    }
}
}

```

```

/**
 * Creates a connection to the database, executes
 * the SQL statement and creates an XML fragment
 * containing a table element that wraps the data
 * from the result set.
 *
 *
 * @param jdbcDriver The class name of the JDBC driver.
 * @param connectionURL The connection URL.
 * @param user The database user.
 * @param password The password.
 * @param sql The SQL statement.
 * @return The string containing the XML fragment.
 *
 * @throws SQLException thrown when there is a
 * problem accessing the database or there are
 * errors in the SQL expression.
 * @throws ClassNotFoundException when the JDBC
 * driver class could not be loaded.
 */
private String getFragment(
    String jdbcDriver,
    String connectionURL,
    String user,
    String password,
    String sql) throws
    SQLException,
    ClassNotFoundException {

    Properties pr = new Properties();
    pr.put("characterEncoding", "UTF8");
    pr.put("useUnicode", "TRUE");
    pr.put("user", user);
    pr.put("password", password);

    // Loads the database driver.
    Class.forName(jdbcDriver);

    // Opens the connection
    Connection connection =
        DriverManager.getConnection(connectionURL, pr);
    java.sql.Statement statement =
        connection.createStatement();
    ResultSet resultSet =
        statement.executeQuery(sql);

    StringBuffer fragmentBuffer = new StringBuffer();
    fragmentBuffer.append(
        "<table xmlns='http://www.oxygenxml.com/sample/documentation'>");

    //
    // Creates the table header.
    //

```

```

fragmentBuffer.append("<header>");
ResultSetMetaData metaData = resultSet.getMetaData();
int columnCount = metaData.getColumnCount();
for (int i = 1; i <= columnCount; i++) {
    fragmentBuffer.append("<td>");
    fragmentBuffer.append(
        xmlEscape(metaData.getColumnName(i)));
    fragmentBuffer.append("</td>");
}
fragmentBuffer.append("</header>");

//
// Creates the table content.
//
while (resultSet.next()) {
    fragmentBuffer.append("<tr>");
    for (int i = 1; i <= columnCount; i++) {
        fragmentBuffer.append("<td>");
        fragmentBuffer.append(
            xmlEscape(resultSet.getObject(i)));
        fragmentBuffer.append("</td>");
    }
    fragmentBuffer.append("</tr>");
}

fragmentBuffer.append("</table>");

// Cleanup
resultSet.close();
statement.close();
connection.close();
return fragmentBuffer.toString();
}

/**
 * Some of the values from the database table
 * may contain characters that must be escaped
 * in XML, to ensure the fragment is well formed.
 *
 * @param object The object from the database.
 * @return The escaped string representation.
 */
private String xmlEscape(Object object) {
    String str = String.valueOf(object);
    return str.
        replaceAll("&", "&amp;").
        replaceAll("<", "&lt;");
}
}

```

### **SDFExtensionsBundle.java**

```
package simple.documentation.framework;
```

```

import ro.sync.contentcompletion.xml.SchemaManagerFilter;
import ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AttributesValueEditor;
import ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorExtensionStateListener;
import ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorReferenceResolver;
import ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorSchemaAwareEditingHandler;
import ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorTableCellSpanProvider;
import ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorTableColumnWidthProvider;
import ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.ExtensionsBundle;
import ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.StylesFilter;
import ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.link.ElementLocatorProvider;
import ro.sync.ecss.extensions.commons.DefaultElementLocatorProvider;
import simple.documentation.framework.extensions.SDFAttributesValueEditor;
import simple.documentation.framework.extensions.SDFAuthorExtensionStateListener;
import simple.documentation.framework.extensions.SDFReferencesResolver;
import simple.documentation.framework.extensions.SDFSchemasAwareEditingHandler;
import simple.documentation.framework.extensions.SDFSchemasManagerFilter;
import simple.documentation.framework.extensions.SDFStylesFilter;
import simple.documentation.framework.extensions.TableCellSpanProvider;
import simple.documentation.framework.extensions.TableColumnWidthProvider;

/**
 * Simple Document Framework extension bundle.
 */
public class SDFExtensionsBundle extends ExtensionsBundle {
    /**
     * Editor for attributes values.
     */
    public AttributesValueEditor createAttributesValueEditor(boolean arg0) {
        return new SDFAttributesValueEditor();
    }

    /**
     * Simple documentation framework state listener.
     */
    public AuthorExtensionStateListener createAuthorExtensionStateListener() {
        return new SDFAuthorExtensionStateListener();
    }

    /**
     * Filter for content completion proposals from the schema manager.
     */
    public SchemaManagerFilter createSchemaManagerFilter() {
        return new SDFSchemasManagerFilter();
    }

    /**
     * Default element locator.
     */
    public ElementLocatorProvider createElementLocatorProvider() {
        return new DefaultElementLocatorProvider();
    }
}

```

```
    * Expand content references.
    */
public AuthorReferenceResolver createAuthorReferenceResolver() {
    return new SDFReferencesResolver();
}

/**
 * CSS styles filtering.
 */
public StylesFilter createAuthorStylesFilter() {
    return new SDFStylesFilter();
}

/**
 * Provider for table cell span informations.
 */
public AuthorTableCellSpanProvider createAuthorTableCellSpanProvider() {
    return new TableCellSpanProvider();
}

/**
 * Table column width provider responsible of handling modifications regarding
 * table width and column widths.
 */
public AuthorTableColumnWidthProvider createAuthorTableColumnWidthProvider() {
    return new TableColumnWidthProvider();
}

/**
 * Editing support for SDF documents responsible of handling typing and
 * paste events inside section and tables.
 */
public AuthorSchemaAwareEditingHandler getAuthorSchemaAwareEditingHandler() {
    return new SDFSchemasAwareEditingHandler();
}

/**
 * The unique identifier of the Document Type.
 * This identifier will be used to store custom SDF options.
 */
public String getDocumentTypeID() {
    return "Simple.Document.Framework.document.type";
}

/**
 * Bundle description.
 */
public String getDescription() {
    return "A custom extensions bundle used for the Simple Document Framework";
}
}
```

**SDFSchemaManagerFilter.java**

```
package simple.documentation.framework;

import java.util.Iterator;
import java.util.List;

import ro.sync.contentcompletion.xml.CIAttribute;
import ro.sync.contentcompletion.xml.CIElement;
import ro.sync.contentcompletion.xml.CIValue;
import ro.sync.contentcompletion.xml.Context;
import ro.sync.contentcompletion.xml.ContextElement;
import ro.sync.contentcompletion.xml.SchemaManagerFilter;
import ro.sync.contentcompletion.xml.WhatAttributesCanGoHereContext;
import ro.sync.contentcompletion.xml.WhatElementsCanGoHereContext;
import ro.sync.contentcompletion.xml.WhatPossibleValuesHasAttributeContext;

public class SDFSchemaManagerFilter implements SchemaManagerFilter {

    @Override
    public List<CIValue> filterAttributeValues(List<CIValue> attributeValues,
        WhatPossibleValuesHasAttributeContext context) {
        return attributeValues;
    }

    @Override
    public List<CIAttribute> filterAttributes(List<CIAttribute> attributes,
        WhatAttributesCanGoHereContext context) {
        // If the element from the current context is the 'table' element add the
        // attribute named 'frame' to the list of default content
        // completion proposals
        ContextElement contextElement = context.getParentElement();
        if ("table".equals(contextElement.getQName())) {
            CIAttribute frameAttribute = new CIAttribute();
            frameAttribute.setName("frame");
            frameAttribute.setRequired(false);
            frameAttribute.setFixed(false);
            frameAttribute.setDefaultValue("void");
            attributes.add(frameAttribute);
        }
        return attributes;
    }

    @Override
    public List<CIValue> filterElementValues(List<CIValue> elementValues,
        Context context) {
        return elementValues;
    }

    @Override
    public List<CIElement> filterElements(List<CIElement> elements,
        WhatElementsCanGoHereContext context) {
```

```

// If the element from the current context is the 'header'
// element remove the 'td' element from the list of content
// completion proposals and add the 'th' element.
ContextElement contextElement = context.getElementStack().peek();
if ("header".equals(contextElement.getQName())) {
    for (Iterator<CIElement> iterator = elements.iterator();
         iterator.hasNext();) {
        CIElement element = iterator.next();
        // Remove the 'td' element
        if ("td".equals(element.getQName())) {
            elements.remove(element);
            break;
        }
    }
    // Insert the 'th' element in the list of content completion proposals
    CIElement thElement = new SDFElement();
    thElement.setName("th");
    elements.add(thElement);
}
return elements;
}

@Override
public String getDescription() {
    return null;
}
}

```

### **SDFSchemaAwareEditingHandler.java**

```

package simple.documentation.framework.extensions;

import java.util.List;

import javax.swing.text.BadLocationException;

import ro.sync.contentcompletion.xml.ContextElement;
import ro.sync.contentcompletion.xml.WhatElementsCanGoHereContext;
import ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorAccess;
import ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorOperationException;
import ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorSchemaAwareEditingHandler;
import ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorSchemaManager;
import ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.InvalidEditException;
import ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.node.AuthorDocumentFragment;
import ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.node.AuthorElement;
import ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.node.AuthorNode;

/**
 * Specific editing support for SDF documents. Handles typing and
 * paste events inside section and tables.
 */
public class SDFSchemaAwareEditingHandler implements AuthorSchemaAwareEditingHandler {

    private static final String SDF_NAMESPACE = "http://www.oxygenxml.com/sample/documentati

```

```

/**
 * SDF table element name.
 */
private static final String SDF_TABLE = "table";
/**
 * SDF table row name.
 */
private static final String SDF_TABLE_ROW = "tr";
/**
 * SDF table cell name.
 */
private static final String SDF_TABLE_CELL = "td";
/**
 * SDF section element name.
 */
private static final String SECTION = "section";
/**
 * SDF para element name.
 */
protected static final String PARA = "para";
/**
 * SDF title element name.
 */
protected static final String TITLE = "title";

/**
 * @see ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorSchemaAwareEditingHandler#handleDelete(int,
 * int, ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorAccess, boolean)
 */
public boolean handleDelete(int offset, int deleteType, AuthorAccess authorAccess,
    boolean wordLevel)
    throws InvalidEditException {
    // Not handled.
    return false;
}

/**
 * @see
 * ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorSchemaAwareEditingHandler#handleDeleteElementTags(
 * ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.node.AuthorNode, ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorAccess)
 */
public boolean handleDeleteElementTags(AuthorNode nodeToUnwrap, AuthorAccess authorAccess)
    throws InvalidEditException {
    // Not handled.
    return false;
}

/**
 * @see
 * ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorSchemaAwareEditingHandler#handleDeleteSelection(int,
 * int, int, ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorAccess)
 */
public boolean handleDeleteSelection(int selectionStart, int selectionEnd,
    int generatedByActionId, AuthorAccess authorAccess) throws InvalidEditException {

```



```

    // Not handled.
    return false;
}

/**
 * @see ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorSchemaAwareEditingHandler#handleJoinElements(
 * ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.node.AuthorNode, java.util.List,
 * ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorAccess)
 */
public boolean handleJoinElements(AuthorNode targetNode, List<AuthorNode> nodesToJoin,
    AuthorAccess authorAccess)
    throws InvalidEditException {
    // Not handled.
    return false;
}

/**
 * @see ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorSchemaAwareEditingHandler#handlePasteFragment(
 * int, ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.node.AuthorDocumentFragment[], int,
 * ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorAccess)
 */
public boolean handlePasteFragment(int offset, AuthorDocumentFragment[] fragmentsToInsert,
    int actionId, AuthorAccess authorAccess) throws InvalidEditException {
    boolean handleInsertionEvent = false;
    AuthorSchemaManager authorSchemaManager =
        authorAccess.getDocumentController().getAuthorSchemaManager();
    if (!authorSchemaManager.isLearnSchema() &&
        !authorSchemaManager.hasLoadingErrors() &&
        authorSchemaManager.getAuthorSchemaAwareOptions().isEnabledSmartPaste()) {
        handleInsertionEvent = handleInsertionEvent(offset, fragmentsToInsert, authorAccess)
    }
    return handleInsertionEvent;
}

/**
 * @see ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorSchemaAwareEditingHandler#handleTyping(int,
 * char, ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorAccess)
 */
public boolean handleTyping(int offset, char ch, AuthorAccess authorAccess)
    throws InvalidEditException {
    boolean handleTyping = false;
    AuthorSchemaManager authorSchemaManager =
        authorAccess.getDocumentController().getAuthorSchemaManager();
    if (!authorSchemaManager.isLearnSchema() &&
        !authorSchemaManager.hasLoadingErrors() &&
        authorSchemaManager.getAuthorSchemaAwareOptions().isEnabledSmartTyping()) {
        try {
            AuthorDocumentFragment characterFragment =
                authorAccess.getDocumentController().createNewDocumentTextFragment(String.valueOf(ch),
                offset, authorAccess);
            handleTyping = handleInsertionEvent(offset,
                new AuthorDocumentFragment[] {characterFragment}, authorAccess);
        } catch (AuthorOperationException e) {
            throw new InvalidEditException(e.getMessage(),
                "Invalid typing event: " + e.getMessage(), e, false);
        }
    }
}

```

```

    }
  }
  return handleTyping;
}

/**
 * Handle an insertion event (either typing or paste).
 *
 * @param offset Offset where the insertion event occurred.
 * @param fragmentsToInsert Fragments that must be inserted at the given offset.
 * @param authorAccess Author access.
 * @return <code>true</code> if the event was handled, <code>false</code> otherwise.
 *
 * @throws InvalidEditException The event was rejected because it is invalid.
 */
private boolean handleInsertionEvent(
    int offset,
    AuthorDocumentFragment[] fragmentsToInsert,
    AuthorAccess authorAccess) throws InvalidEditException {
  AuthorSchemaManager authorSchemaManager =
    authorAccess.getDocumentController().getAuthorSchemaManager();
  boolean handleEvent = false;
  try {
    AuthorNode nodeAtInsertionOffset =
      authorAccess.getDocumentController().getNodeAtOffset(offset);
    if (isElementWithNameAndNamespace(nodeAtInsertionOffset, SDF_TABLE)) {
      // Check if the fragment is allowed as it is.
      boolean canInsertFragments = authorSchemaManager.canInsertDocumentFragments(
        fragmentsToInsert,
        offset,
        AuthorSchemaManager.VALIDATION_MODE_STRICT_FIRST_CHILD_LAX_OTHERS);
      if (!canInsertFragments) {
        handleEvent = handleInvalidInsertionEventInTable(
          offset,
          fragmentsToInsert,
          authorAccess,
          authorSchemaManager);
      }
    } else if (isElementWithNameAndNamespace(nodeAtInsertionOffset, SECTION)) {
      // Check if the fragment is allowed as it is.
      boolean canInsertFragments = authorSchemaManager.canInsertDocumentFragments(
        fragmentsToInsert,
        offset,
        AuthorSchemaManager.VALIDATION_MODE_STRICT_FIRST_CHILD_LAX_OTHERS);
      if (!canInsertFragments) {
        // Insertion in 'section' element
        handleEvent = handleInvalidInsertionEventInSect(
          offset,
          fragmentsToInsert,
          authorAccess,
          authorSchemaManager);
      }
    }
  }
} catch (BadLocationException e) {

```

```

        throw new InvalidEditException(e.getMessage(),
                                       "Invalid typing event: " + e.getMessage(), e, false);
    } catch (AuthorOperationException e) {
        throw new InvalidEditException(e.getMessage(),
                                       "Invalid typing event: " + e.getMessage(), e, false);
    }
    return handleEvent;
}

/**
 * @return <code>true</code> if the given node is an element with the given local name
 * and from the SDF namespace.
 */
protected boolean isElementWithNameAndNamespace(AuthorNode node, String elementLocalName) {
    boolean result = false;
    if (node.getType() == AuthorNode.NODE_TYPE_ELEMENT) {
        AuthorElement element = (AuthorElement) node;
        result = elementLocalName.equals(
            element.getLocalName()) && element.getNamespace().equals(SDF_NAMESPACE);
    }
    return result;
}

/**
 * Try to handle invalid insertion events in a SDF 'table'.
 * A row element will be inserted with a new cell in which the fragments will be inserted.
 *
 * @param offset Offset where the insertion event occurred.
 * @param fragmentsToInsert Fragments that must be inserted at the given offset.
 * @param authorAccess Author access.
 * @return <code>true</code> if the event was handled, <code>false</code> otherwise.
 */
private boolean handleInvalidInsertionEventInTable(
    int offset,
    AuthorDocumentFragment[] fragmentsToInsert,
    AuthorAccess authorAccess,
    AuthorSchemaManager authorSchemaManager)
    throws BadLocationException, AuthorOperationException {
    boolean handleEvent = false;
    // Typing/paste inside a SDF table. We will try to wrap the fragment into a new cell
    // and insert it inside a new row.
    WhatElementsCanGoHereContext context =
        authorSchemaManager.createWhatElementsCanGoHereContext(offset);
    StringBuilder xmlFragment = new StringBuilder("<");
    xmlFragment.append(SDF_TABLE_ROW);
    if (SDF_NAMESPACE != null && SDF_NAMESPACE.length() != 0) {
        xmlFragment.append(" xmlns=\"").append(SDF_NAMESPACE).append("\");");
    }
    xmlFragment.append(">");

    // Check if a row can be inserted at the current offset.
    boolean canInsertRow = authorSchemaManager.canInsertDocumentFragments(
        new AuthorDocumentFragment[] {
            authorAccess.getDocumentController().createNewDocumentFragmentInContext(

```

```

        xmlFragment.toString(), offset)},
        context,
        AuthorSchemaManager.VALIDATION_MODE_STRICT_FIRST_CHILD_LAX_OTHERS);

// Derive the context by adding a new row element with a cell.
if (canInsertRow) {
    pushContextElement(context, SDF_TABLE_ROW);
    pushContextElement(context, SDF_TABLE_CELL);

    // Test if fragments can be inserted in the new context.
    if (authorSchemaManager.canInsertDocumentFragments(
        fragmentsToInsert,
        context,
        AuthorSchemaManager.VALIDATION_MODE_STRICT_FIRST_CHILD_LAX_OTHERS)) {

        // Insert a new row with a cell.
        xmlFragment = new StringBuilder("<");
        xmlFragment.append(SDF_TABLE_ROW);

        if (SDF_NAMESPACE != null && SDF_NAMESPACE.length() != 0) {
            xmlFragment.append(" xmlns=\"").append(SDF_NAMESPACE).append("\");
        }
        xmlFragment.append("><");
        xmlFragment.append(SDF_TABLE_CELL);
        xmlFragment.append("></");
        xmlFragment.append(SDF_TABLE_ROW);
        xmlFragment.append(">");
        authorAccess.getDocumentController().insertXMLFragment(xmlFragment.toString(), off

        // Get the newly inserted cell.
        AuthorNode newCell = authorAccess.getDocumentController().getNodeAtOffset(offset +
        for (int i = 0; i < fragmentsToInsert.length; i++) {
            authorAccess.getDocumentController().insertFragment(newCell.getEndOffset(),
                fragmentsToInsert[i]);
        }

        handleEvent = true;
    }
}
return handleEvent;
}

/**
 * Derive the given context by adding the specified element.
 */
protected void pushContextElement(WhatElementsCanGoHereContext context,
                                String elementName) {
    ContextElement contextElement = new ContextElement();
    contextElement.setQName(elementName);
    contextElement.setNamespace(SDF_NAMESPACE);
    context.pushContextElement(contextElement, null);
}

/**

```

```

* Try to handle invalid insertion events in 'section'.
* The solution is to insert the <code>fragmentsToInsert</code> into a 'title' element
* if the sect element is empty or into a 'para' element if the sect already contains
* a 'title'.
*
* @param offset Offset where the insertion event occurred.
* @param fragmentsToInsert Fragments that must be inserted at the given offset.
* @param authorAccess Author access.
* @return <code>true</code> if the event was handled, <code>false</code> otherwise.
*/
private boolean handleInvalidInsertionEventInSect(int offset,
    AuthorDocumentFragment[] fragmentsToInsert, AuthorAccess authorAccess,
    AuthorSchemaManager authorSchemaManager) throws BadLocationException,
    AuthorOperationException {
    boolean handleEvent = false;
    // Typing/paste inside an section.
    AuthorElement sectionElement =
        (AuthorElement) authorAccess.getDocumentController().getNodeAtOffset(offset);

    if (sectionElement.getStartOffset() + 1 == sectionElement.getEndOffset()) {
        // Empty section element
        WhatElementsCanGoHereContext context =
            authorSchemaManager.createWhatElementsCanGoHereContext(offset);
        // Derive the context by adding a title.
        pushContextElement(context, TITLE);

        // Test if fragments can be inserted in 'title' element
        if (authorSchemaManager.canInsertDocumentFragments(
            fragmentsToInsert,
            context,
            AuthorSchemaManager.VALIDATION_MODE_STRICT_FIRST_CHILD_LAX_OTHERS)) {
            // Create a title structure and insert fragments inside
            StringBuilder xmlFragment = new StringBuilder("<").append(TITLE);
            if (SDF_NAMESPACE != null && SDF_NAMESPACE.length() != 0) {
                xmlFragment.append(" xmlns=\"").append(SDF_NAMESPACE).append("\");
            }
            xmlFragment.append(">").append("</").append(TITLE).append(">");
            // Insert title
            authorAccess.getDocumentController().insertXMLFragment(xmlFragment.toString(),
                offset);

            // Insert fragments
            AuthorNode newParaNode =
                authorAccess.getDocumentController().getNodeAtOffset(offset + 1);
            for (int i = 0; i < fragmentsToInsert.length; i++) {
                authorAccess.getDocumentController().insertFragment(newParaNode.getEndOffset(),
                    fragmentsToInsert[i]);
            }
            handleEvent = true;
        }
    } else {
        // Check if there is just a title.
        List<AuthorNode> contentNodes = sectionElement.getContentNodes();
        if (contentNodes.size() == 1) {

```

```

AuthorNode child = contentNodes.get(0);
boolean isTitleChild = isElementWithNameAndNamespace(child, TITLE);
if (isTitleChild && child.getEndOffset() < offset) {
    // We are after the title.

    // Empty sect element
    WhatElementsCanGoHereContext context =
        authorSchemaManager.createWhatElementsCanGoHereContext(offset);
    // Derive the context by adding a para
    pushContextElement(context, PARA);

    // Test if fragments can be inserted in 'para' element
    if (authorSchemaManager.canInsertDocumentFragments(
        fragmentsToInsert,
        context,
        AuthorSchemaManager.VALIDATION_MODE_STRICT_FIRST_CHILD_LAX_OTHERS)) {
        // Create a para structure and insert fragments inside
        StringBuilder xmlFragment = new StringBuilder("<").append(PARA);
        if (SDF_NAMESPACE != null && SDF_NAMESPACE.length() != 0) {
            xmlFragment.append(" xmlns=\"").append(SDF_NAMESPACE).append("\");
        }
        xmlFragment.append(">").append("</").append(PARA).append(">");
        // Insert para
        authorAccess.getDocumentController().insertXMLFragment(xmlFragment.toString(),
            offset);
        // Insert fragments
        AuthorNode newParaNode =
            authorAccess.getDocumentController().getNodeAtOffset(offset + 1);
        for (int i = 0; i < fragmentsToInsert.length; i++) {
            authorAccess.getDocumentController().insertFragment(newParaNode.getEndOffset()
                fragmentsToInsert[i]);
        }
        handleEvent = true;
    }
}
}
return handleEvent;
}
}

```

### **TableCellSpanProvider.java**

```

package simple.documentation.framework;

public class TableCellSpanProvider
    implements AuthorTableCellSpanProvider {

    /**
     * Extracts the integer specifying what is the width
     * (in columns) of the cell
     * representing in the table layout the cell element.
     */
}

```

```

public Integer getColSpan(AuthorElement cell) {
    Integer colSpan = null;

    AttrValue attrValue = cell.getAttribute("column_span");
    if(attrValue != null) {
        // The attribute was found.
        String cs = attrValue.getValue();
        if(cs != null) {
            try {
                colSpan = new Integer(cs);
            } catch (NumberFormatException ex) {
                // The attribute value was not a number.
            }
        }
    }
    return colSpan;
}

/**
 * Extracts the integer specifying what is the
 * height (in rows) of the cell
 * representing in the table layout the cell element.
 */
public Integer getRowSpan(AuthorElement cell) {
    Integer rowSpan = null;

    AttrValue attrValue = cell.getAttribute("row_span");
    if(attrValue != null) {
        // The attribute was found.
        String rs = attrValue.getValue();
        if(rs != null) {
            try {
                rowSpan = new Integer(rs);
            } catch (NumberFormatException ex) {
                // The attribute value was not a number.
            }
        }
    }
    return rowSpan;
}

/**
 * @return true considering the column specifications always available.
 */
public boolean hasColumnSpecifications(AuthorElement tableElement) {
    return true;
}

/**
 * Ignored. We do not extract data from the
 * <code>table</code> element.
 */
public void init(AuthorElement table) {
}

```

```

public String getDescription() {
    return
        "Implementation for the Simple Documentation Framework table layout.";
}
}

```

### **TableColumnWidthProvider.java**

```

package simple.documentation.framework.extensions;
import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.List;

import ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorDocumentController;
import ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorOperationException;
import ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorTableColumnWidthProvider;
import ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.WidthRepresentation;
import ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.node.AttrValue;
import ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.node.AuthorElement;

/**
 *
 * Simple Documentation Framework table column width provider.
 *
 */
public class TableColumnWidthProvider implements AuthorTableColumnWidthProvider {

    /**
     * Cols start offset
     */
    private int colsStartOffset;

    /**
     * Cols end offset
     */
    private int colsEndOffset;

    /**
     * Column widths specifications
     */
    private List<WidthRepresentation> colWidthSpecs = new ArrayList<WidthRepresentation>();

    /**
     * The table element
     */
    private AuthorElement tableElement;

    /**
     * @see
     * ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorTableColumnWidthProvider#commitColumnWidthModificat
     * ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorDocumentController,
     * ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.WidthRepresentation[],
     * java.lang.String)
     */
}

```



```

public void commitColumnWidthModifications(AuthorDocumentController authorDocumentControll
    WidthRepresentation[] colWidths, String tableCellsTagName)
    throws AuthorOperationException {
    if ("td".equals(tableCellsTagName)) {
        if (colWidths != null && tableElement != null) {
            if (colsStartOffset >= 0 && colsEndOffset >= 0 &&
                colsStartOffset < colsEndOffset) {
                authorDocumentController.delete(colsStartOffset, colsEndOffset);
            }
            String xmlFragment = createXMLFragment(colWidths);
            int offset = -1;
            AuthorElement[] header = tableElement.getElementsByLocalName("header");
            if (header != null && header.length > 0) {
                // Insert the cols elements before the 'header' element
                offset = header[0].getStartOffset();
            }
            if (offset == -1) {
                throw new AuthorOperationException(
                    "No valid offset to insert the columns width specification.");
            }
            authorDocumentController.insertXMLFragment(xmlFragment, offset);
        }
    }
}

/**
 * Creates the XML fragment representing the column specifications.
 *
 * @param widthRepresentations
 * @return The XML fragment as a string.
 */
private String createXMLFragment(WidthRepresentation[] widthRepresentations) {
    StringBuffer fragment = new StringBuffer();
    String ns = tableElement.getNamespace();
    for (int i = 0; i < widthRepresentations.length; i++) {
        WidthRepresentation width = widthRepresentations[i];
        fragment.append("<customcol");
        String strRepresentation = width.getWidthRepresentation();
        if (strRepresentation != null) {
            fragment.append(" width=\"" + width.getWidthRepresentation() + "\"");
        }
        if (ns != null && ns.length() > 0) {
            fragment.append(" xmlns=\"" + ns + "\"");
        }
        fragment.append(">");
    }
    return fragment.toString();
}

/**
 * @see
 * ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorTableColumnWidthProvider#commitTableWidthModificat
 * ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorDocumentController, int, java.lang.String)
 */

```

```

public void commitTableWidthModification(AuthorDocumentController authorDocumentController
    int newTableWidth, String tableCellsTagName) throws AuthorOperationException {
    if ("td".equals(tableCellsTagName)) {
        if (newTableWidth > 0) {
            if (tableElement != null) {
                String newWidth = String.valueOf(newTableWidth);
                authorDocumentController.setAttribute(
                    "width",
                    new AttrValue(newWidth),
                    tableElement);
            } else {
                throw new
                    AuthorOperationException("Cannot find the element representing the table
            }
        }
    }
}

/**
 * @see ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorTableColumnWidthProvider#getCellWidth(
 *     ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.node.AuthorElement, int, int)
 */
public List<WidthRepresentation> getCellWidth(AuthorElement cellElement, int colNumberStar
    int colSpan) {
    List<WidthRepresentation> toReturn = null;
    int size = colWidthSpecs.size();
    if (size >= colNumberStart && size >= colNumberStart + colSpan) {
        toReturn = new ArrayList<WidthRepresentation>(colSpan);
        for (int i = colNumberStart; i < colNumberStart + colSpan; i++) {
            // Add the column widths
            toReturn.add(colWidthSpecs.get(i));
        }
    }
    return toReturn;
}

/**
 * @see
 *     ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorTableColumnWidthProvider#getTableWidth(java.lang.St
 */
public WidthRepresentation getTableWidth(String tableCellsTagName) {
    WidthRepresentation toReturn = null;
    if (tableElement != null && "td".equals(tableCellsTagName)) {
        AttrValue widthAttr = tableElement.getAttribute("width");
        if (widthAttr != null) {
            String width = widthAttr.getValue();
            if (width != null) {
                toReturn = new WidthRepresentation(width, true);
            }
        }
    }
    return toReturn;
}

```

```

/**
 * @see ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorTableColumnWidthProvider#init(
 *      ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.node.AuthorElement)
 */
public void init(AuthorElement tableElement) {
    this.tableElement = tableElement;
    AuthorElement[] colChildren = tableElement.getElementsByLocalName("customcol");
    if (colChildren != null && colChildren.length > 0) {
        for (int i = 0; i < colChildren.length; i++) {
            AuthorElement colChild = colChildren[i];
            if (i == 0) {
                colsStartOffset = colChild.getStartOffset();
            }
            if (i == colChildren.length - 1) {
                colsEndOffset = colChild.getEndOffset();
            }
            // Determine the 'width' for this col.
            AttrValue colWidthAttribute = colChild.getAttribute("width");
            String colWidth = null;
            if (colWidthAttribute != null) {
                colWidth = colWidthAttribute.getValue();
                // Add WidthRepresentation objects for the columns this 'customcol'
                // specification spans over.
                colWidthSpecs.add(new WidthRepresentation(colWidth, true));
            }
        }
    }
}

/**
 * @see
 *      ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorTableColumnWidthProvider#isAcceptingFixedColumnWidths(
 *      java.lang.String)
 */
public boolean isAcceptingFixedColumnWidths(String tableCellsTagName) {
    return true;
}

/**
 * @see
 *      ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorTableColumnWidthProvider#isAcceptingPercentageColumnWidths(
 *      java.lang.String)
 */
public boolean isAcceptingPercentageColumnWidths(String tableCellsTagName) {
    return true;
}

/**
 * @see
 *      ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorTableColumnWidthProvider#isAcceptingProportionalColumnWidths(
 *      java.lang.String)
 */
public boolean isAcceptingProportionalColumnWidths(String tableCellsTagName) {
    return true;
}

```

```

}

/**
 * @see
 *   ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorTableColumnWidthProvider#isTableAcceptingWidth(
 *   java.lang.String)
 */
public boolean isTableAcceptingWidth(String tableCellsTagName) {
    return "td".equals(tableCellsTagName);
}

/**
 * @see
 *   ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorTableColumnWidthProvider#isTableAndColumnsResizable(
 *   java.lang.String)
 */
public boolean isTableAndColumnsResizable(String tableCellsTagName) {
    return "td".equals(tableCellsTagName);
}

/**
 * @see ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.Extension#getDescription()
 */
public String getDescription() {
    return "Implementation for the Simple Documentation Framework table layout.";
}
}

```

### ReferencesResolver.java

```

package simple.documentation.framework;

import java.io.IOException;
import java.net.MalformedURLException;
import java.net.URL;

import javax.xml.transform.sax.SAXSource;

import org.apache.log4j.Logger;
import org.xml.sax.EntityResolver;
import org.xml.sax.InputSource;
import org.xml.sax.SAXException;
import org.xml.sax.XMLReader;

import ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorAccess;
import ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorReferenceResolver;
import ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.node.AttrValue;
import ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.node.AuthorElement;
import ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.node.AuthorNode;

/**
 * Resolver for content referred by elements named 'ref' with a
 *   'location' attribute.
 */

```

```

public class ReferencesResolver implements AuthorReferenceResolver {

    /**
     * Logger for logging.
     */
    private static Logger logger = Logger.getLogger(
        ReferencesResolver.class.getName());

    /**
     * Verifies if the handler considers the node to have references.
     *
     * @param node The node to be analyzed.
     * @return <code>true</code> if it is has references.
     */
    public boolean hasReferences(AuthorNode node) {
        boolean hasReferences = false;
        if (node.getType() == AuthorNode.NODE_TYPE_ELEMENT) {
            AuthorElement element = (AuthorElement) node;
            if ("ref".equals(element.getLocalName())) {
                AttrValue attrValue = element.getAttribute("location");
                hasReferences = attrValue != null;
            }
        }
        return hasReferences;
    }

    /**
     * Returns the name of the node that contains the expanded referred content.
     *
     * @param node The node that contains references.
     * @return The display name of the node.
     */
    public String getDisplayName(AuthorNode node) {
        String displayName = "ref-fragment";
        if (node.getType() == AuthorNode.NODE_TYPE_ELEMENT) {
            AuthorElement element = (AuthorElement) node;
            if ("ref".equals(element.getLocalName())) {
                AttrValue attrValue = element.getAttribute("location");
                if (attrValue != null) {
                    displayName = attrValue.getValue();
                }
            }
        }
        return displayName;
    }

    /**
     * Resolve the references of the node.
     *
     * The returning SAXSource will be used for creating the referred content
     * using the parser and source inside it.
     *
     * @param node The clone of the node.
     * @param systemID The system ID of the node with references.

```

```

* @param authorAccess The author access implementation.
* @param entityResolver The entity resolver that can be used to resolve:
*
* <ul>
* <li>Resources that are already opened in editor.
* For this case the InputSource will contains the editor content.</li>
* <li>Resources resolved through XML catalog.</li>
* </ul>
*
* @return The SAX source including the parser and the parser's input source.
*/
public SAXSource resolveReference(
    AuthorNode node,
    String systemID,
    AuthorAccess authorAccess,
    EntityResolver entityResolver) {
    SAXSource saxSource = null;

    if (node.getType() == AuthorNode.NODE_TYPE_ELEMENT) {
        AuthorElement element = (AuthorElement) node;
        if ("ref".equals(element.getLocalName())) {
            AttrValue attrValue = element.getAttribute("location");
            if (attrValue != null) {
                String attrStringVal = attrValue.getValue();
                try {
                    URL absoluteUrl = new URL(new URL(systemID),
                        authorAccess.correctURL(attrStringVal));

                    InputSource inputSource = entityResolver.resolveEntity(null,
                        absoluteUrl.toString());
                    if(inputSource == null) {
                        inputSource = new InputSource(absoluteUrl.toString());
                    }

                    XMLReader xmlReader = authorAccess.newNonValidatingXMLReader();
                    xmlReader.setEntityResolver(entityResolver);

                    saxSource = new SAXSource(xmlReader, inputSource);
                } catch (MalformedURLException e) {
                    logger.error(e, e);
                } catch (SAXException e) {
                    logger.error(e, e);
                } catch (IOException e) {
                    logger.error(e, e);
                }
            }
        }
    }

    return saxSource;
}

/**
* Get an unique identifier for the node reference.

```

```

*
* The unique identifier is used to avoid resolving the references
*   recursively.
*
* @param node The node that has reference.
* @return An unique identifier for the reference node.
*/
public String getReferenceUniqueID(AuthorNode node) {
    String id = null;
    if (node.getType() == AuthorNode.NODE_TYPE_ELEMENT) {
        AuthorElement element = (AuthorElement) node;
        if ("ref".equals(element.getLocalName())) {
            AttrValue attrValue = element.getAttribute("location");
            if (attrValue != null) {
                id = attrValue.getValue();
            }
        }
    }
    return id;
}

/**
* Return the systemID of the referred content.
*
* @param node The reference node.
* @param authorAccess The author access.
*
* @return The systemID of the referred content.
*/
public String getReferenceSystemID(AuthorNode node,
    AuthorAccess authorAccess) {
    String systemID = null;
    if (node.getType() == AuthorNode.NODE_TYPE_ELEMENT) {
        AuthorElement element = (AuthorElement) node;
        if ("ref".equals(element.getLocalName())) {
            AttrValue attrValue = element.getAttribute("location");
            if (attrValue != null) {
                String attrStringVal = attrValue.getValue();
                try {
                    URL absoluteUrl = new URL(node.getXMLBaseURL(),
                        authorAccess.correctURL(attrStringVal));
                    systemID = absoluteUrl.toString();
                } catch (MalformedURLException e) {
                    logger.error(e, e);
                }
            }
        }
    }
    return systemID;
}

/**
* Verifies if the references of the given node must be refreshed
* when the attribute with the specified name has changed.

```

```

*
* @param node The node with the references.
* @param attributeName The name of the changed attribute.
* @return <code>true</code> if the references must be refreshed.
*/
public boolean isReferenceChanged(AuthorNode node, String attributeName) {
    return "location".equals(attributeName);
}

/**
* @return The description of the author extension.
*/
public String getDescription() {
    return "Resolves the 'ref' references";
}
}

```

### **CustomRule.java**

```

package simple.documentation.framework;

import org.xml.sax.Attributes;

import ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.DocumentTypeCustomRuleMatcher;

public class CustomRule implements
        DocumentTypeCustomRuleMatcher {
    /**
    * Checks if the root namespace is the one
    * of our documentation framework.
    */
    public boolean matches(
        String systemID,
        String rootNamespace,
        String rootLocalName,
        String doctypePublicID,
        Attributes rootAttributes) {

        return
            "http://www.oxygenxml.com/sample/documentation".equals(rootNamespace);
    }

    public String getDescription() {
        return
            "Checks if the current Document Type Association is matching the document.";
    }
}

```

### **DefaultElementLocatorProvider.java**

```

package ro.sync.ecss.extensions.common;

import org.apache.log4j.Logger;

```



```

import ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.link.ElementLocator;
import ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.link.ElementLocatorException;
import ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.link.ElementLocatorProvider;
import ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.link.IDTypeVerifier;

/**
 * Default implementation for locating elements based on a given link.
 * Depending on the link structure the following cases are covered:
 * - xinclude element scheme : element(/1/2) see
 *   http://www.w3.org/TR/2003/REC-xptr-element-20030325/
 * - ID based links : the link represents the value of an attribute of type ID
 */
public class DefaultElementLocatorProvider implements ElementLocatorProvider {
    /** * Logger for logging. */
    private static Logger logger = Logger.getLogger(
        DefaultElementLocatorProvider.class.getName());

    /**
     * @see ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.link.ElementLocatorProvider#
     *      getElementLocator(ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.link.IDTypeVerifier,
     *      java.lang.String)
     */
    public ElementLocator getElementLocator(IDTypeVerifier idVerifier,
        String link) {
        ElementLocator elementLocator = null;
        try {
            if(link.startsWith("element(")){
                // xpointer element() scheme
                elementLocator = new XPointerElementLocator(idVerifier, link);
            } else {
                // Locate link element by ID
                elementLocator = new IDElementLocator(idVerifier, link);
            }
        } catch (ElementLocatorException e) {
            logger.warn("Exception when create element locator for link: "
                + link + ". Cause: " + e, e);
        }
        return elementLocator;
    }

    /**
     * @see ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.Extension#getDescription()
     */
    public String getDescription() {
        return
            "Default implementation for locating elements based on a given link. \n" +
            "The following cases are covered: xinclude element scheme "
                + "and ID based links.";
    }
}

```

### **XPointerElementLocator.java**

```
package ro.sync.ecss.extensions.common;
```

```

import java.util.Stack;
import java.util.StringTokenizer;

import org.apache.log4j.Logger;

import ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.link.Attr;
import ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.link.ElementLocator;
import ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.link.ElementLocatorException;
import ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.link.IDTypeVerifier;

/**
 * Element locator for links that have the one of the following pattern:
 * <ul>
 * <li>element(elementID) - locate the element with the same id</li>
 * <li>element(/1/2/5) - A child sequence appearing alone identifies an
 * element by means of stepwise navigation, which is directed by a
 * sequence of integers separated by slashes (/); each integer n locates
 * the nth child element of the previously located element. </li>
 * <li>element(elementID/3/4) - A child sequence appearing after an
 * NCName identifies an element by means of stepwise navigation,
 * starting from the element located by the given name.</li>
 * </ul>
 */
public class XPointerElementLocator extends ElementLocator {

    /**
     * Logger for logging.
     */
    private static Logger logger = Logger.getLogger(
        XPointerElementLocator.class.getName());

    /**
     * Verifies if a given attribute is of a type ID.
     */
    private IDTypeVerifier idVerifier;

    /**
     * XPointer path, the path to locate the linked element.
     */
    private String[] xpointerPath;

    /**
     * The stack with indexes in parent of the current iterated elements.
     */
    private Stack currentElementIndexStack = new Stack();

    /**
     * The number of elements in xpointer path.
     */
    private int xpointerPathDepth;

    /**
     * If true then the XPointer path starts with an element ID.

```

```

    */
private boolean startWithElementID = false;

/**
 * The depth of the current element in document, incremented in startElement.
 */
private int startElementDepth = 0;

/**
 * Depth in document in the last endElement event.
 */
private int endElementDepth = 0;

/**
 * The index in parent of the previous iterated element. Set in endElement().
 */
private int lastIndexInParent;

/**
 * Constructor.
 *
 * @param idVerifier Verifies if an given attribute is of type ID.
 * @param link The link that gives the element position.
 * @throws ElementLocatorException When the link format is not supported.
 */
public XPointerElementLocator(IDTypeVerifier idVerifier, String link)
    throws ElementLocatorException {
    super(link);
    this.idVerifier = idVerifier;

    link = link.substring("element(".length(), link.length() - 1);

    StringTokenizer stringTokenizer = new StringTokenizer(link, "/", false);
    xpointerPath = new String[stringTokenizer.countTokens()];
    int i = 0;
    while (stringTokenizer.hasMoreTokens()) {
        xpointerPath[i] = stringTokenizer.nextToken();
        boolean invalidFormat = false;

        // Empty xpointer component is not supported
        if(xpointerPath[i].length() == 0){
            invalidFormat = true;
        }

        if(i > 0){
            try {
                Integer.parseInt(xpointerPath[i]);
            } catch (NumberFormatException e) {
                invalidFormat = true;
            }
        }

        if(invalidFormat){
            throw new ElementLocatorException(

```

```

        "Only the element() scheme is supported when locating XPointer links."
        + "Supported formats: element(elementID), element(/1/2/3),
          element(elemID/2/3/4).");
    }
    i++;
}

if(Character.isDigit(xpointerPath[0].charAt(0))){
    // This is the case when xpointer have the following pattern /1/5/7
    xpointerPathDepth = xpointerPath.length;
} else {
    // This is the case when xpointer starts with an element ID
    xpointerPathDepth = -1;
    startWithElementID = true;
}
}

/**
 * @see ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.link.ElementLocator#endElement(
 *      java.lang.String, java.lang.String, java.lang.String)
 */
public void endElement(String uri, String localName, String name) {
    endElementDepth = startElementDepth;
    startElementDepth --;
    lastIndexInParent = ((Integer)currentElementIndexStack.pop()).intValue();
}

/**
 * @see ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.link.ElementLocator#startElement(
 *      java.lang.String, java.lang.String, java.lang.String,
 *      ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.link.Attr[])
 */
public boolean startElement(String uri, String localName,
    String name, Attr[] atts) {
    boolean linkLocated = false;
    // Increase current element document depth
    startElementDepth ++;

    if (endElementDepth != startElementDepth) {
        // The current element is the first child of the parent
        currentElementIndexStack.push(new Integer(1));
    } else {
        // Another element in the parent element
        currentElementIndexStack.push(new Integer(lastIndexInParent + 1));
    }

    if (startWithElementID) {
        // This the case when xpointer path starts with an element ID.
        String xpointerElement = xpointerPath[0];
        for (int i = 0; i < atts.length; i++) {
            if(xpointerElement.equals(atts[i].getValue())){
                if(idVerifier.hasIDType(
                    localName, uri, atts[i].getQName(), atts[i].getNamespace())){
                    xpointerPathDepth = startElementDepth + xpointerPath.length - 1;
                }
            }
        }
    }
}

```

```

        break;
    }
}
}

if(xpointerPathDepth == startElementDepth){
    // check if xpointer path matches with the current element path
    linkLocated = true;
    try {
        int xpointerIdx = xpointerPath.length - 1;
        int stackIdx = currentElementIndexStack.size() - 1;
        int stopIdx = startWithElementID ? 1 : 0;
        while (xpointerIdx >= stopIdx && stackIdx >= 0) {
            int xpointerIndex = Integer.parseInt(xpointerPath[xpointerIdx]);
            int currentElementIndex = ((Integer)currentElementIndexStack.
                get(stackIdx)).intValue();
            if(xpointerIndex != currentElementIndex) {
                linkLocated = false;
                break;
            }

            xpointerIdx--;
            stackIdx--;
        }

        } catch (NumberFormatException e) {
            logger.warn(e,e);
        }
    }
    return linkLocated;
}
}

```

### **IDElementLocator.java**

```

package ro.sync.ecss.extensions.common;

import ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.link.Attr;
import ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.link.ElementLocator;
import ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.link.ExtensionUtil;
import ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.link.IDTypeVerifier;

/**
 * Implementation of an ElementLocator that treats the link as the value of an
 * attribute with the type ID.
 */
public class IDElementLocator extends ElementLocator {

    /**
     * Class able to tell if a given attribute is of type ID.
     */
    private IDTypeVerifier idVerifier;
}

```

```

/**
 * Constructor.
 *
 * @param idVerifier It tells us if an attribute is of type ID.
 * @param link The link used to identify an element.
 */
public IDElementLocator(IDTypeVerifier idVerifier, String link) {
    super(link);
    this.idVerifier = idVerifier;
}

/**
 * @see ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.link.ElementLocator#endElement(
 *      java.lang.String, java.lang.String, java.lang.String)
 */
public void endElement(String uri, String localName, String name) {
    // Nothing to do.
}

/**
 * @see ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.link.ElementLocator#startElement(
 *      java.lang.String, java.lang.String, java.lang.String,
 *      ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.link.Attr[])
 */
public boolean startElement(String uri, String localName,
    String name, Attr[] atts) {
    boolean elementFound = false;
    for (int i = 0; i < atts.length; i++) {
        if (link.equals(atts[i].getValue())) {
            if ("xml:id".equals(atts[i].getQName())) {
                // xml:id attribute
                elementFound = true;
            } else {
                // check if attribute has ID type
                String attrLocalName =
                    ExtensionUtil.getLocalName(atts[i].getQName());
                String attrUri = atts[i].getNamespace();
                if (idVerifier.hasIDType(localName, uri, attrLocalName, attrUri)) {
                    elementFound = true;
                }
            }
        }
    }
}

return elementFound;
}
}

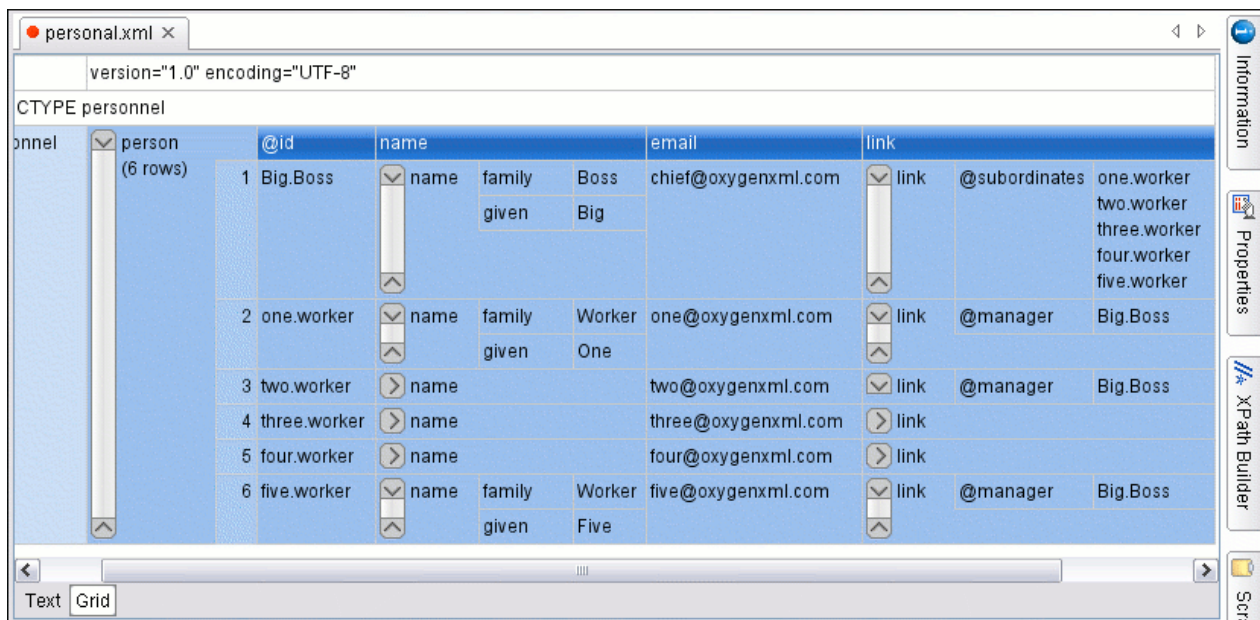
```

# Chapter 9. Grid Editor

## Introduction

In the grid editor the XML document is displayed as a structured grid of nested tables in which the text content can be modified by non technical users without editing directly the XML tags. The tables can be expanded and collapsed with a mouse click to show or hide the elements of the document as needed. Also the document structure can be changed easily with drag and drop operations on the grid components. The tables can be zoomed using Ctrl+ , Ctrl- , Ctrl-0 or Ctrl-mouse wheel.

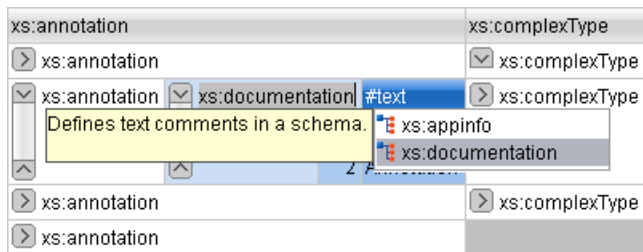
**Figure 9.1. The Grid Editor**



You can switch between the text tab and the grid tab of the editor panel with the two buttons *Text* and *Grid* available at the bottom of the editor panel. Also the switch can be performed with the actions Document+Edit mode → Grid and Document+Edit mode → Text

If the edited document is associated with a schema (DTD, XML Schema, Relax NG, etc.), the editor offers content completion for the element and attributes names and values. If you choose to insert an element that has required content, it will be inserted automatically including the subtree of needed elements and attributes.

To display the content completion popup you have to start editing, for example by double clicking the cell. When editing, pressing **CTRL SPACE** redisplay the popup.

**Figure 9.2. Content Completion in Grid Editor**

## Layouts: Grid and Tree

The grid editor has two modes for the layout. The default one is the "grid" layout. This smart layout of the grid editor detects the recurring elements in the XML document and creates tables having as columns the children (including the attributes) of these elements. In this way it is possible to have tables nested in other tables, reflecting the structure of your document.

**Figure 9.3. Grid Layout**

| <?xml | version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8" | test | table | tr       | @id | first | last       |
|-------|--------------------------------|------|-------|----------|-----|-------|------------|
|       |                                |      |       | (3 rows) | 1   | 10001 | Jhon Doe   |
|       |                                |      |       |          | 2   | 10002 | Mark Ewing |
|       |                                |      |       |          | 3   | 10003 | Dave Flint |

The other layout mode is "tree"-like. This layout does not create any table, it presents the structure of the document directly.

**Figure 9.4. Tree Layout**

| <?xml | version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8" | test | table | tr | @id   | 10001 |
|-------|--------------------------------|------|-------|----|-------|-------|
|       |                                |      |       |    | first | Jhon  |
|       |                                |      |       |    | last  | Doe   |
|       |                                |      |       |    | @id   | 10002 |
|       |                                |      |       |    | first | Mark  |
|       |                                |      |       |    | last  | Ewing |
|       |                                |      |       |    | @id   | 10003 |
|       |                                |      |       |    | first | Dave  |
|       |                                |      |       |    | last  | Flint |

You can switch between the two modes using the menu: Document+Grid Layout → Grid mode/Tree mode

## Navigating the grid

When you open a document first in the grid tab, the document is collapsed so that it shows just the root element and its attributes.



The grid disposition of the node names and values are very similar to a web form or a dialog. The same set of key shortcuts used to select dialog components are used in the grid. For instance moving to the next editable value in a table row is done using the **TAB** key. Moving to the previous cell employs the **SHIFT+TAB** key. Changing a value assumes pressing the **ENTER** key or start typing directly the new value, and, when the editing is finished, pressing **ENTER** again to commit the data into the document.

The arrows and the **PAGE UP/DOWN** keys can be used for navigation. By pressing **SHIFT** while using these keys you can create a selection zone. To add other nodes that are not close to this zone, you can use the mouse and the **CTRL** (**COMMAND** on Mac OS X) key.

The following key combination may be used to scroll the grid:


- **CTRL + UP** Scrolls the grid upwards
- **CTRL + DOWN** Scrolls the grid downwards
- **CTRL + LEFT** Scrolls the grid to the left
- **CTRL + RIGHT** Scrolls the grid to the right

A left arrow sign displayed to the left of the node name indicates that this node has child nodes. You can click this sign to display the children. The expand/collapse actions can be also invoked by pressing the **NumPad + PLUS** and **NumPad + MINUS** keys.


A set of expand/collapse actions can be accessed from the submenu Expand/Collapse of the contextual menu.

The same actions can be accessed from the menu: Document+Grid Expand/Collapse

## Expand All Action

Expands the selection and all its children. 

## Collapse All Action

Collapses the selection and all its children. 

## Expand Children Action

Expands all the children of the selection but not the selection.

## Collapse Children Action

Collapses all the children of the selection but not the selection.

## Collapse Others

Collapses all the siblings of the current selection but not the selection.



## Specific Grid Actions

In order to access these actions you can click the column header and choose from the contextual menu the item: Table

The same set of actions are available in the menu: Document and the first ones in the grid toolbar: Perspective+Show Toolbar → Grid

## Sorting a Table Column


You can sort the table by a specific column. The sorting can be either ascending or descending.

The icons for this pair of actions are:  

The sorting result depends on the data type of the column content and it can be different in case of number (numerical sorting) or text information (alphabetical sorting). The editor analyses automatically the content and decides what type of sorting to apply. If there is present a mixed set of values in the column, a dialog will be displayed allowing to choose the desired type between numerical and alphabetical.

## Inserting a row in a table


You can add a row by either a copy/paste operation over a row, or directly, by invoking the action from the contextual menu: Table → Insert row

The icon is: 

A shorter way of inserting a new row is to move the selection over the row header, and then to press ENTER. The row header is the zone in the left of the row that holds the row number. The inserted row will be below the selection.

## Inserting a column in a table

You can insert a column after the selected one, using the action from the contextual menu: Table → Insert column

The icon is: 

## Clearing the content of a column

You can clear all the cells from a column, using the action from the contextual menu: Table → Clear content

## Adding nodes

Using the contextual menu you can add nodes before, after, or as last child of the currently selected node.

The sub-menus containing detailed actions are: Insert before Insert after Append child


## Duplicating nodes

A quicker way of creating new nodes is to duplicate the existing ones.

The action is available in the contextual menu: Duplicate

The same actions may be found in the menu: Document+Grid Edit → Duplicate

## Refresh layout

When using drag and drop to reorganize the document, the resulted layout may be different from the expected one. For instance, the layout may contain a set of sibling tables that could be joined together. To force the layout to be re-computed you can use the Refresh action .

The action is available in the contextual menu: Refresh selected

The same action can be found in the menu: Document+Grid Edit → Refresh selected

## Start editing a cell value

You can simply press **ENTER** after you have selected the grid cell.

The action is found in the menu: Document+Grid Edit → Start Editing .

## Stop editing a cell value

You can either press **ENTER** when already in cell editing.

The action is found in the menu: Document+Grid Edit → End Editing .

To cancel the editing without saving in the document the current changes, you have to press the **ESC** key.

## Drag and Drop(DnD) in the Grid Editor

The DnD features of the grid editor make easy the arrangement of the different sections in your XML document.

Using DnD you can:

- Copy or move a set of nodes.
- Change the order of columns in the tables.
- Move the rows from the tables.

These operations are available for single selection and multiple selection.

Note that when dragging the editor paints guide-lines showing accepted locations where the nodes can be dropped.

Nodes can be dragged outside the grid editor and text from other applications can be dropped inside the grid. See Copy and Paste in the Grid Editor for details.

## Copy and Paste in the Grid Editor

The selection in the grid is a bit complex relative to the selection in a text component. It consists of a current selected cell and additional selected cells. These additional cells are either "hand picked" by the user using the mouse, or are implied by the current selected cell. To be more specific, let's consider you click the name of the column - this becomes the current selected cell; the editor automatically extends the selection so it contains also all the cells from that column. The current selected cell is painted with a color that is different from the rest of the selection.

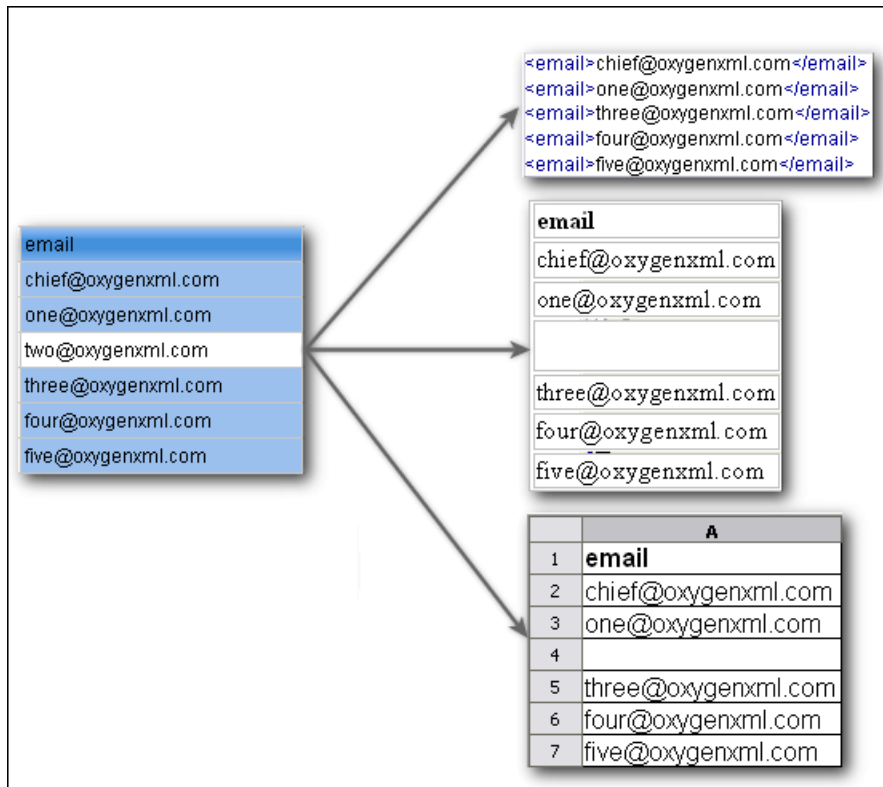
You can select discontinuous regions of nodes and place them in the clipboard using the copy action. Pasting these nodes may be done in two ways, relative to the current selected cell: by default as brother, just below (after) , or as last child of the selected cell.

The paste as child action is available in the contextual menu: Paste as Child

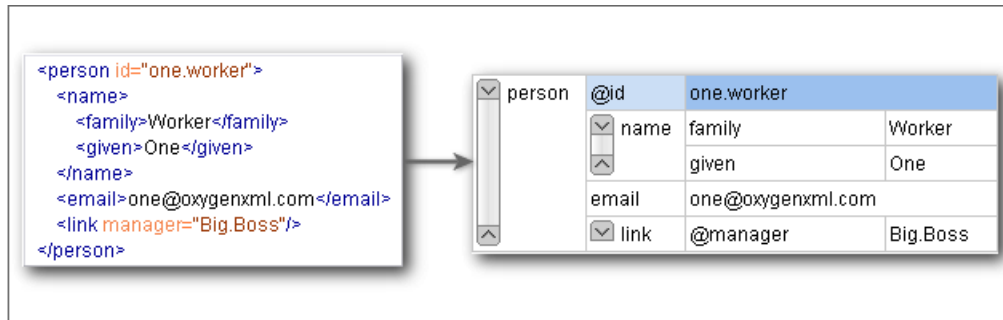
The same action can be found in the menu: Document+Grid Edit → Paste as Child

The copied nodes from the grid can be pasted also into the text editor or other applications. When copying from grid into the text editor or other text based applications the inserted string represents the nodes serialization. The nodes from tables can be copied using HTML or RTF in table format. The resulting cells contain only the concatenated values of the text nodes.

**Figure 9.5. Copying from grid to other editors**



In the grid editor you can paste wellformed xml content or tab separated values from other editors. If you paste xml content the result will be the insertion of the nodes obtained by parsing this content.

**Figure 9.6. Copying XML data into grid**

If the pasted text contains multiple lines of tab separated values it can be considered as a matrix of values. By pasting this matrix of values into the grid editor the result will be a matrix of cells. If the operation is performed inside existing cells the values from these cells will be overwritten and new ones will be created if needed. This is useful for example when trying to transfer data from Excel like editors into grid editor.

**Figure 9.7. Copying tab separated values into grid**

## Bidirectional Text Support in the Grid Editor

If you are editing documents employing a different text orientation you can change the way text is rendered and edited in the grid cells.

For this, you can use the shortcut **CTRL+SHIFT+O** to toggle from the default left to right text orientation to the right to left orientation.

Note that this change applies only to the text from the cells, not to the layout of the grid editor.

**Figure 9.8. Default left to right text orientation**

| <?xml    | version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"                      |
|----------|---|
| sample   | #text   |
| (9 rows) |   |
| 1        | عندما يريد العالم أن يتكلم، فهو يتحدث بلغة يونيكود. |
| 2        | Quan el món vol conversar, parla Unicode            |
| 3        | Unicode כאשר העולם רוצה לדבר, הוא מדבר ב-           |
| 4        | Ha a világ beszélni akar, azt Unicode-ul mondja     |
| 5        | Quando il mondo vuole comunicare, parla Unicode     |
| 6        | 世界的に話すなら、Unicode です。                                |
| 7        | 세계를 향한 대화, 유니코드로 하십시오                               |
| 8        | Når verden vil snakke, snakker den Unicode          |
| 9        | Når verda ønskjer å snakke, talar ho Unicode        |

**Figure 9.9. Right to left text orientation**

| <?xml    |   | "version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"                     |
|----------|---|---|
| sample   |   | #text   |
| (9 rows) | 1 | عندما يريد العالم أن يتكلم، فهو يتحدث بلغة يونيكود. |
|          | 2 | Quan el món vol conversar, parla Unicode            |
|          | 3 | כאשר העולם רוצה לדבר, הוא מדבר ב-Unicode            |
|          | 4 | Ha a világ beszélni akar, azt Unicode-ul mondja     |
|          | 5 | Quando il mondo vuole comunicare, parla Unicode     |
|          | 6 | ◦ 世界的に話すなら、Unicode です                               |
|          | 7 | 세계를 향한 대화, 유니코드로 하십시오                               |
|          | 8 | Når verden vil snakke, snakker den Unicode          |
|          | 9 | Når verda ønskjer å snakke, talar ho Unicode        |

---

# Chapter 10. Transforming documents

XML is designed to store, carry, and exchange data, not to display data. When you want to view the data you must either have an XML compliant user agent or transform it to a format that can be read by other user agents. This process is known as transformation.

Status messages generated during transformation are displayed in the Information view.

## XSLT Transformations

### Output formats

Within the current version of <oXygen/> you can transform your XML documents to the following formats without having to exit from the application. For transformation to formats not listed simply install the tool chain required to perform the transformation and process the xml files created with <oXygen/> in accordance with the processor instructions.

|       |   |
|-------|---|
| PDF   | Adobe Portable Document Format (PDF) is a compact binary file format that can be viewed and printed by anyone, anywhere across a broad range of hardware and software using the free PDF Viewer from Adobe [ <a href="http://www.adobe.com/products/acrobat/readstep.html">http://www.adobe.com/products/acrobat/readstep.html</a> ].   |
| PS    | PostScript is the leading printing technology from Adobe [ <a href="http://www.adobe.com:80/products/postscript/main.html">http://www.adobe.com:80/products/postscript/main.html</a> ] for high-quality, best-in-class printing solutions ranging from desktop devices to the most advanced digital presses, platemakers, and large format image setters in the world. Postscript files can be viewed using viewers such as GhostScript, but are more commonly created as a prepress format.  |
| TXT   | Text files are Plain ASCII Text and can be opened in any text editor or word processor.   |
| XML   | XML stands for eXtensible Markup Language and is a W3C [ <a href="http://www.w3c.org/XML/">http://www.w3c.org/XML/</a> ] standard markup language, much like HTML, which was designed to describe data. XML tags are not predefined in XML. You must define your own tags. XML uses a Document Type Definition (DTD), an XML Schema or a Relax NG schema to describe the data. XML with a DTD, XML Schema or Relax NG schema is designed to be self-descriptive. XML is not a replacement for HTML. XML and HTML were designed with different goals: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• XML was designed to describe data and to focus on what data is.</li><li>• HTML was designed to display data and to focus on how data looks.</li><li>• HTML is about displaying information, XML is about describing information.</li></ul> |
| XHTML | XHTML stands for eXtensible HyperText Markup Language, a W3C [ <a href="http://www.w3c.org/MarkUp/">http://www.w3c.org/MarkUp/</a> ] standard. XHTML is aimed to replace HTML. While almost identical to HTML 4.01, XHTML is a stricter and cleaner version of HTML. XHTML is HTML defined as an XML application.   |

All formatting during a transformation is provided under the control of an Extensible Stylesheet (XSLT). Specifying the appropriate XSLT enables transformation to the above formats and preparation of output files for specific user agent viewing applications, including:

|      |   |
|------|---|
| HTML | HTML stands for Hyper Text Markup Language and is a W3C Standard [ <a href="http://www.w3c.org/MarkUp/">http://www.w3c.org/MarkUp/</a> ] for the World Wide Web. HTML is a text file containing small |
|------|---|

markup tags. The markup tags tell the Web browser how to display the page. An HTML file must have an htm or html file extension. An HTML file can be created using a simple text editor.

|              |  |
|--------------|--|
| HTML Help    | <p>M i c r o s o f t H T M L H e l p<br/> <a href="http://msdn.microsoft.com/library/default.asp?url=/library/en-us/htmlhelp/html/vsconHH1Start.asp?frame=true">[http://msdn.microsoft.com/library/default.asp?url=/library/en-us/htmlhelp/html/vsconHH1Start.asp?frame=true]</a><br/>                     is the standard help system for the Windows platform. Authors can use HTML Help to create online help for a software application or to create content for a multimedia title or Web site. Developers can use the HTML Help API to program a host application or hook up context-sensitive help to an application.</p> |
| JavaHelp     | <p>JavaHelp software is a full-featured, platform-independent, extensible help system from Sun Microsystems <a href="http://java.sun.com/products/javahelp/index.html">[http://java.sun.com/products/javahelp/index.html]</a> that enables developers and authors to incorporate online help in applets, components, applications, operating systems, and devices. JavaHelp is a free product and the binaries for JavaHelp can be redistributed.</p>  |
| Eclipse Help | <p>Eclipse Help is the help system incorporated in the Eclipse platform <a href="http://www.eclipse.org/">[http://www.eclipse.org/]</a> that enables Eclipse plugin developers to incorporate online help in their plugins.</p>  |

Many other target formats are possible, these are the most popular. The basic condition for transformation to any format is that your source document is well-formed. Always, make sure that the XSL used for the transformation is the right one according to the desired output format and with the input source definition. For example, if you want to transform to HTML format using a DocBook html stylesheet, your source xml document should respect the DocBook DTD.

An XSL stylesheet specifies the presentation of a class of XML documents by describing how an instance of the class is transformed into an output document by using special formatting vocabulary.

XSL consists of three parts:

|                                 |  |
|---------------------------------|--|
| XSL Transformations (XSLT)      | XSLT is a language for transforming XML documents.   |
| XML Path (XPath) Language       | XPath is an expression language used by XSLT to access or refer parts of an XML document. (XPath is also used by the XML Linking specification). |
| XSL Formatting Objects (XSL:FO) | XSL:FO is an XML vocabulary for specifying formatting semantics.   |

<oXygen/> supports XSLT/XPath version 1.0 using Saxon 6.5.5, Xalan, Xsltproc, MSXML (3.0, 4.0, .NET) and XSLT/XPath 2.0 by using Saxon 9.2.0.6 B, Saxon 9.2.0.6 EE and Saxon.NET.

## Transformation scenario

Before transforming the current edited XML document in <oXygen/> you must define a transformation scenario to apply to that document. A scenario is a set of values for various parameters defining a transformation. It is not related to any particular document but to a document type:

|                                      |  |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| Scenarios that apply to XML files    | Such a scenario contains the location of an XSLT stylesheet that is applied on the edited XML document and other transform parameters.   |
| Scenarios that apply to XSLT files   | Such a scenario contains the location of an XML document that the edited XSLT stylesheet is applied on and other transform parameters.   |
| Scenarios that apply to XQuery files | Such a scenario contains the location of an XML source that the edited XQuery file is applied on and other transform parameters. When the XML source is a native XML database the XML source field of the scenario is empty because the XML data is read with XQuery functions like <i>document()</i> . When the XML |




source is a local XML file the URL of the file is specified in the XML input field of the scenario.

A scenario can be created at document type level or at global level. The scenarios defined at document type level are available only for the documents that match that document type. The global scenarios are available for any document.

In order to apply a transformation scenario one has to press the *Apply Transformation Scenario* button from the *Transformation* toolbar.

## Batch transformation

Alternatively, a transform action can be applied on a batch of files from the Project view's contextual menu [63] without having to open the files:



-  Apply Transformation Scenario - applies to each selected file the transformation scenario associated to that file. If the currently processed file does not have an associated transformation scenario then a warning is displayed in the *Warnings* view to let the user know about it.
- Transform with... - allows the user to select one transformation scenario to be applied to each one of the currently selected files.

## Built-in transformation scenarios

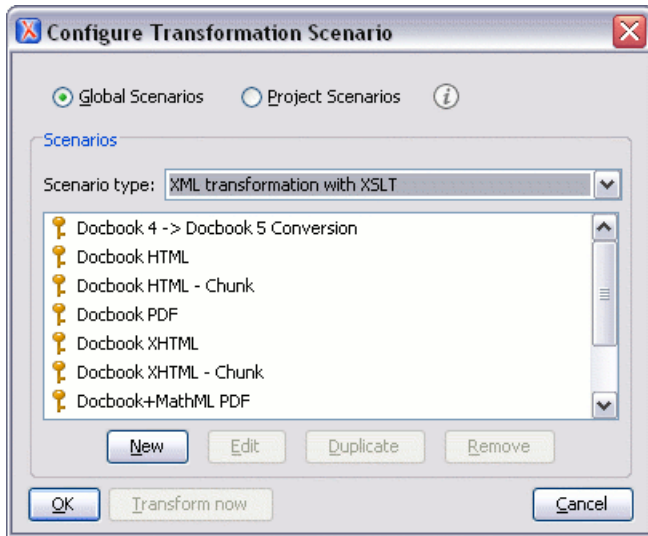
If the Apply Transformation Scenario button from the *Transformation* toolbar is pressed, currently there is no scenario associated with the edited document and the edited document contains a "xml-stylesheet" processing instruction referring to a XSLT stylesheet (commonly used for display in Internet browsers), then <oXygen/> will prompt the user and offer the option to associate the document with a default scenario containing in the *XSL URL* field the URL from the *href* attribute of the processing instruction. This scenario will have the "Use xml-stylesheet declaration" checkbox set by default, will use Saxon as transformation engine, will perform no FO processing and will store the result in a file with the same URL as the edited document except the extension which will be changed to html. The name and path will be preserved because the output file name is specified with the help of two editor variables: `#{cfd}` and `#{cfn}`.

<oXygen/> comes with preconfigured built-in scenarios for usual transformations that enable the user to obtain quickly the desired output: associate one of the built-in scenarios with the current edited document and then apply the scenario with just one click.

## Defining a new transformation scenario

The *Configure Transformation Scenario* dialog is used to associate a scenario from the list of all scenarios with the edited document by selecting an entry from the list. The dialog is opened by pressing the  Configure Transformation Scenario button on the *Transformation* toolbar of the document view. Once selected the scenario will be applied with only one click on the  Apply Transformation Scenario on the same toolbar. Pressing the *Apply Transformation* button before associating a scenario with the edited document will invoke first the *Configure Transformation Scenario* dialog and then apply the selected scenario.

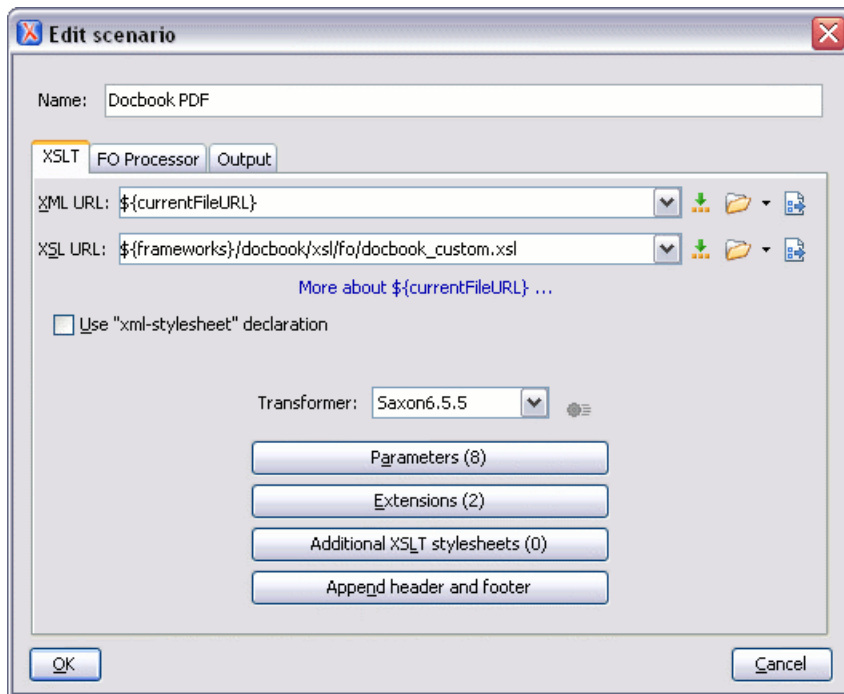
Open the *Configure Transformation Scenario* dialog using one of the methods previously presented or by selecting Document+ Transformation → Configure transformation scenario. (**Ctrl+Shift+C**).

**Figure 10.1. Configure Transformation Scenario Dialog**

The *Scenario type* controls which scenarios are presented to the user. The available scenario types are:

|                                |  |
|--------------------------------|--|
| XML transformation with XSLT   | Represents a transformation that consists in applying an XSLT stylesheet over an XML.  |
| XML transformation with XQuery | Represents a transformation that consists in applying an XQuery over an XML.<br>.  |
| DITA OT transformation         | Scenarios that use the DITA Open Toolkit (DITA-OT) to transform XML content into an output format. More information about configuring an DITA OT transformation scenario can be found <a href="#">here</a> . |
| XSLT transformation            | Represents a transformation that consists in applying an XSLT stylesheet over an XML file.   |
| XQuery transformation          | Represents a transformation that consists in applying an XQuery over an XML.<br>.  |
| SQL transformation             | Executes an SQL over a database.   |

If you want an XSLT scenario select as *Scenario type* either *XML transformation with XSLT* or *XSLT transformation* then complete the dialog as follows:





**Figure 10.2. The Configure Transformation Dialog - XSLT Tab****XML URL**



Specifies an input XML file to be used for the transformation. Please note that this URL is resolved through the catalog resolver. If the catalog does not have a mapping for the URL, then the editor will try to use the file directly.

 **Note**

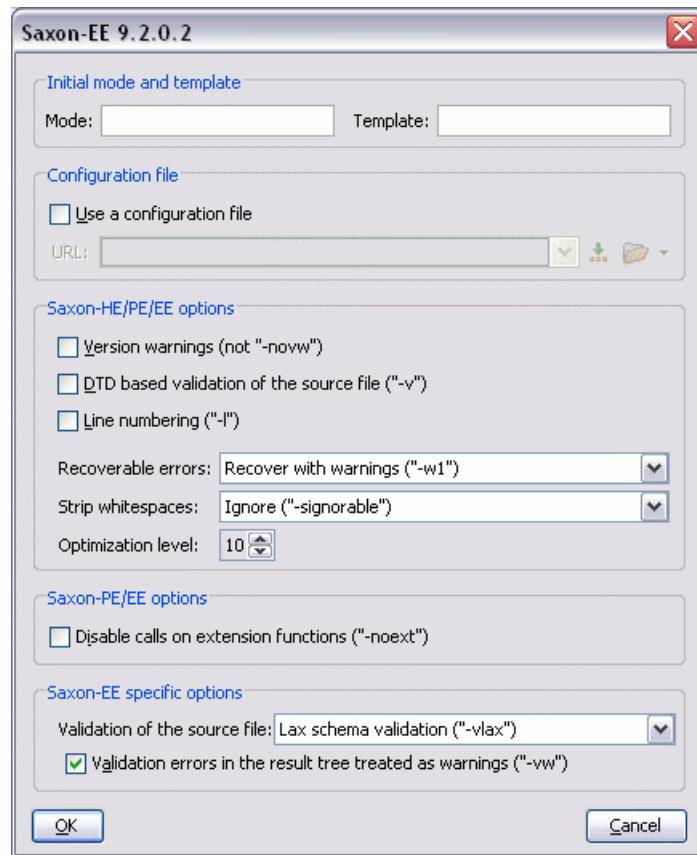
If the transformation engine is Saxon 9 and a custom URI resolver is configured for Saxon 9 in Preferences then the XML input of the transformation is passed to that URI resolver.

The following buttons are shown immediately after the input field:

- |  |   |
|--|---|
|  Insert Editor Variables  | Opens a pop-up menu allowing to introduce special <oXygen/> editor variables or custom editor variables in the XML URL field. |
|  Browse for local file    | Opens a local file browser dialog allowing to select a local file name for the text field.                                    |
|  Browse for remote file   | Opens a URL browser dialog allowing to select a remote file name for the text field.  |
|  Browse for archived file | Opens a zip archive browser dialog allowing to select a file name from a zip archive that will be inserted in the text field. |

|  |   |  |
|--|---|--|
|  |  Open in editor  | Opens the file with the path specified in the text field in an editor panel. |
| XSL URL  | Specifies an input XSL file to be used for the transformation. Please note that this URL is resolved through the catalog resolver. If the catalog does not have a mapping for the URL, then the editor will try to use the file directly.   |  |
|  | The above set of browsing buttons are available also for this input.  |  |
| Use "xml-stylesheet" declaration   | Use the stylesheet declared with an "xml-stylesheet" declaration instead of the stylesheet specified in the XSL URL field. By default this checkbox is not selected and the transformation applies the XSLT stylesheet specified in the XSL URL field. If it is checked the scenario applies the stylesheet specified explicitly in the XML document with the xml-stylesheet processing instruction.  |  |
| Transformer  | This combo box contains all the transformer engines available for applying the stylesheet. These are the built-in engines and the external engines defined in the user preferences. If you want to change the default selected engine just select other engine from the drop down list of the combo box. For XQuery/XSLT files only, if no validation scenario is associated, the transformer engine will be used in validation process, if has validation support. |  |
| Parameters   | Opens the dialog for configuring the XSLT parameters. In this dialog you set any global XSLT parameters of the main stylesheet set in the <i>XSL URL</i> field or of the additional stylesheets set with the button <i>Additional XSLT stylesheets</i> .  |  |
| Append header and footer   | Opens a dialog for specifying a URL for a header HTML file added at the beginning of the result of an HTML transformation and a URL for a footer HTML file added at the end of the HTML result of the transformation.   |  |
| Additional XSLT stylesheets  | Opens the dialog for adding XSLT stylesheets which are applied on the result of the main stylesheet specified in the XSL URL field. This is useful when a chain of XSLT stylesheets must be applied to the input XML document.  |  |
| Extensions   | Opens the dialog for configuring the XSLT/XQuery extension jars or classes which define extension Java functions or extension XSLT elements used in the XSLT/XQuery transformation.   |  |
|  Advanced options | Configure advanced options specific for the Saxon HE / PE / EE engine. They are the same options as the ones set in the user preferences but they are configured as a specific set of transformation options for each transformation scenario. By default if you do not set a specific value in the transformation scenario each advanced option has the same value as the global option with the same name set in the user preferences.                            |  |
|  | The advanced options include two options that are not available globally in the user preferences: the initial XSLT template and the initial XSLT mode of the transformation. They are Saxon specific options that allow imposing the name of the first XSLT template that starts the XSLT transformation or the initial mode of transformation.   |  |

**Figure 10.3. The advanced options of Saxon HE / PE / EE**



The advanced options specific for Saxon PE / EE are:

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Initial mode                              | Specifies to the transformer the initial template mode  |
| Initial template                          | Specifies the name of the initial template to the transformer. When specified, the XML input URL for the transformation scenario is optional.   |
| Use a configuration file                  | If checked, the specified Saxon configuration file will be used to specify the Saxon advanced options.  |
| Disable calls on extension functions      | If checked the stylesheet is disallowed to call external Java functions.  |
| Version warnings                          | If checked display a warning when it is applied to an XSLT 1.0 stylesheet.  |
| DTD based validation of the source file   | If checked the source XML file is validated against the declared DTD  |
| Line numbering                            | Include the line number in errors for the   |
| Handling of recoverable stylesheet errors | Policy for handling recoverable errors in the stylesheet: Allows the user to choose how dynamic errors will be handled. Either one of the following options can be selected: recover silently, recover with warnings or signal the error and do not attempt recovery. |
| Strip whitespaces                         | Strip whitespaces feature can be one of the three options: All, Ignorable, None.  |

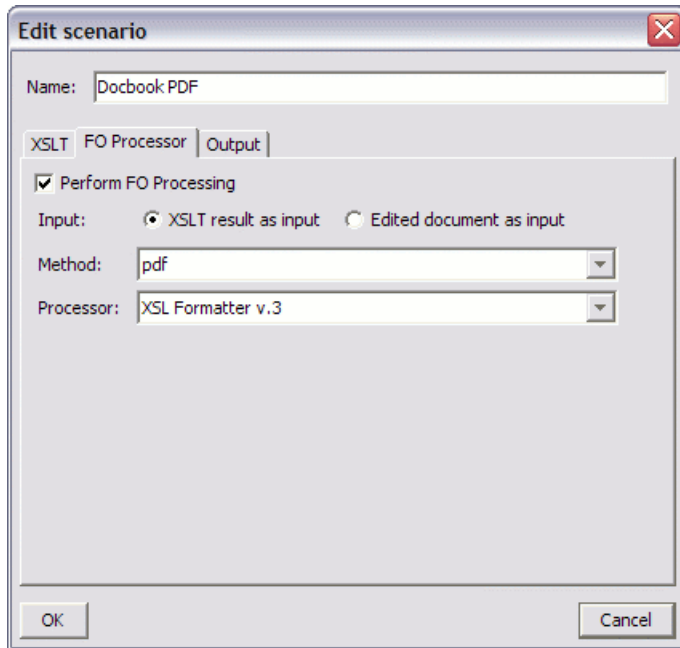
|   |  |   |
|---|--|---|
|   | All  | strips all whitespace text nodes from source documents before any further processing, regardless of any <code>xsl:strip-space</code> declarations in the stylesheet, or any <code>xml:space</code> attributes in the source document.   |
|   | Ignorable  | strips all ignorable whitespace text nodes from source documents before any further processing, regardless of any <code>xsl:strip-space</code> declarations in the stylesheet, or any <code>xml:space</code> attributes in the source document. Whitespace text nodes are ignorable if they appear in elements defined in the DTD or schema as having element-only content. |
|   | None   | strips no whitespace before further processing. (However, whitespace will still be stripped if this is specified in the stylesheet using <code>xsl:strip-space</code> ).  |
| Validation of the source file                             | Available only for Saxon SA.   |   |
|   | Schema validation  | This mode requires an XML Schema and determines whether source documents should be parsed with schema-validation enabled.   |
|   | Lax schema validation  | This mode determines whether source documents should be parsed with schema-validation enabled if an XML Schema is provided.   |
|   | Disable schema validation  | This determines whether source documents should be parsed with schema-validation disabled.  |
| Validation errors in the results tree treated as warnings | Available only for Saxon SA. If checked, all validation errors are treated as warnings, otherwise they are treated as fatal. |   |

When creating a scenario that applies to an XML file, <oxygen/> fills the XML URL with the default variable "`${currentFile}`". This means the input for the transformation is taken from the currently edited file. You can modify this value to other file path. This is the case of currently editing a section from a large document, and you want the transformation to be performed on the main document, not the section. You can specify in this case either a full absolute path: `file:/c:/project/docbook/test.xml` or a path relative to one of the editor variables, like the current project file: `${pdu}/docbook/test.xml`.

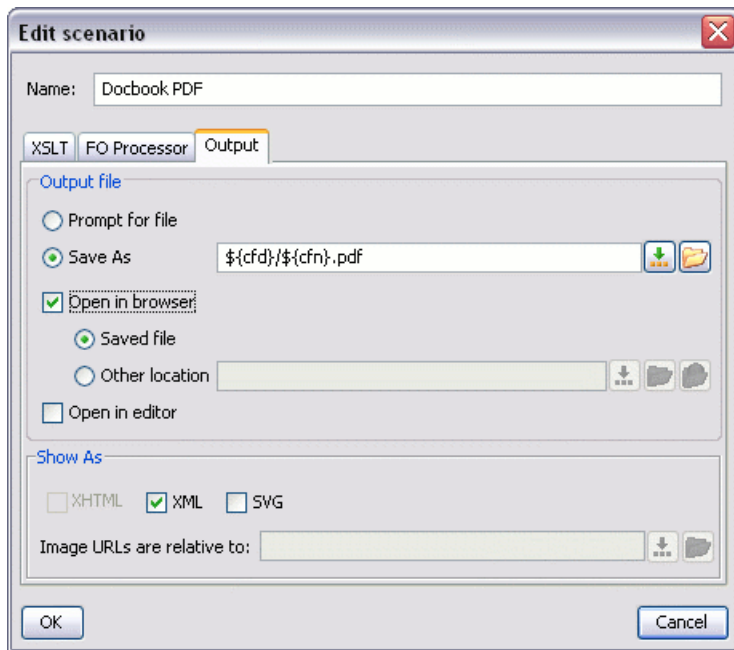
When the scenario applies to XSL files, the field XSL URL is containing `${currentFile}`. Just like in the XML case, you can specify here the path to a master stylesheet. The path can be configured using the editor variables or the custom editor variable .

 **Note**

If you are sharing the scenarios by saving them into the project file (see Transformation Scenario Sharing) it is recommended that the URL fields to have path values relative to the project editor variable `${pdu}`.

**Figure 10.4. The Configure Transformation Dialog - FO Processor Tab**

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| Checkbox <i>Perform FO Processing</i>        | Enable or disable applying an FO processor (either the built-in Apache FOP engine or an external engine defined in Preferences) during the transformation. |
| Radio button <i>XSLT result as input</i>     | The FO processor is applied to the result of the XSLT transformation defined on the XSLT tab of the dialog.  |
| Radio button <i>Edited document as input</i> | The FO processor is applied directly to the current edited document.   |
| Combo box <i>Method</i>                      | The output format of the FO processing: PDF, PostScript or plain text.   |
| Combo box <i>Processor</i>                   | The FO processor, which can be the built-in Apache FOP processor or an external processor.   |

**Figure 10.5. The Configure Transformation Dialog - Output Tab**

|                                     |   |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| Radio button <i>Prompt for file</i> | At the end of the transformation a file browser dialog will be displayed for specifying the path and name of the file which will store the transformation result.   |
| Text field <i>Save As</i>           | The path of the file where it will be stored the transformation result. The path can include special <oXygen/> editor variables or custom editor variables.   |
| Check box <i>Open in browser</i>    | If this is checked <oXygen/> will open automatically the transformation result in a browser application specific for the type of that result (HTML/XHTML, PDF, text).   |
| Radio button <i>Saved file</i>      | When <i>Open in browser</i> is selected this button can be selected to specify that <oXygen/> should open automatically at the end of the transformation the file specified in the <i>Save As</i> text field.   |
| Radio button <i>Other location</i>  | When <i>Open in browser</i> is selected this button can be used to specify that <oXygen/> should not open the file specified in the <i>Save As</i> text field, it should open the file specified in the text field of the <i>Other location</i> radio button. The file path can include special <oXygen/> editor variables or custom editor variable. |
| Check box <i>Open in editor</i>     | When this is checked the transformation result set in the <i>Save As</i> field is opened in a new editor panel in <oXygen/> with the appropriate built-in editor type: if the result is an XML file it is opened with the built-in XML editor, if it is an XSL-FO file it is opened with the built-in FO editor, etc.                                 |
| Check box <i>Show As XHTML</i>      | It is enabled only when <i>Open in browser</i> is disabled. If this is checked <oXygen/> will display the transformation result in a built-in XHTML browser panel at the bottom of the <oXygen/> window.  |



 **Important**

When transforming very large documents you should be aware that enabling this feature will result in a very long time necessary for rendering the transformation result in the XHTML result viewer panel. This drawback appears due to the built-in Java XHTML browser implementation. In this situations if you wish to see the XHTML result of the transformation you should use an external browser by checking the *Open in browser* checkbox.

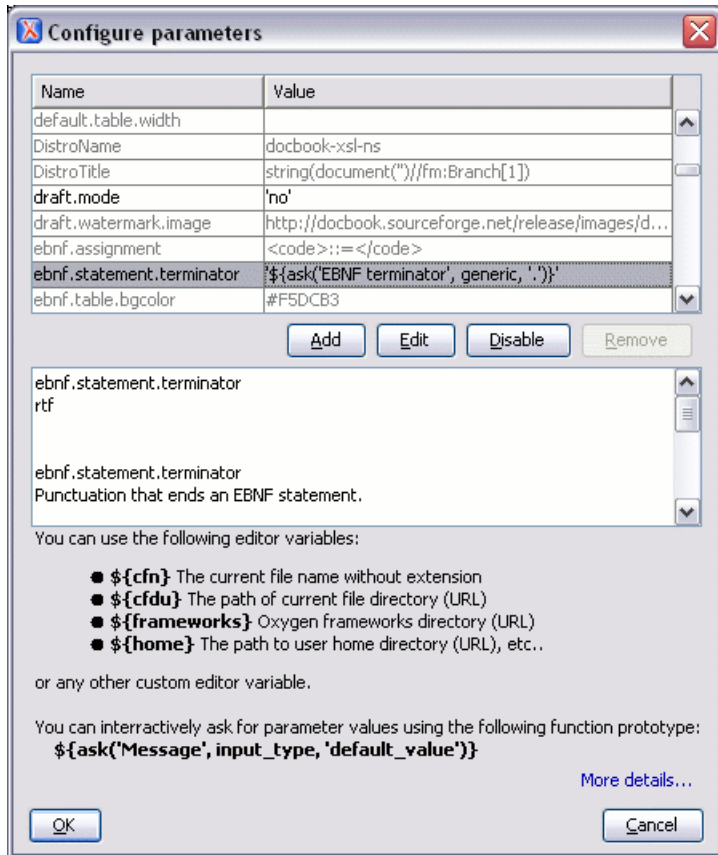
Check box *Show As XML*      If this is checked <oXygen/> will display the transformation result in an XML viewer panel at the bottom of the <oXygen/> window with syntax highlight specific for XML documents.

Check box *Show As SVG*      If this is checked <oXygen/> will display the transformation result in a SVG viewer panel at the bottom of the <oXygen/> window by rendering the result as a SVG image.

Text field *Image URLs are relative to*      If *Show As XHTML* is checked this text field specifies the path for resolving image paths contained in the transformation result.

### **XSLT Stylesheet Parameters**

The global parameters of the XSLT stylesheet used in the transformation scenario are configured from the dialog available from the *Parameters* button:

**Figure 10.6. Configure parameters dialog**

The table presents all the parameters of the XSLT stylesheet and all imported and included stylesheets with their current values. If a parameter value was not edited then the table presents its default value. The bottom panel presents the default value of the parameter selected in the table, a description of the parameter if it is available and the system ID of the stylesheet that declares it.

For setting the value of a parameter declared in the stylesheet in a namespace, for example:

```
<xsl:param name="p:param" xmlns:p="namespace">default</xsl:param>
```

use the following expression in the *Name* column of the *Parameters* dialog:

```
{namespace}param
```

The buttons of the dialog have the following functions:

- |         |  |
|---------|--|
| Add     | Add a new parameter to the list.   |
| Edit    | Edit the value of the selected parameter.  |
| Disable | Reset the selected parameter to the default value. This button is enabled only for parameters with edited values, that is values set in this dialog with the <i>Edit</i> button. |
| Remove  | Remove the selected parameter from the list. It is enabled only for parameters added to the list with the <i>Add</i> button.   |

The editor variables displayed at the bottom of the dialog (`${frameworks}`, `${home}`, `${cfd}`, etc) can be used in the values of the parameters to make the value independent of the location of the XSLT stylesheet or the XML document.

The value of a parameter can be entered at runtime if a value `ask('user-message', param-type, 'default-value' ?)` is used as value of parameter in the *Configure parameters* dialog:

- `${ask('message')}` - only the message displayed for the user is specified
- `${ask('message', generic, 'default')}` - 'message' will be displayed for the user, the type is not specified (the default is string), the default value will be 'default'
- `${ask('message', password)}` - 'message' will be displayed for the user, the characters typed will be replaced with a circle character
- `${ask('message', password, 'default')}` - same as above, default value will be 'default'
- `${ask('message', url)}` - 'message' will be displayed for the user, the type of parameter will be URL
- `${ask('message', url, 'default')}` - same as above, default value will be 'default'

## Additional XSLT Stylesheets

The list of additional XSLT stylesheets can be edited in the dialog opened by the button *Additional XSLT Stylesheets*.



|        |   |
|--------|---|
| Add    | Adds a stylesheet in the "Additional XSLT stylesheets" list using a file browser dialog , also you can type an editor variable in the file name field of the browser dialog. The name of the stylesheet will be added in the list after the current selection.                              |
| New    | Opens a dialog in which you can type the name of a stylesheet. The name is considered relative to the URL of the current edited XML document. You can use editor variables in the name of the stylesheet. The name of the stylesheet will be added in the list after the current selection. |
| Remove | Deletes the selected stylesheet from the "Additional XSLT stylesheets" list.  |
| Open   | Opens the selected stylesheet in a separate view .  |
| Up     | Move the selected stylesheet up in the list.  |
| Down   | Move the selected stylesheet down in the list.  |

This dialog allows the user to add additional XSLT stylesheets to the transformation.

The path specified in the URL text field can include special `<oXygen/>` editor variables.

## XSLT/XQuery Extensions

The *Edit Extensions* dialog is used to specify the jars and classes containing extension functions called from the XSLT/XQuery file of the current transformation scenario.

An extension function called from the XSLT or XQuery file of the current transformation scenario will be searched in the specified extensions in the order of the list displayed in the dialog. For changing the order of the items the user must select the item that must be moved to other position in the list and press the  up and  down buttons.

## Creating a Transformation Scenario

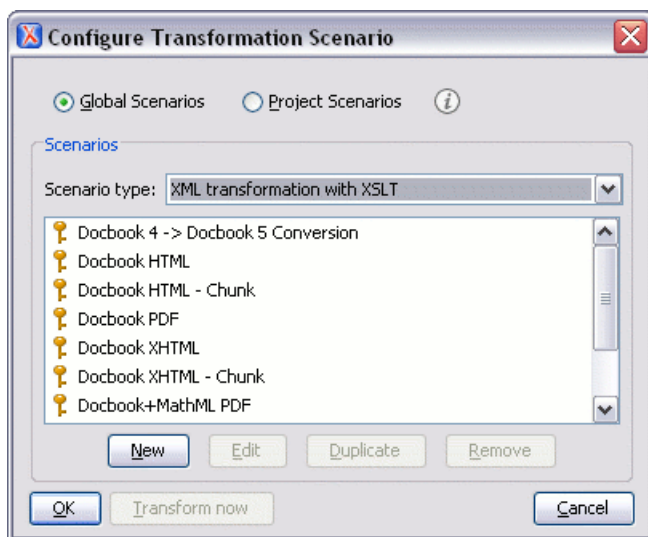
Use the following procedure to create a scenario.

1. Select Document+ Transformation → Configure transformation scenario (**Ctrl+Shift+C**) to open the Configure Transformation dialog.
2. Click the Duplicate Scenario button of the dialog to create a copy of the current scenario.
3. Click in the Name field and type a new name.
4. Click OK or Transform Now to save the scenario.

## Sharing the Transformation Scenarios. Project Level Scenarios.

In the upper part of the dialog showing the list of scenarios you will find two radio buttons controlling where the scenarios are stored.

**Figure 10.7. Transformation Scenario List Dialog**



Selecting "Global Scenarios" ensures that the scenarios are saved in the user home directory.

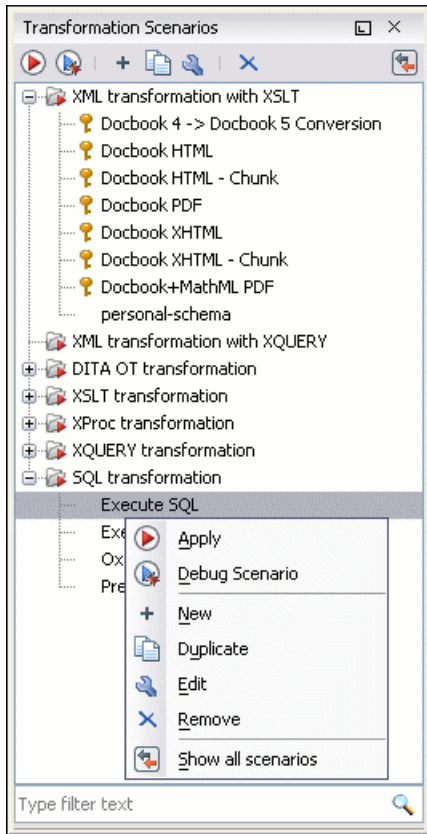
After changing the selection to "Project Scenarios", the scenario list will be stored in the project file. If your project is saved on a source versioning/sharing system (CVS, SVN, Source Safe, etc..) then your team can use the scenarios you defined.

Predefined scenarios are presented according to the current document's detected type. The screenshot above shows all default scenarios for a DocBook 4 document and one custom transformation scenario. The key symbol before the scenario name indicates that the scenario can only be modified from the Document Type Association options page.

Other preferences can also be stored at the project level. For more information, see the Preference Sharing section.

## Transformation Scenarios view

The list of transformation scenarios may be easier to manage for some users as a list presented in a dockable and floating view called *Transformation Scenarios*.

**Figure 10.8. The Scenarios view**

The actions available on the right click menu allow the same operations as in the dialog Configure Transformation Scenario: creating, editing, executing, duplicating and removing a transformation scenario.

## XSL-FO processors

The <Oxygen/> installation package is distributed with the Apache FOP [<http://xml.apache.org/fop/index.html>] (Formatting Objects Processor) for rendering your XML documents to PDF. FOP is a print and output independent formatter driven by XSL Formatting Objects. FOP is implemented as a Java application that reads a formatting object tree and renders the resulting pages to a specified output.

### Tip

To include PNG images in the final PDF document you need the JIMI [<http://java.sun.com/products/jimi/>] or JAI [<http://java.sun.com/products/java-media/jai/>] libraries. For TIFF images you need the JAI [<http://java.sun.com/products/java-media/jai/>] library. For PDF images you need the *fop-pdf-images* library [<http://www.jeremias-maerki.ch/download/fop/pdf-images/>]. These libraries are not bundled with <Oxygen/> (JIMI and JAI due to Sun's licensing). Using them is as easy as downloading them and creating a external FO processor based on the built-in FOP libraries and the extension library. The external FO processor created in Preferences will have a command line like:

```
java -cp "${oxygenInstallDir}/lib/xercesImpl.jar:
${oxygenInstallDir}/lib/fop.jar:${oxygenInstallDir}/lib/
avalon-framework-4.2.0.jar:
${oxygenInstallDir}/lib/batik-all-1.7.jar:${oxygenInstallDir}/lib/
```

```
commons-io-1.3.1.jar:
${oxygenInstallDir}/lib/xmlgraphics-commons-1.3.1.jar:
${oxygenInstallDir}/lib/commons-logging-1.0.4.jar:
${oxygenInstallDir}/lib/saxon9ee.jar:${oxygenInstallDir}/lib/
saxon9-dom.jar:
${oxygenInstallDir}/lib/xalan.jar:${oxygenInstallDir}/lib/
serializer.jar:
${oxygenInstallDir}/lib/resolver.jar:${oxygenInstallDir}/lib/
fop-pdf-images-1.3.jar:
${oxygenInstallDir}/lib/PDFBox-0.7.3.jar"
org.apache.fop.cli.Main -fo ${fo} -${method} ${out}
```

You need to add to the classpath JimiProClasses.zip for JIMI and jai\_core.jar, jai\_codec.jar and mlibwrapper\_jai.jar for JAI. For the JAI package you also need to include the directory containing the native libraries (mlib\_jai.dll and mlib\_jai\_mmx.dll on Windows) in the PATH system variable.

The MacOS X version of the JAI library can be downloaded from <http://www.apple.com/downloads/mac-cosx/apple/java3dandjavaadvancedimagingupdate.html>. In order to use it, install the downloaded package.

Other FO processors can be configured in the Preferences -> FO Processors panel.

## Add a font to the built-in FOP

If an XML document is transformed to PDF using the built-in Apache FOP processor but it contains some Unicode characters that cannot be rendered by the default PDF fonts then a font that is capable to render these characters must be configured and embedded in the PDF result.

### Locate font

First, you have to find out the name of a font that has the glyphs for the special characters you used. One font that covers the majority of characters, including Japanese, Cyrillic and Greek, is Arial Unicode MS. In the following is described how to embed the true type fonts in the output PDF. Embedding the fonts is necessary to ensure your document is portable.

On Windows the fonts are located into the C:\Windows\Fonts directory. On Mac they are placed in /Library/Fonts. To install a new font on your system is enough to copy it in the Fonts directory.

### Generate font metrics file

Generate a FOP font metrics file from the TrueType font file. This example reads the Windows Arial Unicode MS file and generates an arialuni.xml font metrics file in the current directory. FOP includes an utility application for this task.

I assume you have opened a terminal or command line console and changed the working directory to the oxygen install directory. The FOP files are stored in the lib subdirectory of the Oxygen install directory.

Create the following script file in the Oxygen installation directory. The relative paths specified in the following script file are relative to the Oxygen installation directory so if you decide to create it in other directory you have to adapt the file paths.

For the Mac OS X: ttfConvert.sh

```
#!/bin/sh
export LIB=lib
export CMD=java -cp "$LIB/fop.jar:$LIB/avalon-framework-4.2.0.jar:$LIB/xercesImpl.jar"
```

```
export CMD=$CMD org.apache.fop.fonts.apps.TTFReader
export FONT_DIR='/Library/Fonts'
$CMD $FONT_DIR/Arialuni.ttf Arialuni.xml
```

For Linux: `ttfConvert.sh`

```
#!/bin/sh
export LIB=lib
export CMD=java -cp "$LIB/fop.jar:$LIB/avalon-framework-4.2.0.jar:$LIB/xercesImpl.jar"
export CMD=$CMD org.apache.fop.fonts.apps.TTFReader
export FONT_DIR='/Library/Fonts'
$CMD $FONT_DIR/Arialuni.ttf Arialuni.xml
```

For Windows: `ttfConvert.bat`

```
set LIB=lib
set CMD=java -cp "%LIB%\fop.jar;%LIB%\avalon-framework-4.2.0.jar;%LIB%\xercesImpl.jar"
set CMD=%CMD% org.apache.fop.fonts.apps.TTFReader
set FONT_DIR=C:\Windows\Fonts
%CMD% %FONT_DIR%\Arialuni.ttf Arialuni.xml
```

The `FONT_DIR` can be different on your system. Make sure it points to the correct font directory. If java executable is not in the `PATH` you will have to specify the full path for java.

Execute the script. On Linux and Mac OS X you have to use **sh ttfConvert.sh** from the command line.

## Note

If Oxygen was installed by an administrator user and now it is used by a standard user who does not have write permission in the Oxygen installation folder (for example on Windows Vista or Linux) then the output location of the font metrics file should be a directory where the user has write permission, for example:

```
%CMD% %FONT_DIR%\Arialuni.ttf C:\temp_dir\Arialuni.xml
```

If the font has bold and italic variants, you will have to convert those also. For this you can modify the script, by adding two more lines:

```
$CMD $FONT_DIR/Arialuni-Bold.ttf Arialuni-Bold.xml
$CMD $FONT_DIR/Arialuni-Italic.ttf Arialuni-Italic.xml
```

In our case the font Arial Unicode MS is not having a Bold and Italic variant, so you will leave the script unchanged.

## Register font to FOP configuration

Create a file and name it for example `fopConfiguration.xml`.

```
<fop version="1.0">
  <base>file:/C:/path/to/FOP/font/metrics/files/</base>
  <source-resolution>72</source-resolution>
  <target-resolution>72</target-resolution>
  <default-page-settings height="11in" width="8.26in"/>
  <renderers>
    <renderer mime="application/pdf">
      <filterList>
        <value>flate</value>
```

```

</filterList>
<font>
  <font metrics-url="Arialuni.xml" kerning="yes"
    embed-url="file:/Library/Fonts/Arialuni.ttf">
    <font-triplet name="Arialuni" style="normal"
      weight="normal" />
  </font>
</font>
</renderers>
</fop>

```

The *embed-url* attribute points to the TTF file to be embedded. You have to specify it using the URL convention. The *metrics-url* attribute points to the font metrics file with a path relative to the *base* element. The triplet refers to the unique combination of name, weight, and style (italic) for each variation of the font. In our case is just one triplet, but if the font had variants, you would have to specify one for each variant. Here is an hypothetical example for the Arial Unicode if it had italic and bold variants:

```

<fop version="1.0">
  ...
  <font>
    <font metrics-url="Arialuni.xml" kerning="yes"
      embed-url="file:/Library/Fonts/Arialuni.ttf">
      <font-triplet name="Arialuni" style="normal"
        weight="normal" />
    </font>
    <font metrics-url="Arialuni-Bold.xml" kerning="yes"
      embed-url="file:/Library/Fonts/Arialuni-Bold.ttf">
      <font-triplet name="Arialuni" style="normal"
        weight="bold" />
    </font>
    <font metrics-url="Arialuni-Italic.xml" kerning="yes"
      embed-url="file:/Library/Fonts/Arialuni-Italic.ttf">
      <font-triplet name="Arialuni" style="italic"
        weight="normal" />
    </font>
  </font>
  ...
</fop>

```

More details about the FOP configuration file are available on <http://xmlgraphics.apache.org/fop/0.93/configuration.html> the FOP website.

## Set FOP configuration file in Oxygen

Go to menu Options → Preferences → XML → XSLT / FO / XQuery → FO Processors

Click the browse button near *Configuration file for the built-in FOP* text field and locate the `fopConfiguration.xml` file.

Click on the OK button to accept the changes.



## Add new font to FO output

You can do this by changing the stylesheet parameters.

### DocBook Stylesheets

Create a transformation scenario that makes use of the `docbook.xsl` file from the `[oxygen-install-dir]/frameworks/docbook/xsl/fo` directory. You must do this in the *Configure Transformation Scenario* dialog.

Also you can use the predefined *Docbook PDF* scenario which is based on this Docbook stylesheet. Run a test transformation to make sure the PDF is generated. The Unicode characters are not yet displayed correctly. You have to specify to the stylesheet to generate FO output that uses the font *Arialuni*.

Click on the *Parameters* button in the transformation scenario edit dialog and enter the following parameters indicating the font for the body text and for the titles:

**Table 10.1. XSL FO Parameters**

| Name              | Value    |
|-------------------|----------|
| body.font.family  | Arialuni |
| title.font.family | Arialuni |

### TEI Stylesheets

Create a transformation scenario that makes use of the `tei.xsl` file from the `[oxygen-install-dir]/frameworks/tei/xsl/fo` directory. Also you can use the predefined *TEI PDF* scenario which is based on this XSLT stylesheet. Run a test transformation to make sure the PDF is generated. Just like for the Docbook, you have to specify to the stylesheet to generate FO output that uses the font *Arialuni*.

Click on the *Parameters* button of the transformation scenario edit dialog and enter the following parameters indicating the font for the body text and for other sections:

**Table 10.2. XSL FO Parameters**

| Name     | Value    |
|----------|----------|
| bodyFont | Arialuni |
| sansFont | Arialuni |

Run the transformation again. The characters are now displayed correctly.

### DITA-OT Stylesheets

For setting a font to the Apache FOP processor in the transformation of a DITA map with an IDIOM FOP transformation there are two files that must be modified :

- `font-mappings.xml` - available in folder `${frameworks}/dita/DITA-OT/demo/fo/cfg/fo`: the *font-face* element included in each element *physical-font* having the attribute *char-set="default"* must contain the name of the font (*Arialuni* in our example) instead of the default value
- `fop.xconf`- available in folder `${frameworks}/dita/DITA-OT/demo/fo/fop/conf`: an element *font* must be inserted in the element *fonts* which is inside the element *renderer* having the attribute *mime="application/pdf"* as in the above `fopConfiguration.xml` file, for example:

```
<renderer mime="application/pdf">
  . . .
  <font>
    <font metrics-url="Arialuni.xml" kerning="yes"
      embed-url="file:/Library/Fonts/Arialuni.ttf">
      <font-triplet name="Arialuni" style="normal"
        weight="normal"/>
    </font>
  </font>
</renderer>
```

## Common transformations

The following examples use the DocBook XSL Stylesheets to illustrate how to configure <oXygen/> for transformation to the various target formats.

### Note

<oXygen/> comes with the latest versions of the DocBook and TEI frameworks including special XSLT stylesheets for DocBook and TEI documents. DocBook XSL extensions for the Saxon and Xalan processors are included in the `frameworks/docbook/xsl/extensions` directory.

The following steps are common to all the example procedures below.

1. Set the editor focus to the document to be transformed.
2. Select Document+ Transformation → Configure transformation scenario (**Ctrl+Shift+C**) to open the Configure Transformation dialog.
3. If you want to edit an existing scenario select that scenario in the list and press the *Edit* button. If you want to create a new scenario press the *New* button. If you want to create a new scenario based on an existing scenario select the scenario in the list and press the *Duplicate* button.
4. Select the XSLT tab.
5. Click the *Browse for an input XSL file* button. The Open dialog is displayed.

### Note

During transformations the Editor Status Bar will show "Transformation - in progress". The transformation is successfully complete when the message "XSL transformation successful" displays. If the transform fails the message "XSL transformation failed" is displayed as an error message in the Messages Panel. The user can stop the transformation process, if the transformer offers such support, by pressing the "Stop transformation" button. In this case the message displayed in the status bar will be "Transformation stopped by user". For the specific case of an XQuery transformation, if you chose an NXD transformer, pressing the "Stop transformation" button will have no effect, as NXD transformers offer no such support.

## PDF Output

1. Change directory to `[oxygen]/frameworks/docbook/xsl/fo/`.

2. Select `docbook.xsl`, click Open. The dialog closes.
3. Select the FOP tab.
4. Check the Perform FOP option. The remaining options are enabled.
5. Select the following options:
  - a. XSLT result as input.
  - b. PDF as method.
  - c. Built-in(Apache FOP) as processor.
6. Select the Output tab.
7. In the Save As field enter the output file name relative to the current directory (`YourFileName.pdf` ) or the path and output file name (`C:\FileDirectory\YourFileName.pdf`).
8. Optionally, uncheck the XHTML and XML check boxes in the Show As group.
9. Click Transform Now. The transformation is started.

## PS Output

1. Change directory to `[oxygen]/frameworks/docbook/xsl/fo/`.
2. Select `docbook.xsl`, click Open. The dialog closes.
3. Select the FOP tab.
4. Check the Perform FOP option. The remaining options are enabled.
5. Select the following options:
  - a. XSLT result as input.
  - b. PS as method.
  - c. Built-in(Apache FOP) as processor.
6. Select the Output tab.
7. In the Save As field enter the output file name relative to the current directory (`YourFileName.ps` ) or the path and output file name (`C:\FileDirectory\YourFileName.ps`).
8. Optionally, uncheck the XHTML and XML check boxes in the Show As group.
9. Click Transform Now. The transformation is started.

## TXT Output

1. Change directory to `[oxygen]/frameworks/docbook/xsl/fo/`.
2. Select `docbook.xsl`, click Open. The dialog closes.

3. Select the FOP tab.
4. Check the Perform FOP option. The remaining options are enabled.
5. Select the following options:
  - a. XSLT result as input.
  - b. TXT as method.
  - c. Built-in(Apache FOP) as processor.
6. Select the Output tab.
7. In the Save As field enter the output file name relative to the current directory (`YourFileName.txt` ) or the path and output file name (`C:\FileDirectory\YourFileName.txt`).
8. Optionally, uncheck the XHTML and XML check boxes in the Show As group.
9. Click Transform Now. The transformation is started.

## HTML Output

1. Change directory to `[oxygen]/frameworks/docbook/xsl/html/`.
2. Select `docbook.xsl`, click Open. The dialog closes.
3. Select the FOP tab.
4. Uncheck the Perform FOP option. The FOP options are disabled.
5. Select the Output tab.
6. In the Save As field enter the output file name relative to the current directory (`YourFileName.html` ) or the path and output file name (`C:\FileDirectory\YourFileName.html`).
  - a. If your pictures are not located relative to the out location, check the XHTML check box in the Show As group.
  - b. Specify the path to the folder or URL where the pictures are located
7. Click Transform Now. The transformation is started.

## HTML Help Output

1. Change directory to `[oxygen]/frameworks/docbook/xsl/htmlhelp/`.
2. Select `htmlhelp.xsl`, click Open. The dialog closes.
3. Set the XSLT parameter `base.dir`, it identifies the output directory. (If not specified, the output directory is system dependent.) Also set the `manifest.in.base.dir` to 1 in order to have the project files copied in output as well.
4. Select the FOP tab.
5. Uncheck the Perform FOP option. The FOP options are disabled.

6. Click Transform Now. The transformation is started.
7. At the end of the transformation you should find the html, hhp and hhc files in the *base.dir* directory.
8. Download Microsoft's HTML Help Workshop and install it.
9. Integrate HTML Help Workshop as an external tool. Go to Options → Preferences+External Tools
10. Create a new external tool entry named HTMLHelp with Working directory being the same with the base.dir parameter defined above and Configure command set to [path to installed HTML Help Workshop]\hhc.exe <filename>, where <filename> is the name of the html help project file (for example htmlhelp.hhp).
11. Run the tool from Tools → External Tools → HTMLHelp.

## Java Help Output

1. Change directory to [oxygen]/frameworks/docbook/xsl/javahelp/.
2. Select javahelp.xsl, click Open. The dialog closes.
3. Set the XSLT parameter base.dir, it identifies the output directory. (If not specified, the output directory is system dependent.)
4. Select the FOP tab.
5. Uncheck the Perform FOP option. The FOP options are disabled.
6. Click Transform Now. The transformation is started.

## XHTML Output

1. Change directory to [oxygen]/frameworks/docbook/xsl/xhtml/.
2. Select docbook.xsl, click Open. The dialog closes.
3. Select the FOP tab.
4. Uncheck the Perform FOP option. The FOP options are disabled.
5. Select the Output tab.
6. In the Save As field enter the output file name relative to the current directory (YourFileName.html ) or the path and output file name (C:\FileDirectory\YourFileName.html).
  - a. If your pictures are not located relative to the out location, check the XHTML check box in the Show As group.
  - b. Specify the path to the folder or URL where the pictures are located
7. Click Transform Now. The transformation is started.

## Supported XSLT processors

The <oXygen/> distribution comes with the following XSLT processors:

- Xalan 2.7.1 Xalan-Java <http://xml.apache.org/xalan-j/> is an XSLT processor for transforming XML documents into HTML, text, or other XML document types. It implements XSL Transformations (XSLT) Version 1.0 and XML Path Language (XPath) Version 1.0.
- Saxon 6.5.5 Saxon 6.5.5 [<http://saxon.sourceforge.net/saxon6.5.5/>] is an XSLT processor, which implements the Version 1.0 XSLT and XPath with a number of powerful extensions. This version of Saxon also includes many of the new features that were first defined in the XSLT 1.1 working draft, but for conformance and portability reasons these are not available if the stylesheet header specifies `version="1.0"`.
- Saxon 9.2.0.6 Home Edition (HE), Professional Edition (PE) Saxon-HE/PE <http://saxon.sf.net/> implements the "basic" conformance level for XSLT 2.0 and XQuery. The term basic XSLT 2.0 processor is defined in the draft XSLT 2.0 specifications: it is a conformance level that requires support for all features of the language other than those that involve schema processing. The HE product remains open source, but removes some of the more advanced features that were present in Saxon-PE.
- Saxon 9.2.0.6 Enterprise Edition (EE) Saxon EE <http://www.saxonica.com/> is the schema-aware edition of Saxon 9 and it is one of the built-in processors of <Oxygen/>. Saxon EE includes an XML Schema processor, and schema-aware XSLT, XQuery, and XPath processors.

The validation in schema aware transformations is done according to the W3C XML Schema 1.0 specification or according to the W3C XML Schema 1.1 one. This can be configured in Preferences.

Besides the above list <Oxygen/> supports the following processors:

- Xsltproc (libxslt) Libxslt <http://xmlsoft.org/XSLT/> is the XSLT C library developed for the Gnome project. Libxslt is based on libxml2 the XML C library developed for the Gnome project. It also implements most of the EXSLT set of processor-portable extensions functions and some of Saxon's evaluate and expressions extensions. The libxml2 version included in <Oxygen/> is 2.7.6 and the libxslt version is 1.1.26

<Oxygen/> uses Libxslt through its command line tool (Xsltproc). The XSLT processor is included into the distribution kit of the stand-alone version for Windows and Mac OS X. Because there are differences between different Linux distributions, on Linux you must install *Libxslt* on your machine as a separate application and set the PATH variable to contain the *Xsltproc* executable.

The Xsltproc processor can be configured from the XSLTPROC options page.

### Note

Known problem: file paths containing spaces are not handled correctly in the LIBXML processor. For example the built-in XML catalog files of the predefined document types (DocBook, TEI, DITA, etc) are not handled by LIBXML if <Oxygen/> is installed in the default location on Windows (C:\Program Files) because the built-in XML catalog files are stored in the *frameworks* subdirectory of the installation directory which in this case contains at least a space character.

- MSXML 3.0/4.0 MSXML 3.0/4.0 <http://msdn.microsoft.com/xml/> is available only on Windows 2000, Windows NT and Windows XP platforms. It can be used for transformation .
- <oXygen/> use the Microsoft XML parser through its command line tool `msxsl.exe` [<http://msdn.microsoft.com/library/default.asp?url=/library/en-us/dnxml/html/msxsl.asp>]
- Because `msxsl.exe` is only a wrapper, Microsoft Core XML Services (MSXML) must be installed on the computer otherwise you get an corresponding warning. You can get the latest Microsoft XML parser from Microsoft web-site <http://www.microsoft.com/downloads/details.aspx?FamilyId=3144B72B-B4F2-46DA-B4B6-C5D7485F2B42&displaylang=en> [<http://www.microsoft.com/downloads/details.aspx?FamilyId=3144B72B-B4F2-46DA-B4B6-C5D7485F2B42&displaylang=en>]
- MSXML .NET MSXML .NET <http://msdn.microsoft.com/xml/> is available only on Windows NT4, Windows 2000 and Windows XP platforms. It can be used for transformation .
- <oXygen/> performs XSLT transformations and validations using .NET Framework's XSLT implementation (`System.Xml.Xsl.XslTransform` class) through **the `nxslt` [<http://www.tkachenko.com/dotnet/nxslt.html>] command line utility. The `nxslt` version included in <oXygen/> is 1.6.**
- You should have the .NET Framework version 1.0 already installed on your system otherwise you get this warning: MSXML.NET requires .NET Framework version 1.0 to be installed. Exit code: 128
- You can get the .NET Framework version 1.0 from Microsoft web-site <http://www.microsoft.com/downloads/details.aspx?FamilyID=d7158dee-a83f-4e21-b05a-009d06457787&displaylang=en> [<http://www.microsoft.com/downloads/details.aspx?FamilyID=d7158dee-a83f-4e21-b05a-009d06457787&displaylang=en>]
- .NET 1.0 A transformer based on the System.Xml 1.0 library available in the .NET 1.0 and .NET 1.1 frameworks from Microsoft (<http://msdn.microsoft.com/xml/>). It is available only on Windows.
- You should have the .NET Framework version 1.0 or 1.1 already installed on your system otherwise you get this warning: MSXML.NET requires .NET Framework version 1.0 to be installed. Exit code: 128
- You can get the .NET Framework version 1.0 from Microsoft web-site <http://www.microsoft.com/downloads/details.aspx?FamilyID=d7158dee-a83f-4e21-b05a-009d06457787&displaylang=en> [<http://www.microsoft.com/downloads/details.aspx?FamilyID=d7158dee-a83f-4e21-b05a-009d06457787&displaylang=en>]
- .NET 2.0 A transformer based on the System.Xml 2.0 library available in the .NET 2.0 framework from Microsoft (<http://msdn.microsoft.com/xml/>). It is available only on Windows.
- You should have the .NET Framework version 2.0 already installed on your system otherwise you get this warning: MSXML.NET requires .NET Framework version 2.0 to be installed. Exit code: 128
- You can get the .NET Framework version 2.0 from Microsoft web-site <http://www.microsoft.com/downloads/details.aspx?FamilyID=9655156b-356b-4a2c-857c-e62f50ae9a55&DisplayLang=en> [<http://www.microsoft.com/downloads/details.aspx?FamilyID=9655156b-356b-4a2c-857c-e62f50ae9a55&DisplayLang=en>]

Saxon.NET <http://weblog.saxondotnet.org/> is the port of Saxon 9B XSLT processor to the .NET platform and it is available on a Mozilla Public License 1.0 (MPL) from the Mozilla [<http://www.mozilla.org/MPL/MPL-1.0.html>] site.


In order to use it you have to unzip in the <oXygen/> install folder the Saxon.NET distribution which you can download from <http://saxon.sourceforge.net/> [<http://www.saxondotnet.org/saxon.net/downloads/Saxon.NET-1.0-RC1.zip>].

You should have the .NET Framework version 1.1 already installed on your system otherwise you get this warning: Saxon.NET requires .NET Framework 1.1 to be installed.

You can get the .NET Framework version 1.1 from Microsoft web-site <http://www.microsoft.com/downloads/ThankYou.aspx?familyId=262d25e3-f589-4842-8157-034d1e7cf3a3&displayLang=en> [<http://www.microsoft.com/downloads/ThankYou.aspx?familyId=262d25e3-f589-4842-8157-034d1e7cf3a3&displayLang=en>]

## Note

There is no integrated XML Catalog support for MSXML 3.0/4.0 and .NET processors.

The button  Transformation options available on the *Transformation* toolbar allows quick access to the XSLT options in the <oXygen/> user preferences.

## Configuring custom XSLT processors

One can configure other XSLT transformation engines than the ones which come with the <oXygen/> distribution. Such an external engine can be used for XSLT transformations within <oXygen/>, in the Editor perspective, and is available in the list of engines in the dialog for editing transformation scenarios.

The output messages of a custom processor are displayed in an output view at the bottom of the <oXygen/> window. If an output message follows the format of an <oXygen/> linked message then a click on the message in the output view highlights the location of the message in an editor panel containing the file referred in the message.

## Configuring the XSLT processor extensions paths

The Xalan and Saxon processors support the use of extension elements and extension functions. Unlike a literal result element, which the stylesheet simply transfers to the result tree, an extension element performs an action. The extension is usually used because the xslt stylesheet fails in providing adequate functions to the user for accomplishing a more complex task.

Extensions for Xalan and Saxon are included in [[<oXygen/> install directory](#)] \frameworks\docbook\xsl\extensions. If you want to use the extensions group for Xalan, you have to rename the file "xalan27.jar.ext" to "xalan27.jar". Same specifications for Saxon: rename "saxon65.jar.ext" to "saxon65.jar". You can only use one group of extensions at a time.

Samples on how to use extensions can be found at:

- for Xalan - <http://xml.apache.org/xalan-j/extensions.html>
- for Saxon 6.5.5 - <http://saxon.sourceforge.net/saxon6.5.5/extensions.html>
- for Saxon 9.2.0.6 - <http://www.saxonica.com/documentation/extensions/intro.html>



In order to set an XSLT processor extension (a directory or a jar file), you have to use the Extensions button of the scenario edit dialog. The old way of setting an extension (using the parameter `-Dcom.oxygenxml.additional.classpath`) was deprecated and you should use the extension mechanism of the XSLT transformation scenario.

## XProc Transformations

### XProc transformation scenario

A sequence of transformations described by an XProc script can be executed with an XProc transformation scenario. In the scenario the parameters of the transformation are specified: the URL of the XProc script, the XProc engine, the input ports and the output ports.

On the *XProc* tab of the scenario edit dialog it is selected the URL of the XProc script and the XProc engine. The engine can be the built-in engine called *Calabash XProc* or other engine configured in Preferences.

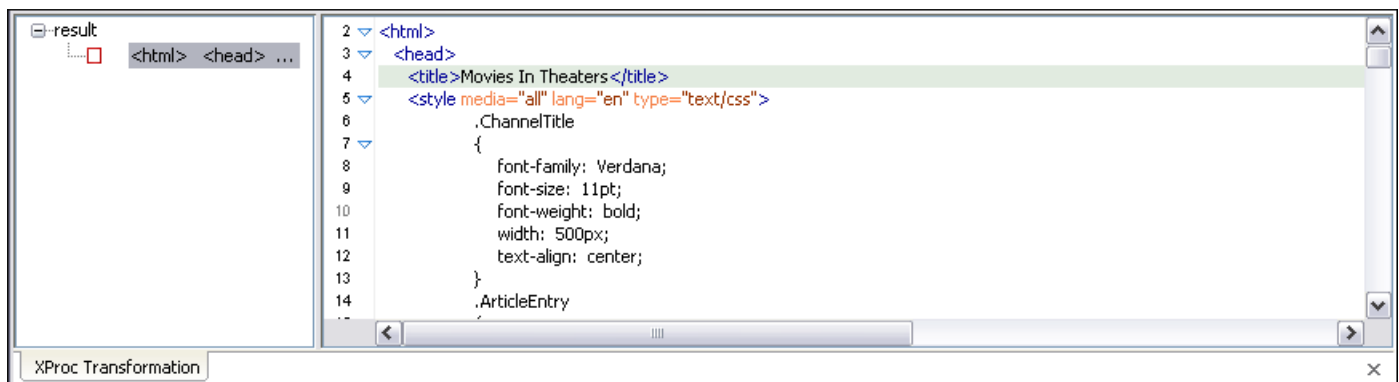
On the *Inputs* tab of the dialog is configured each port that is used in the XProc script for reading input data. Each input port has a name that is assigned in the XProc script and that is used for identifying the port in the list from the *Port* combo box. The XProc engine will read data from the URLs specified in the *URLs* list. The built-in editor variables and the custom editor variables can be used for specifying a URL.

On the *Parameters* tab you can specify the parameters available on each port.

Each port where is sent the output of the XProc transformation is associated with a URL on the *Outputs* tab of the dialog. The built-in editor variables and the custom editor variables can be used for specifying a URL.

The result of the XProc transformation can be displayed as a sequence in an output view with two sides: a list with the output ports on the left side and the content of the document(s) that correspond to the output port selected on the left side. If the checkbox *Open in editor* is selected the XProc transformation result will be opened automatically in an editor panel.

**Figure 10.9. XProc Transformation results view**



## Integration of an external XProc engine - the XProc API

In order to create an XProc integration project the following requirements must be fulfilled:

- Take the "oxygen.jar" from `oxygenInstallDir/lib` and put it in the `lib` directory of your project.
- Implement the `ro.sync.xml.transformer.xproc.api.XProcTransformerInterface` according with the API that you can find in the `xprocAPI.zip`

- Create a new java archive (jar) from the classes you created.
- Create a new engine.xml file according with the engine.dtd file. The attributes of the engine tag have the following meanings:
  1. **name** - The name of the XProc engine.
  2. **description** - A short description of the XProc engine.
  3. **class** - The complete name of the class that implements `ro.sync.xml.transformer.xproc.api.XProc-TransformerInterface`
  4. **version** - The version of this integration.
  5. **engineVersion** - The version of the integrated engine.
  6. **vendor** - The name of the vendor/implementor.
  7. **supportsValidation** - true if the engine supports validation, false otherwise.

The engine tag has only one child, runtime. The runtime tag contains several library elements who's attribute name contains the relative or absolute location of the libraries necessary to run this integration.

- Create a new folder with the name of the integration in the `oxygenInstallDir/lib/xproc` and put there the engine.xml, and all the libraries necessary to run properly the new integration.

The Javadoc documentation of the XProc API is available for download in the following zip file: xprocAPI.zip [<http://www.oxygenxml.com/InstData/Editor/Developer/xprocAPI.zip>].

---

# Chapter 11. Querying documents

## Running XPath expressions

### What is XPath

XPath is a language for addressing specific parts of an XML document. XPath, like the Document Object Model (DOM), models an XML document as a tree of nodes. An XPath expression is a mechanism for navigating through and selecting nodes from the XML document. An XPath expression is in a way analogous to a Structured Query Language (SQL) query used to select records from a database.

XPath models an XML document as a tree of nodes. There are different types of nodes, including element nodes, attribute nodes and text nodes. XPath defines a way to compute a string-value for each type of node.

XPath defines a library of standard functions for working with strings, numbers and Boolean expressions.

*Examples:*

**child: \*** Select all children of the root node.

**//name** Select all elements having the name "name", descendants of the current node.

**/catalog/cd[price>10.80]**Selects all the cd elements that have a price element with a value larger than 10.80

To find out more about XPath, the following URL is recommended: <http://www.w3.org/TR/xpath>

### <oXygen/>'s XPath console

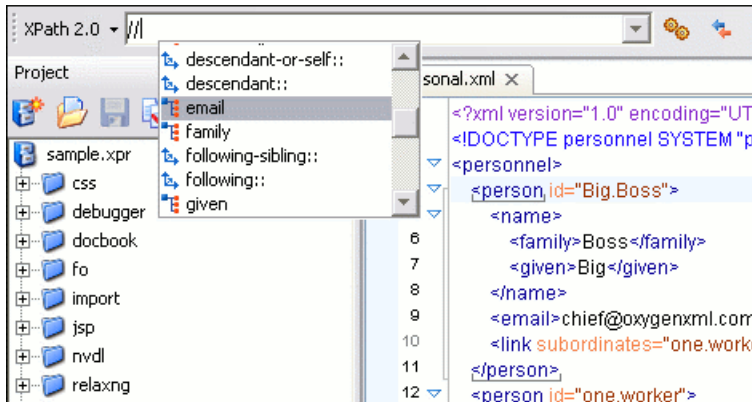
To use XPath effectively requires at least an understanding of the XPath Core Function Library [<http://www.w3.org/TR/xpath#corelib>]. If you have this knowledge the <oXygen/> XPath expression field part of the current editor toolbar can be used to aid you in XML document development.

In <oXygen/> a XPath 1.0 or XPath 2.0 expression is typed and executed on the current document from the XPath console available on the XPath toolbar for every open XML document. . Both XPath 2.0 basic and XPath 2.0 schema aware expressions can be executed in the XPath console. XPath 2.0 schema aware also takes into account the Saxon EE XML Schema version option.

The content completion assistant that helps in entering XPath expressions in attributes of XSLT stylesheets elements is also available in the XPath console and offers always proposals dependent of the current context of the cursor inside the edited document. The set of XPath functions proposed by the assistant depends on the XPath version selected from the drop-down menu of the XPath button (1.0 or 2.0).


In the following example the cursor is on a *person* element and the content completion assistant offers all the child elements of the *person* element and all XPath 2.0 functions:

**Figure 11.1. Content Completion in the XPath console**



The evaluation of the XPath expression tries to resolve the locations of documents referred in the expression through the XML catalogs which are configured in Preferences and the current XInclude preferences, for example when evaluating the *collection(URIofCollection)* function (XPath 2.0). If you need to resolve the references from the files returned by the *collection()* function with an XML catalog set up in the <oXygen/> preferences you have to specify in the query which is the parameter of the *collection()* function the name of the class of the XML catalog enabled parser for parsing these collection files. The class name is `ro.sync.xml.parser.CatalogEnabledXMLReader` and you specify it like this:

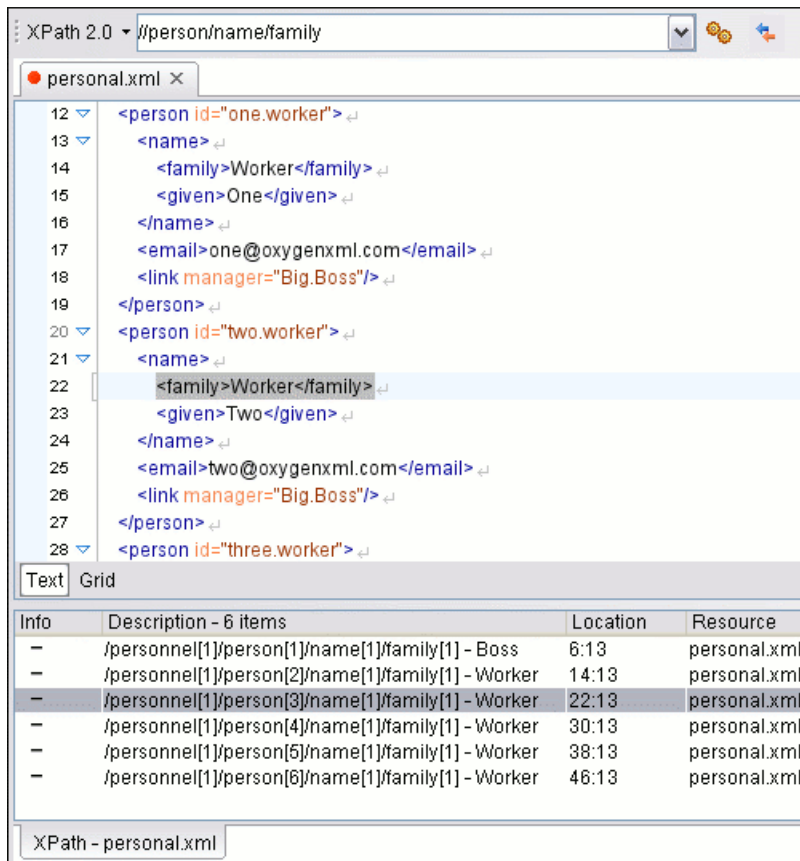
```
let $docs := collection(iri-to-uri(
    "file:///D:/temp/test/XQuery-catalog/mydocsdir?recurse=yes;select=*.xml;
    parser=ro.sync.xml.parser.CatalogEnabledXMLReader" ) )
```

If you want to see in the XPath console the XPath expression at the current cursor position when navigating in the document you can check the button  XPath update on caret move.

The results of an XPath query are returned in the Message Panel. Clicking a record in the result list highlights the nodes within the text editor panel with a character level precision. Results are returned in a format that is a valid XPath expression:

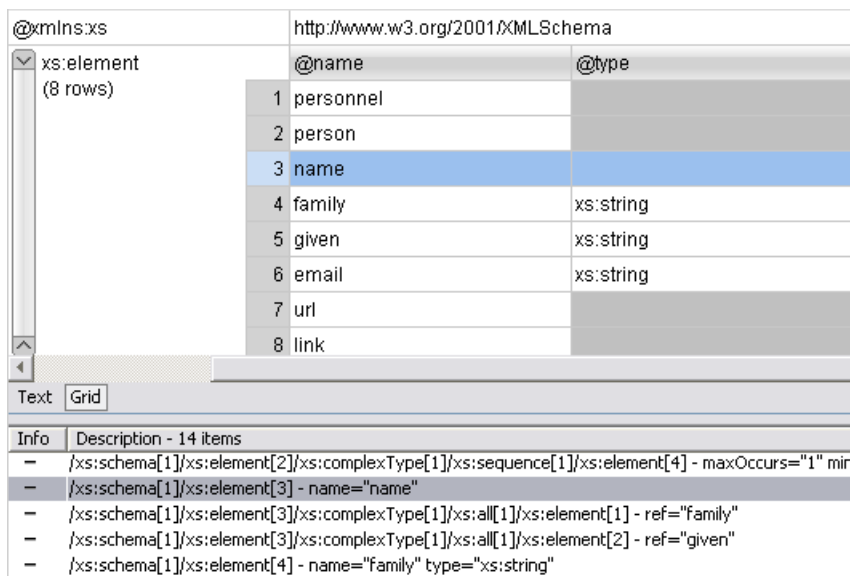
```
- [FileName.xml] /node[value]/node[value]/node[value] -
```

**Figure 11.2. XPath results highlighted in editor panel with character precision**



When using the grid editor, clicking a result record will highlight the entire node.

**Figure 11.3. XPath results highlighted in the Grid Editor**



 **Note**

XPath 2.0 basic queries are executed using Saxon 9 PE engine. XPath 2.0 schema aware queries are executed using Saxon EE engine.

When the limit of long expressions is reached (60 characters) a dialog pops up and offers to switch the focus to the XPath builder view. This is a view specially designed to assist you with typing and testing complex XPath 1.0 / 2.0 expressions.

**Example 11.1. XPath Utilization with DocBook DTD**

The example is taken from a DocBook book based on the DocBook XML DTD. The book contains a number of chapters. DocBook defines that chapters as have a <chapter> start tag and matching </chapter> end tag to close the element. To return all the chapter nodes of the book enter **//chapter** into the XPath expression field, then **Enter**. This will return all the chapter nodes of the DocBook book, in the Message Panel. If your book has six chapters, their will be six records in the result list. Each record when clicked will locate and highlight the chapter and all sibling nodes contained between the start and end tags of the chapter.

If you used XPath to query for all example nodes contained in the section 2 node of a DocBook XML document you would use the following XPath expression **//chapter/sect1/sect2/example**. If an example node is found in any section 2 node, a result will be returned to the message panel. For each occurrence of the element node a record will be created in the result list.

In the example an XPath query on the file `oxygen.xml` determined that:

```
- [oxygen.xml] /chapter[1]/sect1[3]/sect2[7]/example[1]
```

*Which means:*

In the file `oxygen.xml`, first chapter, third section level 1, seventh section level 2, the example node found is the first in the section.

 **Note**

If your project is comprised of a main file with ENTITY references to other files, you can use XPath to return all the name elements of a certain type by querying the main file. The result list will query all referenced files.


 **Note**

When the edited document is of type XSL the XPath expression typed in the XPath console is applied over the XML document specified in the transformation scenario associated with the XSL document. <oXygen/> provides a user preference to be set if you want to apply the XPath expression over the XSL document itself.

 **Important**

If the document defines a default namespace then <oXygen/> will bind this namespace to the first free prefix from the list: default, default1, default2, etc. For example if the document defines the default namespace *xmlns="something"* and the prefix *default* is not associated with a namespace then you can match tags without prefix in a XPath expression typed in the XPath console by using the prefix *default*. For example to find all the *level* elements when the root element defines a default namespace you should execute in the XPath console the expression:

```
//default:level
```

To define default mappings between prefixes that can be used in the XPath console and namespace URIs go to the  XPath Options user preferences panel and enter the mappings in the *Default prefix-namespace mappings* table. The same preferences panel allows also the configuration of the default namespace used in XPath 2.0 expressions entered into the XPath toolbar and the creation of different results panels for XPath queries executed on different XML documents.

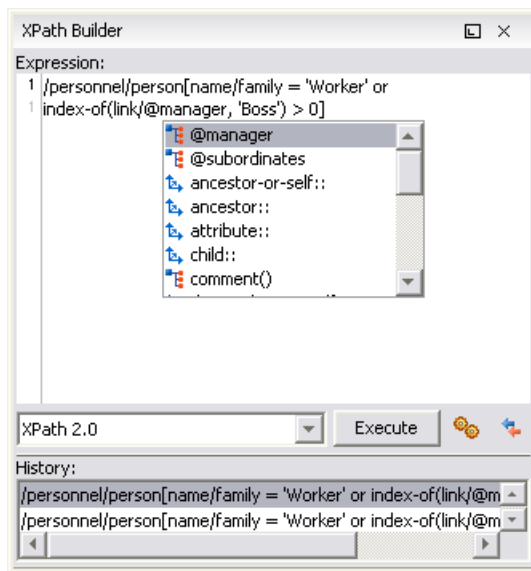
To apply a XPath expression relative to the element on which the caret is positioned use the action Document → XML Document → Copy XPath (**Ctrl+Alt+.**) (also available on the context menu of the main editor panel) to copy the XPath expression of the current element or attribute to the clipboard and the Paste action of the contextual menu of the XPath console to paste this expression in the console. Then add your relative expression and execute the resulting complete expression.


On Windows the context menu can be displayed with the mouse on a right click or with the keyboard by pressing the special context menu key available on Windows keyboards.


## The XPath Builder View

Complex XPath expressions can be composed with the help of the content completion assistant available for XPath expressions in a special view called *XPath Builder*. Also the expressions can be tested in the view by execution on the edited document. The view is opened from menu Perspective -> Show View.

**Figure 11.4. The XPath Builder View**



The *Execute* button runs the expression on the edited document and takes into account the value selected in the combo box with the XPath version number: 1.0 or 2.0. Both XPath 2.0 basic and XPath 2.0 schema aware expressions can be evaluated in this view on the current XML document. The XPath preferences panel is accessible from the  XPath Options shortcut button near the *Execute* button. A history list with the XPath expressions evaluated in the past on all documents opened in the current <oxygen/> session is also available in the bottom area of the view so that new expressions can be composed based on old ones without re-entering the whole expression.

The  XPath update on caret move button enables the XPath Builder view to display the XPath expression at the current cursor position when navigating in the document.

The evaluation of the XPath expression tries to resolve the locations of documents referred in the expression through the XML catalogs which are configured in Preferences and the current XInclude preferences, for example when evaluating the *collection(URIofCollection)* function (XPath 2.0).

The results of the XPath query are displayed in the same Message Panel as for the XPath console and are computed with the same character level precision.

The usual edit actions (Cut, Copy, Paste, Select All, Undo, Redo) are available in the popup menu of the top part of the view, where XPath expressions are entered. For the history list area of the view the popup menu contains two actions:

- Execute - to execute again the expression selected in the list.
- Remove - to remove the selected expression from the list.



---

# Chapter 12. Comparing and merging documents

In large teams composed either of developers or technical writers, the usage of a shared repository for the source or document files is a must. Often many authors are changing the same file at the same time.

Finding what has been modified in your files and folders can be hard. If your data is changing, you can benefit from accurate identification and processing of changes in your files and folders with <oxygen> XML Author 's features for comparing files and directories. These are powerful and easy to use tools that will do the job fast and thoroughly. With the new possibilities of differencing and merging, it is now easy to manage multiple changes.

<oxygen> XML Author provides a simple means of performing file and folder comparisons. You can see the differences in your files and folders and also you can merge the changes.

There are two levels on which the comparison can be done, namely comparing directories or comparing individual files. These two operations are available from the Tools menu.

Also the comparison tool can be started using command line arguments. In the installation folder there are 2 executable shells (`diffFiles.bat` and `diffDirs.bat` on Windows, `diffFiles.sh` and `diffDirs.sh` on Unix/Linux, `diffFilesMac.sh` and `diffDirsMac.sh` on Mac OS X). You can give one or two command line arguments to each of these shells.

For example, to start the comparison between 2 directories on Windows use:

```
diffDirs.bat "c:\Program Files" "c:\ant"
```

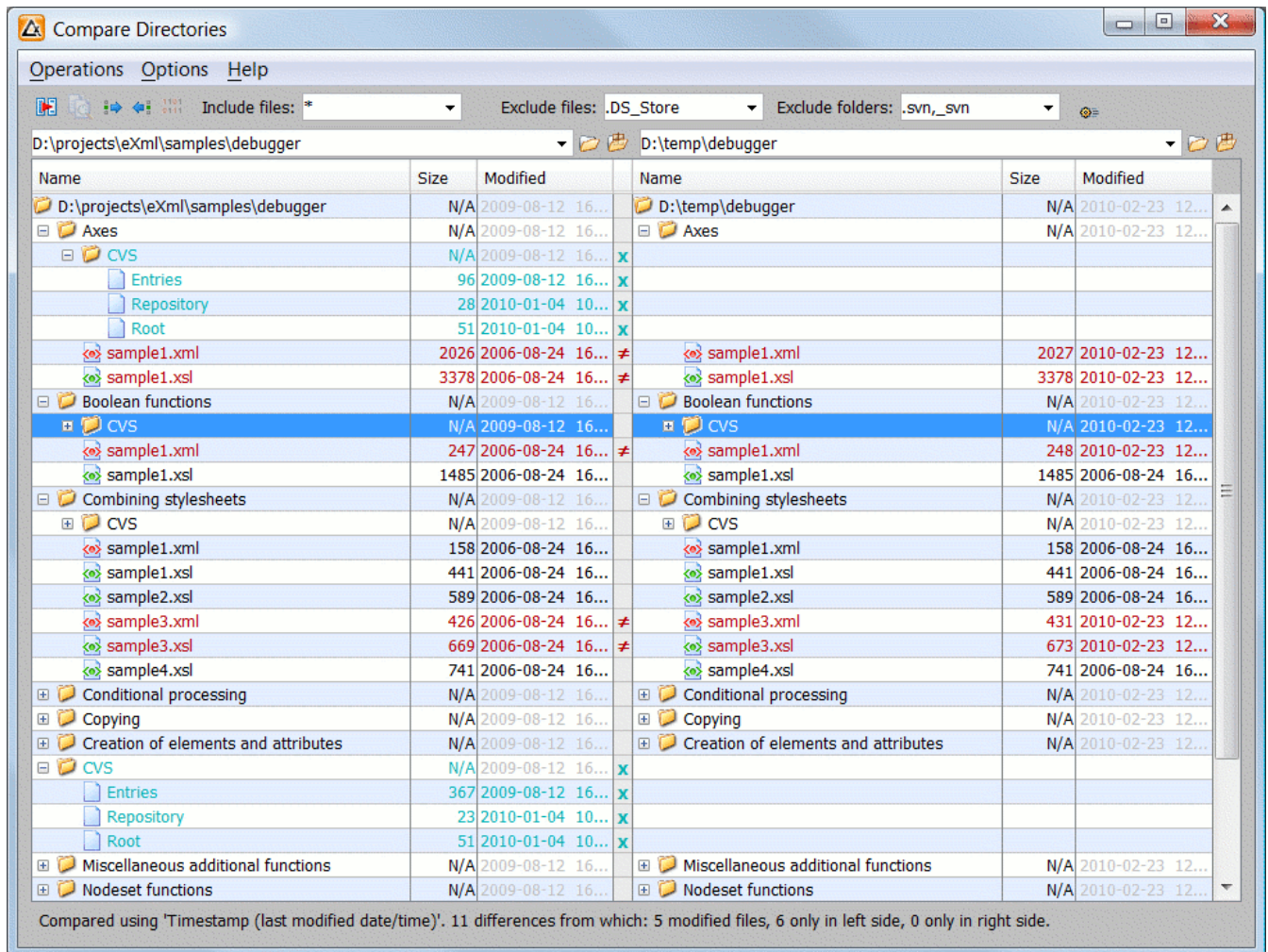
Note that if there are spaces in the path names, the paths need to be surrounded by quotes. Also one argument can be missing in which case the second directory will be chosen manually by the user.

The same goes for the files diff utility as well.

If you run the diff tool from the command line (`diffFiles.exe` or `diffFiles.bat` on Windows, `diffFiles.sh` on Linux, `diffFilesMac.sh` on Mac OS X), you must specify one or two parameters, because Diff Files perform only two-way comparing.

## Directories Comparison

The directories comparison result is presented as a tree of files and directories. The directories that contain different files are expanded automatically, so you can focus directly on the differences. You can merge the directories' contents using the copy actions or you can compare and merge the different files by double-clicking on them.

**Figure 12.1. The Compare directories window**

## The directories comparison user interface

The directory comparison user interface is comprised of the following components:

### The Operations Menu

This menu contains the functions available for directories comparison:

Operations → Perform directories differencing : Performs the comparison of the directories.

Operations → Perform files differencing : Performs the comparison of the files.

Operations → Copy change from left to right : Copies the selected file or folder to the corresponding directory from the right (if there is no file/folder in the left part the right file/folder will be deleted)

Operations → Copy change from right to left : Copies the selected file or folder to the corresponding directory from the left (if there is no file/folder in the right part the left file/folder will be deleted)

Operations → Close (**Ctrl+W**) : Closes the Compare directories window.

## Compare Toolbar

Figure 12.2. The Compare toolbar



The available functions are presented in the Operations menu.

For the Algorithm and Diff Options buttons look below at File Comparison / Compare Toolbar

File filters are available; you can choose to see the differences only for XML files, or XSL files for instance.

## Directories Selector

To open the directories you want to compare, select a folder from each "Browse for local file" button. <oXygen/> XML Author keeps track of the folders you are currently working with and those you opened in this window. You can see and select them from the two combo-boxes.

If you want to compare two archives' content you can select the archives from the "Browse for archive file" button.

### Tip

By default <oXygen/> XML Author treats supported archives as directories and the comparison is also done with the files inside them. You can disable this behaviour by unchecking the "Look in archives" checkbox from the Diff preferences page.

## The comparison result

The directory comparison result is presented using a tree of files and directories.

Figure 12.3. Comparison result

| Name         | Size   | Modified         |   | Name         | Size   | Modified         |
|--------------|--------|------------------|---|--------------|--------|------------------|
| isolat2.ent  | 11072  | 2005-05-16 12:39 | X |              |        |                  |
| isonum.ent   | 6131   | 2005-05-16 12:39 | X |              |        |                  |
| isopub.ent   | 6756   | 2005-05-16 12:39 | X |              |        |                  |
| isotech.ent  | 5135   | 2005-05-16 12:39 | X |              |        |                  |
| README       | 554    | 2005-05-16 12:39 | X |              |        |                  |
| calstblk.dtd | 12637  | 2005-05-16 12:39 | ≠ | calstblk.dtd | 12609  | 2005-05-16 12:39 |
| catalog.xml  | 4929   | 2005-05-16 12:39 | ≠ | catalog.xml  | 4750   | 2005-05-16 12:39 |
| ChangeLog    | 16972  | 2005-05-16 12:39 | ≠ | ChangeLog    | 13095  | 2005-05-16 12:39 |
| dbcentx.mod  | 10160  | 2005-05-16 12:39 | ≠ | dbcentx.mod  | 10179  | 2005-05-16 12:39 |
| dbgenent.mod | 1565   | 2005-05-16 12:39 | ≠ | dbgenent.mod | 1565   | 2005-05-16 12:39 |
| dbhierx.mod  | 80946  | 2005-05-16 12:39 | ≠ | dbhierx.mod  | 80895  | 2005-05-16 12:39 |
| dbnotnx.mod  | 4526   | 2005-05-16 12:39 | ≠ | dbnotnx.mod  | 4526   | 2005-05-16 12:39 |
| dbpoolx.mod  | 320643 | 2005-05-16 12:39 | ≠ | dbpoolx.mod  | 315961 | 2005-05-16 12:39 |
| docbook.cat  | 4010   | 2005-05-16 12:39 | ≠ | docbook.cat  | 3945   | 2005-05-16 12:39 |
| docbookx.dtd | 5796   | 2005-05-16 12:39 | ≠ | docbookx.dtd | 5703   | 2005-05-16 12:39 |
| htmltblx.mod | 8364   | 2005-05-16 12:39 | ≠ | htmltblx.mod | 7940   | 2005-05-16 12:39 |
| README       | 239    | 2005-05-16 12:39 | ≠ | README       | 239    | 2005-05-16 12:39 |
| soextblk.dtd | 15078  | 2005-05-16 12:39 | ≠ | soextblk.dtd | 15052  | 2005-05-16 12:39 |
| xinclude.mod | 998    | 2005-05-16 12:39 | ≠ | xinclude.mod | 998    | 2005-05-16 12:39 |

For the files and folders from the compared directories you can see their name, size and their modification date.

If a file or a folder exists only in one of the compared directories, the name of the file or folder will be blue and marked with an "X".

If a file exists in both directories but the content is different, the name of the file will be red and marked with a "not-equal" sign. <oxygen/> XML Author offers an useful option here: you can double-click the line marked with the "not-equal" sign and a new "File Content Comparison" Window will be opened, showing the differences between the two files.

## Compare images

By double-click on a line containing two different images a Compare images dialog will be displayed. The dialog presents the images in the left and right part scaled to fit the view's available area. You can use the contextual menu actions to scale the images at its original size or scale it down to fit in the view's available area.

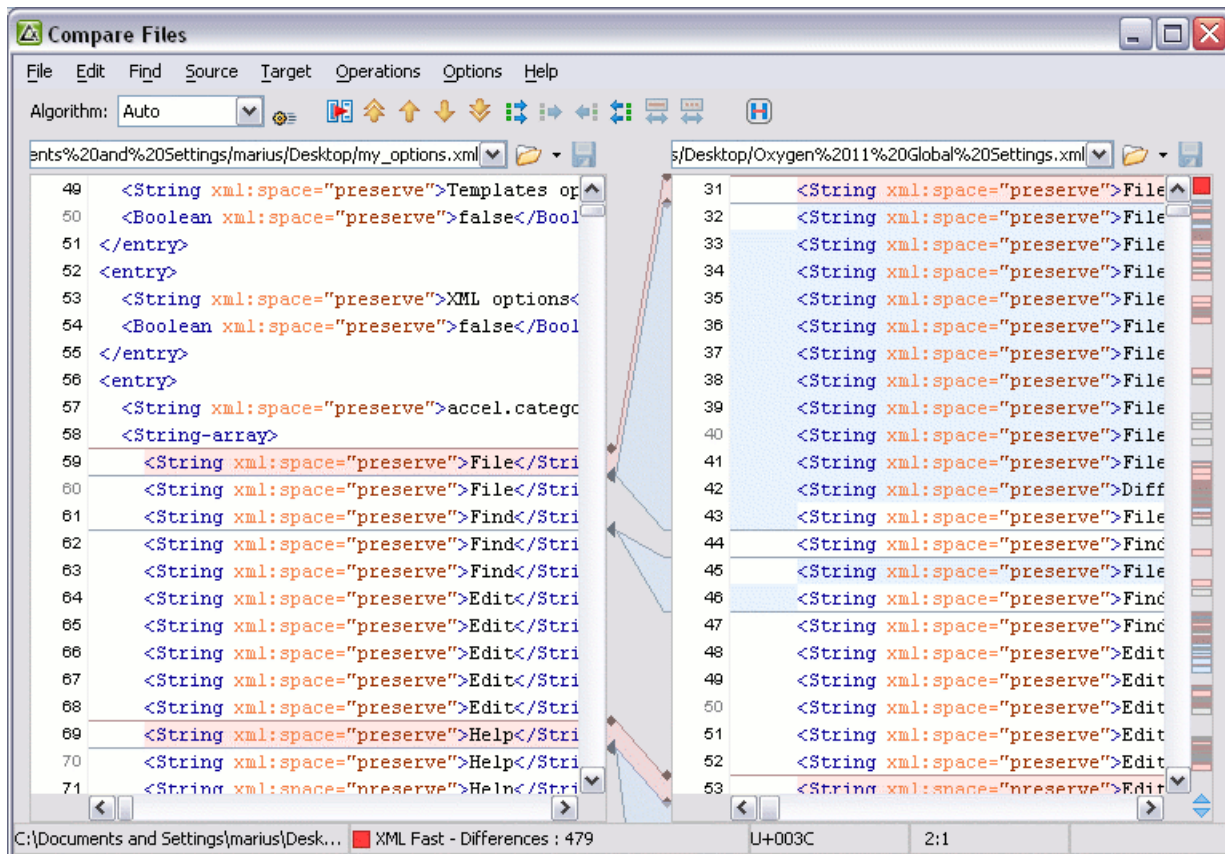
The supported image types are: GIF, JPG / JPEG, PNG, BMP.

## Files Comparison

The comparison of a pair of files is done by opening them in two editors arranged in a side-by-side layout. The line numbers on the left side of each editor help you to identify quickly the locations of the differences.

You can edit both the source and the target file. The differences are refreshed when you save the modified document.

**Figure 12.4. The Compare Files Window**








The window is comprised of the following components:




## The Main Menu

The Main Menu provides access to all the functions and features available in this window:

### Edit Menu

-  Cut - cut selection to clipboard from the local file currently opened in the *Editor view* or the *Compare view*.
-  Copy - copy selection to clipboard from the local file currently opened in the *Editor view* or the *Compare view*.
-  Paste - paste selection from clipboard in the local file currently opened in the *Editor view* or the *Compare view*.
-  Undo - undo edit changes in the local file currently opened in the *Editor view* or the *Compare view*.
-  Redo - redo edit changes in the local file currently opened in the *Editor view* or the *Compare view*.

### Find Menu

-  Find/Replace - perform find/replace operations in the local file currently opened in the *Editor view* or the *Compare view*.
-  Find Next - go to the next find match using the same find options of the last find operation. The action runs in the editor panel and in any non editable text area, for example the *Console view*.
-  Find Previous - go to the previous find match using the same find options of the last find operation. The action runs in the editor panel and in any non editable text area, for example the *Console view*.

### Source Menu

Here you can select the source file to be compared.

Source → Open : Browses for a file (the source file).

Source → Open URL : Opens URL to be used as a source file. See Open URL for details.

Source → Save : Saves the changes made in the source file.

### The Target Menu

Here you can select the target file to be compared.

Target → Open : Browses for a file (the target file).

Target → Open URL : Opens URL to be used as a target file. See Open URL for details.

Target → Save : Saves the changes made in the target file.

### Operations Menu

Operations → Perform files differencing : Performs the comparison of the source and the target files.

Operations → Go to first modification : Selects the first difference in the files. (The button becomes available if the selection is not on the first modification)

Operations → Go to previous modification : Selects the previous difference in the files. (The button becomes available if the selection is not on the first modification)

Operations → Go to next modification : Selects the next difference in the files. (The button becomes available if the selection is not on the last modification)

Operations → Go to last modification : Selects the last difference in the files. (The button becomes available if the selection is not on the last modification)

Operations → Copy all non-conflicting changes from left to right : Copies the non-conflicting changes from the source to the target.

Operations → Copy all non-conflicting changes from right to left : Copies the non-conflicting changes from the target to the source.

Operations → Copy change from left to right : Copies the selected difference from the source to the target.

Operations → Copy changes from right to left : Copies the selected difference from the target to the source.

Operations → Show modification details at word level : Provides Word Level Comparison

Operations → Show modification details at char level : Provides Character Level Comparison

## Option Menu

- Preferences - opens the preferences dialog.
- Menu Shortcut Keys - opens the preferences dialog directly on the Menu Shortcut Keys option page, where users can configure in one place the keyboard shortcuts available for menu items available in <oXygen/> XML Diff.
- Export Options - allows you to export the current options to a file.
- Import Options - allows you to import options you have previously exported.
- Reset Options - resets all your options to the default ones.

## Help Menu

- Help - opens the Help dialog.
- Check for New Versions - checks the availability of new <oXygen/> XML Diff versions.














## Compare Toolbar

This is where you'll find the operations that can be performed on the source and target files.

**Figure 12.5. The Compare Toolbar**



The available functions are presented at the Operations menu.

|  |  |
|--|--|
|  Perform files differencing                           | Run the diff algorithm selected in the Algorithm combo box on the two selected files.  |
|  Diff Options   | Opens the Diff Options page [preferences-diff].  |
|  Go to first modification                             | Scroll the two-way comparison panel to the first difference marked in the two-way comparison panel.  |
|  Go to previous modification                          | Scroll the two-way comparison panel to the previous difference marked in the two-way comparison panel.   |
|  Go to next modification                              | Scroll the two-way comparison panel and select the next difference marked in the two-way comparison panel.   |
|  Go to last modification                              | Scroll the two-way comparison panel and select the last difference marked in the two-way comparison panel.   |
|  Copy all non-conflicting changes from left to right  | All the nodes present in the left side file and not present in the right side file are copied to the right side file.  |
|  Copy change from left to right                       | Copy the current difference marked in the two-way comparison panel from the left side file to the right side file.   |
|  Copy change from right to left                       | Copy the current difference marked in the two-way comparison panel from the right side file to the left side file.   |
|  Copy all non-conflicting changes from right to left | All the nodes present in the right side file and not present in the left side file are copied to the left side file.   |
|  Show modification details at word level            | The Word algorithm is applied to the current difference marked in the two-way comparison panel and the result is displayed in a separate dialog.   |
|  Show modification details at char level            | The Characters algorithm is applied to the current difference marked in the two-way comparison panel and the result is displayed in a separate dialog.   |
|  Enable/Disable scrolling synchronization           | When one of the two panels is scrolled up, down, left or right the other panel is scrolled in the same direction so that corresponding match of the current difference from the other panel is displayed at the same time as in the scrolled panel. This action enables/disables the previous described behaviour. |

Also, <oxygen/> XML Author offers you the complete diff solution:

- two XML diff algorithms
  - *XML Accurate* works on small files and it is very precise.
  - *XML Fast* works on larger files but it is less precise than XML Accurate.
- *Syntax Aware* for the file types known by <oxygen/> XML Author , it computes the differences taking into consideration the syntax of the documents.
- three all-purpose algorithms:
  - *Lines* algorithm computes the differences at line level

- *Words* algorithm computes the differences at word level
- *Characters* algorithm computes the differences at character level
- an automatic selection of the algorithm:
  - *Auto* selects the most appropriate algorithm, based on the files' content and size.

Diff Options button                      It provides quick access to the Diff preferences pane where you set Diff parameters that will be saved for the next time when you open the Compare Files dialog.

## Files Selector

To open the source and target files where you want to see the differences, select a file from the "Open" or "Open URL" button. XML Author keeps track of the files you are currently working with and those you opened in this window. You can see and select them from the two combo-boxes.

You can also save the changes in the source file or the target file by clicking the corresponding "Save" button.

## File contents panel

The files are opened in two side-by-side editors. The text view is used, offering a better view of the changes.

The two editors are kept in sync, if you scroll the text in one of them, the other will also scroll to show the difference. The differences are indicated using highlights connected through colored areas. You can use the "Go to modification" buttons to navigate between differences or simply select a change by clicking on it in the overview ruler located in the right-most part of the window. Also the overview ruler contains a success indicator in its upper part that will turn green in case there are no differences and red if differences are found. You can also do this by clicking on a colored area between the text editors.

You can edit either the source or the target file. The differences are refreshed when you save the modified document.

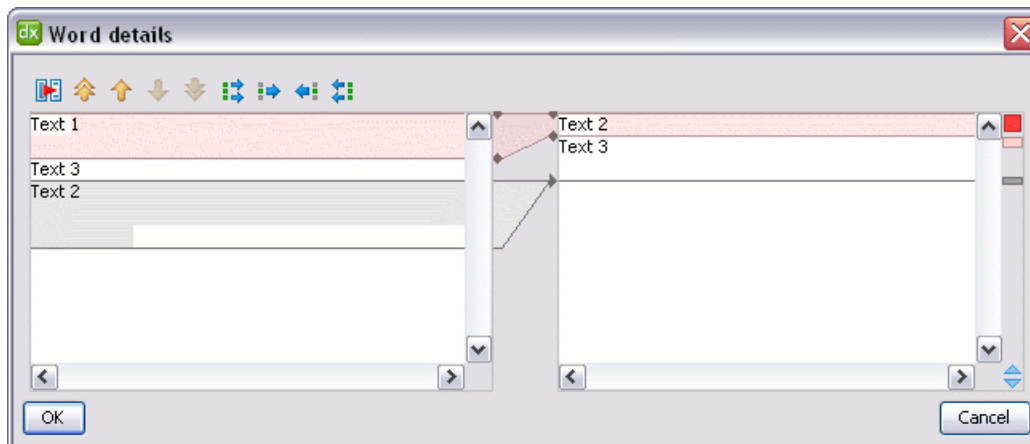
You can right-click the text editors for the "Cut", "Copy", "Paste" and "Select all" actions. The Find/Replace dialog is displayed by pressing Ctrl+F (Cmd+F on Mac). Also there are available the Find/Replace options: F3 used to perform another search using the last search configuration, and Shift+F3 to perform another search in backward direction using the last search configuration.

If the compared blocks of text are too large and you want to see the differences at a finer level, you can use the comparison at "Word" or "Character" level.

## Word Level Comparison

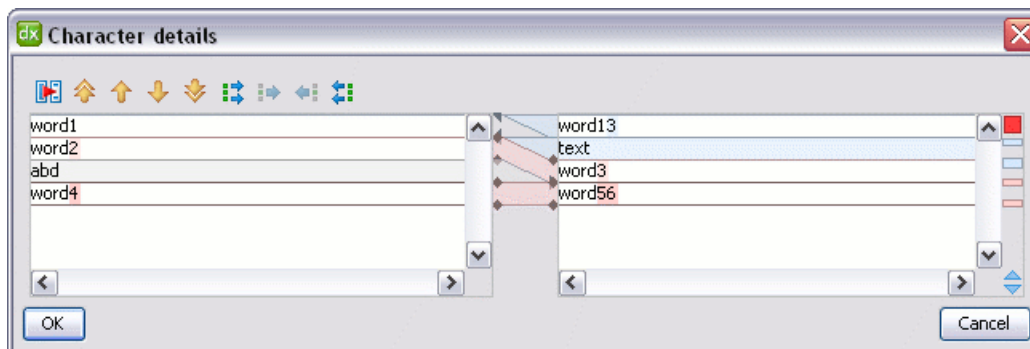
This option is only available if modifications exist between the source and the target file. You can go to Word Level Comparison by clicking the "Show modification details at word level" button from the Compare Panel or from the Operations menu.



**Figure 12.6. Word Level Comparison**

## Character Level Comparison

This option is only available if modifications exist between the source and the target file. You can go to Character Level Comparison by clicking the "Show modification details at char level" button from the Compare Panel or from the Operations menu.


**Figure 12.7. Character Level Comparison**

---

# Chapter 13. Working with Archives

<oXygen/> offers the means to manipulate files directly from ZIP type archives. By manipulation one should understand opening and saving files directly in archives, browsing and modifying archive structures. The archive support is available for all ZIP-type archives, for JAR and ODF formats and for IDML files which are also based on the ZIP archive format. This means that you can modify, transform, validate files directly from OOXML or ODF packages.

## Using files directly from archives

Now you can transform, validate and perform many other operations on files directly from an archive. When selecting an URL for a specific operation like transformation or validation you can click the Browse for archived file  button to navigate and choose the file from a certain archive.

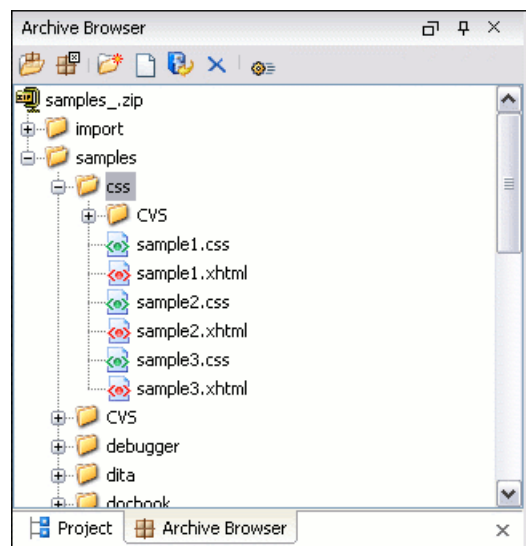
## Browsing and modifying archives' structure

You can navigate archives directly in the Archives Browser view either by opening them from the Project view or by choosing them in the <oXygen/> file chooser or by dropping them in the Archives browser view from the file explorer. When the Archive browser view is closed the archived currently opened in it will be unmounted.

### Important

If a file extension is not known by <oXygen/> as a supported archive type you can add it from the Archive preferences page .

**Figure 13.1. Browsing an archive**



The following operations are available on the Archive Browser's toolbar:

- |                 |   |
|-----------------|---|
| Open Archive... | Open a new archive in the browser. If the extension is not known as an archive extension you will be directed to the Archive preferences page to add a new extension. |
| Close           | Unmount the browsed archive.  |

|                    |  |
|--------------------|--|
| New folder...      | Create a new folder as child of the selected folder in the browsed archive.                |
| New file...        | Create a new file as child of the selected folder in the browsed archive.                  |
| Add files...       | Add some already existing files as children of the selected folder in the browsed archive. |
| Delete             | Delete the selected resource in the browsed archive.                                       |
| Archive Options... | Open the Archive preferences page.   |

The following additional operations are available from the Archive Browser's contextual menu:

|               |   |
|---------------|---|
| Open          | Open a resource from the archive in the editor.   |
| Extract...    | Extract a resource from the archive in a specified folder.                                |
| Rename...     | Rename a resource in the archive.   |
| Preview       | Preview an image contained in the archive See the Image Preview section for more details. |
| Copy location | Copy the URL location of the selected resource.   |
| Refresh       | Refresh the selected resource.  |
| Properties... | View properties for the selected resource.  |

## Editing files from archives

You can open in <Oxygen/> and edit files directly from an archive.

When saving the archived file you will be prompted with some backup operations which can be performed to ensure that your archive data will not be corrupted. You have the following backup before save options :

|                    |  |
|--------------------|--|
| No backup          | Perform no backup of the archive before save. This means that the file will be saved directly in the archive without any additional precautions.   |
| Single file backup | Before any operation which modifies the archive is performed, the archive contents will be duplicated. The duplicate file name will be <code>originalArchiveFileName.bak</code> and will be saved in the same directory.                   |
| Incremental backup | Before each operation which modifies the archive is performed, the archive contents will be duplicated. The duplicate file names will be <code>originalArchiveFileName.bak#dupNo</code> and the files will be saved in the same directory. |
| Never ask me again | Check this if you do not want to be notified again to backup. The last backup option you chose will always be used as the default one.   |

You can re-enable the dialog pop-up from the Messages preferences page.

---

# Chapter 14. Working with Databases

XML is a storage and interchange format for structured data and it is supported by all major database systems. <oXygen/> offers the means of managing the interaction with some of the widely used databases, both relational ones and Native XML Databases. By interaction, one should understand browsing, querying, SQL execution support, content editing, importing from databases, generating XML Schema from database structure.

## Relational Database Support

Relational databases use a relational model and are based on tables linked by a common key. <oXygen/> offers support for the following relational databases: IBM DB2, JDBC-ODBC Bridge, MySQL, Microsoft SQL Server, Oracle 11g like browsing the tables of these types of database in the *Data Source Explorer* view, executing SQL queries against them, calling stored procedures with input and output parameters.

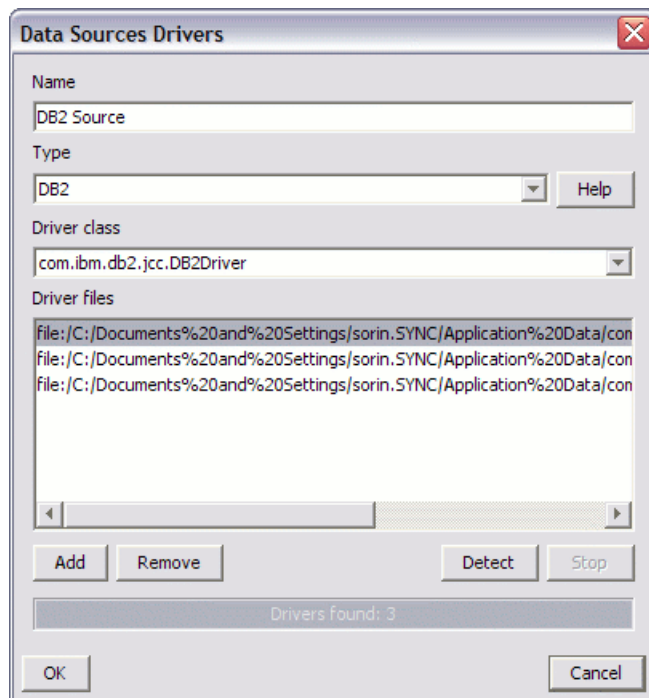
In the following sections one can find the tools that <oXygen/> offers for working with relational databases and a description on how to configure a relational data source, a connection to a data source and also the views where connections can be browsed and results are displayed.

## Configuring Database Data Sources

### How to configure an IBM DB2 Data Source

1. Go to *Preferences -> Data Sources*. In the Data Sources panel click the *New* button.
2. Enter a unique name for this data source and select *DB2* from the driver type combo box.

**Figure 14.1. Data Source Drivers Configuration Dialog**



Press the Add button to add the following IBM DB2 specific files:

- db2jcc.jar
- db2jcc\_license\_cisuz.jar
- db2jcc\_license\_cu.jar

In the Download links for database drivers section there are listed the URLs from where to download the drivers necessary for accessing IBM DB2 databases in <oXygen/>.

You can manually manage the Driver Files using *Add*, *Remove*, *Detect* and *Stop*(detection) buttons.

3. Select the most suited *Driver class*.
4. Click *OK* to finish the data source configuration.

## How to configure a Generic JDBC Data Source

<oXygen/>'s default configuration already contains a generic JDBC data source called *JDBC-ODBC Bridge*.

1. Go to *Preferences -> Data Sources*. In the Data Sources panel click the *New* button.
2. Enter a unique name for this data source and select *Generic JDBC* from the driver type combo box.

Click the *Add* button and find the driver file on your file system.

You can manage the Driver Files using *Add*, *Remove*, *Detect* and *Stop*(detection) buttons.

3. Select the most suited *Driver class*.
4. Click *OK* to finish the data source configuration.

## How to configure a Microsoft SQL Server Data Source

1. Go to *Preferences -> Data Sources*. In the Data Sources panel click the *New* button.
2. Enter a unique name for this data source and select *SQLServer* from the driver type combo box.
3. Press the Add button to add the following Microsoft SQL Server specific files:

- sqljdbc.jar

In the Download links for database drivers section there are listed the URLs from where to download the drivers necessary for accessing Microsoft SQL Server databases in <oXygen/>.

You can manage the Driver Files using *Add*, *Remove*, *Detect* and *Stop*(detection) buttons.

4. Select the most suited *Driver class*.
5. Click *OK* to finish the data source configuration.

## How to configure a MySQL Data Source

<oXygen/>'s default configuration already contains a generic JDBC data source called *MySQL*.

1. Go to *Preferences -> Data Sources*. In the Data Sources panel click the *New* button.

2. Enter a unique name for this data source and select *Generic JDBC* from the driver type combo box.

Press the Add button to add the following MySQL specific files:

- `mysql-com.jar`

You can manage the Driver Files using *Add*, *Remove*, *Detect* and *Stop*(detection) buttons.

3. Select the most suited *Driver class*.
4. Click *OK* to finish the data source configuration.

## How to configure an Oracle 11g Data Source

1. Go to *Preferences -> Data Sources*. In the Data Sources panel click the *New* button.
2. Enter a unique name for this data source and select *Oracle* from the driver type combo box.

Press the Add button to add the following Oracle 11g specific files:

- `ojdbc5.jar`

In the Download links for database drivers section there are listed the URLs from where to download the drivers necessary for accessing Oracle 11g databases in `<oXygen/>`.

You can manage the Driver Files using *Add*, *Remove*, *Detect* and *Stop*(detection) buttons.

3. Select the most suited *Driver class*.
4. Click *OK* to finish the data source configuration.

## How to configure a PostgreSQL 8.3 Data Source

1. Go to *Preferences -> Data Sources*. In the Data Sources panel click the *New* button.
2. Enter a unique name for this data source and select *Postgres* from the driver type combo box.

Press the Add button to add the following Postgres 8.3 specific files:

- `postgresql-8.3-603.jdbc3.jar`

In the Download links for database drivers section there are listed the URLs from where to download the drivers necessary for accessing PostgreSQL databases in `<oXygen/>`.

You can manage the Driver Files using *Add*, *Remove*, *Detect* and *Stop*(detection) buttons.

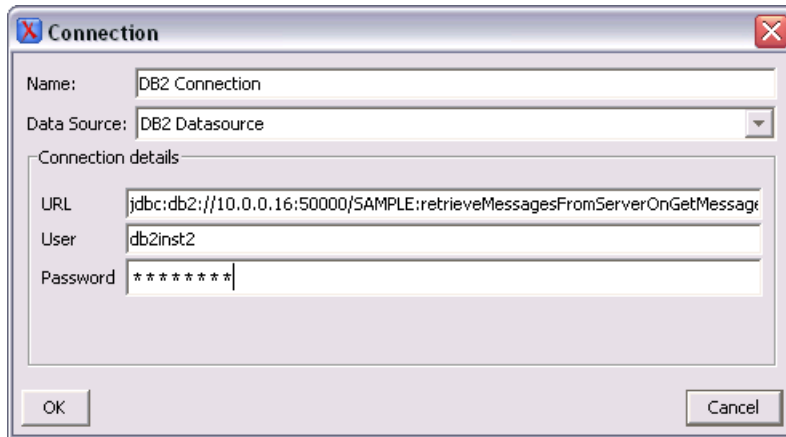
3. Select the *org.postgresql.Driver* class in the *Driver class* combo box.
4. Click *OK* to finish the data source configuration.

## Configuring Database Connections

This section presents a set of procedures describing how to configure connections that use relational data sources.

## How to Configure an IBM DB2 Connection

**Figure 14.2. The Connection Configuration Dialog**



1. Go to *Preferences -> Data Sources*. In the Connections panel click the *New* button.
2. Enter a unique name for this connection and select one of the previously configured DB2 data sources from the Data Source combo box.
3. Fill-in the Connection Details:
 

|          |  |
|----------|--|
| URL      | URL to the installed IBM DB2 engine.             |
| User     | User name to access the IBM DB2 database engine. |
| Password | Password to access the IBM DB2 engine.           |
4. Click *OK*.

## How to Configure a JDBC-ODBC Connection

1. Go to *Preferences -> Data Sources*. In the Connections panel click the *New* button.
2. Enter a unique name for this connection and select one of the previously configured Generic JDBC data sources from the Data Source combo box.
3. Fill-in the Connection Details:
 

|          |   |
|----------|---|
| URL      | URL to the configured ODBC source.              |
| User     | User name to access the configured ODBC source. |
| Password | Password to access the configured ODBC source.  |
4. Click *OK*.

## How to Configure a Microsoft SQL Server Connection

1. Go to *Preferences -> Data Sources*. In the Connections panel click the *New* button.

2. Enter a unique name for this connection and select one of the previously configured SQLServer data sources from the Data Source combo box.
3. Fill-in the Connection Details:  

|          |  |
|----------|--|
| URL      | URL to the installed SQLServer engine.             |
| User     | User name to access the SQLServer database engine. |
| Password | Password to access the SQLServer engine.           |
4. Click *OK*.

## How to Configure a MySQL Connection

1. Go to *Preferences -> Data Sources*. In the Connections panel click the *New* button.
2. Enter a unique name for this connection and select one of the previously configured MySQL data sources from the Data Source combo box.
3. Fill-in the Connection Details:  

|          |  |
|----------|--|
| URL      | URL to the installed MySQL engine.             |
| User     | User name to access the MySQL database engine. |
| Password | Password to access the MySQL engine.           |
4. Click *OK*.

## How to Configure an Oracle 11g Connection

1. Go to *Preferences -> Data Sources*. In the Connections panel click the *New* button.
2. Enter a unique name for this connection and select one of the previously configured Oracle data sources from the Data Source combo box.
3. Fill-in the Connection Details:  

|          |   |
|----------|---|
| URL      | URL to the installed Oracle engine.             |
| User     | User name to access the Oracle database engine. |
| Password | Password to access the Oracle engine.           |
4. Click *OK*.



### Note

Registering,unregistering or updating a schema might involve dropping/creating types. For schema-based XML-Type tables or columns in schemas, you need privileges like

- CREATE ANY TABLE



- CREATE ANY INDEX
- SELECT ANY TABLE
- UPDATE ANY TABLE
- INSERT ANY TABLE
- DELETE ANY TABLE
- DROP ANY TABLE
- ALTER ANY TABLE
- DROP ANY INDEX

To avoid granting these privileges to the schema owner, Oracle recommends that the operations requiring these privileges be performed by a DBA if there are XML schema-based XMLType table or columns in other users' database schemas.

## How to Configure a PostgreSQL 8.3 Connection

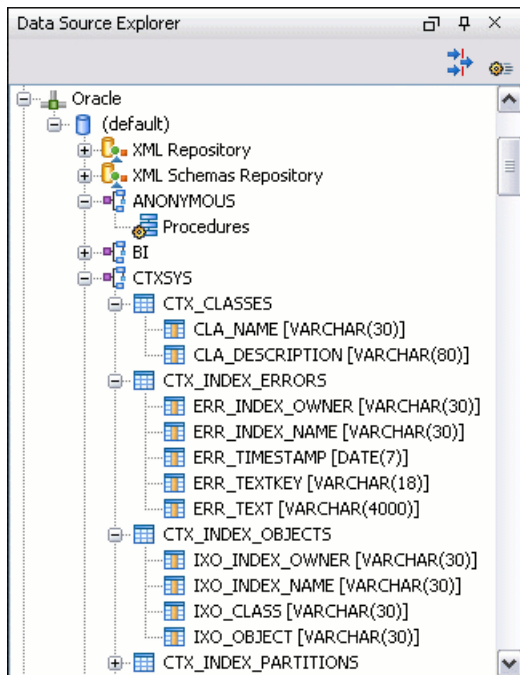
1. Go to *Preferences -> Data Sources*. In the Connections panel click the *New* button.
2. Enter a unique name for this connection and select one of the previously configured PostgreSQL data sources from the Data Source combo box.
3. Fill-in the Connection Details:

|          |   |
|----------|---|
| URL      | URL to the installed PostgreSQL engine.             |
| User     | User name to access the PostgreSQL database engine. |
| Password | Password to access the PostgreSQL engine.           |
4. Click *OK*.









## Resource Management

### Data Source Explorer View



This view presents in a tree-like fashion the database connections configured in *Preferences -> Data Sources*. You can connect to a database simply by expanding the connection node. The database structure can be expanded up to column level. <oxygen/> supports multiple simultaneous database connections and the connections tree provides an easy way to browse them.

**Figure 14.3. Data Source Explorer View**

The following objects are displayed by the Data Source Explorer view:



-  Connection
-  Catalog
-  XML Schema Repository
-  XML Schema Component
-  Schema
-  Table
-  System Table
-  Table Column

The following actions are available in the view's toolbar:


- The  Filters button opens the *Data Sources / Table Filters* Preferences page, allowing you to decide which table types will be displayed in the *Data Source Explorer* view.
- The  Configure Database Sources button opens the *Data Sources* preferences page where you can configure both data sources and connections.

Below you can find a description of the contextual menu actions available on the Data Source Explorer levels. Please note that you can also open an XML schema component in the editor by double-clicking it. To view the content of a table in the Table Explorer view double-click one of its fields.


### Actions available at connection level

-  Refresh - performs a refresh of the selected node's subtree.
-  Configure Database Sources - opens the *Data Sources* preferences page where you can configure both data sources and connections.




### Actions available at catalog level

-  Refresh - performs a refresh of the selected node's subtree.

### Actions available at schema level

-  Refresh - performs a refresh of the selected node's subtree.


### Actions available at table level

-  Refresh - performs a refresh of the selected node's subtree.
-  Edit - opens the selected table in the *Table Explorer* View.
-  Export to XML - opens the Export Criteria dialog .


### XML Schema Repository level

For relational databases that support XML schema repository (XSR) in their database catalogs, the actions available at this level are presented in the following sections.

#### Oracle's XML Schema Repository Level

-  Refresh - performs a refresh of the selected node's subtree.
- Register - Opens a dialog for adding a new schema file in the DB XML repository. To add an XML Schema, enter the schema URI and location on your file system. Local scope means that the schema will be visible only to the user who registers it. Global scope means that the schema is public.

#### IBM DB2's XML Schema Repository Level

-  Refresh - performs a refresh of the selected node's subtree.
- Register - opens a dialog for adding a new schema file in the XML Schema repository. In this dialog the following fields can be set:
  - *XML schema file* - location on your file system.
  - *XSR name* - schema name.
  - *Comment* - short comment (optional).
  - *Schema location* - primary schema name (optional).

Decomposition means that parts of the XML documents are stored into relational tables. Which parts map to which tables and columns is specified into the schema annotations.

Schema dependencies management is done by using the *Add* and *Remove* buttons.

Actions available at schema level:

- Refresh - performs a refresh of the selected node (and it's subtree).
- Unregister - removes the selected schema from the XML Schema Repository.
- View - opens the selected schema in <oxygen/>.

### Microsoft SQL Server's XML Schema Repository Level

- Refresh - performs a refresh of the selected node's subtree.
- Register - Opens a dialog for adding a new schema file in the DB XML repository. In this dialog you enter a collection name and the necessary schema files. XML Schema files management is done by using the *Add* and *Remove* buttons.

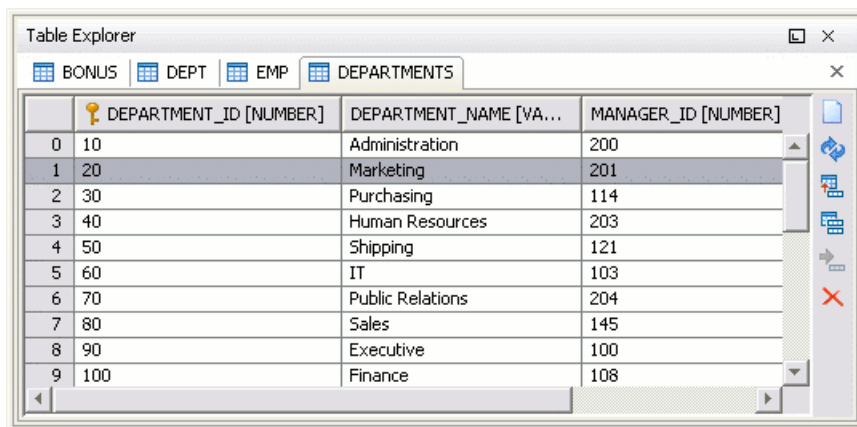
Actions available at schema level:

- Refresh - performs a refresh of the selected node (and it's subtree).
- Add - adds a new schema to the XML Schema files.
- Unregister - removes the selected schema from the XML Schema Repository.
- View - opens the selected schema in <oxygen/>.

## Table Explorer View

Every table from the Data Source Explorer can be displayed and edited by pressing the *Edit* button from the contextual menu or by double-clicking one of its fields. To modify a cell's content, double click it and start typing. When editing is finished, <oxygen/> will try to update the database with the new cell content.

**Figure 14.4. The Table Explorer View**




The screenshot shows a window titled 'Table Explorer' with a tab for 'DEPARTMENTS'. The table contains the following data:

|   | DEPARTMENT_ID [NUMBER] | DEPARTMENT_NAME [VA... | MANAGER_ID [NUMBER] |
|---|------------------------|------------------------|---------------------|
| 0 | 10                     | Administration         | 200                 |
| 1 | 20                     | Marketing              | 201                 |
| 2 | 30                     | Purchasing             | 114                 |
| 3 | 40                     | Human Resources        | 203                 |
| 4 | 50                     | Shipping               | 121                 |
| 5 | 60                     | IT                     | 103                 |
| 6 | 70                     | Public Relations       | 204                 |
| 7 | 80                     | Sales                  | 145                 |
| 8 | 90                     | Executive              | 100                 |
| 9 | 100                    | Finance                | 108                 |

You can sort the content of a table by one of its columns by clicking on its (column) header.

Note the following:

- The first column is an index (does not belong to the table structure).

- Every column header contains the field name and its data type.
- The primary key columns are marked with this symbol:  .
- Multiple tables are presented in a tabbed manner

For performance issues, you can set the maximum number of cells that will be displayed in the Table Explorer view ( the "Limit the number of cells" field from the Data Sources Preferences page ). If a table having more cells than the value set in <oXygen/>'s options is displayed in the Table Explorer view, a warning dialog will inform you that the table is only partially shown.

### Note

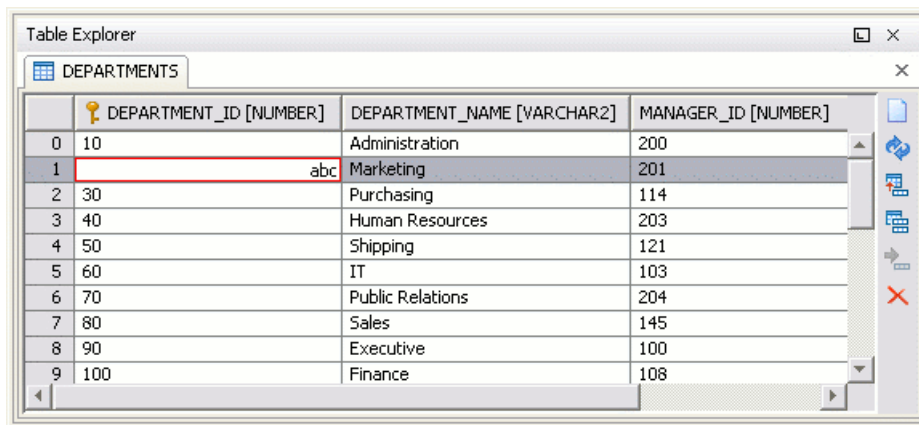
A custom validator cannot be applied on files loaded through an <oXygen/> custom protocol plugin developed independently and added to <oXygen/> after installation. This applies also on columns of type XML.


You will be notified if the value you have entered in a cell is not valid ( and thus it cannot be updated).

- If the content of the edited cell does not belong to the data type of the column, the cell will be marked by a red square and it will remain in editing state until a correct value is inserted.

For example, in the above figure *DEPARTMENT\_ID* contains *NUMBER* values. If a character or string was inserted, the cell will look like this:

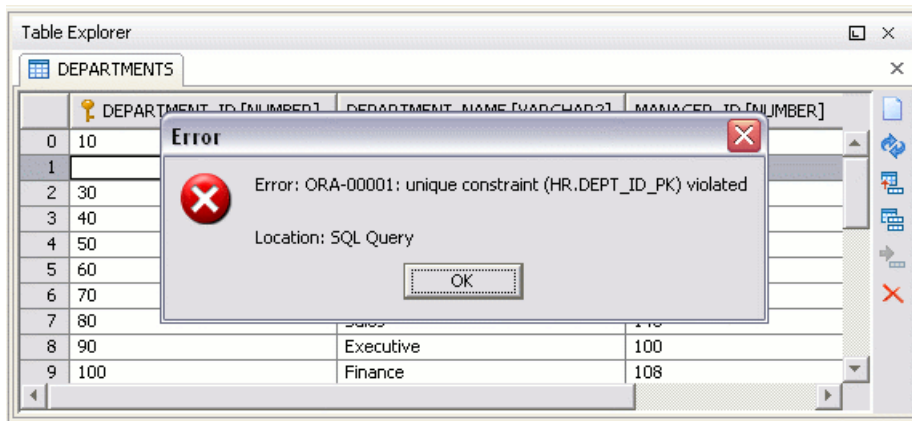
**Figure 14.5. Cell containing an invalid value.**



|   |  DEPARTMENT_ID [NUMBER] | DEPARTMENT_NAME [VARCHAR2] | MANAGER_ID [NUMBER] |
|---|--|----------------------------|---------------------|
| 0 | 10   | Administration             | 200                 |
| 1 | abc  | Marketing                  | 201                 |
| 2 | 30   | Purchasing                 | 114                 |
| 3 | 40   | Human Resources            | 203                 |
| 4 | 50   | Shipping                   | 121                 |
| 5 | 60   | IT                         | 103                 |
| 6 | 70   | Public Relations           | 204                 |
| 7 | 80   | Sales                      | 145                 |
| 8 | 90   | Executive                  | 100                 |
| 9 | 100  | Finance                    | 108                 |

- If the constraints of the database are not met (like primary key constraints for example), an Information dialog will appear, notifying you of the reason the database has not been updated.

For example, if you'd try to set the primary key *DEPARTMENT\_ID* for the second record in the table to 10 also, you would get the following message:

**Figure 14.6. Duplicate entry for primary key**

The usual edit actions (Cut, Copy, Paste, Select All, Undo, Redo) are available in the popup menu of the edited cell

The contextual menu available on every cell has the following actions:

- Set NULL - sets the content of the cell to (null). This action is disabled for columns that cannot be null.
- Insert row - inserts an empty row in the table.
- Duplicate row - makes a copy of the selected row and adds it in the Table Explorer view. You should note that the new row will not be inserted in the database table until all conflicts are solved.
- Commit row - commits the selected row.
- Delete row - deletes the selected row.
- Copy - copies the content of the cell.
- Paste - performs paste in the selected cell

Some of the above actions are also available on the Table Explorer toolbar:

- Export to XML - opens the Export Criteria dialog .
- Refresh - performs a refresh of the selected node's subtree.
- Insert row - inserts an empty row in the table.
- Duplicate row - makes a copy of the selected row and adds it in the Table Explorer view. You should note that the new row will not be inserted in the database table until all conflicts are solved.
- Commit row - commits the selected row.
- Delete row - deletes the selected row.

# Native XML Database (NXD) Support

Native XML databases have an XML-based internal model and their fundamental unit of storage is XML. <oxygen/> offers support for: Berkeley DB XML, eXist, MarkLogic, Software AG Tamino, Raining Data TigerLogic, Documentum xDb (X-Hive/DB) and Oracle XML DB.

## Configuring Database Data Sources

This section presents a set of procedures describing how to configure NXD data sources.

### How to configure a Berkeley DB XML datasource

The latest instructions on how to configure Berkeley DB XML support in <oxygen/> can be found on our website [<http://www.oxygenxml.com/doc/ug-oxygen/native-xml-database-support.html#configure-berkeley-datasource>].

<oxygen/> supports Berkeley DB XML versions 2.3.10, 2.4.13 & 2.4.16. The following directory definitions shall apply:

- OXY\_DIR - <oxygen/> installation root directory. (for example on Windows C:\Program Files\Oxygen 11.2)
- DBXML\_DIR - Berkeley DB XML database root directory. (for example on Windows C:\Program Files\Sleepycat Software\Berkeley DB XML <version>)
- DBXML\_LIBRARY\_DIR (usually on Mac and Unix is DBXML\_DIR/lib and on Windows is DBXML\_DIR/bin)

1. Go to *Preferences -> Data Sources*. In the Data Sources panel click the *New* button.
2. Enter a unique name for this data source and select *Berkeley DBXML* from the driver type combo box.
3. Press the Add button to add the following Berkeley DB specific files:
  - db.jar (check for it into DBXML\_DIR/lib or DBXML\_DIR/jar)
  - dbxml.jar (check for it into DBXML\_DIR/lib or DBXML\_DIR/jar)

4. Click *OK* to finish the data source configuration.

### How to configure an eXist datasource

The latest instructions on how to configure eXist support in <oxygen/> can be found on our website [<http://www.oxygenxml.com/doc/ug-oxygen/native-xml-database-support.html#configure-exist-datasource>].

The eXist database server versions supported by <oxygen/> are 1.0, 1.1, 1.2.2, 1.2.4, 1.2.5, 1.3 and 1.4.

1. Go to *Preferences -> Data Sources*. In the Data Sources panel click the *New* button.
2. Enter a unique name for this data source and select *eXist* from the driver type combo box.
3. Press the Add button to add the following eXist specific files which are located in the eXist installation root directory:
  - exist.jar
  - lib/core/xmldb.jar

- lib/core/xmlrpc-client-3.1.1.jar
- lib/core/xmlrpc-common-3.1.1.jar
- lib/core/ws-commons-util-1.0.2.jar

4. Click *OK* to finish the data source configuration.

## How to configure a MarkLogic datasource

The latest instructions on how to configure MarkLogic support in <oXygen/> can be found on our website [<http://www.oxygenxml.com/doc/ug-oxygen/native-xml-database-support.html#configure-marklogic-datasource>].

1. Go to *Preferences -> Data Sources*. In the Data Sources panel click the *New* button.
2. Enter a unique name for this data source and select *MarkLogic* from the driver type combo box.
3. Add the following MarkLogic specific file:

- xcc.jar

In the Download links for database drivers section there are listed the URLs from where to download the drivers necessary for accessing MarkLogic databases in <oXygen/>.

4. Click *OK* to finish the data source configuration.

## How to configure a Software AG Tamino datasource

The latest instructions on how to configure Software AG Tamino support in <oXygen/> can be found on our website [<http://www.oxygenxml.com/doc/ug-oxygen/native-xml-database-support.html#configure-tamino-datasource>].

1. Go to *Preferences -> Data Sources*. In the Data Sources panel click the *New* button.
2. Enter a unique name for this data source and select *Tamino* from the driver type combo box.
3. Using the *Add* button add the following jar files available in the SDK\TaminoAPI4J\lib subdirectory of the Tamino 4.4.1 database install directory:

- TaminoAPI4J.jar
- TaminoAPI4J-110n.jar
- TaminoJCA.jar



### Note

You must use the jar files from the version 4.4.1 of the Tamino database.

4. Click *OK* to finish the data source configuration.

## How to configure a Raining Data TigerLogic datasource

The latest instructions on how to configure TigerLogic support in <oXygen/> can be found on our website [<http://www.oxygenxml.com/doc/ug-oxygen/native-xml-database-support.html#configure-tigerlogic-datasource>].



1. Go to *Preferences -> Data Sources*. In the Data Sources panel click the *New* button.
2. Enter a unique name for this data source and select *TigerLogic* from the driver type combo box.
3. Add the following TigerLogic specific files (found in the TigerLogic JDK lib directory from the server side):
  - `connector.jar`
  - `jca-connector.jar`
  - `tlapi.jar`
  - `tlerror.jar`
  - `utility.jar`
  - `xmlparser.jar`
  - `xmltypes.jar`
4. Click *OK* to finish the data source configuration.

## How to configure a Documentum xDb (X-Hive/DB) datasource

The latest instructions on how to configure support for Documentum xDb (X-Hive/DB) versions 8 and 9 in <Oxygen/> can be found on our website [<http://www.oxygenxml.com/doc/ug-oxygen/native-xml-database-support.html#configure-xhive-datasource>].

1. Go to *Preferences -> Data Sources*. In the Data Sources panel click the *New* button.
2. Enter a unique name for this data source and select *Documentum xDb (X-Hive/DB)* from the driver type combo box.
3. Add the following Documentum xDb (X-Hive/DB) specific files (found in the Documentum xDb (X-Hive/DB) lib directory from the server side):
  - `antlr-runtime-3.0.1.jar`
  - `icu4j.jar`
  - `xhive.jar`
  - `google-collect.jar` (only for X-Hive 9)
4. Click *OK* to finish the data source configuration.

## Configuring Database Connections

This section presents a set of procedures describing how to configure connections that use Native XML Database data sources.

### How to configure a Berkeley DB XML Connection

<Oxygen/> supports Berkeley DB XML versions 2.3.10, 2.4.13 & 2.4.16.

1. Go to *Preferences -> Data Sources*. In the Connections panel click the *New* button.
2. Enter a unique name for this connection and select one of the previously configured Berkeley data sources from the Data Source combo box.
3. Fill-in the Connection Details:

|                            |  |
|----------------------------|--|
| Environment home directory | Path to the Berkeley DB XML's home directory.  |
| Verbosity                  | The user can choose between four levels of verbosity: DEBUG, INFO, WARNING, ERROR.   |
| Join existing environment  | If checked, an attempt will be made to join an existing environment in the specified home directory and all the original environment settings will be preserved. If that fails, you should consider reconfiguring the connection with this option unchecked. |
4. Click *OK*.

## How to configure an eXist Connection

1. Go to *Preferences -> Data Sources*. In the Connections panel click the *New* button.
2. Enter a unique name for this connection and select one of the previously configured eXist data sources from the Data Source combo box.
3. Fill-in the Connection Details

|            |   |
|------------|---|
| XML DB URI | URI to the installed eXist engine.  |
| User       | User name to access the eXist database engine.  |
| Password   | Password to access the eXist database engine.   |
| Collection | eXist organizes all documents in hierarchical collections. Collections are like directories. They are used to group related documents together. This text field allows the user to set the default collection name. |
4. Click *OK*.

## How to configure a MarkLogic Connection

1. Go to *Preferences -> Data Sources*. In the Connections panel click the *New* button.
2. Enter a unique name for this connection and select one of the previously configured MarkLogic data sources from the Data Source combo box.
3. Fill-in the Connection Details:

|           |  |
|-----------|--|
| XDBC Host | The host name or ip address of the installed MarkLogic engine. |
|-----------|--|

Oxygen uses XCC connector to interact with MarkLogic XDBC server and requires the basic authentication schema to be set. Starting with version MarkLogic 4.0 the default authentication

method when you create a HTTP or WebDAV Server is digest, so make sure to change it to basic.

|            |   |
|------------|---|
| Port       | The port number of the MarkLogic engine.  |
| User       | User name to access the MarkLogic engine.   |
| Password   | Password to access the MarkLogic engine.  |
| WebDAV URL | The url used for browsing the MarkLogic database in the Data Source Explorer view. (optional) |

4. Click *OK*.

## How to configure a Software AG Tamino Connection

1. Go to *Preferences -> Data Sources*. In the Connections panel click the *New* button.
2. Enter a unique name for this connection and select one of the previously configured Tamino data sources from the Data Source combo box.
3. Fill-in the Connection Details:

|                         |  |
|-------------------------|--|
| XML DB URI              | URI to the installed Tamino engine   |
| User                    | User name to access the Tamino database engine   |
| Password                | Password to access the Tamino database engine  |
| Database                | The name of the database to access from the Tamino database engine. Choose the <i>Select</i> button to display all databases on the specified server in an additional dialog box. You can then choose the desired database. This feature works only with databases that have been created starting with version 4.2.1. In all other cases, a message appears saying that a list of databases is not available. |
| Show system collections | Check this if you want to see the Tamino system collections in the Data Source Explorer.   |

4. Click *OK*.

## How to configure a Raining Data TigerLogic Connection

1. Go to *Preferences -> Data Sources*. In the Connections panel click the *New* button.
2. Enter a unique name for this connection and select one of the previously configured TigerLogic data sources from the Data Source combo box.
3. Fill-in the Connection Details:

|      |   |
|------|---|
| Host | The host name or ip address of the installed TigerLogic engine. |
| Port | The port number of the TigerLogic engine.                       |
| User | User name to access the TigerLogic engine.                      |

- Password Password to access the TigerLogic engine.
- Database The name of the database to access from the TigerLogic engine.

4. Click *OK*.

## How to configure an Documentum xDb (X-Hive/DB) Connection

1. Go to *Preferences -> Data Sources*. In the Connections panel click the *New* button.
2. Enter a unique name for this connection and select one of the previously configured Documentum xDb (X-Hive/DB) data sources from the Data Source combo box.
3. Fill-in the Connection Details:

- URL The URL property for Documentum xDb (X-Hive/DB) connection.  
 If the property is a URL of the form `xhive://host:port`, the Documentum xDb (X-Hive/DB) connection will attempt to connect to an Documentum xDb (X-Hive/DB) server running behind the specified TCP/IP port.
- User User name to access the Documentum xDb (X-Hive/DB) database engine.
- Password Password to access the Documentum xDb (X-Hive/DB) database engine.
- Database The name of the database to access from the Documentum xDb (X-Hive/DB) database engine.
- Run XQuery in read/write session (with committing) If checked the Documentum xDb (X-Hive/DB) session ends with a commit, otherwise it ends with a rollback.



4. Click *OK*.



## Resource Management

### Data Source Explorer View

This view presents in a tree-like fashion the database connections configured in *Preferences -> Data Sources*. You can connect to a database simply by expanding the connection node. The database structure can be expanded up to column level. `<oxygen/>` supports multiple simultaneous database connections and the connections tree provides an easy way to browse them.

Some of the basic components employed by the XML:DB API are collections and resources, and they appear in the tree sorted in alphabetical order.




A  collection is a hierarchical container for  resources and further sub-collections.

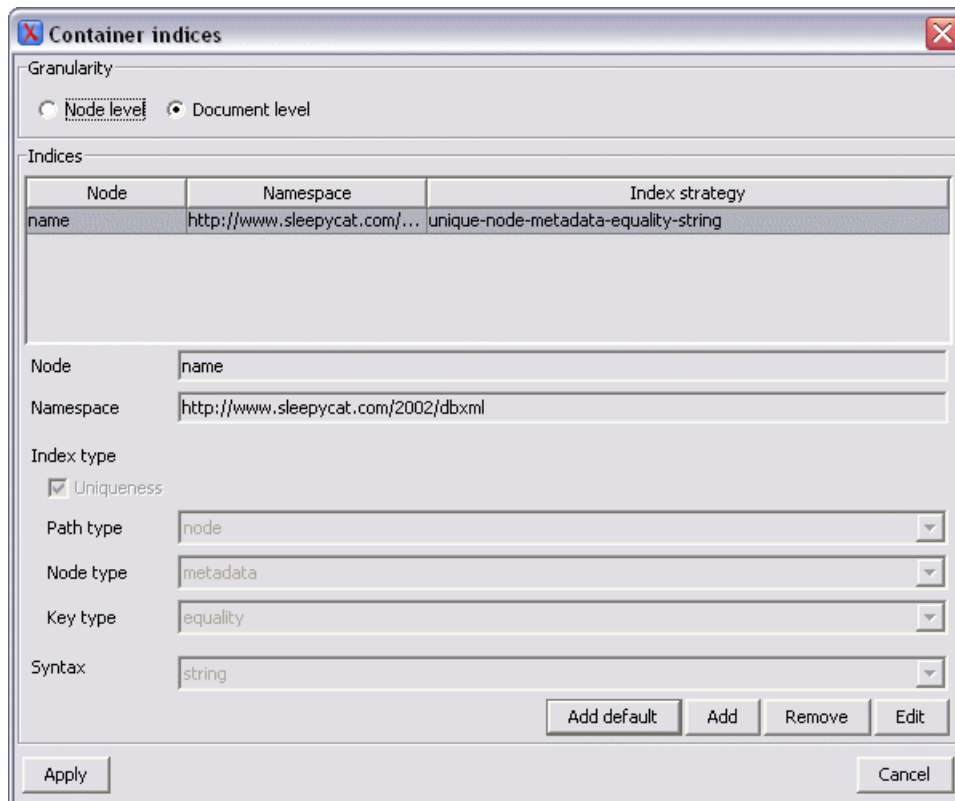
There are two types of resources:  XML resource and  non XML resource . An *XML resource* represents an xml document or a document fragment, selected by a previously executed XPath query.



|                          |  |
|--------------------------|--|
| Node container           | Xml documents are stored as individual nodes in the container. That is, each record in the underlying database contains a single leaf node, its attributes and attribute values if any, and its text nodes, if any. BDB XML also keeps the information it needs to reassemble the document from the individual nodes stored in the underlying databases. This is the default, and preferred, container type. |
| Whole document container | The container contains entire documents; the documents are stored without any manipulation of line breaks or whitespace.   |
| Allow validation         | If checked it causes documents to be validated when they are loaded into the container. The default behavior is to not validate documents.   |
| Index nodes              | If checked it causes indices for the container to return nodes rather than documents. The default is to index at the document level. This property has no meaning if the container type is whole document container.   |

#### Actions available at container level




-  Refresh - performs a refresh of the selected node's subtree.
-  Add Resource - adds a new XML resource to the selected container.
- Rename - allows you to specify a new name for the selected container.
-  Delete - removes the selected container from the database tree.
- Edit indices - allows you to edit the indices for the selected container.

**Figure 14.8. Container indices**

- Specifying the granularity:
  - Document granularity is good for retrieving large documents
  - Node granularity is good for retrieving nodes from within documents
- Adding/editing indices:
  - Node - the node name
  - Namespace - the index namespace
  - Index strategy:
    - Index type:
      - Uniqueness - indicates whether the indexed value must be unique within the container
    - Path type:
      - node - indicates that you want to index a single node in the path
      - edge - indicates that you want to index the portion of the path where two nodes meet
    - Node type:
      - element - an element node in the document content



- attribute - an attribute node in the document content
- metadata - a node found only in a document's metadata content.
- Key type:
  - equality - improves the performances of tests that look for nodes with a specific value
  - presence - improves the performances of tests that look for the existence of a node regardless of its value
  - substring - improves the performance of tests that look for a node whose value contains a given substring
- Syntax types - the syntax describes what sort of data the index will contain and is mostly used to determine how indexed values are compared

### Actions available at resource level




-  Refresh - performs a refresh of the selected resource.
-  Open - opens the selected resource in the editor.
- Rename - allows you to change the name of the selected resource.
- Move - allows you to move the selected resource in a different container in the database tree (also available through drag and drop).
-  Delete - removes the selected resource from the container.
- Copy location - allows you to copy to clipboard an application specific URL for the resource which can then be used for various actions like opening or transforming the resources.

### eXist Connection

#### Actions available at connection level

-  Refresh - performs a refresh of the selected node's subtree.
-  Configure Database Sources - opens the *Data Sources* preferences page where you can configure both data sources and connections.

#### Actions available at container level

-  Refresh - performs a refresh of the selected node's subtree.
-  Add Resource - adds a new XML resource to the selected container.
- Add Container - creates a new collection in the selected one.
-  Delete - removes the selected collection.
- Rename - allows you to change the name of the selected collection.
- Move - allows you to move the selected collection in a different location in the database tree (also available through drag and drop).



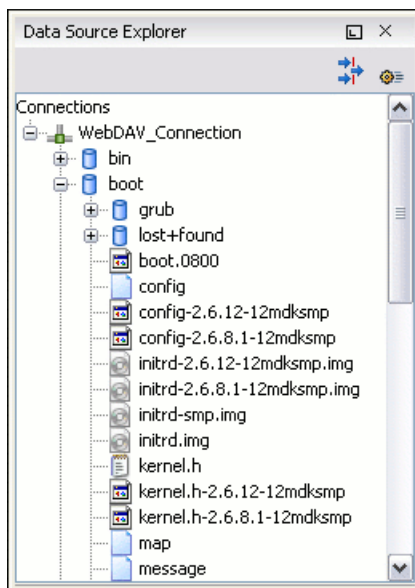
### Actions available at resource level

- Refresh - performs a refresh of the selected resource.
- Open - opens the selected resource in the editor.
- Rename - allows you to change the name of the selected resource.
- Move - allows you to move the selected resource in a different collection in the database tree (also available through drag and drop).
- Delete - removes the selected resource from the collection.
- Copy location - allows you to copy to clipboard an application specific URL for the resource which can then be used for various actions like opening or transforming the resources.
- Properties - allows the user to view various useful properties associated with the resource.
- Save As - allows you to save the name of the selected binary resource as a file on disk.

## WebDAV Connection

This section presents the procedure used to configure a WebDAV connection in the Data Source Explorer.

**Figure 14.9. The Data Source Explorer view**



<oXygen/>'s default configuration already contains a WebDAV data source called *WebDAV*.

## How to Configure a WebDAV Connection

1. Go to *Preferences -> Data Sources*. In the *Connections* panel click the *New* button.
2. Enter a unique name for this connection and select one of the *WebDAV* data source from the *Data Source* combo box.




3. Fill-in the Connection Details:

|               |  |
|---------------|--|
| WebDAV<br>URL | URL to the WebDAV repository.              |
| User          | User name to access the WebDAV repository. |
| Password      | Password to access the WebDAV repository.  |




4. Click *OK*.

## WebDAV connection actions



### Actions available at connection level



-  Configure Database Sources - opens the *Data Sources* preferences page where you can configure both data sources and connections.
- Add container - allows you to create a new folder.
-  Add Resource ... - allows you to add a new file on the server.
- Add Container ... - allows you to create a new folder on the server.
-  Refresh - performs a refresh of the connection.

### Actions available at folder level

- Add container - allows you to create a new folder.
-  Add Resource - allows you to add a new file on the server in the current folder.
- Rename - allows you to change the name of the selected folder.
- Move - allows you to move the selected folder in a different location in the tree (also available through drag and drop).
-  Delete - removes the selected folder.
-  Refresh - performs a refresh of the selected node's subtree.

### Actions available at file level

-  Open - allows you to open the selected file in the editor.
- Unlock - remove the lock from the current file in the database.
- Rename - allows you to change the name of the selected file.
- Move - allows you to move the selected file in a different location in the tree (also available through drag and drop).
-  Delete - removes the selected file.

- Copy location - allows you to copy to clipboard an application specific URL for the resource which can then be used for various actions like opening or transforming the resources.
-  Refresh - performs a refresh of the selected node.
-  Properties - displays the properties of the current file in a dialog like the following:

---

# Chapter 15. Content Management System (CMS) Integration

## Documentum (CMS) Support

<oXygen/> provides support for browsing and managing Documentum repositories in the Data Source Explorer. You can easily create new resources on the repository, copy or move them using the actions or the drag and drop support, edit and transform the documents in the editor. The operations that can be performed on repository resources are described in the Documentum (CMS) actions section.

<oXygen/> supports Documentum (CMS) version 6.5 and above with Documentum Foundation Services 6.5 or later installed.



### Note

The Documentum (CMS) support is available only in the Enterprise version.



### Warning

It is recommended to use the latest 1.5.x or 1.6.x java version. It is possible that the Documentum (CMS) support will not work properly if you use other java versions.



### Warning

Please note that at the time of this implementation there is a problem in the UCF Client implementation for MAC OS X which prevents you from viewing or editing XML documents from the repository. The UCF Client is the component responsible for file transfer between the repository and the local machine. This component is deployed automatically from the server.

## How to configure Documentum (CMS) support

This section presents the procedure used to configure a Documentum (CMS) data source and connection in the Data Source Explorer.

To connect to a Documentum Content Server repository you need to configure a data source and a connection.

### How to configure a Documentum (CMS) data source

To configure a Documentum (CMS) data source you need the Documentum Foundation Services Software Development Kit (DFS SDK). The DFS SDK can be found in the Documentum (CMS) server installation kit or it can be downloaded from EMC Community Network [[https://developer-content.emc.com/downloads/documentum\\_ucf\\_dfs.htm](https://developer-content.emc.com/downloads/documentum_ucf_dfs.htm)]. The DFS SDK comes as an archive named *emc-dfs-sdk-6.5.zip*.

1. Go to *Preferences -> Data Sources*. In the Data Sources panel click the *New* button.
2. Enter a unique name for this data source and select *Documentum CMS* from the driver type combo box.
3. Press the *Choose DFS SDK Folder* button and select the folder where you have unpacked the DFS SDK archive file, *emc-dfs-sdk-6.5.zip*. If you have indicated the correct folder the following jar files will be added to the list:

- lib/java/emc-bpm-services-remote.jar
- lib/java/emc-ci-services-remote.jar
- lib/java/emc-collaboration-services-remote.jar
- lib/java/emc-dfs-rt-remote.jar
- lib/java/emc-dfs-services-remote.jar
- lib/java/emc-dfs-tools.jar
- lib/java/emc-search-services-remote.jar
- lib/java/ucf/client/ucf-installer.jar
- lib/java/commons/\*.jar (multiple jar files)
- lib/java/jaxws/\*.jar (multiple jar files)
- lib/java/utils/\*.jar (multiple jar files)



### Note

If for some reason the jar files are not found you can add them manually by using the *Add Files* and *Add Recursively* buttons and navigating to the 'lib/java' folder from the DFS SDK.

4. Click *OK* to finish the data source configuration.

## How to configure a Documentum (CMS) connection

1. Go to *Preferences -> Data Sources*. In the Connections panel click the *New* button.
2. Enter a unique name for this connection and select one of the previously configured Documentum (CMS) data sources from the Data Source combo box.
3. Fill-in the Connection Details

|            |   |
|------------|---|
| URL        | URL to the Documentum (CMS): http://<hostname>:<port> |
| User       | User name to access the Documentum (CMS) repository.  |
| Password   | Password to access the Documentum (CMS) repository.   |
| Repository | The name of the repository to log into.               |

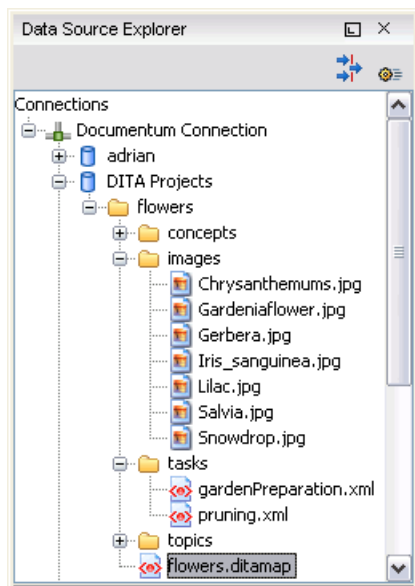
4. Click *OK*.

## Documentum (CMS) actions




<oXygen/> allows the user to browse the structure of a Documentum repository in the *Data Source Explorer* view and perform various operations on the repository resources.

You can drag and drop folders/resources to other folders to perform Move/Copy operations with ease. If the drag and drop is between resources you can create a relationship between the respective resources (Drag the child item to the parent item).


**Figure 15.1. Browsing a Documentum repository**







## Actions available on connection


-  Configure Database Sources - Opens the *Data Sources* preferences page where you can configure both data sources and connections.
-  New Cabinet - Creates a new cabinet in the repository.  
Type        The type of the new cabinet (default is dm\_cabinet).  
Name        The name of the new cabinet.  
Title        The title property of the cabinet.  
Subject     The subject property of the cabinet.
-  Refresh - Performs a refresh of the connection.

## Actions available on cabinets/folders

-  New Folder - Creates a new folder in the current cabinet/folder.  
Path        Shows the path where the new folder will be created.  
Type        The type of the new folder (default is dm\_folder).  
Name        The name of the new folder.  
Title        The title property of the folder.

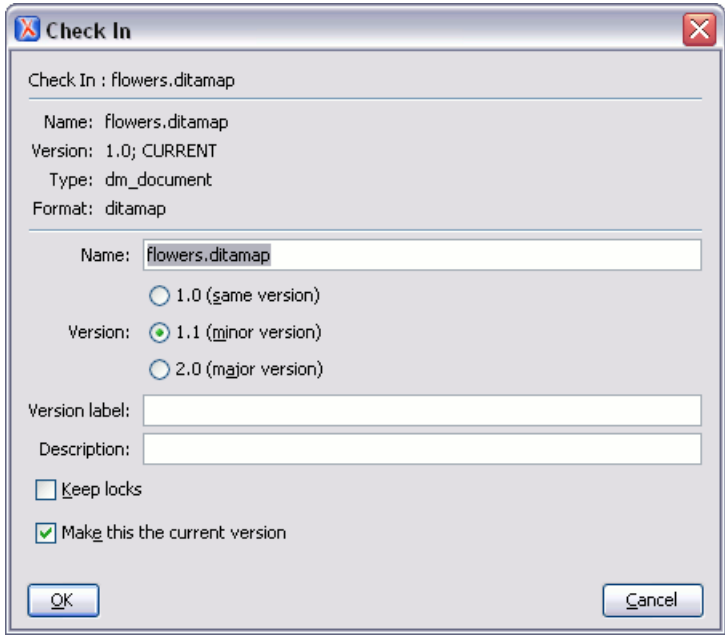
- Subject     The subject property of the folder.
-  New Document - Creates a new document in the current cabinet/folder.
- Path        Shows the path where the new document will be created.
- Name        The name of the new document.
- Type        The type of the new document (default is dm\_document).
- Format      The document content type format.
- Import - Imports local files/folders in the selected cabinet/folder from the repository.
- Add Files       Shows a file browse dialog and allows you to select files to add to the list.
- Add Folders     Shows a folder browse dialog that allows you to select folders to add to the list. The subfolders will be added recursively.
- Edit         Shows a dialog where you can change the properties of the selected file/folder from the list.
- Remove        Removes the selected files/folders from the list.
- Rename - Changes the name of the selected cabinet/folder.
  - Copy - Copies the selected folder to a different location in the tree (available only upon folders). This action can also be performed with drag and drop while holding the Ctrl key pressed.
  - Move - Moves the selected folder to a different location in the tree (available only upon folders). This action can also be performed with drag and drop.
  -  Delete - Deletes the selected cabinet/folder from the repository.
- The following options are available:
- |                     |   |
|---------------------|---|
| Folder(s)           | Allows you to delete only the selected folder or to delete recursively the folder and all subfolders and objects.   |
| Version(s)          | Allows you to specify what versions of the resources will be deleted.   |
| Virtual document(s) | Here you can specify what happens when virtual documents are encountered. They can be either deleted either by themselves or together with their descendants. |
-  Refresh - Performs a refresh of the selected node's subtree.
  -  Properties - Displays the list of properties of the selected cabinet/folder.

## Actions available on resources

-  Edit - Checks out (if not already checked out) and opens the selected object in the editor.
- Edit with - Checks out (if not already checked out) and opens the selected object in the specified editor/tool.
- Open (Read-only) - Opens the selected object in the editor for viewing. The files are marked as read-only in the editor using a lock icon on the file tab. If you want to edit those files you must enable the Can edit read only files option.

- Open with - Opens the selected object in the specified editor/tool for viewing.
- Check Out - Checks out the selected object from the repository. The action is not available if the object is already checked out.
- Check In - Checks in the selected object(commits changes) into the repository. The action is only available if the object is checked out.




**Figure 15.2. Check In Dialog**



|                               |  |
|-------------------------------|--|
| Name                          | The name the file will have on the repository.   |
| Version                       | Allows you to choose what version the object will have after being checked in.                           |
| Version label                 | The label of the updated version.  |
| Description                   | An optional description of the file.   |
| Keep Locks                    | If checked the updated file is checked into the repository but it is also kept checked out in your name. |
| Make this the current version | Makes the updated file the current version(will have the CURRENT version label).                         |

- Cancel Checkout - Cancels the check out and loses all modifications since the check out. Action is only available if the object is checked out.
- Export - Allows you to export the object and save it locally.
- Rename - Changes the name of the selected object.
- Copy - Copies the selected object to a different location in the tree. Action is not available on virtual document descendants. This action can also be performed with drag and drop while holding the Ctrl key pressed.



- Move - Moves the selected object to a different location in the tree. Action is not available on virtual document descendants and on checked out objects. This action can also be performed with drag and drop.
-  Delete - Deletes the selected object from the repository. Action is not available on virtual document descendants and on checked out objects.
- Add Relationship - Adds a new relationship for the selected object. This action can also be performed with drag and drop between objects.
- Convert to Virtual Document - Allows you to convert a simple document to a virtual document. Action is available only if the object is a simple document.
- Convert to Simple Document - Allows you to convert a virtual document to a simple document. Action is available only if the object is a virtual document with no descendants.
- Copy location - Allows you to copy to clipboard an application specific URL for the object which can then be used for various actions like opening or transforming the resources.
-  Refresh - Performs a refresh of the selected object.
-  Properties - Displays the list of properties of the selected object.

## DITA transformations on DITA content from Documentum

<oXygen/> comes with the DITA Open Toolkit which is able to transform a DITA map to various output formats. However DITA Open Toolkit requires local DITA files so first you need to check out a local version of your DITA content. Once you have a local version of a DITA map just load it in the DITA Maps Manager view and run one of the DITA transformations that are predefined in <oXygen/> or a customization of such a predefined DITA transformation.

### Note

The DITA files checked out from the Documentum CMS add the *dctm* namespace which is not supported by the DITA DTDs. You need to set the *validate* parameter to *false* in your DITA transformation in order to avoid the validation error that would be reported at the beginning of the DITA transformation if the *validate* parameter keeps the default value *true*.

---

# Chapter 16. Digital signature

## Overview

Digital signatures are widely used as security tokens, not just in XML.

A digital signature provides a mechanism for assuring integrity of data, the authentication of its signer, and the nonrepudiation of the entire signature to an external party.

- a digital signature must provide a way to verify that the data has not been modified or replaced to ensure integrity.
- the signature must provide a way to establish the identity of the data's signer for authentication.
- the signature must provide the ability for the data's integrity and authentication to be provable to a third party for nonrepudiation.

A public key system is used to create the digital signature and it's also used for verification. The signature binds the signer to the document because digitally signing a document requires the originator to create a hash of the message and then encrypt that hash value with his own private key. Only the originator has that private key and he is the only one can encrypt the hash so that it can be unencrypted using his public key. The recipient, upon receiving both the message and the encrypted hash value, can decrypt the hash value, knowing the originator's public key. The recipient must also try to generate the hash value of the message and compare the newly generated hash value with the unencrypted hash value received from the originator. If the hash values are identical, it proves that the originator created the message, because only the actual originator could encrypt the hash value correctly.

XML Signatures can be applied to any digital content (data object), including XML (see W3C Recommendation, XML-Signature Syntax and Processing [<http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlsig-core/>]). An XML Signature may be applied to the content of one or more resources.

- Enveloped or enveloping signatures are over data within the same XML document as the signature.
- Detached signatures are over data external to the signature element; the signature is "detached" from the content it signs. This definition typically applies to separate data objects, but it also includes the instance where the Signature and data object reside within the same XML document but are sibling elements.

The XML Signature is a method of associating a key with referenced data; it does not normatively specify how keys are associated with persons or institutions, nor the meaning of the data being referenced and signed.

The original data is not actually signed; instead, the signature is applied to the output of a chain of canonicalization and transformation algorithms, which are applied to the data in a designated sequence. This system provides the flexibility to accommodate whatever "normalization" or desired preprocessing of the data that might be required or desired before subjecting it to being signed.

To canonicalize something means to put it in a standard format that everyone generally uses. Because the signature is dependent on the content it is signing, a signature produced from a not canonicalized document could possibly be different from one produced from a canonicalized document. The canonical form of an XML document is physical representation of the document produced by the method described in this specification. The term canonical XML refers to XML that is in canonical form. The XML canonicalization method is the algorithm defined by this specification that generates the canonical form of a given XML document or document subset. The term XML canonicalization refers to the process of applying the XML canonicalization method to an XML document or document subset. XML canonicalization is designed to be useful to applications that require the ability to test whether the information content of a document or document subset has been changed. This is done by comparing the canonical form of the original document before application processing with the canonical form of the document result of the application processing.

A digital signature over the canonical form of an XML document or document subset would allow the signature digest calculations to be oblivious to changes in the original document's physical representation. During signature generation, the digest is computed over the canonical form of the document. The document is then transferred to the relying party, which validates the signature by reading the document and computing a digest of the canonical form of the received document. The equivalence of the digests computed by the signing and relying parties (and hence the equivalence of the canonical forms over which they were computed) ensures that the information content of the document has not been altered since it was signed.

The following canonicalization algorithms are used in <oxygen>: Canonical XML (or Inclusive XML Canonicalization)(XMLC14N [<http://www.w3.org/TR/2001/REC-xml-c14n-20010315>]) and Exclusive XML Canonicalization(EX-CC14N [<http://www.w3.org/TR/2002/REC-xml-exc-c14n-20020718/>]). The first is used for XML where the context doesn't change while the second was designed for canonicalization where the context might change.

Inclusive Canonicalization copies all the declarations, even if they are defined outside of the scope of the signature. In this way all the declarations you might use will be unambiguously specified. A problem appears when the signed XML is moved into another XML document which has other declarations because the Inclusive Canonicalization will copy them and the signature will be invalid.

Exclusive Canonicalization finds out what namespaces you are actually using (the ones that are a part of the XML syntax) and just copies those. It does not look into attribute values or element content, so the namespace declarations required to process these are not copied.

This type of canonicalization is useful when you have a signed XML document that you wish to insert into other XML documents and it will insure the signature verifies correctly every time, so it is required when you need self-signed structures that support placement within different XML contexts.

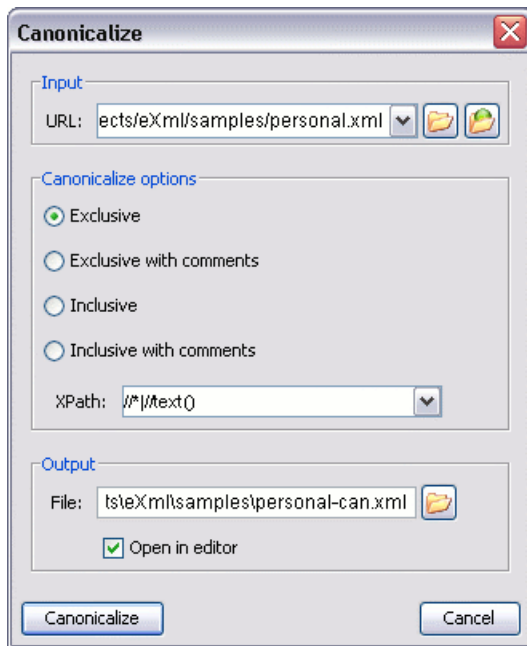
Inclusive Canonicalization is useful when it is less likely that the signed data will be inserted in other XML document and it's the safer method from the security perspective because it requires no knowledge of the data that are to be secured in order to safely sign them.

The canonicalization method can specify whether or not comments should be included in the canonical form output by the XML canonicalization method. If a canonical form contains comments corresponding to the comment nodes in the input node-set, the result is called canonical XML with comments. In an uncommented canonical form comments are removed, including delimiters for comments outside document element.

These three operations: Digital Signing, Canonicalization and Verification of the signature are available from the Tools menu or from the Editor contextual menu->Source.

## Canonicalizing files

The user can select the canonicalization algorithm to be used for his document from the following dialog displayed by the action *Canonicalize* available from editor panel context menu+Source and also from menuTools and from menuDocument+Tools

**Figure 16.1. Canonicalization settings dialog**

|                         |   |
|-------------------------|---|
| URL                     | Specifies the location of the input URL                                       |
| Exclusive               | If selected, the exclusive (uncommented) canonicalization method is used.     |
| Exclusive with comments | If selected, the exclusive with comments canonicalization method is used.     |
| Inclusive               | If selected, the inclusive (uncommented) canonicalization method is used.     |
| Inclusive with comments | If selected, the inclusive with comments canonicalization method is used.     |
| XPath                   | The XPath expression provides the fragments of the XML document to be signed. |
| Output                  | Specifies the output file path where the signed XML document will be saved.   |
| Open in editor          | If checked, the output file will be opened in the editor.                     |

## Certificates

A certificate is a digitally signed statement from the issuer (an individual, an organization, a website or a firm), saying that the public key (and some other information) of some other entity has a particular value. When data is digitally signed, the signature can be verified to check the data integrity and authenticity. Integrity means that the data has not been modified. Authenticity means the data comes indeed from the entity that claims to have created and signed it. Certificates are kept in special repositories called Keystores.

A Keystore is an encrypted file that contains private keys and certificates. All keystore entries (key and trusted certificate entries) are accessed via unique aliases. An alias must be assigned for every new entry of either a key or certificate as a reference for that entity. No Keystore can store an entity if its "alias" already exists in that Keystore and no Keystore can store trusted certificates generated with keys in its Keystore.

In <oxygen/> there are provided two types of keystores: Java Key Store (JKS) and Public-Key Cryptography Standards version 12 (PKCS-12). A keystore file is protected by a password. In a PKCS 12 keystore you should not store a certi-

ificate without alias together with other certificates, with or without alias, as in such a case the certificate without alias cannot be extracted from the keystore.

To set the options for a certificate or to validate it, go to Options → Preferences → Certificates .

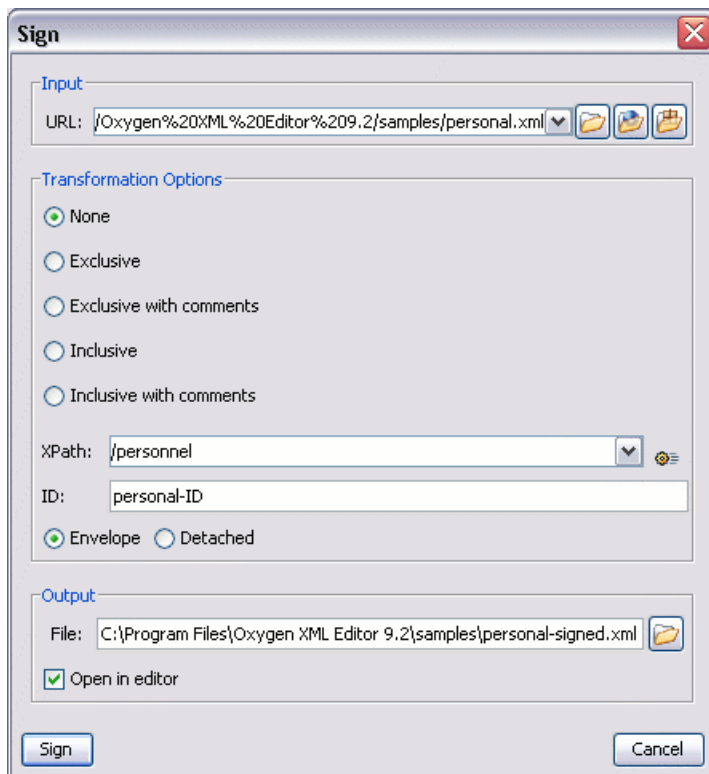
## Note

A certificate without alias stored in a PKCS 12 keystore together with other certificates, with or without alias, cannot be always extracted correctly from the keystore due to the missing alias. Such a certificate should be the only certificate of a PKCS 12 keystore.

## Signing files

The user can select the type of signature to be used for his document from the following dialog displayed by the action *Sign* available from editor panel context menu+Source and also from menu Tools and from menu Document+Tools

**Figure 16.2. Signature settings dialog**



|                         |   |
|-------------------------|---|
| URL                     | Specifies the location of the input URL                                   |
| None                    | If selected, no canonicalization algorithm is used.                       |
| Exclusive               | If selected, the exclusive (uncommented) canonicalization method is used. |
| Exclusive with comments | If selected, the exclusive with comments canonicalization method is used. |
| Inclusive               | If selected, the inclusive (uncommented) canonicalization method is used. |

|                         |  |
|-------------------------|--|
| Inclusive with comments | If selected, the inclusive with comments canonicalization method is used.                          |
| XPath                   | The XPath expression provides the fragments of the XML document to be signed.                      |
| ID                      | Provides ID of the XML element to be signed.   |
| Envelope                | If selected, the enveloping signature is used.   |
| Detached                | If selected, the detached signature is used.   |
| Append KeyInfo          | The element <i>ds:KeyInfo</i> will be added in the signed document only if this option is checked. |
| Output                  | Specifies the output file path where the signed XML document will be saved.                        |
| Open in editor          | If checked, the output file will be opened in the editor.  |

## Verifying the signature

The user can select a file to verify its signature in the following dialog displayed by the action *Verify Signature* available from editor panel context menu+Sourceand also from menuToolsand from menuDocument+Tools

URL Specifies the location of the document for which to verify the signature.

If the signature is valid, a dialog displaying the name of the signer will be opened. If not, an error message will show details about the problem.

---

# Chapter 17. The Syncro SVN Client

## Introduction

### What is Syncro SVN Client

Syncro SVN is a client for the Subversion version control system compatible with Subversion 1.6 servers. It manages files and directories that change over time and are stored in a central repository. The version control repository is much like an ordinary file server, except that it remembers every change ever made to your files and directories. This allows you to access older versions of your files and examine the history of how and when your data changed.

### Quick start guide and reference

The *Main window* section will provide a short description of the application main window layout, general functions, views and menus.

A *Getting started* chapter will take you through the basic operations, such as:

- Define a repository location
- Define a working copy
- Manage working copy resources
- Synchronize with a repository
- Obtain information for a resource
- Using the log history of a resource
- Adding and changing the properties of a resource
- Creating and maintaining branches and tags
- Some more advanced repository operations

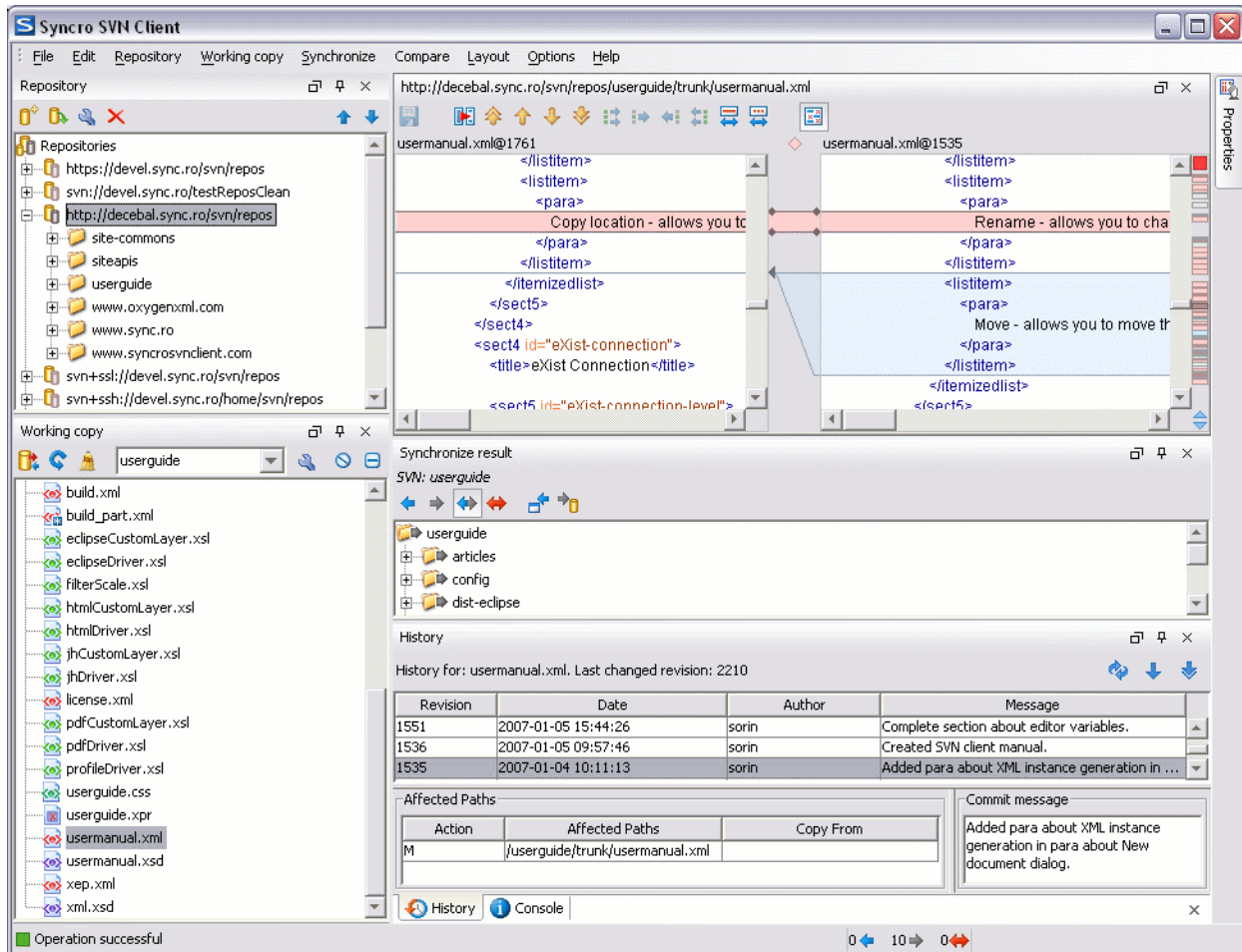
The next few chapters refer to the views of the application:

- Repository view
- Working copy view
- Synchronize view
- Compare resources view
- Editor
- Image preview
- History view
- Properties view

- Console view
- Help view
- Preferences dialog

## Main window

Figure 17.1. The Syncro SVN Client main window



## Starting Syncro SVN Client

The Syncro SVN Client can be used as a standalone application. To start the client follow the instructions for the installed package:

### Procedure 17.1. Windows

- From the Windows Explorer double-click `svnClient.exe`.



### Procedure 17.2. Linux

- At the prompt type: `sh svnClient.sh`.

### Procedure 17.3. Mac OS X

- Double-click `svnClient`.

### Procedure 17.4. All Platforms

- On Windows run `svnClient.bat`. On Mac OS X run `svnClientMac.sh`. On Linux/Unix run `svnClient.sh`.

The client can be started from inside <Oxygen/> by using Tools → SVN Client action or the Project view contextual menu → Team → Open in SVN Client action. When the action from the *Project view* is performed, if the selected resource is under version control, its working copy root will be determined and opened in the SVN client Working copy view.

## Views

The main window consists of the following views:

- Repository view allows you to define and manage Subversion repository locations.
- Working copy view allows you to manage with ease the content of the working copy.
- Synchronize view displays the modified resources from your working copy (outgoing) and from the repository (incoming).
- Compare view displays the differences between two revisions of a text file.
- Compare images view displays the compared images side by side.
- Editor view allows you to modify and save a file from the working copy.
- Image preview allows you to view the image files from the *Synchronize view*, *Working copy view*, *Synchronize view* or from the *History view*.
- History view displays the log messages for a given resource.
- Properties view displays the SVN properties for the currently selected resource from the *Synchronize view* or from the *Working copy view*.
- Console view shows the start and progress of an operation as if a Subversion command was run from the shell.
- Help view dynamically shows the help for the currently selected view.

The main window's *Status bar* presents in the left side the operation in progress or the final result of the last performed action. In the right side there is a progress bar for the running operation and a stop button to cancel the operation.






## Main menu









The main menu of the Syncro SVN Client is composed of the following menus:

- File

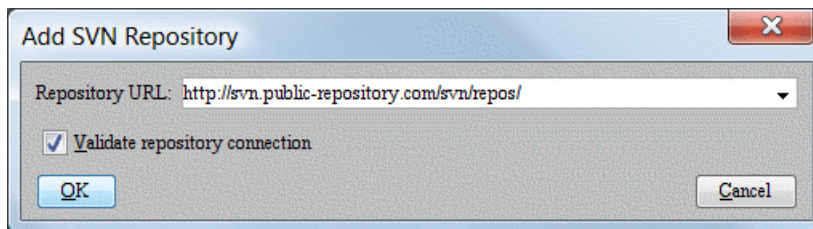
- New:
    - New File ... - This operation creates a new file and adds it to version control. If the selected path is not under version control, the newly created file will not be added to version control. This action works only for selected paths in the Working Copy tree.
    - New Folder ... - This operation creates a new folder as child of the selected folder from the Repository View tree or from the Working Copy View tree, depending on which view was focused last when performing this action. For Working Copy View, the folder will be added to version control only if the selected path is under version control, otherwise the newly created directory will not be added to version control.
    - New External Folder ... - This operation sets a folder name in the property *svn:externals* of the selected folder. The repository URL to the folder to which the new external folder will point and the revision number of that repository URL can be selected easily with the *Browse* and *History* buttons of the dialog. This action works only for selected paths in the Working Copy tree.

Subversion clients 1.5 and higher support relative external URLs. You can specify the repository URLs to which the external folders point using the following relative formats:




    - *../* - Relative to the URL of the directory on which the *svn:externals* property is set.
    - *^/* - Relative to the root of the repository in which the *svn:externals* property is versioned.
    - *//* - Relative to the scheme of the URL of the directory on which the *svn:externals* property is set.
    - */* - Relative to the root URL of the server on which the *svn:externals* property is versioned.
  -  Open - This action will open the selected file in an editor where you can make modifications to it. The action is active only when a single item is selected. In case of a file the action opens the file with the internal editor or the external application associated with that file type. In case of a folder the action opens the selected folder with the system application for folders (for example Windows Explorer on Windows, Finder on Mac OS X, etc). Folder opening is available only for folders selected in the Working Copy view. This action works on any file selection from Repository view, Working Copy view, Synchronize view, History view or Directory Change Set view, depending on which view was last focused when invoking it.
  - Open with ... - Displays the 'Open with...' dialog for specifying the editor in which the selected file will be opened. In case multiple files are selected only external applications can be used to open the files. This action works on any file selection from Repository view, Working Copy view, Synchronize view, History view or Directory Change Set view, depending on which view was last focused when invoking it.
  -  Save - Saves the local file currently opened in the *Editor view* or the *Compare view*.
  -  Show SVN Properties - brings up the Properties view and displays the SVN properties for a selected resource from Repository view, Working Copy view or Synchronize view, depending on which view was last focused when invoking it.
  -  File Information ... - provides additional information for a selected resource from the Repository view, Working Copy view or Synchronize view, depending on which view was last focused when invoking it. For more details please see the section Obtain information for a resource.
  - Exit - Exits the Subversion client.
- Edit
    -  Undo - undo edit changes in the local file currently opened in the *Editor view* or the *Compare view*.







-  Redo - redo edit changes in the local file currently opened in the *Editor view* or the *Compare view*.
-  Cut - cut selection to clipboard from the local file currently opened in the *Editor view* or the *Compare view*.
-  Copy - copy selection to clipboard from the local file currently opened in the *Editor view* or the *Compare view*.
-  Paste - paste selection from clipboard in the local file currently opened in the *Editor view* or the *Compare view*.
-  Find/Replace - perform find/replace operations in the local file currently opened in the *Editor view* or the *Compare view*.
-  Find Next - go to the next find match using the same find options of the last find operation. The action runs in the editor panel and in any non editable text area, for example the *Console view*.
-  Find Previous - go to the previous find match using the same find options of the last find operation. The action runs in the editor panel and in any non editable text area, for example the *Console view*.
- Repository - operations from the *Repository view*:
  -  New Repository Location... - allows you to enter a new repository location by means of the *Add SVN Repository* dialog.












**Figure 17.2. Add SVN Repository**




If the *Validate repository connection* is checked, the URL connection is validated before being added to the *Repository view*.

-  Edit Repository Location... - context dependent, allows you to edit the selected repository location by means of the *Edit SVN Repository* dialog. It is active only when a repository location root is selected.
- Change the Revision to Browse... - context dependent, allows you to change the selected repository revision by means of the *Change the Revision to Browse* dialog. It is active only when a repository location root is selected.
-  Remove Repository Location - allows you to remove the selected repository location from the view. It shows you a confirmation dialog before removal. It is active only when a repository location root is selected.
-  Check Out... - allows you to copy resources from a repository into your local file system. To use this operation, you must select a repository root location or a folder from a repository, but never a file. If you don't select anything, you can specify an URL to a folder resource from a repository in the *Check Out* dialog that appears when performing this operation. To read more about this operation, see *Check out a working copy*.
- Import


- Import Folder Content... - depending on the selected folder from a repository, allows you to import the contents of a specified folder from the file system into it. To read more about this operation, see Importing resources into a repository.
- Import File(s)... - imports the files selected from the files system into the selected folder from the repository.
- Export... - allows you to export a directory from the repository to the local file system. To use this operation, you must select a repository root location or a folder from a repository, but never a file. If you don't select anything, you can specify an URL to a folder resource from a repository in the *Export* dialog that appears when performing this operation. To read more about this operation, see Exporting resources from a repository.
- Working copy - operations from the *Working copy view*:
  -  Add/Remove Working Copy - opens the Working copies list dialog which displays the working copies the Subversion client is aware of. In this dialog you can add existing or remove no longer needed working copies.
  -  Synchronize - contacts the repository and determines the changes made by you to the working copy and by others to the repository. The synchronize result will be displayed in the Synchronize view. The action invokes the associated operation from the Working Copy view or from the Synchronize view, depending on which was last focused when performing it. If Working Copy view was last focused, then the synchronize operation will be performed on the selected resource(s) from the working copy or on the working copy root if no resource(s) selected. On Synchronize view, the action will synchronize the root of the last synchronized resources, who's path is displayed on the view's header.
  -  Refresh - refreshes (re scans) the content of the working copy. The action performs a refresh operation on the selected the selected resource(s) from the working copy or on the root of the working copy if no selection.
  -  Cleanup - performs a maintenance cleanup operation on the selected folder(s) from the working copy or on the whole working copy if no selection.
  - Update - updates all the selected resources that have incoming changes to the HEAD revision. If one of the selected resources is a directory then the update for that resource will be recursive. This operation is context dependent, which means that will be performed on the selected resource(s) from the Working Copy view or from the Synchronize view, depending which was last focused when it was invoked.
  - Update to revision/depth... - This action allows you to update the selected resources from the working copy to an earlier revision from the repository. You can also select the update *depth* for the current folder. You can find out more about the depth term in the sparse checkouts section. The action is active only on resources under version control.
  -  Update all - updates all resources from the working copy that have incoming changes on the Synchronize view. It will perform a recursive update on the synchronized resources.
  - Commit... - it is enabled for the resources that have outgoing changes and commits all selected resources, recursively in the case of directories, to the repository. The resources to be committed will be taken from the Working Copy view or from the Synchronize view, depending on which view was last focused when this operation was invoked. This action collects the outgoing changes from the selected resources and presents them in a dialog.
  -  Commit all - commits all the resources with outgoing changes. It is disabled when *Incoming* mode is selected or the synchronization result does not contain resources with outgoing changes. It will perform a recursive commit on the synchronized resources.
  - Revert... - allows you to undo all changes you made into a folder or into a file since the last update. To read more about this operation, see:Revert your changes.

- Edit conflict - opens a *Compare* view for editing the selected conflict from the Working Copy view or from the Synchronize View, depending on which view was last focused when invoking this operation.
- Mark Resolved - it is enabled on resources with real content conflicts, displayed on the Working Copy view or in the Synchronize View. Its function is to tell the Subversion system that you resolved the conflict and the resource can be committed. See also Merge conflicts part.
- Mark as Merged - the action is enabled on pseudo-conflicting resources from the Synchronize view. It is used after you resolved the pseudo-conflict by merging the changes and you want to commit the resource. Read the Merge conflicts section for more information on methods to solve the pseudo-conflicts.
- Override and Update ... - it is enabled on resources from the Synchronize view with outgoing changes, including the conflicting ones. It is used for dropping any outgoing change and replacing the local resource with the HEAD revision. See the Revert your changes section.
- Override and Commit ... - it is enabled on conflicting resources from the Synchronize View. The action will drop any incoming changes and will send your local version of the resource to the repository. See also Drop incoming modifications.
- Compare - operations from the *Compare view*:
  -  Perform Files Differencing - used to perform file differencing on request.
  -  Go to First Modification - used to navigate to the first difference.
  -  Go to Previous Modification - used to navigate to the previous difference.
  -  Go to Next Modification - used to navigate to the next difference.
  -  Go to Last Modification - used to navigate to the last difference.
  -  Copy All Non-Conflicting Changes from Right to Left - this action copies all non-conflicting changes from the right editor to the left editor. A non-conflicting change from the right editor is a change that does not overlap with a left editor change.
  -  Copy Change from Right to Left - this action copies the selected change from the right editor to the left editor.
  -  Show Modification Details at Word Level - because the differences are computed using a line differencing algorithm sometimes is useful to see exactly what words are different in a changed section.
  -  Show Modification Details at Character Level - useful when you want to find out exactly what characters are different between the two analyzed sections.
  -  Ignore Whitespaces - Enables or disables the whitespace ignoring feature. Ignoring whitespace means that before the strings are compared they are first normalized and then the whitespace at the beginning and the end of the strings is trimmed.
- History
  -  Show History... - display the history for a SVN resource at a given revision. The resource can be one selected from the Repository view, Working Copy View, Synchronize View or from the Affected Paths table from the History View, depending on which view was last focused when this action was invoked.

-  Show Annotation... - brings up a dialog for selecting the start revision and the end revision of the interval of revisions for which the SVN annotations will be computed and marked in the selected resource in the editor panel.

After selecting the start revision and the end revision and pressing OK the Annotations view and the History view are displayed and the annotations are marked on the SVN resource in the editor panel.



This operation is available for any resource selected from Repository view, Working Copy view, History view or from Directory Change Sets view, depending on which view was last focused when this action was invoked.

-  Revision Graph... - This action allows you to see the graphical representation of a resource's history. For more details about a resource's revision graph see the section Revision Graph. This operation is enabled for any resource selected into the Repository view or Working Copy view.

- Tools

- Branch/Tag... - allows you to copy the selected resource from the Repository/Working Copy view to a branch or tag into the repository. To read more about this operation, see Creating a Branch/Tag
- Merge... - allows you to merge the changes made on one branch back into the trunk, or vice versa, using the selected resource from the working copy. To read more about this operation, see Merging.
- Switch... - allows you to change the repository location of a working copy or only of a versioned item of the working copy within the same repository. It is available on when the selected item into the working copy is a versioned resource, except an external folder. To read more about this, see Switching the Repository Location.
- Relocate... - allows you to change the base URL of the root folder of the working copy to a new URL, when the base URL of the repository changed, for example the repository itself was relocated to a different server. This operation is available for a selected item of the working copy tree that is a versioned folder. To read more about this operation, see Relocate a Working Copy.
- Create patch... - allows you to create a file containing all the differences between two resources, based on the *svn diff* command. This operation is available for any selected resource from the Working Copy view or from the Synchronize view, depending on which view was last focused when invoking it. To read more about creating patches, see Create Patches.

- Working copy format - this submenu contains the following two operations:

-  Upgrade... - allows you to upgrade the format of the current working copy to the newest one known by Syncro SVN Client, to allow you to benefit of all the new features of the client.
-  Downgrade... - allows you to downgrade the format of the current working copy to an older format. The formats allowed to downgrade to are SVN 1.5 and SVN 1.4. This is useful in case you wish to use older SVN clients with the current working copy, or, by mistake, you have upgraded the format of an older working copy by using a newer SVN client.

See Working Copy format to read more about this subject.

- Layout - layout control actions:

- Show View - allows you to select the view you want to bring to front.
- Show Toolbar - allows you to select the toolbar you want to be visible.
- Reset Layout - resets all the views to their default position.

- Options
  - Preferences - opens the preferences dialog.
  - Menu Shortcut Keys - opens the preferences dialog directly on the Menu Shortcut Keys option page, where users can configure in one place the keyboard shortcuts available for menu items available in Syncro SVN Client.
  - Global Run-Time configuration - allows you to configure SVN general options, that should be used by all the SVN clients you may use:
    - Edit 'config' file - in this file you can configure various client-side behaviors.
    - Edit 'servers' file - in this file you can configure various server-specific protocol parameters, including HTTP proxy information and HTTP timeout settings.
  - Export Options - allows you to export the current options to a file.
  - Import Options - allows you to import options you have previously exported.
  - Reset Options - resets all your options to the default ones.
  - Reset Authentication - resets the Subversion authentication information.
- Help
  - Dynamic Help - shows the Dynamic Help dialog.
  - Help - opens the Help dialog.
  - Check for New Versions - checks the availability of new Syncro SVN Client versions.

 **Note**

In order to avoid unusual situations you can currently execute only one action that involves operations with the working copy or with the repository at a time.

## Main toolbar

The toolbar of the SVN Client window contain the following actions:

**Figure 17.3. SVN Client toolbar**



 Check Out ...

Check out a working copy from a repository. The repository URL and the working copy format must be specified.

 Synchronize

Synchronize the current working copy with the repository and display the differences in Synchronize view.

 Update All ...

Update all resources of working copy that have an older revision that repository.



Commit All ...

Commit all resources of working copy that have a new version than repository.



Show History ...

Display the history of selected resource in the History view. The selected resource can be in the Working Copy view, the Synchronize view or the Repository view.



Show Annotation ...

Display the annotations of the selected resource. The selected resource can be in the Working Copy view, the Synchronize view or the History view.



Revision Graph ...

Display the revision graph of the selected resource. The selected resource can be in the Working Copy view, the Synchronize view or the Repository view.



Compare ...

The selected resource is compared with the BASE revision from the working copy when the selected resource is from the Working Copy view or the Synchronize view and with the working copy revision when the selected resource is from the History view.


## Getting started

### Define a repository location


Usually team members do all of their work separately, in their own working copies and need to share their work. This is done via a Subversion repository. Syncro SVN Client supports the versions 1.3, 1.4, 1.5 and 1.6 of the SVN repository format.


### Add / Edit / Remove repository locations

Before you can begin working with a Subversion repository, you must define a repository location in the Repository View.

To create a new repository location, click the *New Repository Location* toolbar button  or right click inside the view and select *New Repository Location...* from the popup menu. On Windows, the context menu can be displayed with the mouse on a right click or with the keyboard by pressing the special context menu key available on Windows keyboards.


The *Add SVN Repository* dialog will prompt you for the URL of the repository you want to connect to. No authentication information is requested at the time the location is defined; it is left to the Subversion client to request the user and password information when it is needed. The main benefit of allowing Subversion to manage your password in this way is that it will prompt you for a new password only when your password changes.



Once you enter the repository URL Syncro SVN Client will try to contact the server and get the content of the repository for displaying it in the Repository view. If the server does not respond in an the timeout interval set in Preferences an error will be reported. If you don't want to wait until the timeout expires you can end the waiting process with the  Stop button from the toolbar of the view.

To edit a repository location, click the *Edit Repository Location* toolbar button  or right click inside the view on a repository root entry and select *Edit Repository Location...* from the popup menu.

The *Edit SVN Repository* dialog works in the same way as the *Add SVN Repository* dialog. It will show the previously defined repositories URL and it will allow you to change them.



To remove a repository location, click the *Remove Repository Location* toolbar button  or right click inside the view on a repository entry and select *Remove Repository Location...* from the popup menu. A confirmation dialog will appear in order to make sure you don't accidentally remove locations.

The order of the repositories can be changed in the Repository view at any time with the two buttons on the toolbar of the view, the up arrow  and the down arrow . For example pressing the up arrow once moves the selected repository up in the list with one position.

To set the reference revision number of a SVN repository right-click on the repository in the list displayed in the Repository View and select the *Change the Revision to Browse...* action.

The revision number of the repository set with this dialog will be used for displaying the contents of the repository when it is viewed in the Repository View: only the files and folders that were present in the repository at the moment when this revision number was generated on the repository are displayed as contents of the repository tree. Also this revision number is used and for all the file open operations executed directly from the Repository View.

## Authentication

Five protocols are supported: *HTTP*, *SVN*, *HTTPS*, *SVN + SSH* and *FILE*. If the repository that you are trying to access is password protected, the *Enter authentication data* dialog will request a username and a password. If the *Store authentication data* checkbox is checked the credentials will be stored in Subversion's default directory:

- Windows - %HOME%\Application Data\Subversion\auth. Example: C:\Documents and Settings\John\Application Data\Subversion\auth
- Linux & Mac OS X - \$HOME/.subversion/auth. Example: /home/John/.subversion/auth

There will be one file for each server that you access. If you want to make Subversion forget your credentials, you can use the *Reset authentication* command from the Options menu. This will cause Subversion to forget all your credentials.

### Note

When you reset the authentication data, you will have to restart the application in order for the change to take effect.

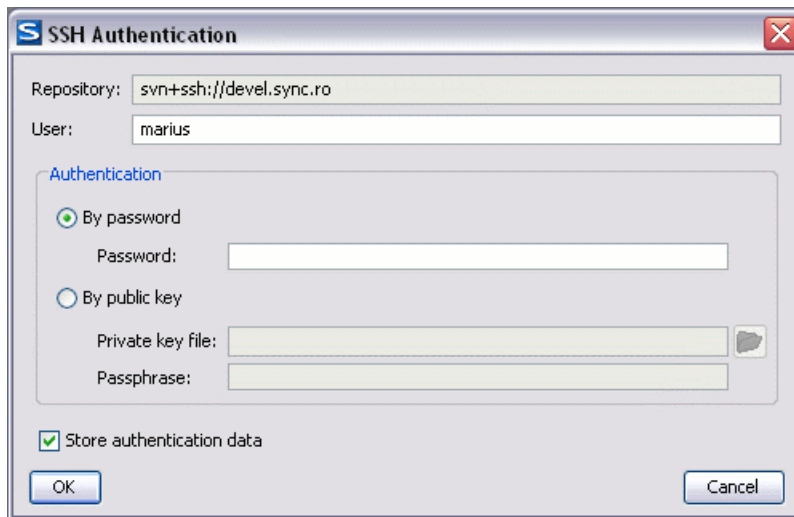
### Tip

The *FILE* protocol is recommended if the SVN server and Syncro SVN Client are located on the same computer as it ensures faster access to the SVN server than the other protocols.

For https connections where client authentication is required by your SSL server, you have to choose the Certificate File and enter the corresponding Certificate Password which is used to protect your certificate.

When using a secure http (https) protocol for accessing a repository, a *Certificate information* dialog will pop up and ask you whether you accept the certificate permanently, temporarily or simply deny it.

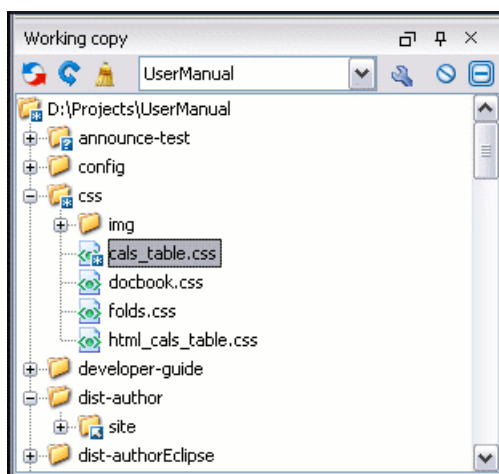
If the repository used has svn+ssh protocol the SSH authentication can also be made with a private key and a passphrase.

**Figure 17.4. User & Private key authentication dialog**

After the SSH authentication dialog another dialog will pop up for entering the SVN user name that will access the SVN repository and will be recorded as the committer in SVN operations.

## Defining a working copy

A Subversion working copy is an ordinary directory tree on your local system, containing a collection of files. You can edit these files however you wish, your working copy being your private work area. In order to make your own changes available to others or incorporate other people's changes, you must explicitly tell Subversion to do so. You can even have multiple working copies of the same project.

**Figure 17.5. Working Copy View**

A Subversion working copy also contains some extra files, created and maintained by Subversion, to help it keep track of your files. In particular, each directory in your working copy contains a subdirectory named `.svn`, also known as the working copy *administrative directory*. This administrative directory contains an unaltered copy of the last updated files from the repository. This copy is usually referred to as the *pristine copy* or the *BASE revision* of the working copy. These files help Subversion recognize which files contain unpublished changes, and which files are out-of-date with respect to others' work.

A typical Subversion repository often holds the files (or source code) for several projects; usually, each project is a subdirectory in the repository's file system tree. In this arrangement, a user's working copy will usually correspond to a particular subtree of the repository.

## Check out a working copy

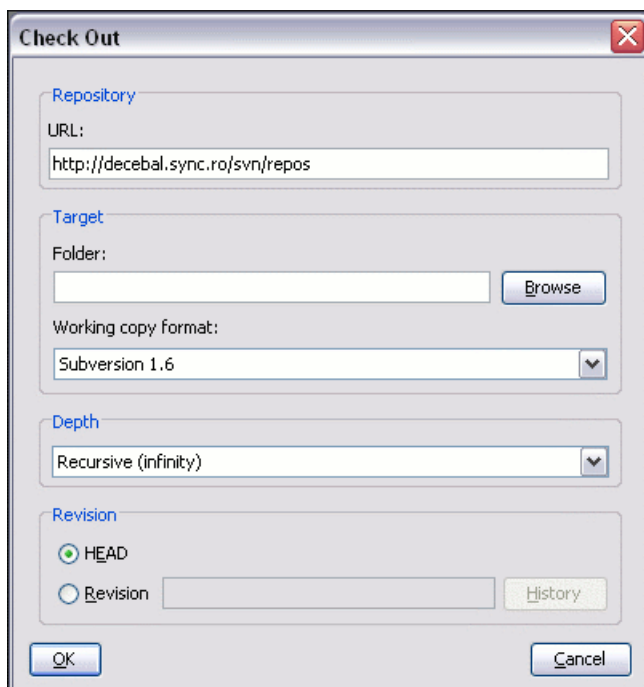
Check out is the term used to describe the process of making a copy of a project from a repository into your local file system. This checked out copy is called a working copy. A Subversion working copy is a specially formatted folder structure which contains additional `.svn` folders that store Subversion information, as well as a pristine copy of each item that is checked out.

You check out a working copy from the Repository View. If you have not yet defined a connection to your repository, you will need to add a new repository location.

To check out a new working copy, navigate inside the repository to the desired directory, right click on it and select *Check Out...* from the popup menu.

In the *Check out* dialog click on the *Browse* button and choose the location where the working copy will be checked out.

**Figure 17.6. Check out dialog**



After a check out, the new working copy will be added to the list in the Working Copy view and its content will be displayed in that view.

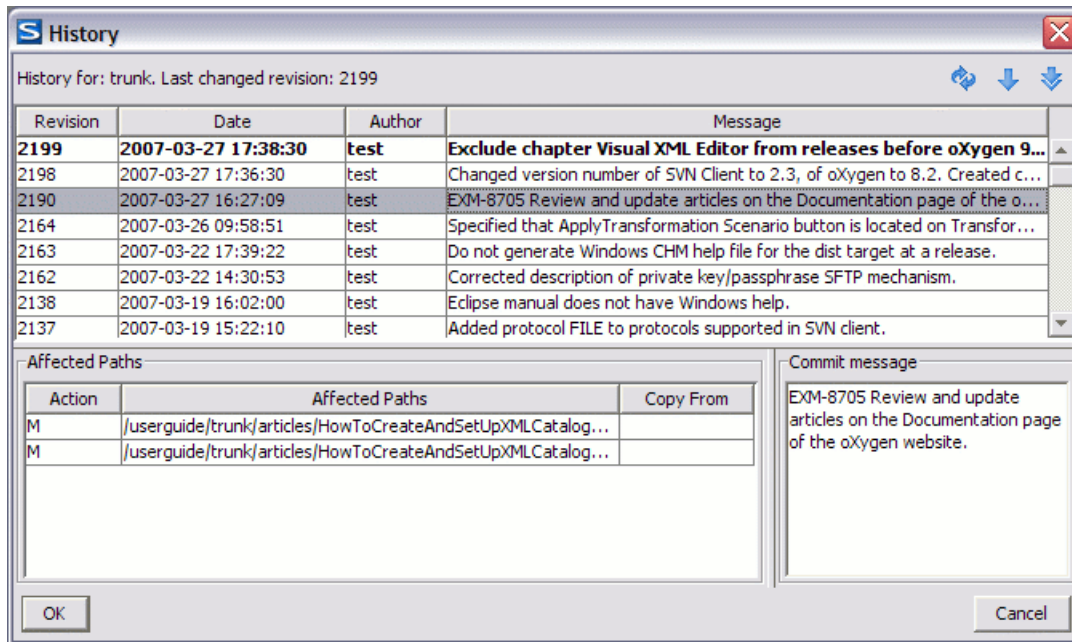
## Depth

You can choose the *depth* for the checkout folder. This allows you to specify the recursion level into children. This is used if you want to check out only a portion of an working copy and then bring in a future update operation previously ignored files and subdirectories. You can find out more about checkout depth in the sparse checkouts section.

## Revision

By default the last (HEAD) revision will be checked out. If you need another revision you can select the *Revision* radio button and then click on the History button and choose a desired revision from the new dialog. Or you can simply type the revision number in the corresponding text field.

**Figure 17.7. History dialog**



The *History dialog* presents a list of revisions for a resource. There are presented information about revision, commit date, author and commit comment. The initial number of entries in the list is 50. Additional revisions can be added to the list using the Get next 50 and Get all buttons. The list of revisions can be refreshed at any time with the Refresh button.

The *Affected Paths* area displays all paths affected by the commit of the revision selected in history. On a revision selected in the Affected Paths area the contextual menu contains the actions:


|                                   |   |
|-----------------------------------|---|
| Compare with previous version     | Make a diff between the selected revision and the previous one. If there is no external application specified for executing diff operations the built-in diff tool is applied. This is the action also executed on double clicking on a file in the <i>Affected Paths</i> area. |
| Open                              | Opens the revision in the editor panel.   |
| Save revision to ...              | Save the revision to a new file.  |
| Revert changes from this revision | The changes committed by the selected revision are reverted in the current version of the file in the working copy. If the committed changes were in fact a SVN delete operation the result is restoring the deleted file in the working copy.                                  |
| Update to revision                | Make the selected revision the current revision in the working copy.  |
| Show History                      | Display the history of the SVN resource of the selected revision.   |
| Show Annotation                   | Open the Annotations View for the selected revision.  |

## Note

On Mac and Linux systems the ~ character can be used in the Folder field. It will be expanded to the home folder path.

## Use an existing working copy

This is the process of taking an working copy that exists on your file system and connecting it to Subversion. If you have a brand new project that you want to import into your repository, then see the section Import resources into the repository

This assumes that you have an existing valid working copy on your file system. In the Working Copy View click on the *Add/Remove Working Copy* toolbar button .

In the *Working copies list* dialog press the Add button and choose the working folder copy from the file system.

Select the new working copy from the list and press the OK button. The selected working copy will be loaded and presented in the Working Copy View.

The Edit button allows changing the name of the working copy. The name is useful to differentiate between working copies located in folders with the same name. The default name is the name of the root folder of the working copy.

The order of the working copies can be changed in the list using the two arrow buttons which move the selected working copy with one position up or down.

## Manage working copy resources

### Edit files

You can edit files from the Working Copy View by double clicking them or by right clicking them and choosing *Open* from the popup menu, or from the Synchronize View by using *Open* from the popup menu. Please note that only one file can be edited at a time; if you try to open another file it will be opened in the same editor window. The editor has syntax highlighting for known file types, meaning that a different color will be used for each type of recognized token in the file. If the selected file is an image, then it will be previewed in the editor, with no access to modifying it.

When you edit a file from your working copy, you will notice that after modifying and saving it, a modified marker - an asterisk (\*) - will appear on the file's icon in the Working Copy View.

### Add resources to version control

The new file(s) or folder(s) you create during your development process must be added to Version Control, using the *Add* command from the context menu in Working Copy View or Synchronize View. If you do not do this, the resource will be marked with a question mark (?), meaning that it is unversioned (unknown). After you have added it to version control, the resource will be marked as added (+) which means you first have to commit your working copy to make those resources available to other developers. Adding a resource to version control does not affect the repository.

If you try to add to version control an unversioned directory the entire subtree starting with that directory will be added.

When you commit your changes, if you forgot to add a resource, it will still be presented in the commit dialog, but will be de-selected by default. When you commit the unversioned resource, it will be automatically added to version control before being committed and the marking will also be removed.

## Ignore resources not under version control

Sometimes you will have files and folders inside your working copy that should not be subject to version control. These might include files created by the compiler, \*.obj, \*.class, \*.lst, maybe an output directory used to store the executable. Whenever you commit changes, Subversion shows your modified files but also the unversioned files, which fills up the file list in the commit dialog. Though the unversioned files will not be committed unless otherwise specified, it is difficult to see exactly what you are committing.

The best way to avoid these problems is to add the derived files to the Subversion's ignore list. That way they will never show up in the commit dialog and only genuine unversioned files which must be committed will be shown.

You can choose to ignore a resource by using the *Add to svn:ignore* action in the context menu from Working Copy View or Synchronize View.

In the *Add to svn:ignore* dialog you can specify the resource to be ignored by name or by a custom pattern. The custom pattern can contain wildcard characters such as:

- \* - Matches any string of characters of any size, including the empty string.
- ? - Matches any single character.

For example you may choose to ignore all text documents by using the pattern: \*.txt

The action adds a predefined Subversion property called *svn:ignore* to the parent directory of the specified resource. In this property there are specified all the child resources of that directory that must be ignored. The result will be visible in the *Working Copy view*. The ignored resources will be represented with grayed icons.

## Delete resources

The delete command can be found in the *Edit* submenu of the context menu from the Working Copy View.

When you delete a resource from the Subversion working copy it will be removed from the file system and it will be also marked as deleted. If unversioned, added or modified resources will be encountered, a dialog will prompt you to confirm their deletion.

The delete command will not delete from the file system the directories under version control, it will only mark them as deleted. This is because the directories also contain the pristine copy of that directory content. In the Working Copy View this is transparent as all resources will have the deleted mark(-). The directories will be removed from the file system when you commit them to the repository. You can also change your mind completely and revert the deleted files to their initial, pristine state.

If a resource is deleted from the file system without Subversion's knowledge, your working copy will be in an inconsistent state. The resource will be considered and marked as missing (!). If a file was deleted, it will be treated in the same way as if it was deleted by Subversion. However if a directory is missing you will be unable to commit. If you update your working copy, Subversion will replace the missing directory with the latest version from the repository and you can then delete it the correct way using the *Delete* command. The *Delete* action is not enabled when the selection contains *missing* resources.

## Copy / Move / Rename resources

### *Copy resources*

You can copy several resources from different locations of the working copy. You select them in the Working Copy View and then you initiate the copy command from the context menu. This is not a simple file system copy but a

Subversion command. It will copy the resource and the copy will also have the original resource's history. This is one of Subversion's very important features, as you can keep track of where the copied resources originated.

Please note that you can only copy resources that are under version control and are committed to the repository or unversioned resources. You cannot copy resources that are added but not yet committed.

In the *Copy File(s)* dialog you can navigate through the working copy directories in order to choose a target directory. If you try to copy a single resource you are also able to change that resource's name in the corresponding text field.

If an entire directory is copied the *Override and update* action will be enabled only for it and not for its descendants. In the Synchronize view and the *Commit dialog* will appear only the directory in question without its children.

#### *Move resources*

As in the case of the copy command you can perform the operation on several resources at once. Just select the resources in the Working Copy View and choose the *Move* command from the context menu. The move command actually behaves as if a copy followed by a delete command were issued. You will find the moved resources at the desired destination and also at their original location but marked as deleted.

#### *Rename a resource*

The rename action can be found in the context menu in the Working Copy View. This action can only be performed on a single resource. The rename command acts as a move command with the destination being the same as the original location of the resource. A copy of the original resource will be made with the new name and the original will be marked as deleted.

### **Note**

Because the rename and move commands act as a copy followed by delete, when you want to commit a renamed or moved resource you must also commit the deleted original. It is also recommended that you commit the renamed or moved resources before changing their contents in order to avoid difficulties in resolving conflicts.

## **Lock / Unlock resources**

The idea of version control is based on the copy-modify-merge model of file sharing. This model states that each user contacts the repository and creates a local working copy (check out). Users can then work independently and make modifications to their working copies as they please. When their goal has been accomplished it is time for the users to share their work with the others, to send them to the repository(commit). When a user has modified a file that has been also modified on the repository the two files will have to be merged. The version control system assists the user with the merging as much as it can, but in the end the user is the one that must make sure it is done correctly.

The copy-modify-merge model only works when files are contextually mergeable: this is usually the case of line-based text files (such as source code). However this is not always possible with binary formats, such as images or sounds. In these situations, the users must each have exclusive access to the file, ending up with a lock-modify-unlock model. Without this, one or more users could end up wasting time on changes that cannot be merged.

A Subversion lock is a piece of metadata which grants exclusive access to a user. This user is called the lock owner. A lock is uniquely identified by a lock token (a string of characters). If someone else attempts to commit the file (or delete a parent of the file), the repository will demand two pieces of information:

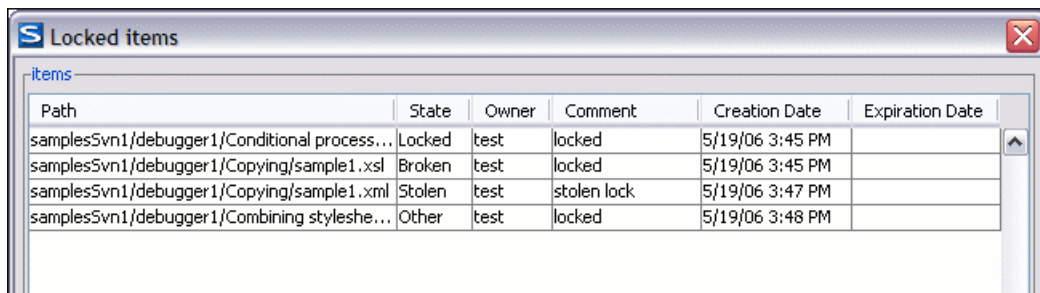
- User authentication. The user performing the commit must be the lock owner.
- Software authorization. The user's working copy must have the same lock token as the one from the repository, proving that it is the same working copy where the lock originated from.

## Scanning for locks

When starting to work on a file that is not contextually mergeable (usually a binary file), it is better to verify if someone else isn't already working on that file. You can do this in the Working Copy View by selecting one or more resources, then right clicking on them and choosing the *Scan for locks* action from the context menu.

## Locked items

**Figure 17.8. The locked items dialog**



| Path   | State  | Owner | Comment     | Creation Date   | Expiration Date |
|--|--------|-------|-------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| samples5vn1/debugger1/Conditional process... | Locked | test  | locked      | 5/19/06 3:45 PM |                 |
| samples5vn1/debugger1/Copying/sample1.xml    | Broken | test  | locked      | 5/19/06 3:45 PM |                 |
| samples5vn1/debugger1/Copying/sample1.xml    | Stolen | test  | stolen lock | 5/19/06 3:47 PM |                 |
| samples5vn1/debugger1/Combining styleshe...  | Other  | test  | locked      | 5/19/06 3:48 PM |                 |

The *Locked items* dialog contains a table with all the resources that were found locked on the repository. For each resource there are specified: resource path, state of the lock, owner of the lock, lock comment, creation and expiration date for the lock (if any).

The state of the lock can be one of:

- Other - if someone else locked the file.
- Locked - if you locked the file.
- Broken - if you locked the file but it was forcefully unlocked by someone else afterwards.
- Stolen - if you locked the file but it was forcefully locked by someone else afterwards.

You can unlock a resource by selecting it and pressing the *Unlock* button.

## Locking a file

A locked file allows you exclusive write access to a file from the repository, meaning that you are the only one who can modify and commit the file to the repository.

You can lock a file from the context menu in Working Copy View. Note that you can only lock several files at once but no directories. This is a restriction of Subversion which is used to discourage the use of the lock-modify-unlock model at large scale or when unnecessary.

In the *Lock* dialog you can write a comment for the lock and if necessary steal (force) the lock. Note that you should only steal a lock after you made sure that the previous owner no longer needs it, otherwise you may cause an unsolvable conflict which is exactly why the lock was put there in the first place. The Subversion server can have a policy concerning lock stealing, it may not allow you to steal a lock if a certain condition is not satisfied.

The lock will stay in place until you commit the locked file or until someone unlocks it. There is also the possibility that the lock will expire after a period of time specified in the Subversion server policy.



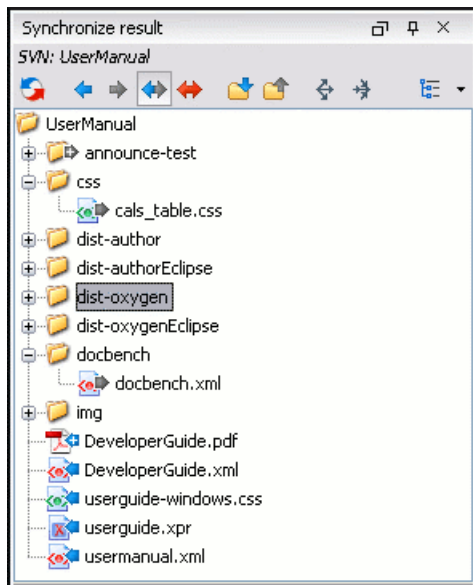
## Unlocking a file

A file can be unlocked from the context menu in the Working Copy View. A dialog will prompt you to confirm the unlocking and it will also allow you to break the lock (unlock it by force).

## Synchronize with the repository

In the work cycle you will need to incorporate other people's changes(update) and to make your own work available to others(commit). This is what the Synchronize View was designed for, to help you send and receive modifications from the repository.

**Figure 17.9. Synchronize View**



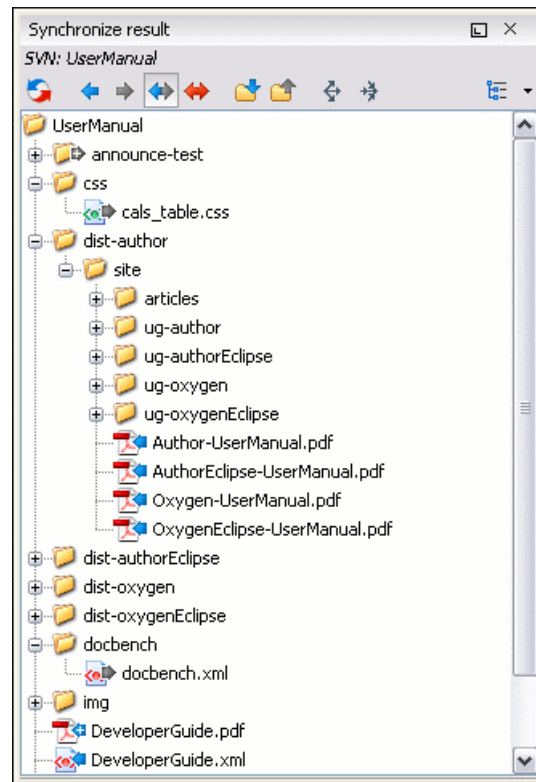
In the *Synchronize view* you can see the overall status of your working copy resources when compared to the repository resources. The view focuses on incoming and outgoing changes, where incoming changes are the changes that other users have committed since you last updated your working copy. The outgoing changes are the modifications you made to your working copy as a result of editing, removing or adding resources.

The view presents the status of the working copy resources against the BASE revision after a *Refresh* operation. You can view the state of the resources versus a repository HEAD revision by using the *Synchronize* actions from the Working Copy view.

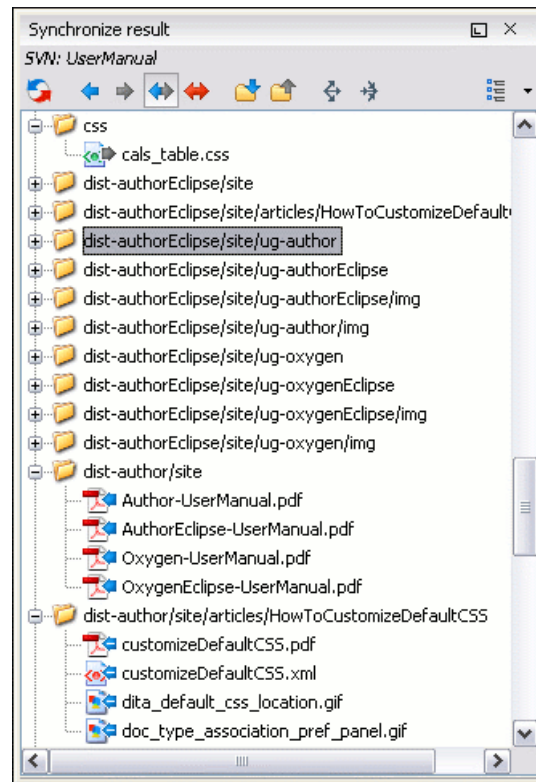
## Presentation modes

The *Synchronize view* has three presentation modes:

- Tree mode                      The resources are presented in a tree layout as in the above image which mirrors the tree structure of the SVN repository and of the Working Copy view. This mode is more appropriate when you want a quick overview of the locations which need synchronization with the SVN repository or when you want to apply a synchronization operation (Commit, Update, Revert, Add) recursively on a folder.

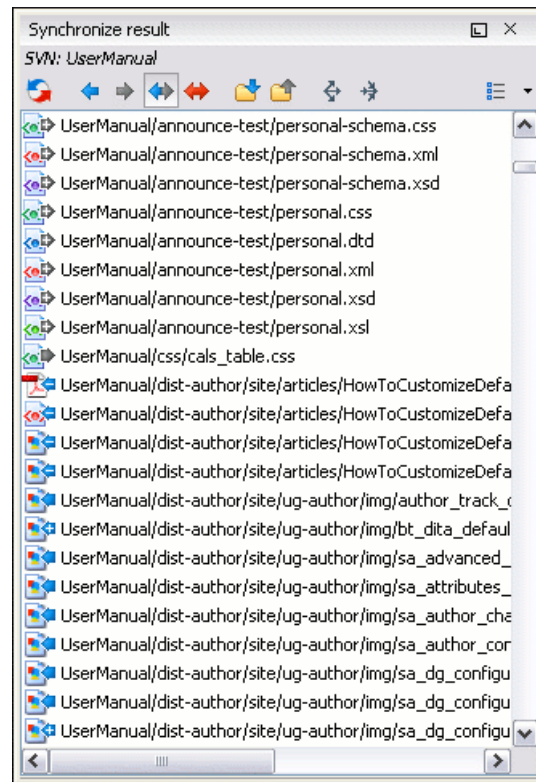
**Figure 17.10. Synchronize View - Tree mode****Compressed mode**

The resources are presented in a layout with two levels, that is a compressed path for each folder in the list as in the following image. This mode is useful when you need the full list of resources which need synchronization without having to expand a tree to get to the unsynchronized resources of that folder. Also it is useful when you do not want to apply a synchronization operation recursively, that is the operation applied to a folder resource must not have any effect on other unsynchronized resources located in the folder but displayed in other list entries in the view.

**Figure 17.11. Synchronize View - Compressed mode**

Flat mode

The full list of the resources that must be synchronized with the repository are presented in a flat list. As in the Compressed mode it is useful when you do not want to apply a synchronization operation recursively on a folder.

**Figure 17.12. Synchronize View - Flat mode**

Switching between the three presentation modes is done with the switch button on the right side of the toolbar of the *Synchronize view*.

## View differences

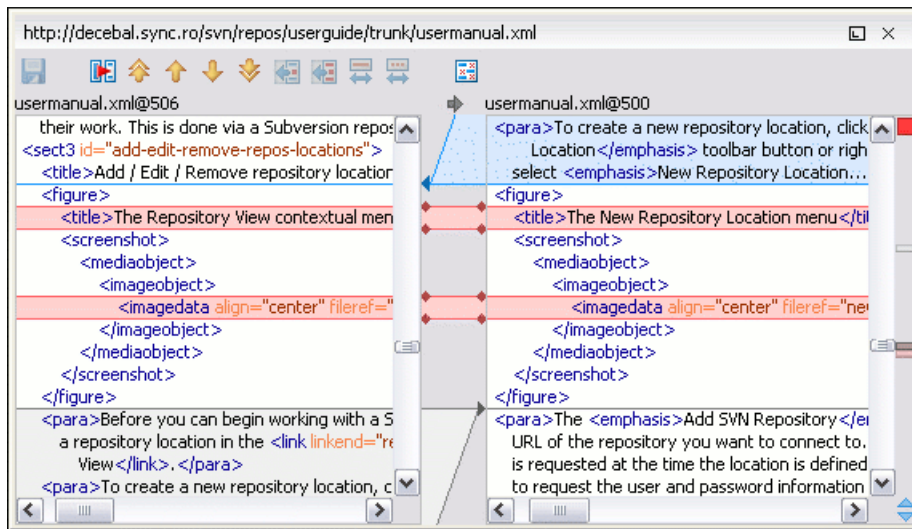
One of the most common requirements in project development is to see what changes have been made to the files from your Working Copy or to the files from the repository. You can examine these changes after a synchronize operation with the repository, by using the *Open in compare editor* action from the contextual menu.

The text files are compared using a built-in Compare View which uses a line differencing algorithm or a specified external diff application if such an application is set in the SVN preferences. When a file with outgoing status is involved, the compare is performed between the file from the working copy and the BASE revision of the file. When a file with incoming or conflict status is involved, the differences are computed using a three-way algorithm which means that the local file and the repository file are each compared with the BASE revision of the file. The results are displayed in the same view. The differences obtained from the local file comparison are considered outgoing changes and the ones obtained from the repository file comparison are considered incoming changes. If any of the incoming changes overlap outgoing changes then they are in conflict.

A special case of difference is a *diff pseudo-conflict*. This is the case when the left and the right sections are identical but the BASE revision does not contain the changes in that section. By default this type of changes are ignored. If you want to change this you can go to SVN Preferences and change the corresponding option.

The right editor of the internal compare view presents either the BASE revision or a revision from the repository of the file so its content cannot be modified. By default when opening a synchronized file in the Compare View, a compare is automatically performed. After modifying and saving the content of the local file presented in the left editor, another compare is performed. You will also see the new refreshed status in the Working copy view.

Figure 17.13. Compare View



There are three types of differences:

- incoming changes - changes committed by other users and not present yet in your working copy file. They are marked with a blue highlight and on the middle divider the arrows point from right to left.
- outgoing changes - changes you have done in the content of the working copy file. They are marked with a gray highlight and the arrows on the divider are pointing from left to right.
- conflicting changes - this is the case when the same section of text which you already modified in the local file has been modified and committed by some other person. They are marked with a red highlight and red diamonds on the divider.

There are numerous actions and options available in the Compare View toolbar or in the Compare menu from the main menu. You can decide that some changes need adjusting or that new ones must be made. After you perform the adjustments, you may want to perform a new compare between the files. For this case there is an action called *Perform files differencing*. After each files differencing operation the first found change will be selected. You can navigate from one change to another by using the actions *Go to first / Go to previous / Go to next / Go to last modification*. If you decide that some incoming change needs to be present in your working file you can use the action *Copy change from right to left*. This is useful also when you want to override the outgoing modifications contained in a conflicting section. The *Copy all non-conflicting changes from right to left* copies all incoming changes which are not contained inside a conflicting section in your local file.

Let us assume that only a few words or letters are changed, considering that the differences are performed taking into account whole lines of text, the change will contain all the lines involved. For finding exactly what words or letters have changed there are available two dialogs which present a more detailed compare result: *Word Details* and *Character Details*.

When you want to examine only the changes in the real text content of the files disregarding the changes in the number of white spaces between words or lines there is available an option which allows you to enable or disable the white space ignoring feature of the compare algorithm.

## Resolve conflicts

Once in a while, you will get file conflicts when you update your files from the repository. A file conflict occurs when two or more developers have changed the same few lines of a file or the properties of the same file. As Subversion

knows nothing of your project, it leaves resolving the conflicts to the developers. Whenever a conflict is reported, you should open the file in question, and try to analyse and resolve the conflicting situation.

## Real conflicts vs mergeable conflicts

There are two types of conflicts. The real conflict (conflicted state) is obtained when a file in the working copy has incoming and outgoing changes in the same section. When updated the differences cannot be merged automatically so the file is marked as conflicted. A file can be in real conflict state when its content or its properties are in conflict. A folder can be in real conflict only when its properties are in conflict.

A file is in a mergeable conflict state when it contains both incoming and outgoing changes not necessarily in the same sections. A file is in mergeable conflict when its content has both incoming and outgoing changes but the changes can be merged by the update operation. A folder can be in mergeable conflict when it contains files in mergeable conflict and / or real conflict themselves. After an update it is possible that the state of conflict can be resolved automatically by merging the incoming changes into the working copy resource. A conflicting resource cannot be committed. In the conflict case the resource will be marked with a conflict icon and will appear in all the Synchronization trees.

## Content conflicts vs Property conflicts

On the other hand depending on the situation the conflicts are separated in two categories: Content conflicts and Properties conflicts. *Content conflicts* - this type refers to the fact that the conflict appears in the content of a file. A merge occurs for every inbound change to a file which is also modified in the working copy. In some cases, if the local change and the incoming change intersect each other, Subversion cannot merge these changes without intervention. So if the conflict is real when updating the file in question the conflicting area is marked like this:

```
<<<<<< filename
your changes
=====
code merged from repository
>>>>>> revision
```

Also, for every conflicted file Subversion places three additional temporary files in your directory:

- `filename.ext.mine` - This is your file as it existed in your working copy before you updated your working copy - that is, without conflict markers. This file has your latest changes in it and nothing else.
- `filename.ext.rOLDREV` - This is the file that was the BASE revision before you updated your working copy. That is, the file revision that you updated before you made your latest edits.
- `filename.ext.rNEWREV` - This is the file that Subversion client just received from the server when you updated your working copy. This file corresponds to the HEAD revision of the repository.

OLDREV and NEWREV are revision numbers. If you have conflicts with binary files, Subversion does not attempt to merge the files by itself. The local file remains unchanged (exactly as you last changed it) and you will get `filename.ext.r*` files also. *Properties conflicts* - refer to the conflicts that are obtained when two people modify the same property of the same file or folder. When updating such a resource a file named `filename.ext.prej` is created in your working copy containing the nature of the conflict. Your local file property that is in conflict will not be changed. After resolving the conflict one should use the *Mark resolved* action in order to be able to commit the file. Note that the *Mark resolved* action does not really resolve the conflict. It just removes the conflicted flag of the file and deletes the temporary files.

## Edit real content conflicts

The conflicts of a file in the conflicted state (a file with the red double arrow icon) can be edited visually with the *Compare* view (the built-in file diff tool) or with an external diff application to decide for each conflict if the local version of the change will remain or the remote one instead of the special conflict markers inserted in the file by the SVN server.

The *Compare* view (or the external diff application set in Preferences) is opened with the action *Edit Conflict* which is available on the context menus of the Synchronize view and the Working Copy view and is enabled only for files in the conflicted state (an update operation was executed but the differences could not be merged without conflicts). The external diff application is called with 3 parameters because it is a 3-way diff operation between the local version of the file from the working copy and the HEAD version from the SVN repository with the BASE version from the working copy as common ancestor.

If the option *Show warning dialog when edit conflicts* is enabled you will be warned at the beginning of the operation that the operation will overwrite the conflict version of the file received from the SVN server (the version which contains the conflict markers <<<<<<<<, =====, >>>>>>>) with the original local version of the file that preceded the update operation. If you press the OK button the visual conflict editing will proceed and a backup file of the conflict version received from the SVN server is created in the same working copy folder as the file with the edited conflicts. The name of the backup file is obtained by appending the extension *.sync.bak* to the file as stored on the SVN server. If you press the Cancel button the visual editing will be aborted.

The usual operations on the differences between two versions of a file are available on the toolbar of this view:

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Save  | Save the modifications of the local version of the file displayed in the left side of the view.   |
| Perform Files Differencing                          | Apply the diff operation on the two versions of the file displayed in the view. It is useful after modifying the local version displayed in the left side of the view.            |
| Go to First Modification                            | Scroll the view to the topmost difference.  |
| Go to Previous Modification                         | Scroll the view to the previous difference. The current difference is painted with a darker color than the other ones.  |
| Go to Next Modification                             | Scroll the view to the next difference. The current difference is painted with a darker color than the other ones.  |
| Go to Last Modification                             | Scroll the view to the last difference.   |
| Copy All Non Conflicting Changes from Left to Right | Not applicable for editing conflicts so it is disabled.   |
| Copy Change from Left to Right                      | Not applicable for editing conflicts so it is disabled.   |
| Copy Change from Right to Left                      | Copy the current difference from the left side to the right side by replacing the highlighted text of the current difference from the left side with the one from the right side. |
| Copy All Non Conflicting Changes from Right to Left | Apply the previous operation for all the differences.   |
| Show Modification Details at Word Level             | Display a more detailed version of the current difference computed at word level.   |

|  |  |
|--|--|
| Show Modification Details at Character Level | Display a more detailed version of the current difference computed at character level.   |
| Ignore Whitespaces                           | The text nodes are normalized before computing the difference so that if two text nodes differ only in whitespace characters they are reported as equal. |

The operation begins by overwriting the conflict version of the file received from the SVN server (the version which contains the conflict markers <<<<<<<, =====, >>>>>>>) with the original local version of the file before running the update action which created the conflict. After that the differences between this original local version and the repository version are displayed in the *Compare* view.

If you want to edit the conflict version of the file directly in a text editor instead of the visual editing offered by the *Compare* view you should work on the local working copy file after the update operation without running the action *Edit Conflict*. If you decide that you want to edit the conflict version directly after running the action *Edit Conflict* you have to work on the `.sync.bak` file.

If you did not finish editing the conflicts in a file at the first run of the action *Edit Conflict* you can run the action again and you will be prompted to choose between resuming the editing where the previous run left it and starting again from the conflict file received from the SVN server.

After the conflicts are edited and saved in the local version of the file you usually run the action *Mark Resolved* on the file so that the result of the conflict editing process can be committed to the SVN repository or the action *Revert* so that the repository version overwrites all the local modifications. Both actions remove the backup file and other temporary files created with the conflict version of the local file.

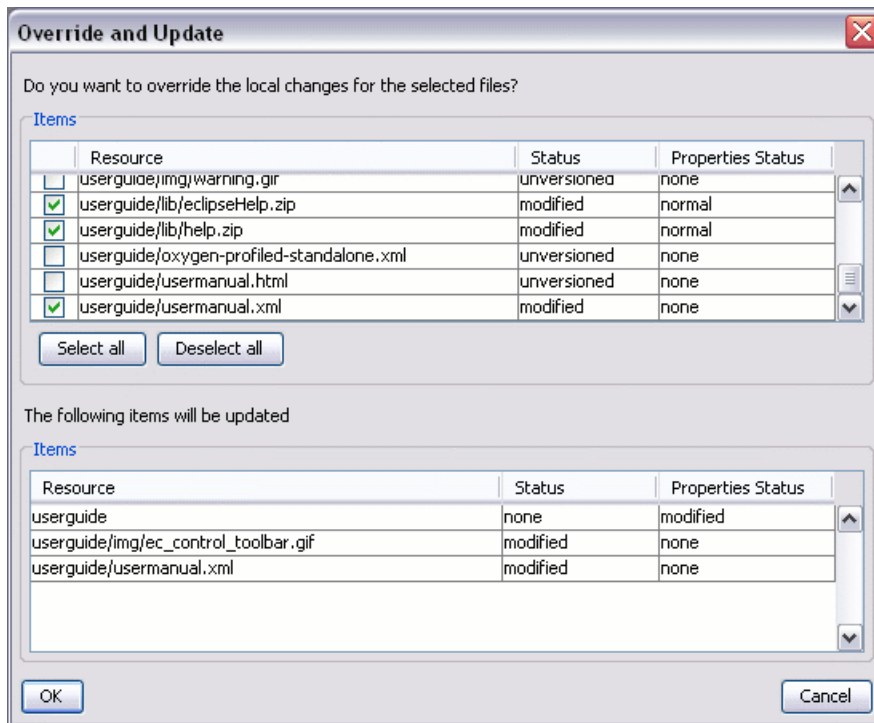
## Revert your changes

If you want to undo all changes you made in a file since the last update you need to select the file, right click to pop up the context menu and then select *Revert*. A dialog will pop up showing you the files that you have changed and can be reverted. Select those you want to revert and click the OK button. *Revert* will only undo your local changes. It does not undo any changes which have already been committed. If you choose to revert the file to the pristine copy which resides in the administration folders then the eventual conflict is solved by losing your outgoing modifications. If you try to revert a resource not under version control, the resource will be deleted from the file system.

If you want some of your outgoing changes to be overridden you must first open the file in *Compare* view and choose the sections to be replaced with ones from repository file. This can be achieved either by editing directly the file or by using the action *Copy change from right to left* from *Compare* view toolbar. After editing the conflicting file you have to use *Mark as merged* before committing it.

If you want to drop all local changes and in the same time bring all incoming changes into your working copy resource you can use the *Override and update* action which discards the changes in the local file and updates it from the repository. A dialog will show you the files that will be affected.



**Figure 17.14. Override and update dialog**

In the first table in the dialog you will be able to see the resources that will be overridden. You can also select or deselect them as you wish. In the second table you will find the list of resources that will be updated. Only resources that have an incoming status in the *Synchronize view* will be updated.

## Merge conflicted resources

Before you can safely commit your changes to the repository you must first resolve all conflicts. In the case of pseudo-conflicts they can be resolved in most cases with an Update operation which will merge the incoming modifications into your working copy resource. In the case of real conflicts, conflicts that persist after an update operation, it is necessary to resolve the conflict using the built-in compare view and editor or, in the case of properties conflict, the Properties view. Before you can commit you must *mark as resolved* the affected files. Both pseudo and real conflicts can be resolved without an update. You can:

- open the file in the compare editor
- analyze the changes
- edit the changes
- decide which incoming changes need to be copied locally
- decide which outgoing changes must be overridden or modified

After saving your local file you have to use the *Mark as merged* action from the contextual menu before committing.

## Drop incoming modifications

In the situation when your file is in conflict but you decide that your working copy file and its content is the correct one, you can decide to drop some or all of the incoming changes and commit afterwards. The action *Mark as merged*

proves to be useful in this case too. After opening the conflicting files with Compare view, Editor or editing their properties in the *Properties view* and deciding that your file can be committed in the repository replacing the existing one, you should first use *Mark as merged* action. When you want to override completely the remote file with the local file you can use *Override and commit* which drops any remote changes and commits your file.

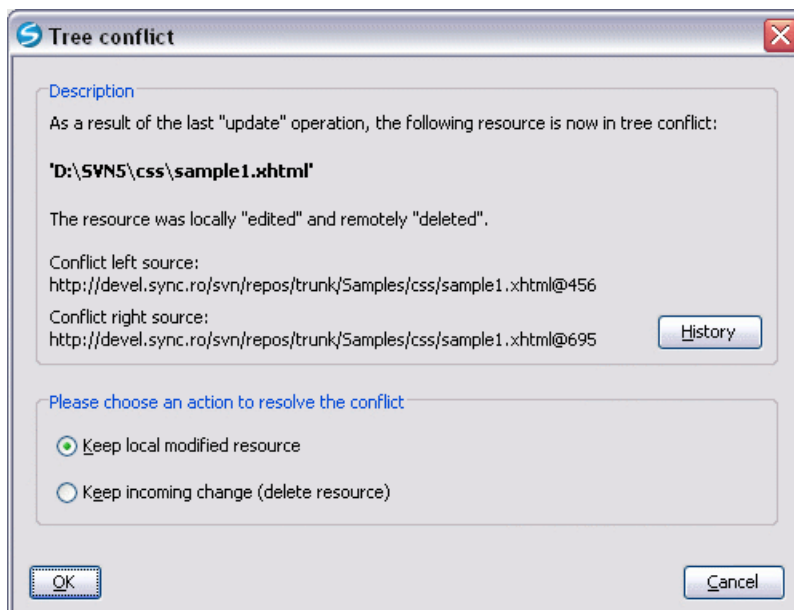
In general it is much safer to analyze all incoming and outgoing changes using Compare view and only after to update and commit.

## Tree conflicts

A tree conflict is a conflict at the folder level and occurs when the user runs an update action on a file but the file does not exist in the repository anymore because other user renamed the file, moved the file to other folder or deleted the file from repository. The same conflict situation can occur at folder level in a merge action or switch action. The action ends with an error and the folder containing the file that exists now only in the working copy is marked with a conflict icon ().

Such a conflict can be resolved in one of the following ways which are available when the user double clicks on the conflict in the *Synchronize view* or when he runs the action *Edit conflict*:

### Figure 17.15. Resolve a tree conflict



- keep the the local modified file; if there is a renamed version of the file committed by other user that will be added to the working copy too
- delete the local modified file, which means keep the incoming change that comes from the repository.

## Update the working copy

While you are working on a project, other members of your team may be committing changes to the project repository. To get these changes, you have to update your working copy. Updating may be done on single files, a set of selected files, or recursively on entire directory hierarchies The update operation can be performed either from Working Copy view or Synchronize view. The Update action in the Working Copy view is different from the Update action in the Synchronize view. The Update action from the Working Copy view updates the selected resources to the HEAD revision

on the repository. The Synchronize view action updates the selected resources to the revision against which the *Synchronize* operation was performed.

There are three different kinds of incoming changes:

- Non-conflicting - A non-conflicting change occurs when a file has been changed remotely but has not been modified locally.
- Conflicting, but auto-mergeable - An auto-mergeable conflicting change occurs when a text file has been changed both remotely and locally (i.e. has non-committed local changes) but the changes are on different lines.
- Conflicting - A conflicting change occurs when one or more of the same lines of a text file have been changed both remotely and locally. Binary files are never auto-mergeable and are conflicting by default.

If the resource contains only incoming changes or the outgoing changes do not intersect with incoming ones then the update will end normally, the Subversion system merging incoming changes into the local file. In the case of conflicting situation the update will have as result a file with conflict status.

The Syncro SVN Client allows you to update your working copy files to a specific revision, not only the most recent one. This can be done by using *Update to revision* action from the History view contextual menu.

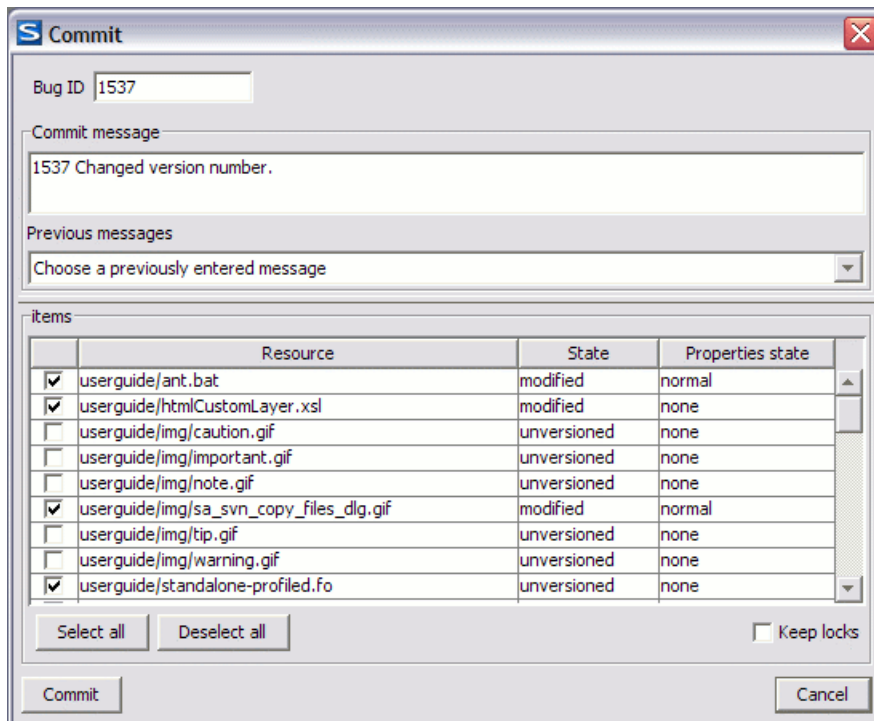
If you select multiple files and folders and then you perform an *Update*, all of those files/folders are updated one by one. The Subversion client makes sure that all files/folders belonging to the same repository are updated to the exact same revision, even if between those updates another commit occurred.

When the update fails with a message saying that there is already a local file with the same name Subversion tried to checkout a newly versioned file, and found that an unversioned file with the same name already existed in your working folder. Subversion will never overwrite an unversioned file unless you specifically do this with *Override and update*. If you get this error message, the solution is simply to rename the local unversioned file. After completing the update, you can check whether the renamed file is still needed.

## Send your changes to the repository

Sending the changes you made to your working copy is known as committing the changes. If your working copy is up to date and there are no conflicts, you are ready to commit your changes.

The *Commit* action sends the changes in your local working copy to the repository. After selecting the action from the contextual menu you will see a dialog displaying the resources that can be committed.

**Figure 17.16. Commit dialog**

Enter a comment to associate with the commit or choose a previously entered comment from the list (the last 10 commit messages will be remembered even after restarting the SVN client application). The dialog will list modified, added, deleted and unversioned resources. All modified, added and deleted resources will be selected by default. If you don't want a changed file to be committed, just uncheck that file. The unversioned items are not selected by default unless you have selected them specifically before issuing the commit command.

To select all resources, click *Select All*. To deselect all resources, click *Deselect All*. Checking the *Keep locks* option will preserve any locks you have on repository resources. Your working copy must be up-to-date with respect to the resources you are committing. This is ensured by using the *Update* action prior to committing, resolving conflicts and re-testing as needed. If your working copy resources you are trying to commit are *out of date* you will get an appropriate error message.

The table presented in the dialog is sortable. For example if you want to see all the resources that are in the *modified* state click on the *State* column header to sort the table by that column.

The modifications that will be committed for each file can be reviewed in the compare editor window by double clicking on the file in the Commit dialog or by right clicking and selecting the action *Show Modifications*.

If you have modified files which have been included from a different repository using *svn:externals*, those changes cannot be included in the same commit operation.

### **Note**

If the working copy is located on other computer and is accessed through Samba some files for which SVN properties are set will have a size of zero bytes in the working copy after the commit operation. This is caused by a failed action of creating a backup copy of the committed file which is caused by some Samba delays in write operations. You can avoid this problem by adding the startup parameter `-Dsvnkit.no.safe.copy=true`

## Integration with Bug Tracking Tools

Users of bug tracking systems can associate the changes they make in the repository resources with a specific ID in their bug tracking system. When the user enters a commit message, the bug ID is added to this message. The format and the location of the ID in the commit message are configured with SVN properties.

To make the integration possible Syncro SVN Client needs some data about the bug tracking tool used in the project. You can configure this using the following SVN properties which must be set on the folder containing resources associated with the bug tracking system. Usually they are set recursively on the root folder of the working copy.

|                                    |  |
|------------------------------------|--|
| <code>bugtraq:message</code>       | A string property. If it is set the Commit dialog will display a text field for entering the bug ID. It must contain the string <code>%BUGID%</code> , which is replaced with the bug number on commit.  |
| <code>bugtraq:label</code>         | A string property that sets the label for the text field configured with the <code>bugtraq:message</code> property.  |
| <code>bugtraq:url</code>           | A string property that is the URL pointing to the bug tracking tool. The URL string should contain the substring <code>"%BUGID%"</code> which Syncro SVN Client replaces with the issue number. That way the resulting URL will point directly to the correct issue.   |
| <code>bugtraq:warnifnoissue</code> | A boolean property with the values <code>"true"/"yes"</code> or <code>"false"/"no"</code> . If set to <code>"true"</code> , then Syncro SVN Client will warn you if the bug ID text field is left empty. The warning will not block the commit, only give you a chance to enter an issue number.   |
| <code>bugtraq:number</code>        | A boolean property with the value <code>"true"</code> or <code>"false"</code> . If this property is set to <code>"false"</code> , then any character can be entered in the bug ID text field. Any other value or if the property is missing then only numbers are allowed as the bug ID.   |
| <code>bugtraq:append</code>        | A boolean property. If set to <code>"false"</code> , then the bug ID is inserted at the beginning of the commit message. If <code>"yes"</code> or not set, then it's appended to the commit message.   |
| <code>bugtraq:logregex</code>      | This property contains one or two regular expressions, separated by a newline. If only one expression is set, then the bug ID's must be matched in the groups of the regexp string. Example:<br><br><pre>[Ii]ssue #?(\d+)</pre> <p>If two expressions are set, then the first expression is used to find a string which relates to a bug ID but may contain more than just the bug ID (e.g. "Issue #123" or "resolves issue 123"). The second expression is then used to extract the bug ID from the string extracted with the first expression. An example: if you want to catch every pattern "issue #XXX" and "issue #890, #789" inside a log message you could use the following regexp strings:</p> <pre>[Ii]ssue #?(\d+)(, ? ?#?(\d+))+</pre> <pre>(\d+)</pre> |

The data configured with these SVN properties is stored on the repository when a revision is committed. A bug tracking system or a statistics tools can retrieve from the SVN server the revisions that affected a bug and present the commits related to that bug to the user of the bug tracking system.

If the `bugtraq:url` property was filled in with the URL of the bug tracking system and this URL includes the `%BUGID%` substring as specified above in the description of the `bugtraq:url` property then the History view presents the bug ID

as a hyperlink in the commit message. A click on such a hyperlink in the commit message of a revision opens a Web browser at the page corresponding to the bug affected by that commit.

## Obtain information for a resource

### Request status information for a resource

While you are working you often need to know which files you have changed, added, removed or renamed, or even which files got changed and committed by others. That's where the *Synchronize* action from Working Copy view comes in handy. The *Working Copy View* will show you every file that has changed in any way in your working copy, as well as any unversioned files you may have. If you use Synchronize view then you can also look for changes in the repository. That way you can check before an update if there's a possible conflict.

If you want more detailed information about a given resource you can use *Information* action from the *Working copy view* contextual menu or the *Synchronize view* contextual menu. A dialog called *SVN Information* will pop up showing remote and local information regarding the resource, such as:

- local path and repository location
- revision number
- last change author, revision and date
- commit comment
- information about locks
- local file status
- local properties status
- remote file status
- remote properties status
- file size, etc.

The value of a property of the resource displayed in the dialog can be copied by right clicking on the property and selecting the *Copy* action.

A less detailed list of information is also presented when you hover with the mouse pointer over a resource and the tooltip window is displayed.

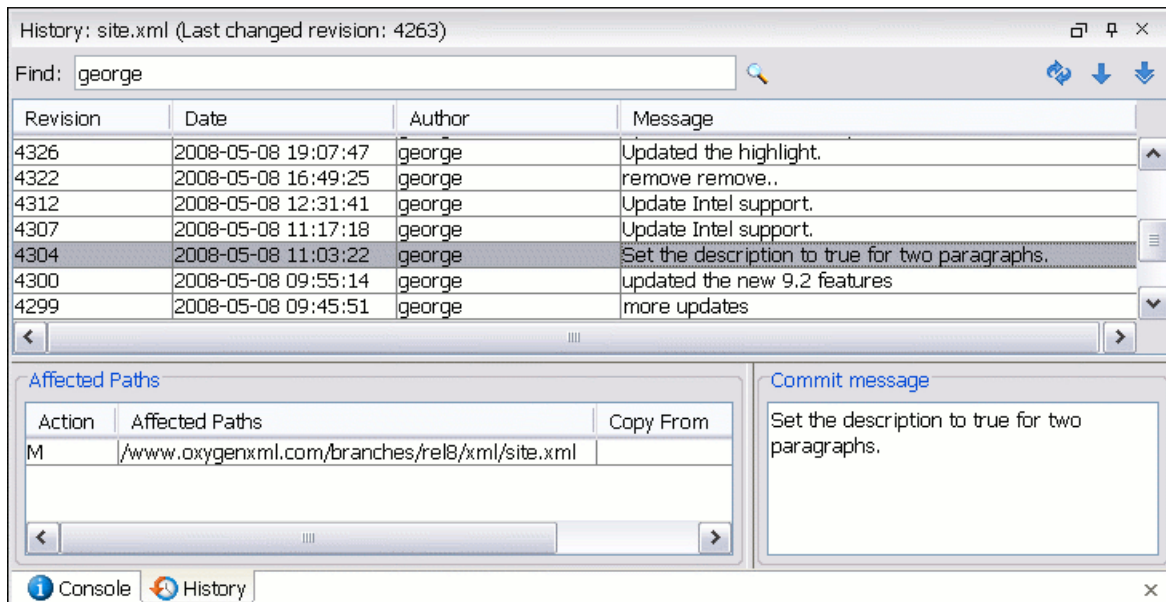
### Request history for a resource

In Subversion, both files and directories are versioned and have a history. If you want to examine the history for a selected resource and find out what happened at a certain revision, what has been changed regarding that resource and who did the changes, drop the modifications made in a certain revision, check out / update the resource to a selected revision, compare two revisions of the same file and other actions, you have to use the *Show history action*. This is available from any of the three views: Repository view menu, Working copy view menu or Synchronize view menu. From the *Repository view* you can display the log history regarding any remote resource residing in repository. From the *Working copy view* you can display the history of local versioned resources. From the *Synchronize view* you can show the history of any incoming or outgoing resources.

The view itself consists of three distinct areas:

- The revision table showing revision numbers, date/time of revision, name of the author, as well as the first line of the commit message. You can click on any revision to show its full details.
- The list of resources affected by this revision (modified, added, deleted or changed properties).
- The commit message for the selected revision.

**Figure 17.17. History View**



The *Resource history view* does not always show all the changes ever made to a resource because for a large repository there may be thousands of changes and retrieving the entire list can take a long time. Normally you are interested in the more recent ones and that is why the number of revisions is limited by default from the options to 50. This can be changed by accessing the Preferences->SVN page.

### Note

When using Subversion servers older than version 1.2, a history request may take a very long time because the server will reply with the entire history even if you limited the number of entries to a smaller number.

## Using the resource history view

The *History view* provides a set of actions you can use to get even more information about the project history and make changes to your working copy related with older revisions.

### History actions available in the popup menu displayed by a right click in the view when a single resource is selected:

- *Compare with working copy* - compares the selected revision with your working copy file. It is enabled only when you select a file.
- *Open* - opens the selected revision of the file into the Editor. This is enabled only for files.

- *Open With...* - Displays the 'Open with...' dialog for specifying the editor in which the selected file revision will be opened. This is enabled only for files.
- *Get Contents* - replace the current content of the local version of the selected file with the content of the selected revision.
- *Save revision to...* - saves the selected revision to a file so you have an older version of that file. This option is available only when you access the history of a file, and it saves a version of that one file only.
- *Revert changes from this revision* - reverts changes which were made in the selected revision. The changes are reverted in your working copy so this operation does not affect the repository file! The action will undo the changes made only in selected revision. It does not replace your working copy file with the entire file at the earlier revision. This is useful for undoing an earlier change when other unrelated changes have been made since the date of the revision. This option is enabled when the resource history was launched for a local working copy resource.
- *Update to revision* - updates your working copy resource to the selected revision. Useful if you want to have your working copy reflect a time in the past. It is best to update a whole directory in your working copy, not just one file, otherwise your working copy will be inconsistent and you will be unable to commit your changes.
- *Check out from revision...* - gets the content of the selected revision for the resource into local file system.
- *Show Annotation...* - brings up a dialog for selecting the start revision and the end revision of the interval of revisions for which the SVN annotations will be computed and marked in the selected resource in the editor panel. This option is available only when you access the history of a file.
- *Change* - allows you to change some commit information for a file.
  - *Author* - allows you to change the author that committed the selected file revision.
  - *Message* - allows you to change the commit message of the selected file revision.

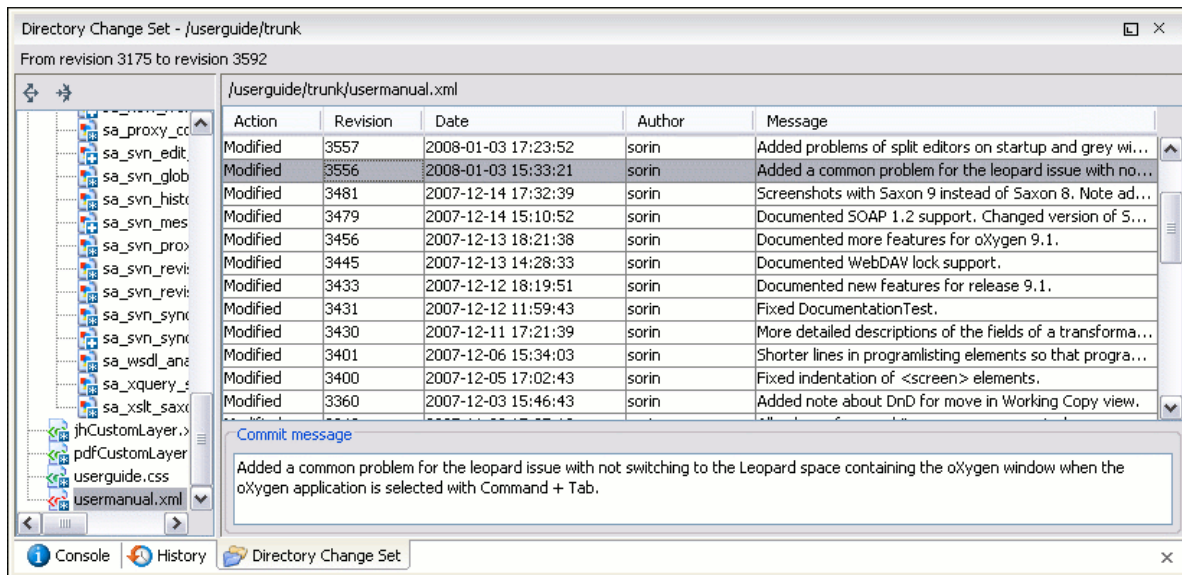
## History actions available on the popup menu for double selection:

- *Compare revisions* - When the resource is a file the action compares the two selected revisions using the Compare view. When the resource is a folder the action displays the set of all resources from that folder that were changed between the two revision numbers.
- *Revert changes from these revisions* - Similar to the svn-merge command, it merges two selected revisions into the working copy resource. This action is only enabled when the resource history was requested for a working copy item.

## Directory Change Set View

The result of comparing two reference revisions from the history of a folder resource is a set with all the resources changed between the two revision numbers and contained in the folder or in a subfolder of the folder. These resources are presented in a tree format and for each changed resource of the set all the revisions committed between the two reference revision numbers are presented.



**Figure 17.18. Directory Change Set View**

The set of changed resources displayed in the tree is obtained by running the action *Compare revisions* available on the context menu of the *History* view when two revisions of a folder resource are selected in the *History* view.

The left side panel of the view contains the tree hierarchy with the names of all the changed resources between the two reference revision numbers. The right side panel presents the list with all the revisions of the resource selected in the tree that were committed between the two reference revision numbers. Selecting one revision in the list displays the commit message of that revision in the bottom area of the right side panel.

A double click on a file listed in the left side tree performs a diff operation between the two revisions of the file corresponding to the two reference revisions of the folder for which the change set was computed. A double click on one of the revisions displayed in the right side list of the view performs a diff operation between that revision and the previous one of the same file.

The context menu of the right side list contains the following actions:

- |                               |   |
|-------------------------------|---|
| Compare with previous version | Performs a diff operation between the selected revision in the list and the previous one.   |
| Open                          | Open the selected revision in the associated editor type.   |
| Open with...                  | Displays a dialog with the available editor types and allow the user to select the editor type for opening the selected revision. |
| Save revision to...           | Save the selected revision in a file on disk.   |
| Show Annotation               | Request the annotations of the file and display them in the <i>Annotations</i> view.  |

## Management of SVN properties

In the Properties view you can read and set the Subversion properties of a file or folder. There is a set of predefined properties with special meaning to Subversion. For more information about properties in Subversion see the SVN Subversion specification. Subversion properties are revision dependent. After you change, add or delete a property for a resource, you have to commit your changes to the repository.

## Add / Edit / Remove SVN properties

If you want to change the properties of a given resource you need to select that resource from the Working copy view or the Synchronize view and access the *Show properties* action from the contextual menu. The properties view will show the local properties for the resource in the working copy. Once the *Properties View* is visible, it will always present the properties of the currently selected resource.

In the Properties view toolbar there are available actions which allow you to add, change and delete the properties.

If you choose the *Add a new property* action, a new dialog will pop-up. The sections in the dialog are:

- Name - it is a combo box which allows you to enter the name of the property. The drop down list of the combo box presents the predefined Subversion properties such as svn:ignore, svn:externals, svn:needs-lock, etc.
- Current value - it is a text area which allows you to enter the value of the new property.

If the selected item is a directory, you can also set the property recursively on its children by checking the *Set property recursively* checkbox.

If you want to change the value for a previously set property you can use *Edit property* action which will display a dialog where you can set:

- Name - the property name. It cannot be changed; only its value can.
- Current value - presents the current value and allows you to change it.
- Base value - the value of the property, if any, from the resource in the pristine copy. It cannot be modified.

If you want to completely remove a property previously set you can choose *Remove property* action. It will display a confirmation dialog in which you can choose also if the property will be removed recursively.

In the Properties view there is a *Refresh* action which can be used when the properties have been changed from outside the view. This can happen, for example, when the view was already presenting the properties of a resource and they have been changed after an *Update* operation.

## Creation and management of Branches/Tags

One of the fundamental features of version control systems is the ability to create a new line of development from the main one. This new line of development will always share a common history with the main line if you look far enough back in time. This line is known as a branch. Branches are mostly used to try out features or fixes. When the feature or fix is finished, the branch can be merged back into the main branch (trunk).

Another feature of version control systems is the ability to take a snapshot of a particular revision, so you can at any time recreate a certain build or environment. This is known as tagging. Tagging is especially useful when making release versions.

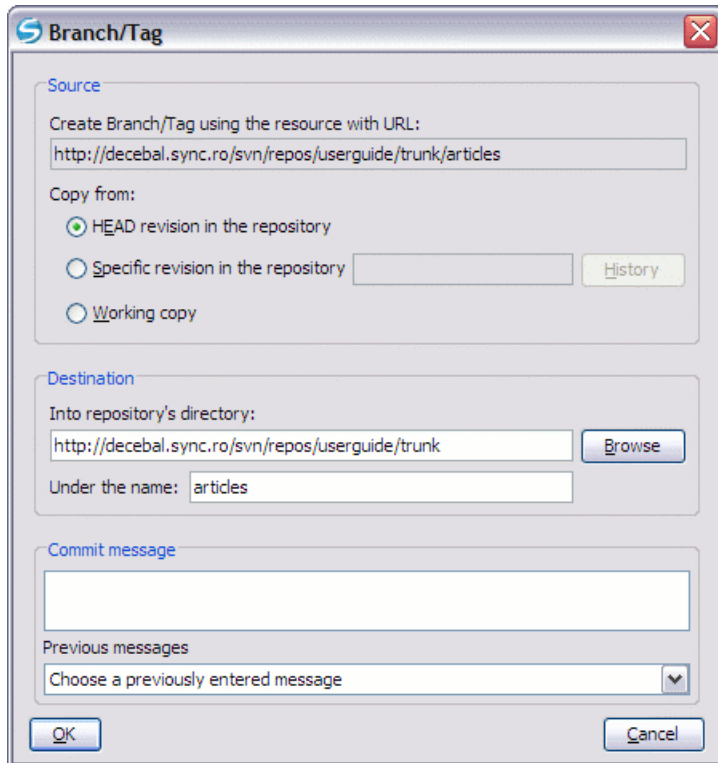
In Subversion there is no difference between a tag and a branch. On the repository both are ordinary directories that are created by copying. The trick is that they are cheap copies instead of physical copies. Cheap copies are similar to hard links in Unix, which means that they merely link to a specific tree and revision without making a physical copy. As a result branches and tags occupy little space on the repository and are created very quickly.

As long as nobody ever commits to the directory in question, it remains a tag. If people start committing to it, it becomes a branch.

## Create a Branch/Tag

In the Working Copy view or in the Repository view, select the resource which you want to copy to a branch or tag, then select the command *Branch/Tag...* from the *Tools* menu.

**Figure 17.19. The Branch/Tag dialog**



The default target URL for the new branch/tag will be the repository URL of the selected resource from your working copy, divided in two: the URL of the parent and the selected resource's name. You may specify other resource name if you want to make a branch/tag using a different name than the one of the selected resource, by modifying the field labeled "Under the name:". The new branch/tag will be created as child of the specified repository directory URL and having the new provided name. To change the parent directory URL to the new path for your branch/tag, click on the Browse button and choose a repository target directory for your resource.

You can also specify the source of the copy. There are three options:

- HEAD revision in the repository - The new branch/tag will be copied in the repository from the HEAD revision. The branch will be created very quickly as the repository will make a cheap copy.
- Specific revision in the repository - The new branch will be copied in the repository but you can specify exactly the desired revision. This is useful for example if you forgot to make a branch/tag when you released your application. If you click on the History button on the right you can select the revision number from the History dialog. This type of branch will also be created very quickly.
- Working copy - The new branch will be a copy of your local working copy. If you have updated some files to an older revision in your working copy, or if you have made local changes, that is exactly what goes into the copy. This involves transferring some data from your working copy back to the repository, more exactly the locally modified files.

When you are ready to create the new branch/tag, write a commit comment in the corresponding field and press the OK button.

## Merging

At some stage during the development you will want to merge the changes made on one branch back into the trunk, or vice versa.

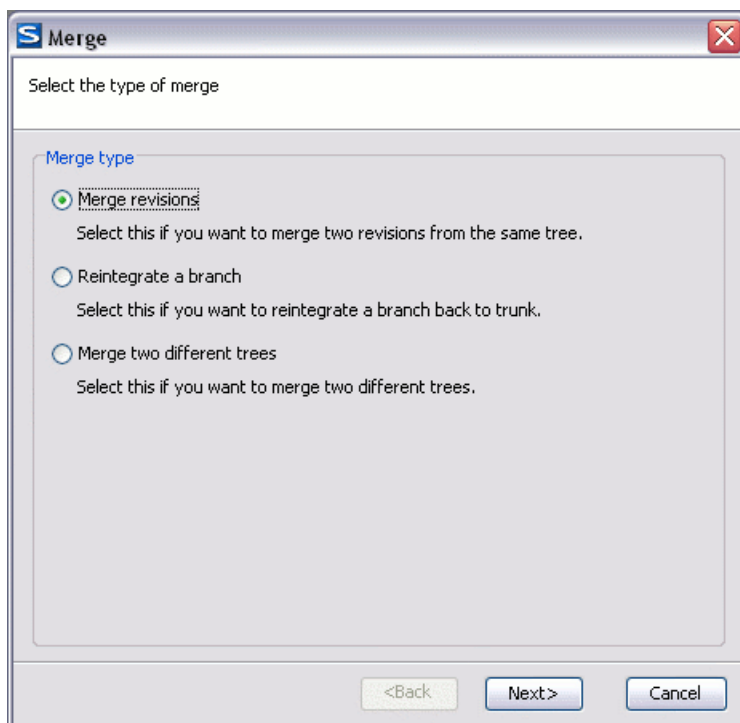
Merge is closely related to Diff. The merge is accomplished by comparing two points (branches or revisions) in the repository and applying the obtained differences to your working copy.

It is a good idea to perform a merge into an unmodified working copy. If you have made changes to your working copy, commit them first. If the merge does not go as you expect, you may want to revert the changes and Revert cannot recover your uncommitted modifications.

The *Merge* command can be found in the *Tools* main menu of the Syncro SVN Client. The directory selected when you issued the command will be the result directory of the merge operation.

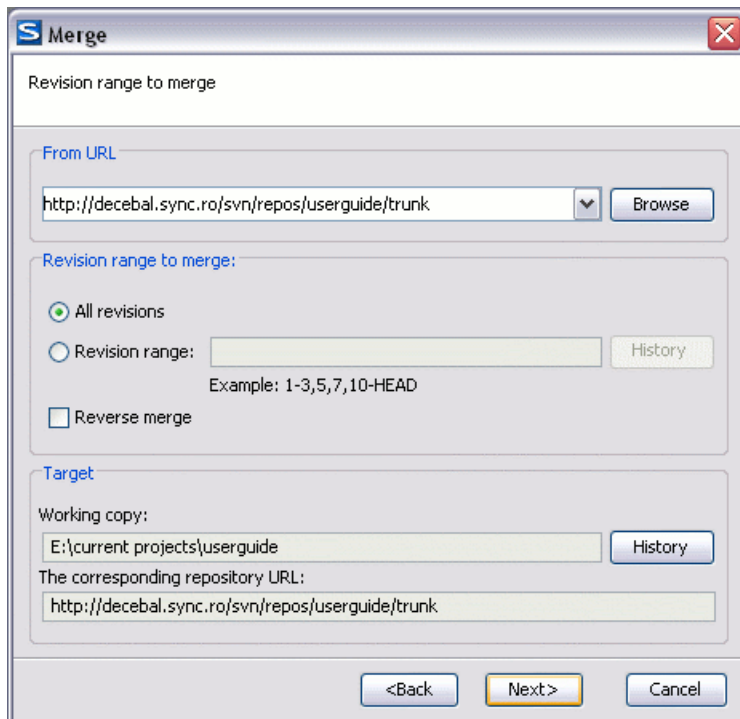
There are three common types of merging which are handled in different ways, as described below. The first page of the merge operation wizard allows you to select the merging method.

**Figure 17.20. The Merge type dialog**



### Merge revisions

This is the case when you have made one or more revisions to a branch (or to the trunk) and you want to port those changes across to a different branch or trunk. An example of such operation can be the following: Calculate the changes necessary to get (from) revision 17 of branch B1 (to) revision 25 of branch B1, and apply those changes to my working copy, of the trunk or another branch.

**Figure 17.21. Merge revisions range dialog**

Enter the folder URL of the branch or tag containing the changes you want to port into your working copy in the **From:** field. You may also click the **Browse** button to browse the repository and find the desired branch. If you have merged from this branch before, then just use the drop down list which shows a history of previously used URLs.

In the **Revision range to merge** section you can choose to merge all revisions or enter the list of revisions you want to merge in the **Revision range** field. This can be a single revision, a list of comma separated specific revisions, or a range of revisions separated by a dash, or any combination of these.

You can click on **History** button to select in the easiest way the list of revisions to be merged. One or several revisions can be selected then by clicking on **OK** the list of revision numbers to merge will be filled in the **Revision range** text field.

If you want to merge changes back out of your working copy, to revert a change which has already been committed, select the revisions to revert and check the **Reverse merge** box.

If you have already merged some changes from this branch and you remember the last merged revision, you can use **History** for the **Working Copy** to trace that revision. For example, if you have merged revisions 27 to 33 last time, then the start point for this merge operation should be revision 33.

Subversion has merge tracking features and automatically records the last merged revision so you do not need to remember when you performed the last merge.

Be careful about using the **HEAD** revision. It may not refer to the revision you think it does if someone else made a commit after your last update.

The target panel of the dialog reminds you the location of the target resource from the working copy where the merge result will be saved and its corresponding repository URL.

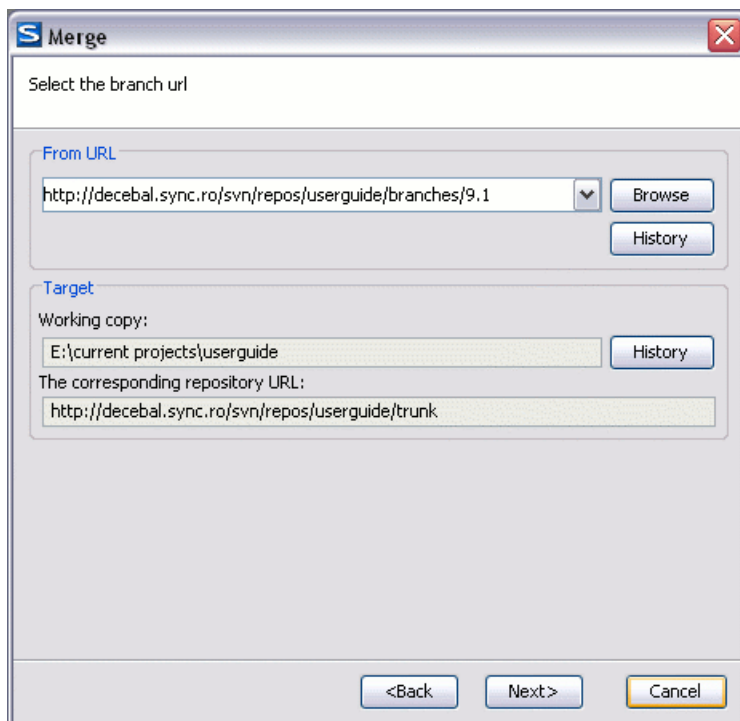
Click **Next** and go to **Merge Options**.

## Reintegrate a branch

This method covers the case when you have made a feature branch. All trunk changes have been ported to the feature branch, and now you want to merge it back into the trunk. Because you have kept the feature branch synchronized with the trunk, the latest versions of branch and trunk will be absolutely identical except for your branch changes. These changes can be reintegrated into the trunk by this method

It uses the merge-tracking features of Subversion to calculate the correct revision ranges to use, and perform additional checks which ensure that the branch has been fully updated with trunk changes. This ensures that you don't accidentally undo work that others have committed to trunk since you last synchronized changes. After the merge, all branch development has been completely merged back into the main development line. The branch is now redundant and can be deleted.

**Figure 17.22. Reintegrate a branch dialog**



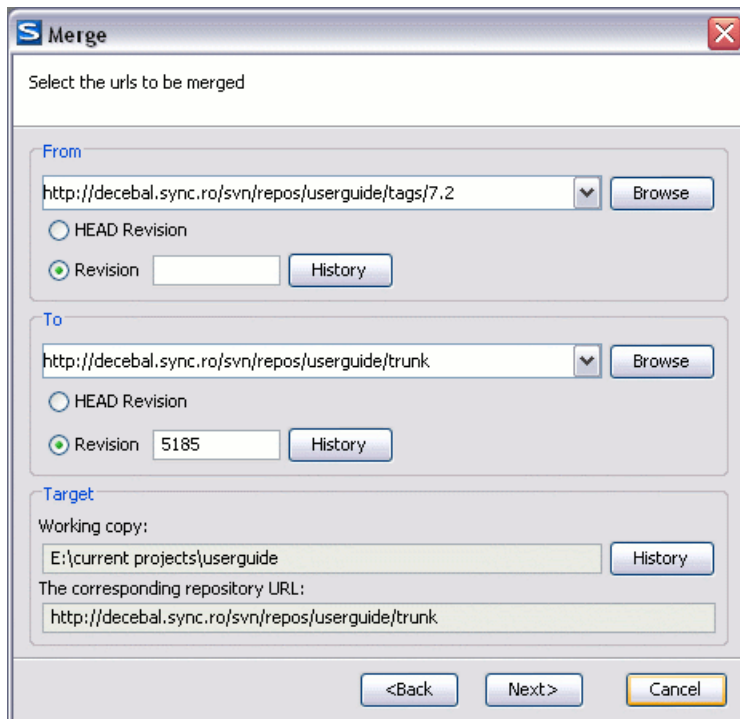
Enter the full folder URL of the branch that you want to merge back. There are some conditions which apply to a reintegrate merge. Firstly, the server must support merge tracking. The working copy must be of depth infinite (no sparse checkouts), and it must not have any local modifications, switched items or items that have been updated to revisions other than HEAD. All changes to trunk made during branch development must have been merged across to the branch (or marked as having been merged). The range of revisions to merge will be calculated automatically.

The target panel of the dialog reminds you the location of the target resource from the working copy where the merge result will be saved and its corresponding repository URL.

## Merge two different trees

This is a general case of the reintegrate method. You can consider the following example: calculate the changes necessary to get (from) the HEAD revision of the trunk (to) the HEAD revision of the branch, and apply those changes to my working copy (of the trunk). The result is that trunk will be identical with the branch.

If the server does not support merge-tracking then this is the only way to merge a branch back to trunk.

**Figure 17.23. Merge trees dialog**

By default the start URL will be the URL of the selected file in the working copy. You can browse the repository and select a start URL and then choose a revision.

If you are using this method to merge a feature branch back to trunk, you need to start the merge wizard from within a working copy of trunk. In the "From" field enter the full folder URL of the trunk. This may sound wrong, but remember that the trunk is the start point to which you want to add the branch changes. In the "To" field enter the full folder URL of the feature branch.

In both the From Revision field and the To Revision field, enter the last revision number at which the two trees were synchronized. If you are sure no-one else is making commits you can use the HEAD revision in both cases. If there is a chance that someone else may have made a commit since that synchronization, use the specific revision number to avoid losing more recent commits.

The target panel of the dialog reminds you the location of the target resource from the working copy where the merge result will be saved and its corresponding repository URL.

## Merge Options

This page lets you specify advanced options, before starting the merge process.

You can specify how far down into your working copy the merge should go by setting the merge depth. The depth term is described in the Sparse checkouts section. The default depth is Working copy, which uses the existing depth setting.

The **Ignore ancestry** checkbox allows a merge to be applied between a branch and the trunk or between two branches even if they do not share a common ancestry. Normally the branch and the trunk or the two branches that are merged must have a common ancestor revision in the same repository. In case the two merged trees were imported in the repository they are not related in the sense of a common ancestor tree and the merge operation is possible by ignoring the missing common ancestry of the two merged trees.

The **Ignore line endings** and **Ignore whitespaces** checkboxes allow you to specify how the line endings and whitespace changes should be handled. If they are checked the changes due only to the line endings and whitespaces are ignored. The default behavior is to treat all whitespace and line-end differences as real changes to be merged. **Ignore whitespace changes** excludes changes which are caused by a change in the amount or type of whitespace, for example changing the indentation or changing tabs to spaces. Adding whitespace where there was none before, or removing a whitespace completely is still shown as a change. If **Ignore all whitespaces** is checked all whitespace-only changes are excluded.

If you are using merge tracking support and you want to mark a revision as having been merged, without actually doing the merge here, check the **Only record the merge** checkbox. You might want to do this for two possible reasons. You make the changes by hand, then mark the change as merged so that the merge tracking algorithm is aware of it. Or you might want to prevent a particular revision from being merged by marking it as already merged. This will prevent future merging.

By pressing the Test merge button you can choose to do a **Dry run** of the *Merge operation* in order to see what files are affected and how, without modifying the working copy at all. This is very helpful in detecting where conflicts may occur.

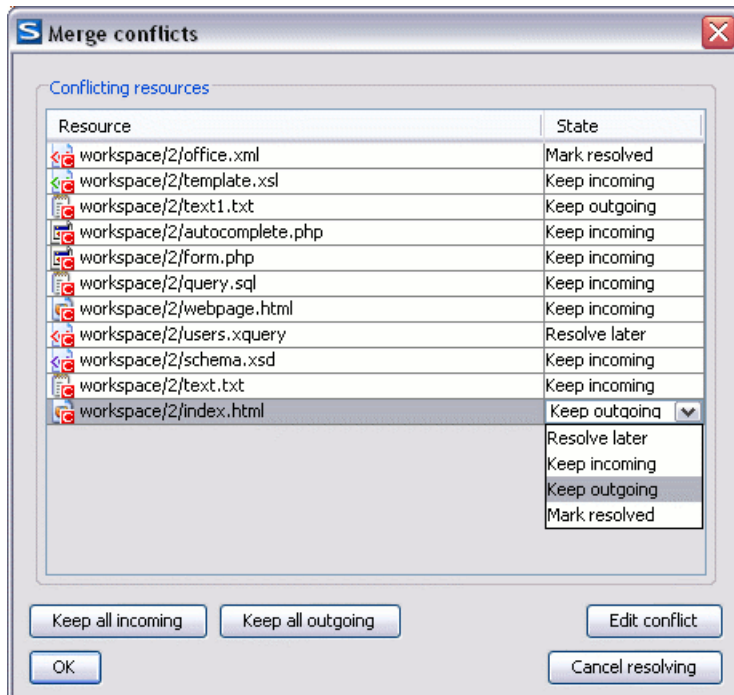
Press the Merge button in order for the operation to take place. You will obtain the result in the selected resource from the working copy.

When the merge is completed it's a good idea to look at the result of the merge and see if it meets your expectations. Because merging is sometimes complicated, when there are major changes, conflicts may appear.

## Resolve merge conflicts

After the merge operation is finished it is possible to have some resources in conflict. This means that some incoming modifications for a resource could not be merged with the current modifications from the working copy. If there are such conflicts, a dialog will appear presenting you the resources that are in conflict and from where you can choose a way in which every conflict should be resolved.

**Figure 17.24. Merge conflicts dialog**





The options to resolve a conflict are:

- Resolve later - used to leave the conflict as it is for manual resolving it later;
- Keep incoming - this option keeps all the incoming modifications, discarding all current ones from your working copy;
- Keep outgoing - this option keeps all current modifications from your working copy, discarding all incoming ones;
- Mark resolved - you should chose this option after you have manually edited the conflict. To do that, use the *Edit conflict* button, which will bring to you a dialog presenting the conflicting resource's content for current working copy version and the one with the incoming modifications. After manually resolving the conflict, the resource will be marked as resolved.

## Switch the Repository Location

The Switch action is useful when the repository location of a working copy or only of a versioned item of the working copy must be changed within the same repository. It is available on the *Tools* menu for a selected working copy versioned resource, except an external folder.

## Relocate a Working Copy

When the base URL of the repository changed, for example the repository itself was relocated to a different server, you do not have to check out again a working copy from the new repository location. It is easier to change the base URL of the root folder of the working copy to the new URL of the repository. This action is available on the *Tools* menu, only if the selected item of the working copy tree is a versioned folder.

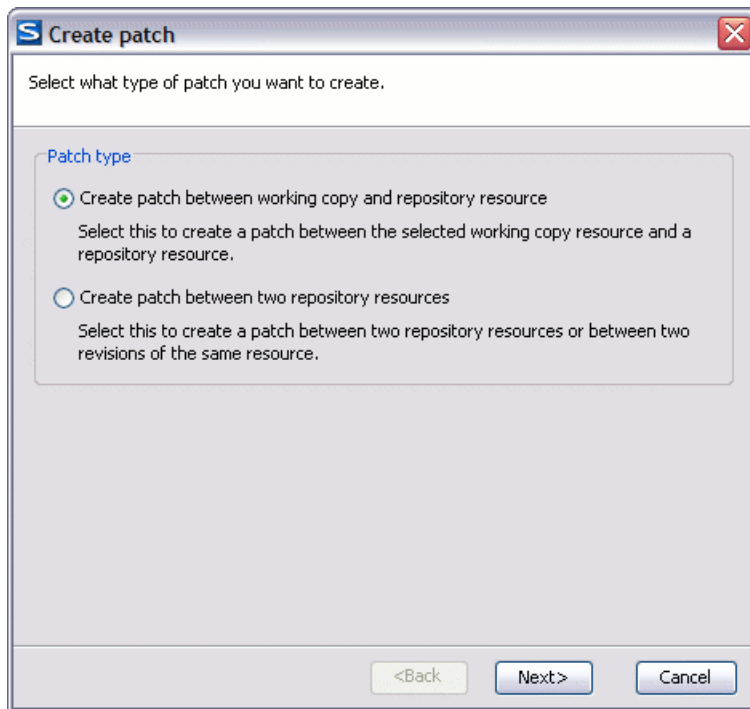
If the selected item is not the root folder of the working copy then the effect is the same as for the Switch action applied on the same selected item.

## Create Patches

Let's suppose you are working to a set of XML files, that you distribute to other people. From time to time you are tagging the project and distribute the releases. If you continue working for a period correcting problems, you may find yourself in the situations to notify your users that you have corrected a problem. In this case you may prefer to distribute them a patch, a collection of differences that applied over the last distribution would correct the problem. The SVN client creates the patch in the Unified Diff format [[http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Diff#Unified\\_format](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Diff#Unified_format)].

Creating patches in Subversion implies the access to two states (revisions) of a project. If you have not committed yet your current working copy and prefer not to do it, it is possible to create a patch between the current working copy and a revision from the repository. If you want to create a patch between two revisions that are already committed to the repository that is also possible.

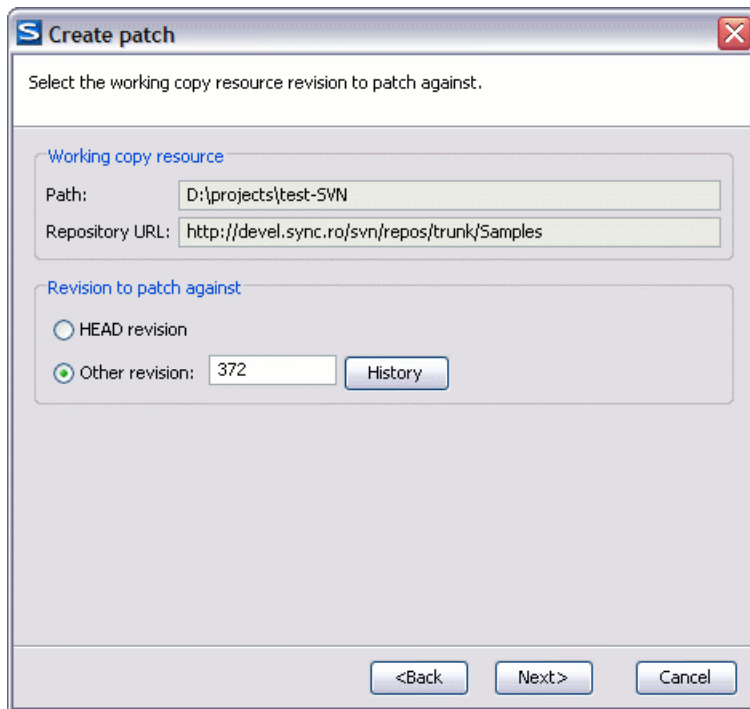
In order to create the patch, you will use the action from the *Tools* menu: Create Patch. This opens the *Create patch* wizard.

**Figure 17.25. The Create patch wizard - step 1**

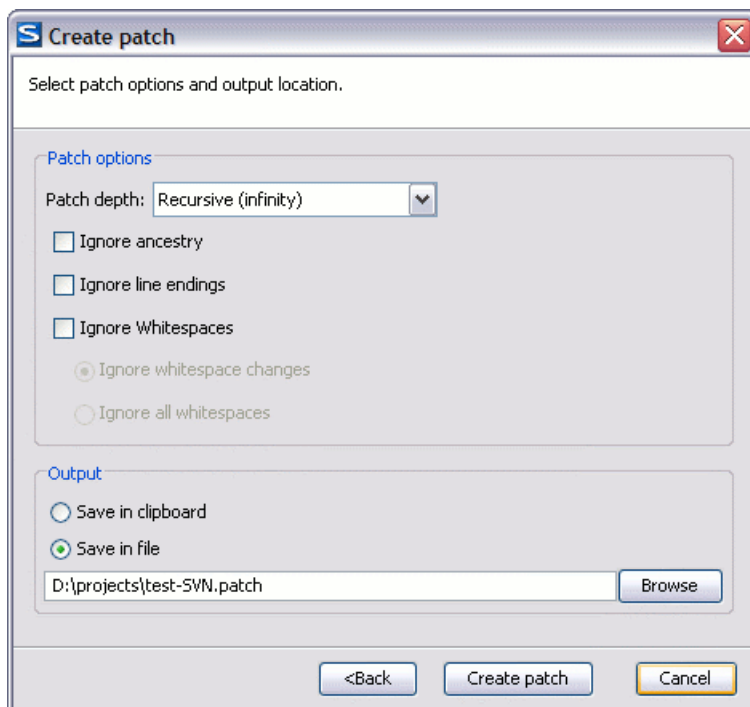
In the first step of the wizard you select the type of the patch: a patch between working copy and repository revision or a patch between two repository revisions. The *Next* button moves the wizard to the second step.

### Create a patch from working copy

In case of the first type of patch in this step you specify the revision of the repository for finding the patch between the working copy and the repository. The revision can be HEAD or a revision number selected from the list of all revisions committed to the repository.

**Figure 17.26. Patch between working copy and repository - step 2**

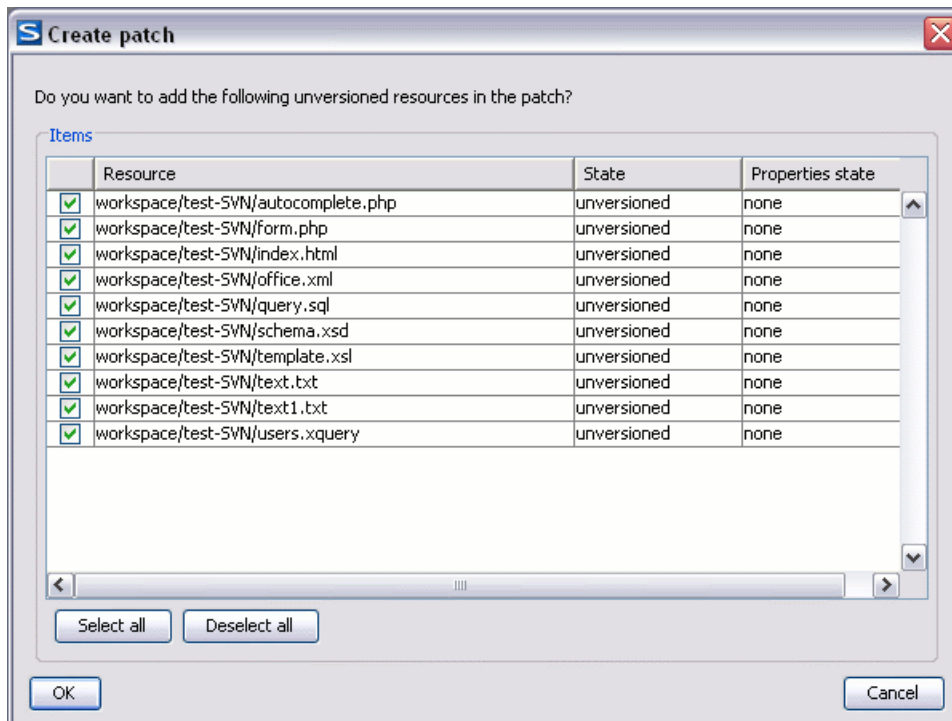
In the next step the following options can be specified:

**Figure 17.27. Patch between working copy and repository - step 3**

|                                 |  |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Patch depth                     | The depth of recursive folders included in the patch. If the patch is created only for a file then the depth is always zero. The depth can have one of the values: |
| Current depth                   | The depth of going into the folder for creating the patch is the same as the depth of that folder in the working copy.   |
| Recursive (infinity)            | The patch is created on all the files and folders contained in the selected folder.  |
| Immediate children (immediates) | The patch is created only on the child files and folders without going in subfolders.  |
| File children only (files)      | The patch is created only on the child files.  |
| This folder only (empty)        | The patch is created only on the selected folder (that is no child file or folder is included in the patch).   |
| Ignore ancestry                 | The SVN ancestry that may exist when the two URLs specified for creating the patch have a common SVN history is ignored when the patch is created.                 |
| Ignore line endings             | The differences in line endings are ignored when the patch is created.   |
| Ignore whitespaces              | The differences in whitespaces are ignored when the patch is created.  |
| Save in clipboard               | The patch will be created and saved in clipboard.  |
| Save in file                    | The patch will be created and saved in the specified file.   |

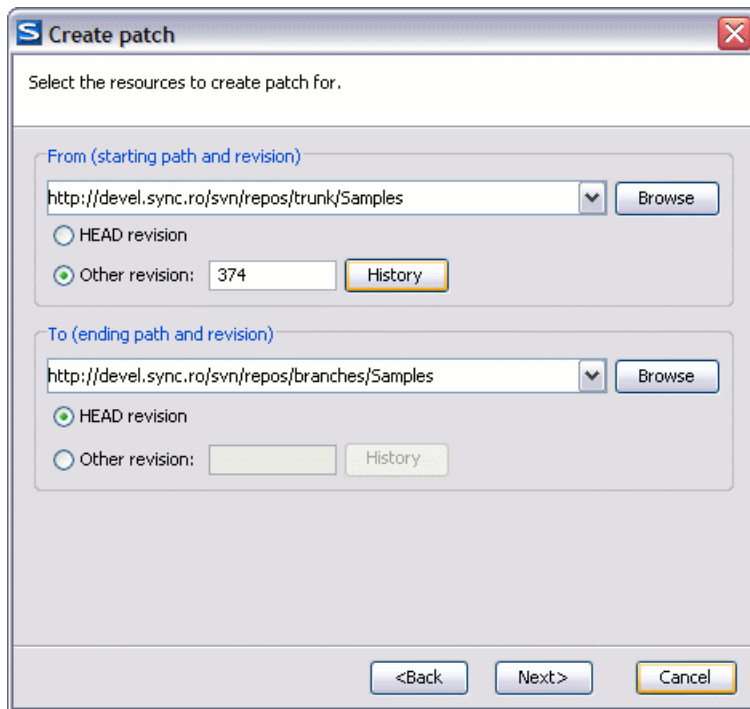
### **Include unversioned files in the patch**

In the next step you can specify the unversioned files that will be included in the generated patch. If the patch is applied on a folder of the working copy and that folder contains unversioned files this step of the wizard offers the option of selecting the ones that will be included in the patch.

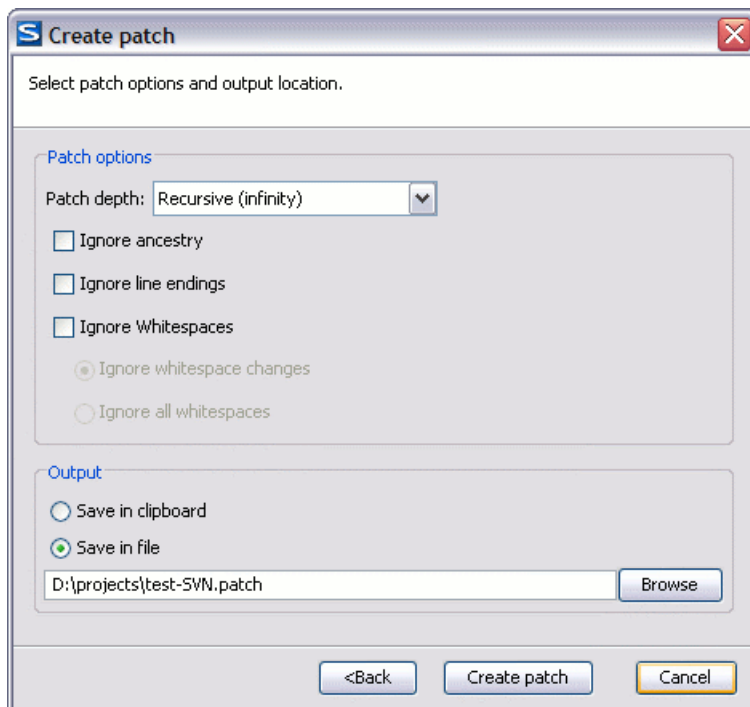
**Figure 17.28. Patch between working copy and repository - step 4**

### Create patch from repository revision

In case of the second type of patch in the second step of the wizard you select the two repository revisions. The two revisions can be on the same repository or on two different repositories. For each revision you can select the HEAD revision or a revision number available on the repository.

**Figure 17.29. Patch between two repository revisions - step 2**

The next step of the wizard is the same as for the first type of patch. It allows to specify the options patch depth, ignore ancestry, ignore line endings, ignore whitespaces, save in clipboard, save in file. The description of the options is the same as for the first type of patch.

**Figure 17.30. Patch between two repository revisions - step 3**

## Working with repositories

### Import / Export resources

#### Importing resources into a repository

This is the process of taking a project and importing it into a repository so that it can be managed by Subversion. If you have already been using Subversion and you have an existing working copy you want to use, then you will likely want to follow the procedure for Use an existing working copy.

A dialog will ask you to select a directory that will be imported into the selected repository location. The complete directory tree will be imported into the repository including all files. The name of the imported folder will not appear in the repository, but only the contents of the folder will.

#### Exporting resources from a repository

This is the process of taking a resource from the repository and saving it locally in a clean form, with no version control information. This is very useful when you need a clean build for an installation kit.

The export dialog is very similar to the check out dialog. You can choose the target directory from the file system by pressing the *Browse* button. If you need to export a specific revision, you can select the *Revision* radio button and then click on the History button and choose a revision from the new dialog. Or you could simply type the revision number in the corresponding text field.

Please note that the content of the selected directory from the repository and not the directory itself will be exported to the file system.

### Copy / Move / Delete resources from the repository

Once you have a location defined in the Repository view you can execute commands like copy, move and delete directly on the repository. The commands correspond to the following actions in the contextual menu.

The *Copy* action allows you to copy individual or multiple resources. After invoking the action the *Copy file* dialog will pop up. The dialog displays the path of the resource that is copied and the tree structure of the repository allowing you to choose the destination directory. The path of this target directory will be presented in the text field *Destination Directory*. If you choose to copy a single resource then an additional checkbox and a text field allow you to choose the new name of the copied resource.

The *Move action* will display a similar dialog allowing you to move the selected resources to a different folder. If you choose to move a single resource you can also change its name. This will allow you to *rename* a resource by moving it into the same parent directory but choosing a different name. The move operation is basically a *copy operation* followed by a *delete operation*. If you select a directory, any other selected descendants will be ignored when you have issued the move command.

Another useful action is *Delete*. This action allows you to delete resources directly from the repository. After choosing the action from the Repository view contextual menu a confirmation dialog will be displayed.

All three actions are commit operations and you will be prompted with the *Commit message* dialog.




## Sparse checkouts

Sometimes you need to check out only certain parts of a directory tree. For this you can checkout the top folder (the action *Check Out* of *Repository* view) and then update recursively only the needed directories (the action *Update* of *Working Copy* view). Each directory now understands the notion of depth which has four possible values:

- *Recursive (infinity)* - Updates all descendant folders and files recursively.
- *Immediate children* - Updates the directory including direct child folders and files but does not populate the child folders.
- *File children only (files)* - Updates the directory including only child files without the child folders.
- *This folder only (empty)* - Updates only the selected directory without updating any children.

*Current depth* - for some operations you can use as depth the current depth of the resource from working copy. This is the depth of directories from the working copy, it can have one of the values defined above. This is the depth value defined in a previous checkout or update operation.

The sparse checked out directories are marked in the Working Copy view with a marker corresponding to the depth value as follows:

- *Recursive (infinity)* - This is the default value and it is has no mark.
- *Immediate children (immediates)* - The directory is marked with a purple bubble in the top left corner .
- *File children only (files)* - The directory is marked with a blue bubble in the top left corner .
- *This folder only (empty)* - The directory is marked with a gray bubble in the top left corner .

The depth information is also presented in the Information view and the tool tip displayed when hovering over the directory in the Working copy view.

This feature requires the svn client to be 1.5 or above and will work most efficiently if the server is 1.5 or above. The client will work also with a 1.4 server or lower but will be less efficient.


## Repository View

### General description







The repository view allows you to define and manage Subversion repository locations. Repository files and folders are presented in a tree view with the repository locations at the first level, where each location represents a connection to a specific Subversion Repository. When hovering with the mouse over a repository resource a tooltip window will display more detailed information regarding: URL, last change revision, last change author, last change date.

### Toolbar

The toolbar for the repository view contains the following buttons:





-  New Repository Location - allows you to enter a new repository location by means of the *Add SVN Repository* dialog.






-  Check Out - checks out a working copy from the selected directory in the repository. Displays the new working copy in the *Working Copy* view.
-  Edit Repository Location - context dependent, allows you to edit the selected repository location by means of the *Edit SVN Repository* dialog. It is active only when a repository location root is selected.
-  Remove Repository Location - allows you to remove the selected repository location from the view. It shows you a confirmation dialog before removal. It is active only when a repository location root is selected.
-  Stop - allows you to stop the current repository browsing operation executed when a repository node is expanded. This is useful when the operation takes too long or the server is not responding.
-  Move Up - move the selected repository up with one position in the list of repositories in the Repository view.
-  Move Down - move the selected repository down with one position in the list of repositories in the Repository view.

## Contextual menu actions






The repository view has one contextual menu for the repository locations (roots) and another contextual menu for the repository resources. Besides the actions described above, the repository roots context menu from the repository view contains the following actions:



-  Refresh - refreshes the currently selected repository.
-  Check Out ... - checks out a working copy from the selected directory in the repository.
- Import
  - Import Folder Content... - imports the content of a specified folder from the file system into the selected folder from the repository.
  - Import File(s)... - imports the files selected from the files system into the selected folder from the repository.
- Export ... - exports a directory from the repository to the local file system.
- New Folder ... - allows you to create a new folder in the selected repository path.
- Copy URL Location - copies the encoded URL for the selected resource from the repository to the clipboard.
-  Show History ... - brings up the History view and displays the log history for the selected resource from the repository.
-  Show Annotation ... - brings up a dialog for selecting the start revision and the end revision of the interval of revisions for which the SVN annotations will be computed and marked in the selected resource in the editor panel.

After selecting the start revision and the end revision and pressing OK the Annotations view and the History view are displayed and the annotations are marked on the SVN resource in the editor panel.
-  Revision Graph - brings up the Properties view and displays the SVN properties for the selected repository resource. This view does not allow adding, editing or removing SVN properties of a repository item. These operations are allowed only for working copy resources.

-  Show SVN Properties - brings up the Properties view and displays the SVN properties for the selected repository resource. This view does not allow adding, editing or removing SVN properties of a repository item. These operations are allowed only for working copy resources.
-  File Information ... - provides additional information for the selected repository. For more details please see the section Information view.

The repository resources context menu from the view contains the following actions:

-  Refresh - refreshes the currently selected resources from the repository.
-  Check Out ... - checks out a working copy from the selected directory in the repository.
- Import
  - Import Folder Content... - imports the content of a specified folder from the file system into the selected folder from the repository.
  - Import File(s)... - imports the files selected from the files system into the selected folder from the repository.
- Export ... - exports a directory from the repository to the local file system.
- New Folder ... - allows you to create a new folder in the selected repository path.
- Open - opens the selected file in the Editor view in read only mode.
- Open with ... - Displays the 'Open with...' dialog for specifying the editor in which the selected file will be opened. In case multiple files are selected only external applications can be used to open the files.
- Edit
  - Copy ... - displays the *Copy Files* dialog which allows you to select the location where the selected resources will be copied.
  - Move ... - displays the *Move Files* dialog which allows you to select the location where the selected resources will be moved.
  - Rename ... - renames the current folder on the repository.
  - Delete - deletes the selected resources. It will ask for confirmation.
- Copy URL Location - copies the encoded URL for the selected resource from the repository to the clipboard.
- Branch/Tag - Allows you to create a branch or tag from the selected folder from the repository. To read more about how to create a branch/tag, please see the Creation and management of Branches/Tags section.
-  Show History ... - brings up the History view and displays the log history for the selected resource from the repository.
-  Show Annotation ... - brings up the Annotations view .
-  Revision Graph - brings up the Properties view and displays the SVN properties for the selected repository resource. This view does not allow adding, editing or removing SVN properties of a repository item. These operations are allowed only for working copy resources.

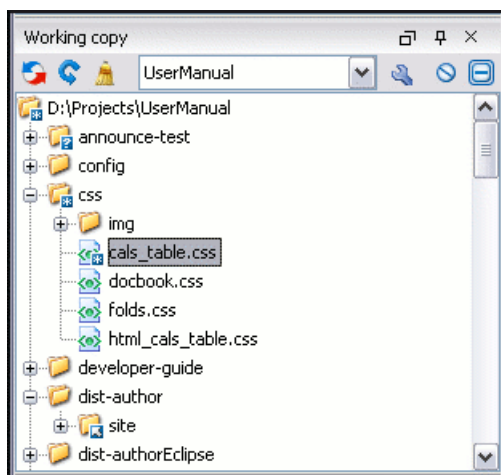
-  Show SVN Properties - brings up the Properties view and displays the SVN properties for the selected resource from the repository.
-  File Information ... - provides additional information for the selected resource from the repository. For more details please see the section Information view.

## Working Copy View

### General description

The working copy view allows you to manage with ease the content of the working copy. Resources (files and folders) are presented in a tree view with the root of the tree representing the location of the working copy on the file system. Each resource has an icon representation which describes the type of resource and also depicts the state of that resource with a small overlay icon.

**Figure 17.31. The Working Copy View**



For each file and folder a tooltip is displayed with details like SVN status, full path, current revision number, last changed date, etc. If the tooltips seem annoying by covering useful information they can be disabled from the option *Show tooltip on Working Copy and Synchronize trees*.

### Working Copy format

When a SVN working copy is loaded in the view by selecting it in the combo on the toolbar of the view Syncro SVN Client first checks the format of the working copy. If it is a SVN 1.6 format the admin data of that working copy is loaded and displayed in a tree like form in the view using the icons specific for the status of each resource: normal, unversioned, modified, etc. If it is the old format, that is the SVN 1.5, SVN 1.4 or SVN 1.3 one, a confirmation dialog is displayed allowing the automatic conversion to the working copy to the new format, that is the SVN 1.6 one.

If you select the *Never ask me again* checkbox and press the *Yes* button then the option *Automatically upgrade working copies to the client's version* is automatically checked.







The format of the working copy can be downgraded or upgraded at any time with the actions *Upgrade* and *Downgrade* available on the *Tools* menu. These actions allow switching between SVN 1.4, SVN 1.5 and SVN 1.6 working copy formats.

## Refresh a Working Copy

A refresh is a frequent operation triggered when you switch between two working copies using the selector from the toolbar of the *Working Copy* view and when you switch between Syncro SVN Client and other applications. For fast refresh in the *Working Copy* view the content is cached locally on the first load of a working copy. Later when the same working copy is loaded again in the view or when you switch back to the Syncro SVN Client window the cache is used for detecting the changes between the cached content and the current content from disk. This improves the speed for large working copies because it detects the changes from disk after the last refresh and runs the refresh only for the changes.

## Toolbar

The toolbar from the working copy view contains the following buttons:

-  Synchronize - contacts the repository and determines the changes made by you to the working copy and by others to the repository. The synchronize result will be displayed in the Synchronize view. The actions performs a synchronize operation on the root of the working copy.
-  Refresh - refreshes the content of the working copy. The content of the working copy is always scanned(refreshed) when starting the Subversion client or when changing the working copy from the combo box in the toolbar. However, if you make modifications from other applications outside the Subversion client, while the client is started, you will have to manually refresh the working copy. The action performs a refresh operation on the root of the working copy.
-  Cleanup - performs a maintenance cleanup operation on the working copy. Sometimes, when an operation fails, the working copy will enter an inconsistent state in which some resources will remain locked by SVN. Cleanup removes those maintenance locks and allows you to continue your work. When the SVN client determines that an operation failed because the working copy is locked by SVN you will be asked if a *Cleanup* operation should be performed first.
- Combo box - The combo box list contains all the working copies the Subversion client is aware of. When you select another working copy from the combo, the newly selected working copy content will be scanned and displayed in the view.
-  Add/Remove Working Copy - opens the *Working copies list* dialog which displays the working copies the Subversion client is aware of. In this dialog you can add existing or remove no longer needed working copies. If you try to add a directory which is not a valid Subversion working copy, a warning dialog will inform you that the selected directory is not under version control. Please note that removing a working copy from this dialog will NOT remove it from your file system; you will have to do that manually.
-  Show ignored files - shows in the working copy tree the resources that were listed in the svn:ignore property of their parents. This option is off by default.
-  Show deleted files - shows in the working copy tree the resources that were marked to be deleted but are not yet committed. This option is off by default.





## Contextual menu actions

The contextual menu in the Working Copy view contains the following actions:

- New:

- New File ... - This operation creates a new file and adds it to version control. If the selected path is not under version control, the newly created file will not be added to version control.
- New Folder ... - This operation creates a new folder and adds it to version control. If the selected path is not under version control, the newly created directory will not be added to version control.
- New External Folder ... - This operation sets a folder name in the property *svn:externals* of the selected folder. The repository URL to the folder to which the new external folder will point and the revision number of that repository URL can be selected easily with the *Browse* and *History* buttons of the dialog.

Subversion clients 1.5 and higher support relative external URLs. You can specify the repository URLs to which the external folders point using the following relative formats:

- *../* - Relative to the URL of the directory on which the *svn:externals* property is set.
- *^/* - Relative to the root of the repository in which the *svn:externals* property is versioned.
- *//* - Relative to the scheme of the URL of the directory on which the *svn:externals* property is set.
- */* - Relative to the root URL of the server on which the *svn:externals* property is versioned.
-  Open - This action will open the selected file in an editor where you can make modifications to it. The action is active only when a single item is selected. In case of a file the action opens the file with the internal editor or the external application associated with that file type. In case of a folder the action opens the selected folder with the system application for folders (for example Windows Explorer on Windows, Finder on Mac OS X, etc).
- Open with ... - Displays the 'Open with...' dialog for specifying the editor in which the selected file will be opened. In case multiple files are selected only external applications can be used to open the files
- Edit:
  - Copy ... - This action copies resources from the working copy. Each copy will also have the original resource's history. For more details please read the section Copy / Move / Rename resources.
  - Move ... - This command actually performs as if a copy and then a delete command were issued. You will find the moved resources at the desired destination and also at their original location but marked as deleted.
  - Rename ... - You can only rename a resource at a time. As for the move command, a copy of the original resource will be made with the new name and the original will be marked as deleted.
  - Delete - This action allows you to delete resources from the Subversion working copy. If unversioned, added or modified resources will be encountered, a dialog will prompt you to confirm their deletion. This is because their content cannot be recovered. The action it is not enabled when the selection contains *missing* resources.
- Copy URL Location - copies the encoded URL for the selected resource from the Working Copy to the clipboard.
-  Synchronize - it contacts the repository and determines the working copy and the repository changes made to the selected resources. It displays the result of the operation in the *Synchronize view*. This is useful when you have a large working copy and you only want to verify the changes to a specific part you are currently working on.
-  Refresh - This action will rescan the selected resources recursively and refresh their status in the working copy view.
-  Cleanup - performs a maintenance cleanup operation to the selected resources from the working copy. This operation removes the Subversion maintenance locks that were left behind. Useful when you already know where the problem originated and want to fix it as quickly as possible. Only active for resources under version control.

- Update - This command updates your selected resources from the working copy to the HEAD revision from the repository (latest modifications). It is the same as the update action from the *Synchronize view* in that it also brings you the HEAD revision from the repository. If a directory is involved it will be updated depending on its depth. The action is active only on resources that are under version control.
  - Update to revision/depth - This action allows you to update the selected resources from the working copy to an earlier revision from the repository. You can also select the update *depth* for the current folder. You can find out more about the depth term in the sparse checkouts section. The action is active only on resources under version control.
  - Commit - This action collects the outgoing changes from the selected resources in the working copy and presents them in a dialog. Then you can choose exactly what to commit by selecting or unselecting resources accordingly. A directory will always be committed recursively. The unversioned resources will be deselected by default. In the commit dialog you will also have to enter a commit comment before sending your changes to the repository.
  - Revert - Undoes all local changes for the selected resources. It does not contact the repository, the files will be obtained from Subversion's pristine copy. It is enabled only for modified resources. Read the Revert your changes section for more information.
  - Edit conflict - opens a *Compare* view for editing the selected conflict. For more information on editing conflicts, please see the Edit conflicts section.
  - Mark resolved - This action is only enabled on *conflicted* resources and its function is to tell the Subversion system that you resolved the conflict. See the section Merge conflicts.
  - Compare with:
    - Latest from HEAD - This action will perform a 3-way diff operation between the selected file and the HEAD revision from the repository and will display the result in the Compare view. The common ancestor of the 3-way diff operation is the BASE version of the file from the local working copy.
    - BASE revision - This will compare the working copy file with the file from the pristine copy (BASE revision).
    - Revision - This command will bring to front the History view with the log history for that resource.
    - Branch/Tag - This will compare the working copy file with a revision of the file from a branch or tag. The revision is specified by URL (selected with a repository browser dialog) and revision number (selected with a revision browser dialog).
    - Each other - This action only works when two files are selected. It will compare the two selected files with each other.
- These actions are enabled only if the selected resource is a file.
- Replace with:
    - Latest from HEAD - This action will try to replace the selected resources with their versions from the HEAD revision of the repository.
    - BASE revision - This action will try to replace the selected resources with their versions from the pristine copy (the BASE revision).








The dialog above is presenting the resources that have content or properties locally modified, so that the user will be aware that will lose any uncommitted changes.

 **Note**

In some cases it is impossible to replace the current selected resources with their versions from the BASE/HEAD revision.

For *Replace with BASE revision* action, the resources being unversioned or added have no BASE revision, but when selecting a parent folder of this type of resources, they will be removed. The action will never work for missing folders or for obstructing files (folders being obstructed by a file), because you cannot recover a tree of folders.

For *Replace with latest from HEAD* action, you must be aware that any resource being unversioned, added, obstructed, modified, currently added to `svn:ignore` or currently being present in the working copy as a result of updating a folder on which was added a `svn:externals` property, without these properties being committed to the repository before, will be completely deleted or reverted to BASE revision and after that updated to HEAD revision, to avoid obtaining conflicts when updating.










-  Show History ... - It will display the *History view* where the log history for the selected resource will be presented. For more details about resource history see the sections Using the resource history view and Request history for a resource.
-  Show Annotation - It will display the *Annotations view* where all the users that modified the selected resource will be presented together with the specific lines and revision numbers modified by each user. For more details about resource annotations see the section Annotations View.
-  Revision Graph - This action allows you to see the graphical representation of a resource's history. For more details about a resource's revision graph see the section Revision Graph.
- Add - This operation adds the selected resources to version control. A directory will be added recursively to version control. It is not mandatory to explicitly add resources to version control but it is recommended. At commit time unversioned resources will have to be manually selected in the commit dialog. It is only active on unversioned resources.
- Add to `svn:ignore` ... - This action can only be performed on resources not under version control. It allows you to keep inside your working copy files that should not participate to the version control operations. The action actually modifies the value of the `svn:ignore` property of the resource's parent directory.
- Lock:
  - Scan for locks ... - This action contacts the repository and recursively obtains the list of locks for the selected resources. A dialog containing the locked files and the lock description will be displayed. Only active for resources under version control. For more details see the section Scanning for locks.
  -  Lock ... - It allows you to lock certain files for which you need exclusive access. You can write a comment describing the reason for the lock and you can also force(steal) the lock. The action is active only on files under version control. For more details on the use of this action please read the section Locking a file.
  -  Unlock ... - This action releases(unlocks) the exclusive access to a file from the repository. You can also choose to unlock it by force(break the lock).
-  Show SVN Properties - brings up the Properties view and displays the SVN properties for the selected resource.
-  File Information ... - provides additional information for the selected resource from the working copy. For more details please see the section Obtain information for a resource.

## Drag and drop operations








New files and folders can be added to the file tree of the Working Copy view as unversioned resources by drag and drop operations from other applications, for example Windows Explorer on Windows or Finder on Mac OS X. Also the structure of the files tree can be changed with drag and drop operations inside the view.

## Icons

The icons in the working copy view have a small overlaid icon which describes the current state of the resource in the working copy. These state icons are:

-  Unversioned - The resource marked with this symbol is not under version control. This is how new files are represented when they are created or copied from the file system. Unversioned resources can be filtered from the Working Copy view by setting ignore filters in the Preferences.
-  Added - This resource has been added to version control but has not been committed. This state is obtained after issuing an *Add* command on an unversioned resource.
-  Added with history - This resource has been copied with history. This state is obtained by copying, moving or renaming a resource from the working copy.
-  Modified - The resource has been locally modified since the last update. This is obtained after editing a file and making changes.
-  Deleted - This resource has been deleted from the working copy. This state appears after deleting, moving or renaming files with Subversion.
-  Missing/Incomplete - This resource is in an inconsistent state. If it's *missing*, it means it has been deleted from the file system without Subversion's knowledge. If it's *incomplete*, a check out or update action has probably failed or has been interrupted before finishing. A directory in such a state must be restored with an update action before any other action can be performed.
-  Conflict - This resource has conflicting changes. A resource can be in this state after an update, if it was modified both locally and on the repository and the modifications were overlapping.
-  Tree Conflict - This resource has a tree conflict. A resource can be in this state after an update or merge: the local file is modified but the remote file was removed so the local modifications cannot be committed (the file does not exist on the repository any longer) and a remote version cannot override the local modifications.
-  Obstructed - This resource is obstructed, which means that there was found an unexpected unversioned resource instead of the expected versioned one. The main icon indicates the type of the resource that is obstructing the original resource. There are three possibilities to have an obstructed resource:
  - A directory can be considered to obstruct another directory if the SVN administrative directory `.svn` was deleted from the latter one, so an unexpected unversioned directory is found instead of the original versioned directory.
  - A directory can be considered to obstruct a file if the file was deleted and there was created a directory having exactly the same name as the file, so an unexpected unversioned directory is found instead of the original versioned file.



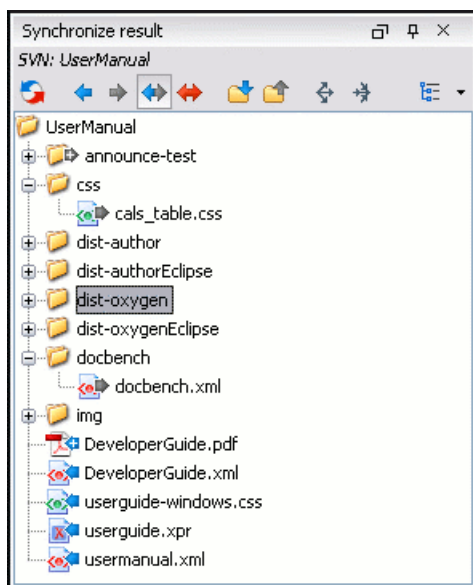
- A file can be considered to obstruct a directory if the directory was deleted and there was created a file having exactly the same name as the deleted directory, so an unexpected unversioned file is found instead of the original directory.
-  External - This indicates a mapping of a local directory to the URL of a versioned resource. It is declared with a `svn:externals` property in the parent folder.
-  Normal - A resource with no overlaid icon is an unmodified resource under version control.
-  Grayed - A resource with a grayed icon but no overlaid icon is an ignored resource. It is obtained with the action *Add to svn:ignore*.
-  Switched - This indicates a resource that has been switched from the initial repository location to a new location within the same repository. The resource goes to this state as a result of the Switch action executed from the contextual menu of the Working Copy view.
-  Immediate children (sparse checkout) - The directory is marked with a purple bubble in the top left corner.
-  File children only (sparse checkout) - The directory is marked with a blue bubble in the top left corner.
-  This folder only - empty (sparse checkout)- The directory is marked with a gray bubble in the top left corner.

## Synchronize View

### General description

The synchronize view is visible in the default layout configuration. It displays the result of a *Refresh* or *Synchronize* operation in a hierarchical form. The nodes represent synchronized or refreshed resources and their status.

**Figure 17.32. Synchronize View**



## Synchronize trees

The results are presented using four tree structures:










- Incoming changes tree - presents items which contain incoming changes. This includes resources modified and committed by others or resources newly added or newly deleted from the repository.
- Outgoing changes tree - presents resources with outgoing changes meaning that they have been modified locally or have been added or deleted from your working copy.
- Incoming/Outgoing changes tree - includes all the resources with incoming and outgoing changes
- Conflicts tree - includes resources with conflicting state meaning they contain both incoming and outgoing changes (pseudo-conflicting state) or they are in a state of real conflict.

A resource which is in a real conflict state will not appear in the *Incoming tree*.

For each file and folder a tooltip is displayed with details like SVN status, full path, current revision number, last changed date, etc. If the tooltips seem annoying by covering useful information they can be disabled from the option *Show tooltip on Working Copy and Synchronize trees*.






## Toolbar



The *Synchronize view toolbar* consists of the following buttons:

-  Synchronize last - repeats the last synchronize action.
-  Incoming Mode - filters synchronized resources displaying only the ones with incoming changes.
-  Outgoing Mode - filters synchronized resources displaying the ones with outgoing changes.
-  In-Out Mode - displays resources with incoming or outgoing changes, basically all resources with any type of change.
-  Conflicts Mode - filters synchronized resources displaying the ones in pseudo or real conflict state.
-  Update All - updates all resources with incoming changes. It is disabled when *Outgoing* mode is selected or the synchronization result does not contain resources with incoming changes. It will perform a recursive update on the synchronized resources.
-  Commit All - commits all resources with outgoing changes. It is disabled when *Incoming* mode is selected or the synchronization result does not contain resources with outgoing changes. It will perform a recursive commit on the synchronized resources.
-  Expand All - expands all the descendant nodes of the node currently selected in the view.
-  Collapse All - collapses all the descendant nodes of the node currently selected in the view.

## Contextual menu actions








The contextual menu contains the following actions:

- Open in compare editor - if the selected file has a text content type it will be opened in the Compare view and a file differencing will be performed. If the file has a binary content type then the position of the first different byte will be displayed. It is disabled for directories. See also View differences section.
-  Open - it is enabled existing local files and folders. In case of a file the action opens the selected file into the Editor. See also Edit files section. In case of a folder the action opens the selected folder with the system application for folders (for example Windows Explorer on Windows, Finder on Mac OS X, etc).
- Open with ... - Displays the 'Open with...' dialog for specifying the editor in which the selected file will be opened. In case multiple files are selected only external applications can be used to open the files
-  Synchronize - synchronizes recursively the resources from the displayed synchronize tree's root folder or all the working copy if no synchronize information is available in the view.
- Update - it is enabled for resources with incoming changes. Updates all selected resources to the HEAD revision. If one of the selected resources is a directory then the update for that resource will be recursive.
- Commit ... - it is enabled for resources with outgoing changes. Commits all selected resources, recursively in the case of directories, to the repository. This action collects the outgoing changes from the selected resources and presents them in a dialog. You can choose exactly what items will be committed by checking or unchecking them in the table. Also you will have to enter a commit comment. See also Sending your changes to the repository section.
- Create patch... - allows you to create a file containing all the differences between the selected resource and the same resource at a previous revision or between two different resources, based on the `svn diff` command. To read more about creating patches, see Create Patches.
- Branch/Tag ... - displays the *Branch Tag* dialog where you can create a branch or a tag from the selected repository folder.
-  Show History ... - displays the *History view* showing the log history of the selected resource. For more details about resource history see the sections Using the resource history view and Request history for a resource.
- Revert ... - it is useful when you want to undo all local changes made to a resource. It is enabled on resources which contain outgoing changes. Read the Revert your changes section for more information.
- Edit conflict - opens a *Compare* view for editing the selected conflicting resource.
- Mark Resolved - it is enabled on real conflicting resources. Its function is to tell the Subversion system that you resolved the conflict and the resource can be committed. See also Merge conflicts part.
- Mark as Merged - the action is enabled on pseudo-conflicting resources. It is used after you resolved the pseudo-conflict by merging the changes and you want to commit the resource. Read the Merge conflicts section for more information on methods to solve the pseudo-conflicts.
- Override and Update ... - action available only for resources with outgoing changes including the conflicting ones. It is used for dropping any outgoing change and replacing the local resource with the HEAD revision. See the Revert your changes section.
- Override and Commit ... - action available for conflicting resources only. The action drops any incoming changes and sends your local version of the resource to the repository. See also Drop incoming modifications.
-  Expand All - expands the selected directories to leaf level.
-  Collapse All - collapses all child nodes of the selected tree node.

- Add to svn:ignore ... - This action can only be performed on resources not under version control. It allows you to keep inside your working copy files that should not participate to the version control operations. The action actually modifies the value of the *svn:ignore* property of the resource's parent directory.
-  Show SVN Properties - brings up the Properties view and displays the SVN properties for the selected resource.
-  File Information ... - provides additional information for the selected resource from the working copy. For more details please see the section Obtain information for a resource.

## Icons

The icons for the items displayed into the synchronized trees are the same icons used in the <Oxygen/> XML Editor decorated with overlay images. The overlay icons correspond to the status of the resource as follows:

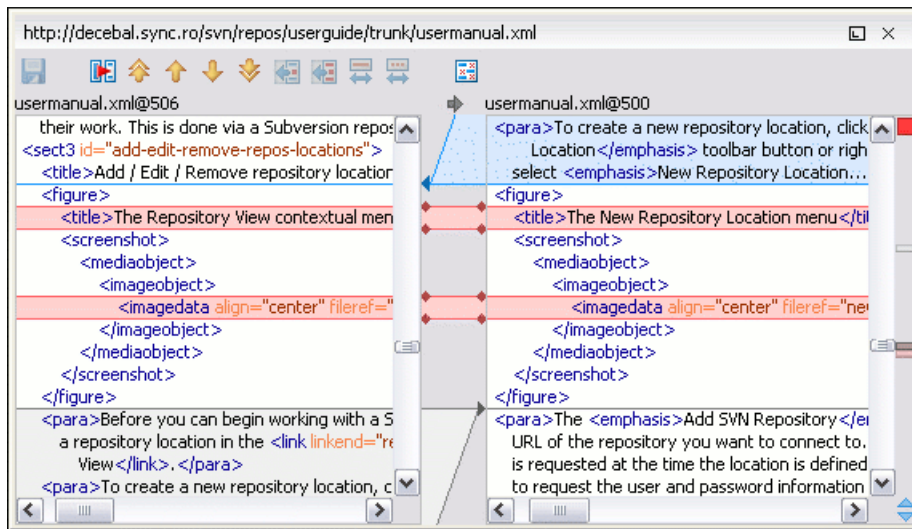
-  Incoming resource - resource with incoming changes.
-  Remote added resource - resource that was added on the repository and is not present in your working copy.
-  Remote deleted resource - resource that no longer exists in the repository.
-  Outgoing resource - resource with outgoing changes.
-  Locally added or unversioned resource - resource added locally to version control or a resource not yet under version control.
-  Locally deleted or missing resource - a resource that you deleted with *Delete* action or that was deleted from the file system in some other way.
-  Conflicting resource - resource in a pseudo or real conflicting state.

## Compare View

### Description

In the Syncro SVN Client there are three types of files that can be checked for differences: text files, image files, and binary files. For the text files and image files you can use the built-in *Compare view*.

Figure 17.33. Compare View










When comparing text, the differences are computed using a line differencing algorithm. The view can be used to show the differences between two files in the following cases:





- After obtaining the outgoing status of a file with a Refresh operation, the view can be used to show the differences between your working file and the pristine copy. In this way you can find out what changes you will be committing.
- After obtaining the incoming and outgoing status of the file with the Synchronize operation, you can examine the exact differences between your local file and the HEAD revision file.
- You can use the Compare view from the History view to compare the local file and a selected revision or compare two revisions of the same file.

If in any of the cases one of the involved files cannot be loaded then you will be prompted with a dialog informing you about the file that cannot be opened. The Compare view contains two editors. Edits are allowed only in the left editor and only when it contains the working copy file. To learn more about how the view can be used in the day by day work you can read the section View differences.

## Toolbar

The list of actions available in the toolbar consists of:

-  Save action - it allows you to save the content of the left editor when it can be edited.
-  Perform files differencing - used to perform files differencing on request.
-  Go to first modification - used to navigate to the first difference.
-  Go to previous modification - used to navigate to the previous difference.
-  Go to next modification - used to navigate to the next difference.
-  Go to last modification - used to navigate to the last difference.
-  Copy change from right to left - this action copies the selected change from the right editor to the left editor.

-  Copy all non-conflicting changes from right to left - this action copies all non-conflicting changes from the right editor to the left editor. A non-conflicting change from the right editor is a change that does not overlap with a left editor change.
-  Show modification details at word level - because the differences are computed using a line differencing algorithm sometimes is useful to see exactly what words are different in a changed section.
-  Show modification details at character level - useful when you want to find out exactly what characters are different between the two analyzed sections.
-  Ignore whitespaces - Enables or disables the whitespace ignoring feature. Ignoring whitespace means that before the strings are compared they are first normalized and then the whitespace at the beginning and the end of the strings is trimmed.

These actions are available also from the Compare menu.

## Compare images view

The images are compared using the Compare images view. The images are presented in the left and right part scaled to fit the view's available area. You can use the contextual menu actions to scale the images at its original size or scale it down to fit in the view's available area.

The supported image types are: GIF, JPG / JPEG, PNG, BMP.

## Editor

### Description

You can open a file for editing in an internal built-in editor. There are default associations between frequently used file types and the internal editors in the File Types preferences panel.

The internal editor can be accessed either from the Working copy view or from the Synchronize view. The editor can also be used from the History view to view a selected revision of a file. In this case there are no edits allowed.

Only one file can be edited in an internal editor at a time. If you try to open another file it will be opened in the same editor window. The editor has syntax highlighting for known file types. This means that a different color will be used for each type of recognized token in the file. If the content type of the file is unknown you will be prompted to choose the proper way the file should be opened.

After editing the content of the file in an internal editor you can save it to disk by using the *Save* action from the File menu or the Ctrl + S key shortcut. After saving your file you can see the file changed status into Working copy view and Synchronize view.

If the internal editor associated with a file type is not the XML Editor then the encoding set in the preference *Encoding for non XML files* is used for opening and saving a file of that type. This is necessary because in case of XML files the encoding is usually declared at the beginning of the XML file in a special declaration or it assumes the default value UTF-8 but in case of non XML files there is no standard mechanism for declaring the encoding of the file.

# Image preview

## Description

You can view your local files by using the built-in *Image preview component*. The view can be accessed either from the Working copy view, Synchronize view or from the Repository view. It can also be used from the History view to view a selected revision of a image file.

Only one image file can be opened at a time. If an image file is opened in the *Image preview* and you try to open another one it will be opened in the same window. Supported image types are GIF, JPEG/JPG, PNG, BMP. Once the image is displayed in the *Image preview* panel using the actions from the contextual menu one can scale the image at its original size (1:1 action) or scale it down to fit in the view's available area (Scale to fit action).

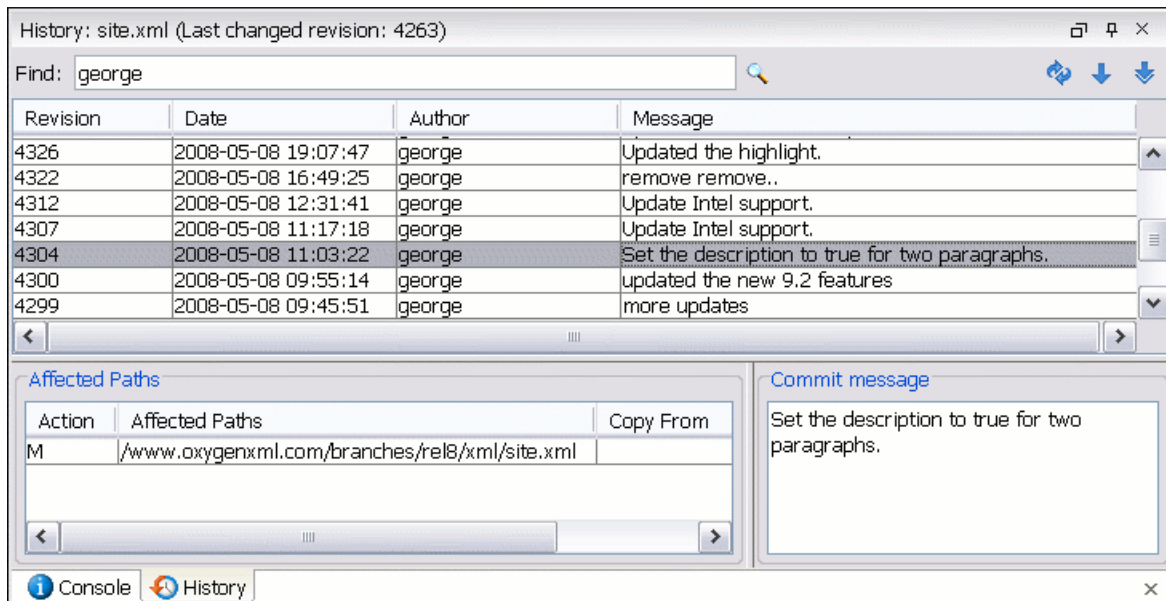
# History View

## Description

In Subversion, both files and directories are versioned and have a history. If you want to examine the history for a selected resource and find out what happened at a certain revision you can use the *History view* that can be accessed from any of the three views: Repository view menu, Working copy view menu or Synchronize view menu. From the *Repository view* you can display the log history regarding any repository resource. From the *Working copy view* you can display the history of local versioned resources. From the *Synchronize view* you can show the history of any incoming or outgoing resources.

The view consists of three distinct areas:

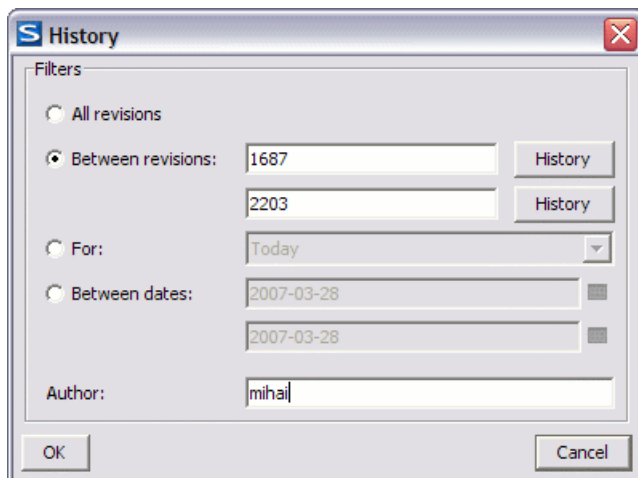
- The revision table showing revision numbers, date/time of revision, the name of the author, as well as the first line of the commit message.
- The list of resources affected by this revision (modified, added, deleted or changed properties).
- The commit message for the selected revision.

**Figure 17.34. History View**

## History Filters

### The History filter dialog

The *History view* does not always show all the changes ever made to a resource because there may be thousands of changes and retrieving the entire list can take a long time. Normally you are interested in the more recent ones. That is why you can specify the criteria for the revisions displayed in the History view by selecting one of several options presented in the *History* dialog which is displayed when you invoke the *Show History* action.

**Figure 17.35. History filters dialog**

The options for the set of revisions presented in the History view are:

- all the revisions of the selected resource




- only the revisions between a start revision number and an end revision number
- only the revisions added in a period of time like today, last week, last month, etc.
- only the revisions between a start calendar date and an end calendar date
- only the revisions committed by a specified SVN user

The toolbar of the History view has two buttons for extending the set of revisions presented in the view: *Get next 50* and *Get all*.

### **Note**



When using Subversion servers older than version 1.2, a history request may take a very long time because the server will reply with the entire history even if you limited the number of entries to a smaller number.

## The History filter field

When only the history entries which contain a specified substring need to be displayed in the History view the filter field displayed at the top of this view is the perfect fit. Just enter the search string in the field next to the label *Find*. Only the items with an author name, commit message, revision number or date which match the search string is kept in the History view. The filter action is executed and the content of the table is updated when the button  Search is pressed.

## Features

Single selection actions:

- Compare with working copy - compares the selected revision with your working copy file. It is enabled only when you select a file.
-  Open - opens the selected revision of the file into the Editor. This is enabled only for files.
- Open with ... - Displays the 'Open with...' dialog for specifying the editor in which the selected file will be opened.
- Get Contents - replaces the current version from the working copy with the contents of the selected revision from the history of the file. The BASE version of the file is not changed in the working copy so that after this action the file will appear as modified in a synchronization operation, that is newer than the BASE version, even if the contents is from an older version from history.
- Save revision to - saves the selected revision to a file so you have an older version of that file. This option is only available when you access the history of a file, and it saves a version of that one file only.
- Revert changes from this revision - reverts changes made in the selected revision.
- Update to revision - updates your working copy resource to the selected revision.
- Check out from revision - gets the content of the selected revision for the resource into local file system.
-  Show Annotation - computes the latest revision number and author name that modified each line of the file up to the selected revision, that is no modification later than the selected revision is taken into account.
- Change Author - changes the name of the SVN user that committed the selected revision.
- Change Message - changes the commit message of the selected revision.

Double selection actions:

- Compare revisions - When the resource is a file the action compares the two selected revisions using the Compare view. When the resource is a folder the action displays the set of all resources from that folder that were changed between the two revision numbers.
- Revert changes from these revisions - Similar to the svn-merge command, it merges two selected revisions into the working copy resource. This action is only enabled when the resource history was requested for a working copy item.

For more information about the *History view* and its features please read the sections [Request history for a resource](#) and [Using the resource history view](#)

## Annotations View

### Description

Sometimes you need to know not only what lines have changed, but also who changed specific lines in a file. This view displays the author and the revision that changed every line in a file. Just click on a line in the editor panel where the file is opened to see the revision that edited that line last time highlighted in the History view and to see all the lines changed by that revision highlighted in the editor panel. Also the entries of the Annotations view corresponding to that revision are highlighted. So the Annotations view, the History view and the editor panel are synchronized. Clicking on a line in one of them highlights the corresponding lines in the other two.

Figure 17.36. The Annotations View

The screenshot shows the Syncro SVN Client interface with the following components:

- Main Editor:** Displays XML code for `htmlCustomLayer.xsl`. Annotations are shown as colored highlights on the code, indicating the revision that modified each line.
- Annotations View (Right Sidebar):** Lists annotations for the selected file. A summary table for revision 1886 is shown below the list:
 

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| Author   | sorin               |
| Revision | 294                 |
| Date     | 2006-03-24 09:21:33 |
| Lines    | 193                 |
- History View (Bottom):** Shows a table of revision history for the file:
 

| Revision | Date                | Author | Message  |
|----------|---------------------|--------|--|
| 1986     | 2007-02-06 12:31:03 | sorin  | Corrected Docbook image paths in HTML ...            |
| 1886     | 2007-01-23 17:33:36 | sorin  | Fix name and target of link to home page in the ...  |
| 1851     | 2007-01-22 15:44:16 | sorin  | Removed 'oxygen' from SVN Client manual.             |
| 1380     | 2006-11-16 17:10:36 | sorin  | Make title of HTML pages of website help a link t... |
| 579      | 2006-05-26 15:17:17 | test   | Removed include of jhCustomLayer.                    |
| 448      | 2006-05-15 09:47:33 | test   | Documented more new features for release 7.2.        |
| 294      | 2006-03-24 09:21:33 | sorin  | Removed dependency.                                  |
| 292      | 2006-03-22 16:53:21 | sorin  | Refactored cust.layers.                              |
- Affected Paths and Commit Message:** Shows the affected paths and the commit message for the selected revision: "Fix name and target of link to home page in the header of all ...".

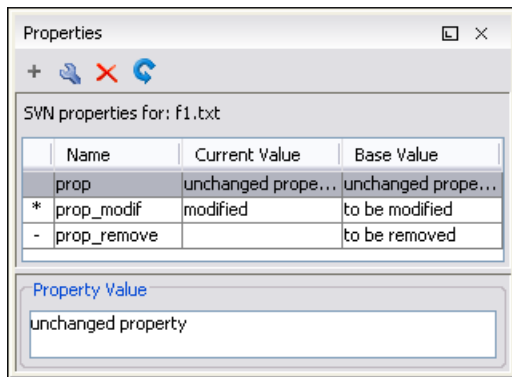
The annotations of a file are computed with the action *Show Annotation* available on the right click menu of the History view and the Repository view.

If the file has a very long history the computation of the annotation data can take long. If you want only the annotations of a range of revisions you can specify the start revision and the end revision of the range in a dialog similar with the History filter dialog that will be displayed in the History view. The action is called *Show Annotation* and is available on the right click menu of the Working Copy view.

## Properties View

### Description

The properties view presents the Subversion properties for the currently selected resource from either the *Working copy view* or the *Synchronize view*.

**Figure 17.37. The Properties View**

Above the table it is specified the currently active resource for which the properties are presented. Here you will also find a warning when an unversioned resource is selected.

The table in which the properties are presented has four columns:

- State - can be one of
  - (empty) - normal unmodified property, same current and base values.
  - \*(asterisk) - modified property, current and base values are different.
  - +(plus) - new property.
  - -(minus) - removed property.
- Name - the property name.
- Current value - the current value of the property.
- Base value - the base(original) value of the property.

## The *svn:externals* property

The *svn:externals* property can be set on a folder or a file. In the first case it stores the URL of a folder from other repository.

In the second case it stores the URL of a file from other repository. The external file will be added into the working copy as a versioned item. There are a few differences between directory and file externals:

- The path to the file external must be in a working copy that is already checked out. While directory externals can place the external directory at any depth and it will create any intermediate directories, file externals must be placed into a working copy that is already checked out.
- The file external's URL must be in the same repository as the URL that the file external will be inserted into; inter-repository file externals are not supported.
- While commits do not descend into a directory external, a commit in a directory containing a file external will commit any modifications to the file external.

The differences between a normal versioned file and a file external:

- File externals cannot be moved or deleted; the `svn:externals` property must be modified instead; however, file externals can be copied.





A file external shows up as a X in the switched status column.

## Warning

Incomplete support - In subversion 1.6 it is not possible to remove a file external from your working copy once you have added it, even if you delete the `svn:externals` property altogether. You have to checkout a fresh working copy to remove the file.



## Toolbar / Contextual menu

The properties view toolbar and contextual menu contain the following actions:

-  Add a new property - This button invokes the *Add property* dialog in which you can specify the property name and value.
-  Edit property - This button invokes the *Edit property* dialog in which you can change the property value and also see its original(base) value.
-  Remove property - This button will prompt a dialog to confirm the property deletion. You can also specify if you want to remove the property recursively.
-  Refresh - This action will refresh the properties for the current resource.

## Console View

### Description

The *Console View* shows the communication between your client and the Subversion repository. The output is expressed as subcommands to the Subversion server and simulates the Subversion command line notation. For a detailed description of the Subversion console output read the *SVN User Manual*. In the right toolbar there are available a *Clear*  action which clears the content of the view and a *Lock/Unlock* scroll  action which disables the automatic console scrolling.

The maximum number of lines displayed in the console (the length of the buffer) can be modified from Preferences. By default this is set to 100.


## Help View

### Description

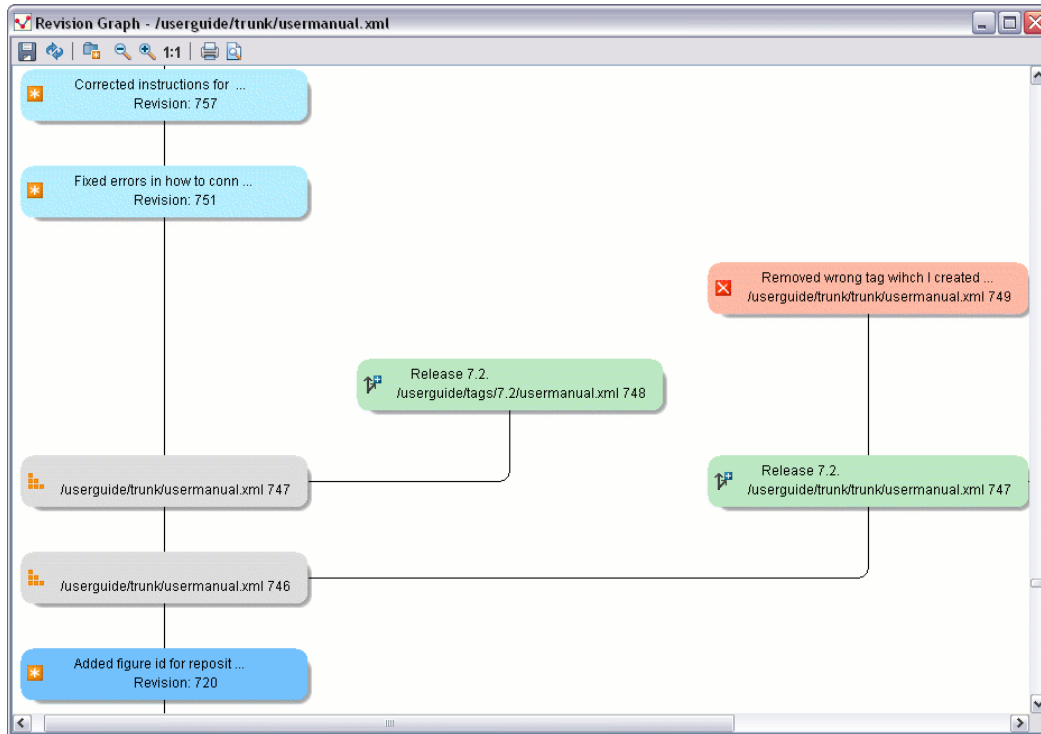
The *Help view* is a dynamic help window. It changes its content displaying the help section referring to the currently selected view. As you change the focused view you will be able to read a short description of it and its functionality.

## The Revision Graph of a SVN Resource

The history of a SVN resource can be watched on a graphical representation of all the revisions of that resource together with the tags in which the resource was included. The graphical representation is identical to a tree structure and is easy to view.







The graphical representation of a resource history is invoked with the action  Revision graph available on the right click menu of a SVN resource in the *Working Copy* view and the *Repository* view.

**Figure 17.38. The Revision Graph of a File Resource**



In every node of the revision graph an icon and the background color represent the type of operation that created the revision represented in that node. Also the commit message associated with that revision, the repository path and the revision number are contained in the node. The tooltip displayed when the mouse pointer hovers over a node specifies the URL of the resource, the SVN user who created the revision of that node, the revision number, the date of creation, the commit message, the modification type and the affected paths.

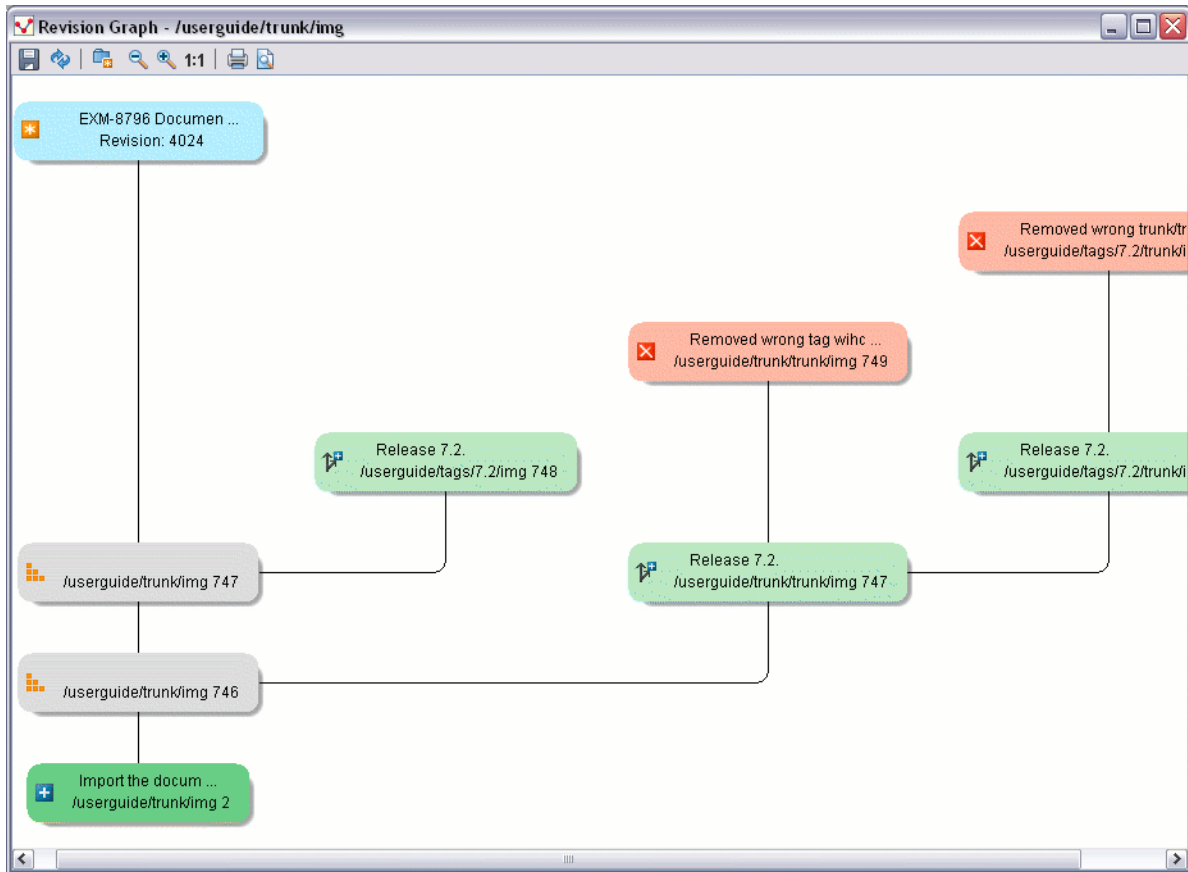
The types of nodes used in the graph are:

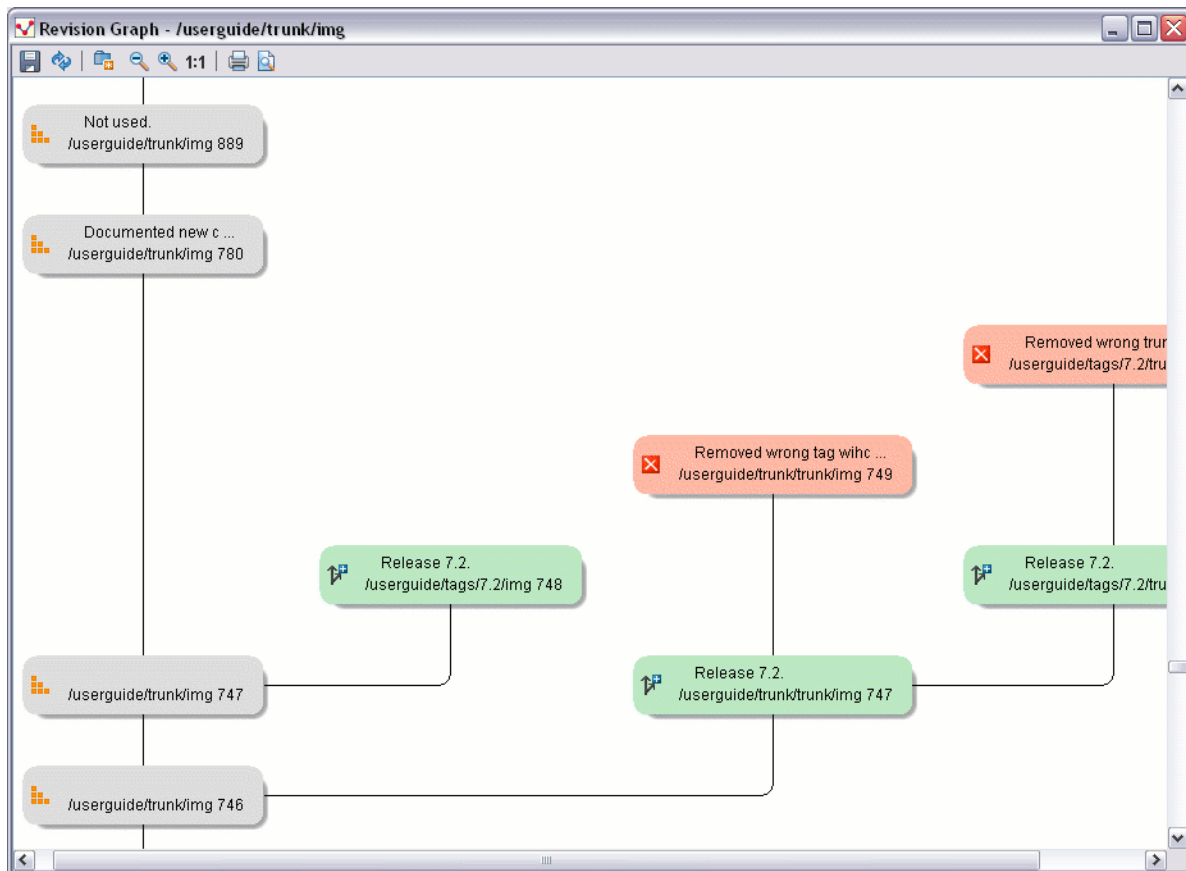
|                   |  |
|-------------------|--|
| added resource    | the icon for a new resource added to the repository (  ) and green background   |
| copied resource   | the icon for a resource copied to other location, for example when a SVN tag is created (  ) and green background   |
| modified resource | the icon for a modified resource (  ) and blue background   |
| deleted resource  | the icon for a resource deleted from the repository (  ) and red background   |
| replaced resource | the icon for a resource removed and replaced with another one on the repository (  ) and orange background  |
| indirect resource | the icon for a revision from where the resource was copied or an indirectly modified resource, that is a directory in which a resource was modified (  ) and grey background; the <i>Modification type</i> field of the tooltip specifies how that revision was obtained in the history of the resource |

A directory resource is represented with two types of graphs:







- simplified graph            lists only the changes applied directly to the directory
- complete graph            lists also the indirect changes of the directory resource, that is the changes applied to the resources contained in the directory

**Figure 17.39. The Revision Graph of a Directory (Direct Changes)**




**Figure 17.40. The Revision Graph of a Directory (Also Indirect Changes)**



The *Revision graph* dialog toolbar contains the following actions:

- |  |   |
|--|---|
|  Save as image                    | Saves the graphical representation as image. For a large revision graph you have to set more memory in the startup script. The default memory size is not enough when there are more than 100 revisions that are included in the graph. |
|  Show/Hide indirect modifications | Switches between simplified and complete graph.   |
|  Zoom In                          | Zooms In the graph.   |
|  Zoom Out                         | Zooms Out the graph. When the font reaches its minimum size, the graph nodes will display only the icons, leading to a very compact representation of the graph.  |
| 1:1 Reset scale  | Resets the scale of the graphical representation.   |
|  Print                            | Print the graphical representation.   |
|  Print preview                    | Print preview for the graphical representation.   |

Right clicking any of the graph nodes display a contextual menu containing the following actions:

- |  |  |
|--|--|
|  Open | available only for files, opens the selected revision in the editor panel. |
|--|--|



|  |  |
|--|--|
| Open with...   | available only for files, opens the selected revision in the editor panel.   |
| Compare with HEAD  | available only for files, compares the selected revision with the HEAD revision and displays the result in the diff panel. |
|  Show History | available for both files and directories, displays the history of the resource in the History view.                        |
|  Check Out    | available only for directories, checks out the selected revision of the directory.   |

When two nodes are selected in the revision graph of a file the right click menu of this selection contains only one item: *Compare* for comparing the two revisions corresponding to the selected nodes. If the resource for which the revision graph was built is a folder then the right click menu displayed for a two nodes selection also contains the item *Compare* but it computes the differences between the two selected revisions as a set of directory changes. The result is displayed in the Directory Change Set view in the same way as for the compare action invoked from the History view on two revisions of a folder.

### **Warning**

Generating the revision graph of a resource with many revisions may be a slow operation. You should enable caching for revision graph actions so that future actions on the same repository will not request the same data again from the SVN server which will finish faster.

## Syncro SVN Client Preferences

The options used in the SVN client are saved and loaded independently from the <oxygen/> XML Editor options. However if at the Syncro SVN Client's first startup it cannot be determined a set of SVN options to be loaded, some of the preferences are imported from the XML Editor options (e.g. License and HTTP Proxy settings).

The preferences dialog can be accessed from the Options -> Preferences. The preferences panels are called Global , SVN , Diff colors and HTTP/Proxy Configuration.

There is a second set of preferences applied to the SVN client: the preferences set in the global SVN files called 'config' and 'servers', that is the files with parameters that act as defaults applied to all the SVN client tools that are used by the same user on his login account on the computer. These files can be opened for editing with the two edit actions available in the SVN client tool on the *Global Runtime Configuration* submenu of the *Options* menu.

## Command line interface cross reference

This section specifies the equivalent Subversion commands for each action in the Syncro SVN Client action.

### Actions commands reference

#### Checkout

*svn checkout [--revision rev] URL PATH*      *--revision rev* specifies the desired revision(if necessary).  
*URL* is the repository URL you want to check out from.  
*PATH* is the location on the file system.

## Update

*svn update [--revision rev] PATH*     --revision rev specifies the desired revision(if necessary).

*PATH* is the location on the file system of the resource to update.

There are two behaviours for the update action in Syncro SVN client. If invoked from the Synchronize View, it updates the resources to the HEAD revision. If invoked from the Working Copy view it always updates to the HEAD revision.

## Commit

*svn commit -m "log message" [--no-unlock] PATH...*     -m "log message" specifies the commit comment.

*--no unlock* specifies that the resource should keep locks after commit if this is the case.

*PATH* is the location on the file system of the resource to commit. Can be more than one.

## Diff

*svn diff --revision rev1:rev2 PATH*     --revision rev1:rev2 specifies the desired revisions to be compared.

*PATH* is the location on the file system of the resource to be compared.

If you use the *Compare with latest from HEAD* from the Working copy view you will be comparing the local file with the HEAD revision file. If you use *Compare with BASE revision* the local file will be compared with the pristine copy. From the Synchronize view you can compare the working copy file with the HEAD revision file. You can choose to compare the local file with an older revision or two revisions of the same file from the History view.

## Show History

*svn log [--revision rev1:rev2] [--limit N] --verbose PATH*     --revision rev1:rev2 - specifies the range of revisions for which to obtain the log.

*--limit N* - limits the number of log messages to N.

*--verbose* - gives detailed information about the operation.

Syncro SVN Client uses by default the *--limit* option in order to obtain only 50 log messages.

## Refresh

*svn status --verbose PATH*     --verbose - specifies that the status of all files should be reported.

*PATH* - The location on the file system to get status for.

## Synchronize

*svn status --show-updates PATH*     --show-updates - get the resource status by contacting the repository.

*PATH* - The location on the file system to get status for.

## Import

*svn import -m "log message" PATH URL*     *-m "log message"* - specifies the commit log message  
*PATH* - the local path to the resource on the file system.  
*URL* - the URL on the repository where the resource will be imported.

## Export

*svn export [--revision rev] URL PATH*     *--revision rev* specifies the desired revision(if necessary).  
*URL* is the repository URL you want to export from.  
*PATH* is the location on the file system where to export.

## Information

*svn info [--revision HEAD] PATH | URL*     *--revision HEAD* - specifies that the information will be for the HEAD revision of the resource.  
*PATH* - the local file system path to the resource.  
*URL* - the repository URL for the resource.

This command can obtain information for a resource from a working copy or from a Subversion repository.

## Add

*svn add PATH...*     *PATH*- the local file system path for the unversioned resources to be added to version control. More than one can be specified.

## Add to svn:ignore

**svn propset svn:ignore PATH PARENTPATH**     *svn:ignore* - the predefined property name for ignoring resources.  
*PATH* - the relative path from the working copy root for the resource to be ignored.  
*PARENTPATH* - the path to the parent of the resource to be ignored.

## Delete

**svn delete --recursive PATH | URL**     *--recursive* - specifies that the operation should be performed recursively.  
*PATH*- the local file system path for the resource to delete.  
*URL*- the repository URL for the resource to delete.  
This command can delete resources from a working copy or from a Subversion repository.

## Copy

**svn copy (SRCPATH DSTPATH)** SRCPATH - the working copy path of the resource to be copied.  
| (SRCURL DSTURL)  
DSTPATH - the working copy path to be copied to.  
SRCURL - the repository path of the resource to be copied.  
DSTURL - the repository path to be copied to.

## Move / Rename

**svn move (SRCPATH DSTPATH)** SRCPATH - the working copy path of the resource to be moved.  
| (SRCURL DSTURL)  
DSTPATH - the working copy path to be moved to.  
SRCURL - the repository path of the resource to be moved.  
DSTURL - the repository path to be moved to.

## Mark resolved

*svn resolved --recursive PATH* --recursive - specifies that the operation should be performed recursively.  
PATH - the path to the resource in the local working copy.

## Revert

*svn revert [--recursive] PATH* --recursive - specifies that the operation should be performed recursively.  
PATH - the local working copy path to revert.

## Cleanup

*svn cleanup PATH* PATH - the working copy path to cleanup.

## Show / Refresh Properties

**svn proplist PATH & svn propget** PATH - the local path for the resource  
**PROPNAME PATH** PROPNAME - the property name.

First you can discover the property names with **svn proplist**, then you can obtain their values with **svn propget**.

## Branch / Tag

*svn copy -m "log message" URL1* -m "log message" - the commit comment  
*URL2 or svn copy -m "log message"*  
*URL1@rev1 URL2 or svn copy -m* URL1 - the source repository URL.  
*"log message" PATH URL* rev1 - the revision of the source.  
URL2 - the destination repository URL.  
PATH - the source working copy path.

*URL* - the destination repository URL.

## Merge

*svn merge [--dry-run] rev1:rev2 URL PATH* or *svn merge [--dry-run] URL1@rev1 URL2@rev2 PATH*

*--dry-run* - specifies that the operation will be simulated without making any modifications.

*URL* - the repository URL for the resource to merge.

*URL1* - the repository URL for the start branch to merge.

*rev1* - the start revision for the resource to merge.

*URL2* - the repository URL for the end branch to merge.

*rev2* - the end revision for the resource to merge.

*PATH* - the destination path in the working copy for the result of the merge

## Scan for locks

*svn status --show-updates --verbose PATH*

*--show-updates* - get the resource status by contacting the repository.

*--verbose* - specifies that the status of all files should be reported.

*PATH* - The location on the file system to get status for.

The command will obtain the repository status for all the resources in the path.

## Lock

*svn lock [--force] [-m "log message"] PATH*

*--force* - forces (steals) the lock

*-m "log message"* - the lock comment.

*PATH* - the path to the file from the working copy..

## Unlock

*svn unlock [--force] PATH*

*--force* - forces (breaks) the lock

*PATH* - the path to the file from the working copy..

## Mark as merged

Mark as merged - **rename FILE FILE.TMP, svn update FILE and rename FILE.TMP FILE**

*FILE* - the file to be marked as merged.

*FILE.TMP* - a temporary filename.

## Override and update

*svn revert PATH, svn update PATH*

*PATH* - the path of the resource to be overridden.

## Override and commit

If the resource is in conflict it performs first *mark resolved* and if the resource has incoming changes *mark as merged* and then *svn commit -m "log message" [--no-unlock] PATH*

*-m "log message"* specifies the commit comment.

*--no unlock* specifies that the resource should keep locks after commit if this is the case.

*PATH* is the location on the file system of the resource to be committed.

## Add / Edit property

**svn propset [--recursive] PROPNAME PROPVALUE PATH**

*--recursive* - specifies that the property should be set recursively.

*PROPNAME* - the property name.

*PROPVALUE* - the property value.

*PATH* - the resource path.

## Remove property

**svn propdel [--recursive] PROPNAME PATH**

*--recursive* - specifies that the property should be deleted recursively.

*PROPNAME* - the property name.

*PATH* - the resource path.

## Revert changes from this revision

*svn merge rev:rev-1 URL*

*rev* - revision whose changes must be reverted.

*URL* - The SVN URL corresponding to the resource.

## Revert changes from these revisions

*svn merge rev1:rev2 URL*

*rev1* - first revision number.

*rev2* - second revision number.

*URL* - The SVN URL corresponding to the resource.

---

# Chapter 18. How to develop an <oXygen/> plugin

This chapter explains how to write and install a plugin for the Text mode of the <oXygen/> XML Author11.2 or higher. It treats only the standalone version, as the Eclipse plugin version can be extended with other plugins following the rules of the Eclipse platform.

## Introduction

<oXygen/> defines a couple of extension points to allow providing custom functionality via plugins. The plugin support includes four types of plugins:

- General plugins
- Selection plugins
- Document plugins
- Custom protocol plugins
- Resource locking custom protocol plugins
- Components validation plugins
- Workspace access plugins
- Open redirect plugins

A selection plugin can be applied to both an XML document and a non XML document. Other types of plugins can be applied only to XML documents. A components validation plugin and a workspace access plugin are not connected with one document type, they have access to some resources of the application workspace that are used by all opened documents.

## Requirements

In order to develop a plugin a Java development environment must be installed. Apart from any library that the specific plugin will require the file `oxygen.jar` is necessary for plugin compilation. Also an <oXygen/> installation will be helpful for testing the deployment and plugin the functionality.

## Implementing plugins

On the <oXygen/> website there is a plugin development kit [<http://www.oxygenxml.com/InstData/Editor/Plugins/OxygenPluginsDevelopmentKit.zip>] with some sample plugins (source code and compiled code) and the Javadoc API necessary for developing custom plugins. On the Plugins page [<http://www.oxygenxml.com/developer.html>] there is a developer manual [<http://www.oxygenxml.com/doc/HowToDevelopOxygenPlugins.pdf>] with instructions for developing custom plugins.

The minimal implementation of a plugin must provide two classes: one that extends the *Plugin* class and another that implements the plugin extension and a plugin descriptor file. There are five available extensions `SelectionPlu-`

ginExtension, DocumentPluginExtension, GeneralPluginExtension, URLStreamHandlerPluginExtension and StartupPluginExtension.

A PluginDescriptor object is passed to the plugin class on constructor containing information about the plugin

- *basedir* - *File* - the base directory of the plugin.
- *description* - *String* - the description of the plugin.
- *name* - *String* - the name of the plugin.
- *vendor* - *String* - the vendor name of the plugin.
- *version* - *String* - the plugin version.

The PluginDescriptor fields are filled with information from the plugin descriptor file.

The plugin descriptor defines how the plugin will be integrated in <oXygen/> and what libraries should be loaded. The structure of the plugin descriptor file is fully described in a DTD grammar located in OXYGEN\_INSTALLATION\_FOLDER/plugins/plugin.dtd.

Here is a sample plugin descriptor used by the Capitalize Lines sample plugin:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<!DOCTYPE plugin SYSTEM "../plugin.dtd">
<plugin
  name="Capitalize Lines"
  description="Capitalize the first character on each line"
  version="1.0.0"
  vendor="SyncRO"
  class="ro.sync.sample.plugin.caplignes.CapLinesPlugin">
  <runtime>
    <library name="lib/caplignes.jar"/>
  </runtime>
  <extension type="selectionProcessor"
    class="ro.sync.sample.plugin.caplignes.CapLinesPluginExtension" keyboardShortcut="ctrl
</plugin>
```

If your plugin is of type selectionProcessor, documentProcessor or generalExtension and thus contributes an action either to the contextual menu or to the main menu then you can assign a keyboard shortcut for it. You can use the keyboardShortcut attribute for each extension to specify the desired shortcut.

### **Tip**

To compose string representations of the desired shortcut keys you can go to the <oXygen/> Menu Shortcut Keys preferences page, press Edit on any action, press the desired key sequence and use the representation which appears in the edit dialog.

## General plugins

GeneralPluginExtension - this interface is intended for general purpose plugins - kind of external tools but triggered from the *Plugins* main menu. The implementing classes must contain the method *process(GeneralPluginContext)* which should provide the plugin processing. This method takes as a parameter an GeneralPluginContext object.



`GeneralPluginContext` - represents the context in which the general plugin extension does its processing. The only method available is `getFrame()` which returns the currently editing frame (`java.awt.Frame`). It is useful if the plugin wants to display graphical components as they in general need a parent in order to appear properly on screen.

## Selection plugins

`SelectionPluginExtension` - This interface is intended for selection processing plugins. A selection plugin can be applied to both an XML document and a non XML document. It works as follows: the user makes a selection in the editor and then goes to the contextual menu and selects from the *Plugins* section the corresponding entry. The context containing the selection is passed to the extension and the processed result is going to replace the initial selection.

The context is represented by an `SelectionPluginContext` object, this provides two methods:

- `getSelection()` - `String` - returns the current selection of text.
- `getFrame()` - `Frame` - returns the currently editing frame.

The process method must return a `SelectionPluginResult` object which contains the result of the processing.

## Document plugins

`DocumentPluginExtension` - This interface is intended for document processing plugins. This type of plugins can be started from the contextual menu, *Plugins* section, by selecting the corresponding entry. The context containing the current document is passed to the extension in order to be processed.

The context is represented by an `DocumentPluginContext` object, this provides two methods:

- `getDocument()` - `Document` - returns the current document.
- `getFrame()` - `Frame` - returns the currently editing frame.

The process method can return a `DocumentPluginResult` object containing a new document.

## Custom protocol plugins

`URLStreamHandlerPluginExtension` allows the developer to work with a protocol that he designed for retrieving and storing files. There is one method that has to be implemented:

- `getURLStreamHandler(String protocol)` - `URLStreamHandler`- It takes as an argument the name of the protocol and returns the handler for it, or null if it was not able to find it.

With the help of the `URLChooserPluginExtension` interface, it is possible to write your own dialog that will work with the custom protocol. This interface provides two methods:

- `chooseURLs()` - `URL[]` - returns the URLs the user decided to open with the custom protocol. You can invoke your own URL chooser dialog here and then return the chosen URLs having your own custom protocol.
- `getMenuName()` - `String` - returns the name of the entry that will be added in the File submenu of the editor

With the help of the `URLChooserToolbarExtension` interface, it is possible to provide a toolbar entry which will be used to launch the custom URLs chooser from in the `URLChooserPluginExtension`. This interface provides two methods:

- `getToolbarIcon()` - `Icon` - returns the `javax.swing.Icon` image which will be used on the toolbar.

- `getToolBarTooltip()` - String - returns the tooltip which will be used on the toolbar button.

## Resource locking custom protocol plugins

`URLStreamHandlerWithLockPluginExtension` allows the developer to work with a protocol that he designed for retrieving and storing files and lock a resource on opening it in <oXygen/>. This type of plugin extends the custom protocol plugin type `URLStreamHandlerPluginExtension` with resource locking support. The plugin receives callbacks following the simple protocol for resource locking and unlocking imposed by <oXygen/> as you can read in the developer manual [<http://www.oxygenxml.com/doc/HowToDevelopOxygenPlugins.pdf>]. There are two additional methods that must be implemented:

- `getLockHandler()` - returns a `LockHandler` implementation class with the implementation of the lock specific methods from your plugin.
- `isSupported(String protocol)` - boolean - you can accept to manage locking for a certain URL protocol like scheme like `ftp`, `http`, `https` or `customName`.

## Components Validation plugins

`ComponentsValidatorPluginExtension` allow developers to make customization of the Editor's menus, toolbars and some other components by allowing or filtering them from the user interface. There is one method that has to be implemented:

- `getComponentsValidator()` - returns a `ro.sync.exml.ComponentsValidator` implementation class use for validate the menus, toolbars and their actions.

The `ComponentsValidator` provides methods to filter various features from being added to the application GUI:

- `validateMenuOrTaggedAction(String[] menuOrActionPath)` - boolean - check if an menu or a tag action from an menu is allowed. A tag is used to uniquely identifying an action. The `String[]` argument is the tag of the menu/action and the tags of its parent menus if any.
- `validateToolBarTaggedAction(String[] toolbarOrAction)` - *boolean* - check if an action from a toolbar is allowed. The `String[]` argument is the tag of the action from a toolbar and the tag of its parent toolbar if any.
- `validateComponent(String key)` - boolean - check if the given component is allowed. The `String` argument is the tag identifying the component. You can remove toolbars entirely using this callback.
- `validateAccelAction(String category, String tag)` - boolean - check if the given accelerator action is allowed to appear in the GUI. An accelerator action can be uniquely identified so it will be removed both from toolbars or menus. The first argument represent the action category, the second is the tag of the action.
- `validateContentType(String contentType)` - boolean - check if the given content type is allowed. The `String` argument represent the content type. You can instruct the application to ignore content types like `"text/xsl"` or `"text/xquery"` and the application will no longer be able to recognize them.
- `validateOptionPane(String optionPaneKey)` - boolean - check if the given options page can be add in the application Preferences option tree. The `String` argument is the option pane key.
- `validateOption(String optionKey)` - boolean - check if the given option can be add in the option page. The `String` argument is the option key. This method is mostly used for internal used and will not get called for each option in a preferences page.

- `validateLibrary(String library)` - boolean - check if the given library is allowed to appear listed in the About dialog. The String argument is the library. This method is mostly for internal use.
- `validateNewEditorTemplate(EditorTemplate editorTemplate)` - boolean - check if the given template for a new editor is allowed. The EditorTemplate argument is the editor template. An EditorTemplate is used to create a new editor for a given extension. You can thus filter what appears in the "New"->From Templates dialog list.
- `isDebuggerperspectiveAllowed()` - boolean - check if the debugger perspective is allowed.
- `validateSHMarker(String marker)` - boolean - check if the given marker is allowed. The String argument represent the syntax highlight marker to be checked. If you decide to filter certain content types you can also filter the syntax highlight options so that that content type is no longer present in the Preferences options tree.

### Tip

The best way to decide what to filter is to observe the values the application passes when these callbacks are called. You need to create an implementation for this interface which lists in the console all values received by each function. Then you can decide on the values to filter and act accordingly.

## Workspace access plugin

An integration with a Content Management System (CMS) usually requires access to some workspace resources like the toolbar menus, the open editor panels and the edited documents. It should also be allowed to change and replace the content of an editor panel.

The user plugin must implement the interface *WorkspaceAccessPluginExtension*. The method *applicationStarted* of this interface will receive a parameter of type *StandalonePluginWorkspace* which allows access to menus, toolbars and views. The plugin is allowed also to create a custom toolbar and a custom view that did not exist when the application was installed and started. The interface *StandalonePluginWorkspace* has 3 methods:

- *addToolBarComponentsCustomizer* - contribute to or modify existing toolbars or contribute to a reserved *Plugins* toolbar;
- *addViewComponentCustomizer* - contribute to or modify existing views or contribute to the reserved custom view;
- *addMenuBarCustomizer* - contribute to or modify existing menu components.

## Open redirect plugin

This type of plugin is useful for opening more than one file with only one open action. For example when a zip archive or an ODF file or an OOXML file is open in the Archive Browser view a plugin of this type can decide to open also a file from the archive in an XML editor panel. This file can be the `document.xml` main file from an OOXML file archive or a specific XML file from a zip archive.

The plugin must implement the interface *OpenRedirectExtension*. It has only one callback: `redirect(URL)` that will receive the URL of the file opened by the <oxygen/> user. If the plugin decides to open also other files it must return an array of information objects (*OpenRedirectInformation[]*) that correspond to these files. Such an information object must contain the URL that will be opened in a new editor panel and the content type, for example `text/xml`. The content type is used for determining the type of editor panel. A `null` content type will allow auto-detection of the file type.

## Example - UppercasePlugin

The following plugin is an example. It is used in <oXygen/> for capitalizing the characters in the current selection. This example consist of two classes and the plugin descriptor:

```
package ro.sync.sample.plugin.uppercase;

import ro.sync.exml.plugin.Plugin;
import ro.sync.exml.plugin.PluginDescriptor;

public class UppercasePlugin extends Plugin {
    /**
     * Plugin instance.
     */
    private static UppercasePlugin instance = null;

    /**
     * UppercasePlugin constructor.
     *
     * @param descriptor Plugin descriptor object.
     */
    public UppercasePlugin(PluginDescriptor descriptor) {
        super(descriptor);

        if (instance != null) {
            throw new IllegalStateException("Already instantiated !");
        }
        instance = this;
    }

    /**
     * Get the plugin instance.
     *
     * @return the shared plugin instance.
     */
    public static UppercasePlugin getInstance() {
        return instance;
    }
}

package ro.sync.sample.plugin.uppercase;

import ro.sync.exml.plugin.selection.SelectionPluginContext;
import ro.sync.exml.plugin.selection.SelectionPluginExtension;
import ro.sync.exml.plugin.selection.SelectionPluginResult;
import ro.sync.exml.plugin.selection.SelectionPluginResultImpl;

public class UppercasePluginExtension implements SelectionPluginExtension {
    /**
     * Convert the text to uppercase.
     */
}
```

```

*
*@param context Selection context.
*@return          Uppercase plugin result.
*/
public SelectionPluginResult process(SelectionPluginContext context) {
    return new SelectionPluginResultImpl(
        context.getSelection().toUpperCase());
}
}

```

```

<!DOCTYPE plugin SYSTEM "../plugin.dtd">
<plugin
  name="UpperCase"
  description="Convert the selection to uppercase"
  version="1.0.0"
  vendor="SyncRO"
  class="ro.sync.sample.plugin.uppercase.UppercasePlugin">
  <runtime>
    <library name="lib/uppercase.jar"/>
  </runtime>
  <extension type="selectionProcessor"
    class="ro.sync.sample.plugin.uppercase.UppercasePluginExtension"/>
</plugin>

```

## Example - a custom protocol plugin

1. Write the handler class for your protocol (implement the `java.net.URLStreamHandler` interface)

### Note

You must be careful to provide ways to correct and un correct the URLs of your files.

2. Write the plugin class (the `ro.sync.exml.plugin.Plugin` class must be extended in order to create the new plugin)
3. Write the plugin extension class. It is necessary that the plugin extension for the custom protocol implements the `URLStreamHandlerPluginExtension` interface. Without it, you can't use your plugin, because <oXygen/> will not be able to find the protocol handler.

You can choose to implement also the `URLChooserPluginExtension` interface. It will allow you to write and use your own customized dialog for this protocol.

If you implement the extension `URLHandlerReadOnlyCheckerExtension` you can mark a resource as read-only when it is opened. This extension allows also to switch between marking the resource as read-only and read-write while it is edited. This is useful when opening CMS resources.

4. Write the `plugin.xml` file (remember to change the name of the plugin class to the one from the second step and the plugin extension class name with the one you have chosen at step 3)
5. Create a `.jar` archive and install your new plugin.

## Installing the plugin

In the directory where <oXygen/> is installed there exists a directory called `plugins`. This contains all the available plugins. In order for <oXygen/> to use the new functionality you provided follow the next steps:



1. In the directory `plugins` create a new directory, generally named after your plugin. For instance in the uppercase plugin example this can be `UPPERCASE`.
2. Put in this new folder the plugin descriptor file, "plugin.xml" and the plugin files.
3. Restart <oXygen/> and try your plugin.

---




# Chapter 19. Text editor specific actions

<oXygen/> XML Author provides user actions common in any text editor:

## Undoing and redoing user actions


- Edit → Undo (**Ctrl+Z**) or the toolbar button  Undo to reverse a maximum of 100 editing actions to return to the preceding state. Complex operations like "Replace All", "Indent selection", etc are treated as a single undo event.
- Edit → Redo (**Ctrl+Y for Windows, Ctrl+Shift+Z for Mac OSX and Linux**) or the toolbar button  Redo to recreate a maximum of 100 editing actions that were undone by the Undo function.

## Copying and pasting text

- Edit → Cut (**Ctrl+X**) or the toolbar button  Cut to remove the current selected node from the document and places it in the clipboard.
- Edit → Copy (**Ctrl+C**) or the toolbar button  Copy to place a copy of the current selection in the clipboard as RTF. All text attributes such as color, font or syntax highlight are preserved when pasting into another application.
- Edit → Paste (**Ctrl+V**) or the toolbar button  Paste to place the current clipboard content into the document at the cursor position.
- Edit → Select All (**Ctrl+A**) selects the entire body of the current document, including whitespace preceding the first and following the last character.

## Finding and replacing text in the current file

### The Find/Replace dialog

The Find/Replace dialog opened with the menu entry Find → Find/Replace... (**Ctrl+F**) or the toolbar button  Find/Replace enables you to define "search for" or "search for and replace" operations on the current document. The find works on multiple lines, which means a find match can cover characters on more than one line. To insert a new line in the find or replace text area press **CTRL + Enter** instead of **Enter**. The replace operation can bind Perl 5 regular expression group variables (\$1, \$2, etc.) from the find match. For example to replace the tag with attributes called *tag-name* with the tag *tag-name l* use as text to find `<tag-name(\s+)(.*)>` and as replace text `<tag-name l$1$2>`.

- Find occurrences of a word or string of characters including white spaces represented on a line or on multiple lines and highlight the position in the editor.
- Replace occurrences of target defined in the Text to find area with a word or string of characters, including white spaces, that can be on a line or on multiple lines, defined in the Replace with area.
- Find all occurrences of a word or string of characters including white spaces that can be on a line or on multiple lines and return a result list to the Message Panel.





|                           |  |
|---------------------------|--|
| XPath                     | <p>The XPath 2.0 expression entered in this combo is used to restrict the search scope. It is applied only at the first search command (Find, Replace, Find all, Replace to end) after the user changes the content of this combo so that he is able to replace tag names covered by the current XPath expression.</p> <p>The content completion assistant that helps in entering XPath expressions in attributes of XSLT stylesheets elements is also available in the XPath console and offers always proposals dependent of the current context of the cursor inside the edited document.</p> |
| Direction                 | Specify if the search direction is from current position to end of file (forward direction) or to start of file (backward direction).  |
| Scope                     | Specify if the search is executed on all file or only on the lines that were selected when the dialog was invoked. If the selection was on a single line the search is executed on all the file.   |
| Find                      | Execute a find operation for the next occurrence of the target and stop.   |
| Replace                   | Execute a replace operation for the target followed by a find operation for the next occurrence.   |
| Find all                  | Executes a find operation and returns all results to the Message Panel.  |
| Replace all               | Execute a replace operation in the entire scope of the document.   |
| Replace to end            | Execute a replace operation starting from current target until the end of the document, in the direction specified by the current selection of the Direction switch (forward or backward).   |
| Case sensitive            | When checked, operations are case sensitive.   |
| Whole words only          | When checked only whole occurrences of a word will be included in the operation.   |
| Incremental               | When checked, search operation is started for every letter typed in or deleted. The first match that obeys the checked conditions will be highlighted.   |
| Regular expression        | When checked allows using any regular expression in PERL syntax.   |
| Dot matches all           | A dot used in a regular expression matches also end of line characters.  |
| Wrap around               | Continues the find from the start (end) of the document after reaching the end (start) if the search is in forward (backward) direction.   |
| Enable XML search options | <p>When this option is checked the dialog is enlarged and the XML search options are shown below. This option allows restricting the search domain to the checked XML component types.</p> <p>The supported XML component types are as follows:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Element names - only the names will be searched, without '&lt;', '/', '&gt;' or white-spaces. e.g.: <code>&lt;element/&gt;</code></li><li>• Element contents</li></ul>   |

- Attribute names - only the names will be searched, without the leading or trailing white-spaces.
- Attribute values - only the values will be searched, without single quotes(') or double quotes(""). e.g.: `'value'` or `"value"`
- Comments - only the content will be searched, skipping `<!--, '-->`. e.g.: `<!--Comment content-->`
- Processing Instructions (PIs) - only the content will be searched, skipping `<?, ?>`. e.g.: `<?processing instruction?>`
- CDATA - only the content will be searched, skipping `<![CDATA[, ']]>`. e.g.: `<![CDATA[cdata content]]>`
- Doctype
- Entities

The two buttons *Select All* and *Deselect All* allow a simple activation and deactivation of all types.

### Note

Please note that since searching in some XML component types is performed only on their content skipping some of their headers/footers(see the list above), even if all the XML component types are checked, some filtering is still performed. To completely disable it you have to uncheck *Enable XML search options*.

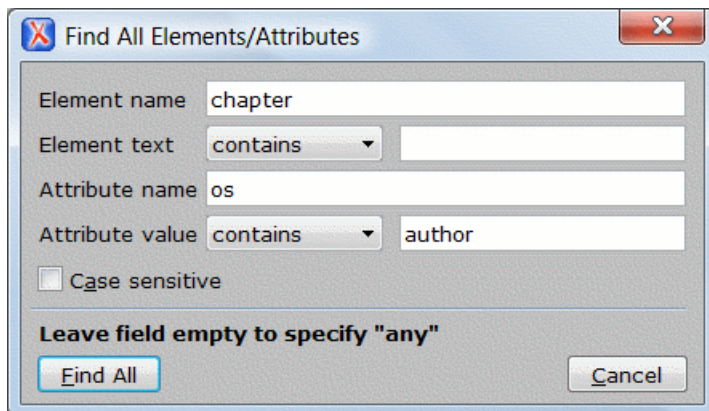
Find All Elements/Attributes ...

In Author mode an attribute cannot be searched directly. For finding an attribute just click on the link *Find All Elements/Attributes ...* which opens the dialog with the same name.

## The Find All Elements/Attributes dialog

This dialog is dialog opened with the menu entry Find → Find All Elements... (**Ctrl+Shift+E**) and assists you in defining "search for XML elements and/or attributes" operations on the current document.

**Figure 19.2. Find All Elements/Attributes dialog**



As a result, the dialog can perform the following:

- Find all the elements with a specified name
- Find all the elements which contain or not a specified string in their text
- Find all the elements which have a specified attribute
- Find all the elements which have an attribute with or without a specified value

All these search criteria can be combined to fine filter your results.

The results of all the operations in the Find All Elements/Attributes dialog will be presented as a list in the Message Panel.

The dialog fields are described as follows:

|                 |   |
|-----------------|---|
| Element name    | The target element name to search for. Only the elements with this exact name are returned. For any element name just leave the field empty.  |
| Element text    | <p>The target element text to search for. The combo box beside this field allows you to specify that you are looking for an exact or partial match of the element text. For any element text, select <i>contains</i> in the combo box and leave the field empty.</p> <p>If you leave the field empty but select <i>equals</i> in the combo box, only elements with no text will be found. Select <i>not contains</i> to select all elements which do not have the specified text inside.</p>  |
| Attribute name  | The name of the attribute which needs to be present in the elements. Only the elements which have an attribute with this name will be returned. For any/no attribute name just leave the field empty.   |
| Attribute value | <p>The attribute value The combo box beside this field allows you to specify that you are looking for an exact or partial match of the attribute value. For any/no attribute value select <i>contains</i> in the combo box and leave the field empty.</p> <p>If you leave the field empty but select <i>equals</i> in the combo box, only elements that have at least an attribute with an empty value will be found.</p> <p>Select <i>not contains</i> to select all elements which have attributes without a specified value.</p> |
| Case sensitive  | When this option is checked, operations are case sensitive.   |

## The Quick Find toolbar

A reduced version of the Find/Replace dialog is available as a toolbar, activated by the shortcut specified in the *Find* menu and displayed by default at the bottom of the <oxygen/> window, above the status bar.

The Next, Previous, All, Incremental and Case sensitive controls work in the same way as in the Find/Replace dialog. The search process works as if the Search also in tags option of the Find/Replace dialog is true, the Whole words only one is false, the Regular expression one is false and the Wrap around one is true. You can also use the last two toolbar actions to quickly open the Find/Replace and the Find/Replace in Files dialogs. The toolbar becomes invisible again when the **ESC** key is pressed.

The enabling shortcut can be changed in Options → Preferences+Menu Shortcut Keys+Quick FindAs with any dockable toolbar, the screen location of the Quick Find toolbar can be changed at any time by dragging (and docking) it to the

desired location. However the buttons of this toolbar can be used only if it has a horizontal layout so docking it to the West side or the East side of the window is not allowed.


## Keyboard shortcuts for finding the next and previous match

Navigation from a find match to the next one or the previous one is very easy with two keyboard shortcuts: F3 and Shift F3. They are useful to quickly repeat the last find action performed with the Find/Replace dialog, taking into account the same find options set there through check boxes.

Find → Find Next (**F3**) performs another search in forward direction using the last search configuration.

Find → Find Previous (**Shift+F3**) performs another search in backward direction using the last search configuration.

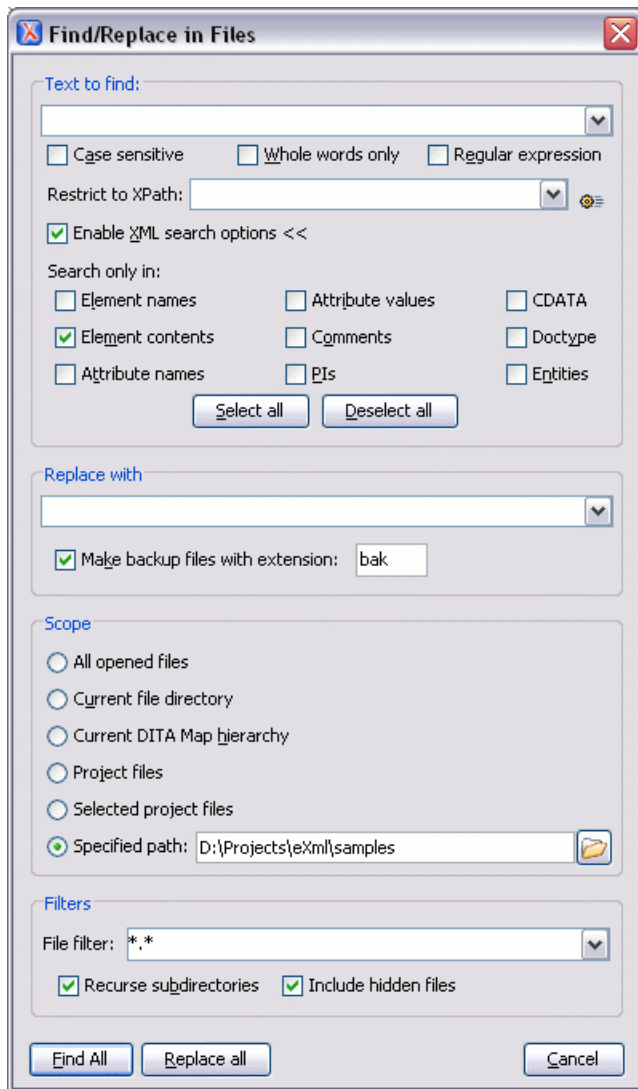
## Finding and replacing text in multiple files

The Find and Replace in Files option ( Find → Find/Replace in Files... or the toolbar button  Find/Replace in Files ) enables you to define "search for" or "search for and replace" operations across a number of files. The find works at line level, which means a find match cannot cover characters on more than one line. The replace operation can bind Perl 5 regular expression group variables (\$1, \$2, etc.) from the find match. For example to replace the tag with attributes called *tag-name* with the tag *tag-name1* use as text to find `<tag-name(\s+)(.*)>` and as replace text `<tag-name1$1$2>`.

The encoding used to read and write the files is detected from the XML header or from the BOM. If a file does not have an XML header or BOM `<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8" />` uses the UTF-8 encoding for files of type XML, that is one of the extensions: xml, xsl, fo, xsd, rng, nvd1, nrl, sch, wsd1 or an extension associated with the XML editor type, or the encoding configured for non XML files.

You can cancel a long operation at any time by pressing the Cancel button of the progress dialog displayed when the operation is executed.

Because the content of read-only files cannot be modified, the Replace operation will not process those files. For every such file, a warning message will be displayed in the output panel.

**Figure 19.3. Find/Replace in Files**

The dialog contains the following fields/options:

|                    |  |
|--------------------|--|
| Text to Find       | The target character string to search for.   |
| Case Sensitive     | When checked, operations are case sensitive.   |
| Whole words only   | When checked only whole occurrences of a word will be included in the operation.   |
| Regular Expression | When checked allows using any regular expression in PERL syntax.   |
| Restrict to XPath  | The XPath 2.0 expression entered in this combo is used to restrict the search scope.<br><br>The content completion assistant helps in entering XPath expressions and offers proposals. |

Enable XML search options

When an XPath is entered in this field only files with XML content type are searched, that is files with extensions that are associated with one of the editors: XML editor, HTML editor, XSL editor, XSD editor, WSDL editor, RNG editor, NRL editor, NVDL editor, Schematron editor, SVG editor, XPROC editor.

When this option is checked the dialog is enlarged and the XML search options are shown below. This option allows restricting the search domain to the checked XML component types.

When this checkbox is selected only files with XML content type are searched, that is files with extensions that are associated with one of the editors: XML editor, HTML editor, XSL editor, XSD editor, WSDL editor, RNG editor, NRL editor, NVDL editor, Schematron editor, SVG editor, XPROC editor.

The supported XML component types are as follows:

- Element names - only the names will be searched, without '<', '/', '>' or white-spaces. e.g.: `<element/>`
- Element contents
- Attribute names - only the names will be searched, without the leading or trailing white-spaces.
- Attribute values - only the values will be searched, without single quotes(') or double quotes(""). e.g.: `'value'` or `"value"`
- Comments - only the content will be searched, skipping `<!--, '-->`. e.g.: `<!--Comment content-->`
- Processing Instructions (PIs) - only the content will be searched, skipping `<?, ?>`. e.g.: `<?processing instruction?>`
- CDATA - only the content will be searched, skipping `<![CDATA[, ']]>`. e.g.: `<![CDATA[cdata content]]>`
- Doctype
- Entities


The two buttons *Select All* and *Deselect All* allow a simple activation and deactivation of all types.

 **Note**

Please note that since searching in some XML component types is performed only on their content skipping some of their headers/footers(see the list above), even if all the XML component types are checked, some filtering is still performed. To completely disable it you have to uncheck *Enable XML search options*.

Replace with


The character string with which to replace the target. It may contain regexp group markers if the search expression is a regular expression and the regular expression checkbox is checked.

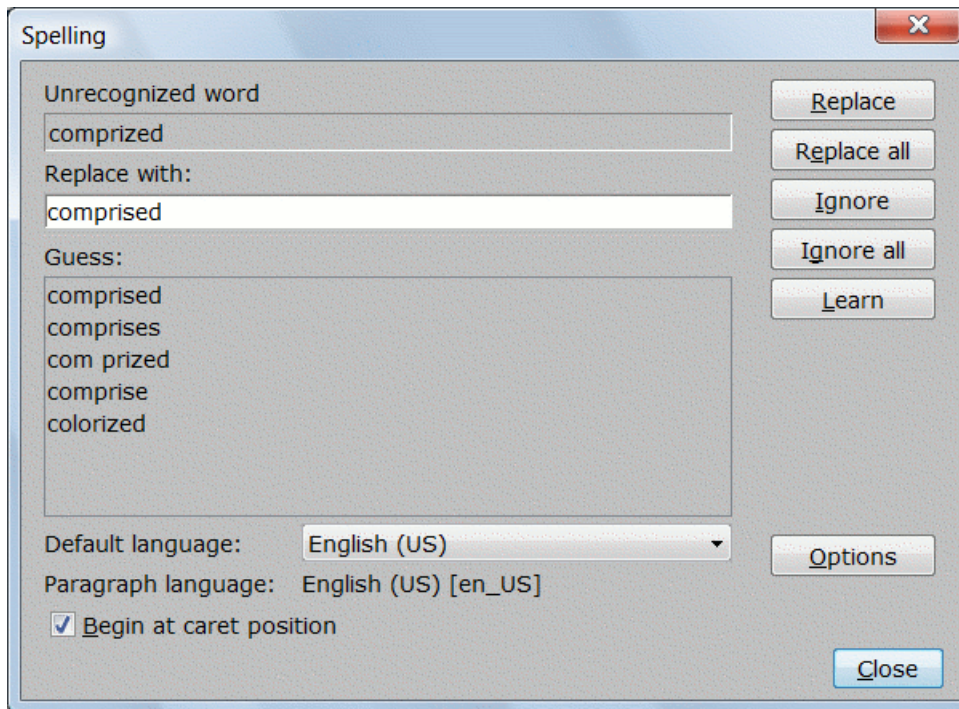
|                                      |  |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| Make Backups with extension          | In the replace process <oXygen/> makes backup files of the modified files. The default extension is *bak, but you can change extension as you prefer.  |
| All opened files                     | Search in all files opened in <oXygen/> (regular files or DITA Maps). You will be prompted to save all modified files before any operation is performed.   |
| Directory of the current edited file | The search is done in the directory of the file opened in the current editor panel. If there is no opened file this option is disabled in the dialog.  |
| Scope of the current DITA Map        | The search is done in all maps and topics referenced by the current edited DITA Map. If "Recurse referenced maps" is checked the references from the maps referenced in the main DITA map will also be searched in. If there is no opened DITA Map this option is disabled in the dialog. You will be prompted to save all modified files before any operation is performed. |
| Project Files                        | Search in all files from the current project.  |
| Selected project files               | Search only in the selected files of the current opened project  |
|                                      |  <b>Note</b>  |
|                                      | The search is performed only on local files. If you have added to the project remote files from an FTP or WebDAV server these will be skipped from the search.   |
| Specified Path                       | Choose the search path   |
| Recurse subdirectories               | The search is performed recursively in the sub-directories found in the specified directory path only when this option is checked.   |
| Recurse subdirectories               | When checked, the search is performed recursively in the sub-directories found in the specified directory path.  |
| Include hidden files                 | When checked, the search is performed also in the hidden files.  |
| Find All                             | Executes a find operation and returns the result list to the Message Pane  |
| Replace All                          | Replaces all occurrences of the target contained in the specified files.   |

### Use this option with caution.

Global search and replace across all project files does not open the files containing the targets, nor does it prompt on a per occurrence basis, to confirm that a replace operation must be performed. As the operation simply matches the string defined in the find field, this may result in replacement of matching strings that were not originally intended to be replaced.

## Using Check Spelling

The Check Spelling option ( Edit → Check Spelling (F7) or the toolbar button  Check spelling ) enables you to perform the check spelling on the current document:

**Figure 19.4. Check Spelling Dialog**

Complete the dialog as follows:

|                   |  |
|-------------------|--|
| Unrecognized Word | Contains the word that cannot be found in the selected dictionary. The word is also highlighted in the XML document.   |
| Replace with      | The character string which is suggested to replace the unrecognized word.  |
| Guess             | Displays a list of words suggested to replace the unknown word. Double clicking a word in this list automatically inserts it in the document and continues the spell checking process. |
| Dictionary        | Displays a list with the available dictionaries.   |
| Replace           | Replaces the currently highlighted word in the XML document, with the selected word in the "Replace with" field.   |
| Replace All       | Replaces all occurrences of the currently highlighted word in the XML document, with the selected word in the "Replace with" field.  |
| Ignore            | Allows you to continue checking the document while ignoring the first occurrence of the unknown word. The same word will be flagged again if it appears in the document.               |
| Ignore all        | Ignores all instances of the unknown word in the whole document.   |
| Learn             | Includes the unrecognized word in the list of valid words so that the spell checker will not consider it for correction.   |
| Options           | Sets the configuration options of the Spell Checker.   |



|                         |   |
|-------------------------|---|
| Begin at caret position | When checked, the spell checker begins checking from the current cursor position. |
| OK                      | Closes the Spell Checker dialog.  |

## Adding a spell dictionary

There are two spell checking engines available in <Oxygen>: Hunspell and AZ Check. For the Hunspell checker <Oxygen> comes with the following built-in dictionaries: English (US), English (UK), French, German (both old and new orthography), Spanish. For the AZ Checker the following language dictionaries are available: English (US), English (UK), English (Canada), French (France), French (Belgium), French (Canada), French (Switzerland), German (old orthography), German (new orthography), Spanish.

The format of the spell dictionary files is different for the two engines. If you want to add a dictionary for a language that is not supported by the built-in dictionaries you have to add the dictionary file as specified below and restart <Oxygen> for using the new dictionary.

### Adding a Hunspell dictionary

The Hunspell spell checker is open source and has LGPL license. The format of the Hunspell spell dictionary is supported by the applications Mozilla, OpenOffice and Chrome browser. If your language is not included in the list of built-in dictionaries you can probably have a dictionary for your language you can add it with the following steps.

You add a Hunspell dictionary with the following steps:

#### Procedure 19.1. Add Hunspell dictionary

1. Download the archive [[http://www.oxygenxml.com/spell\\_checking.html](http://www.oxygenxml.com/spell_checking.html)] with the files of your language dictionary. A dictionary has two files with the same name and different extensions: a file with .dic extension and a file with .aff extension.
2. If it is a new dictionary (not available as built-in dictionary in <Oxygen>) you copy the .aff and .dic files to the spell subfolder of the <Oxygen> preferences folder, that is the folder [APPLICATION-DATA-FOLDER]/com.oxygenxml/spell. For example on Windows XP APPLICATION-DATA-FOLDER is C:\Documents and Settings\[LOGIN-USER-NAME]\Application Data, on Windows Vista APPLICATION-DATA-FOLDER is C:\Users\[LOGIN-USER-NAME]\AppData\Roaming, on Mac OS X APPLICATION-DATA-FOLDER is [USER-HOME-FOLDER]/Library/Preferences.
3. If it is an existing dictionary you copy the .aff and .dic files into the folder [OXYGEN-INSTALL-FOLDER]/dicts.
4. Restart the application after copy the dictionary files.

### Adding an AZ Check dictionary

AZ Check dictionaries are in the form of .dar files located in the directory [oxygen-install-dir]/dicts. A pre-built dictionary can be added by copying the corresponding .dar archive to the same directory and restarting <Oxygen>. A dictionary can be built with the tool available at <http://www.xmlmind.com/spellchecker/dictbuilder.shtml>.

Learned words are stored into an persistent learned-words dictionary with the .tdi extensions located in:

- [user-home-folder]/Application Data/com.oxygenxml.author/spell directory on Windows XP

 **Note**

If you cannot find the com.oxygenxml folders, please check the Roaming folder from the Application Data.

- [user-home-folder]/AppData/Roaming/com.oxygenxml.author/spell directory on Windows Vista
- [user-home-folder]/Library/Preferences/com.oxygenxml.author/.spell directory on Mac OS X

## Learning words

There is one dictionary for each language-country variant combination. If the Learn button is pressed by mistake the only possibility to delete the learned word from the learned-words dictionary is to use the button *Delete learned words* that is available in Preferences.

## Ignoring words

You can set a list of XPath expressions that match the elements that will be ignored by spell checking in XML documents. Only a small subset of XPath expressions is supported, that is only the '/' and '//' separators and the '\*' wildcard, which means expressions like `/a/*b`. The XPath expressions are specified in Preferences.

## Spell checking as you type

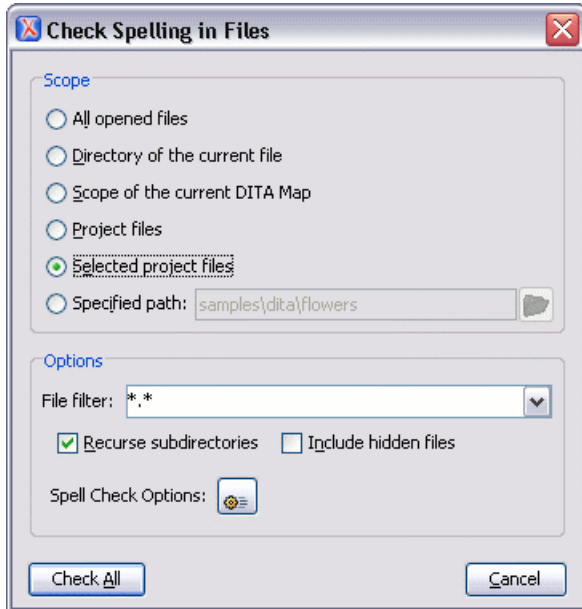
Spell checking feature can be also used as you type by enabling it from the Preferences panel. When you edit a document the spell checker underlines the words with errors in real time and you can correct them when they appear. Also for words with wrong spelling the suggestions of the Spelling dialog are available on the context menu of the editor panel in the Spell check suggestions submenu:

 **Note**

Words with lengths in excess of 100 characters are ignored by the spell checker.

## Check Spelling in Files

The Check Spelling in Files option available from the Edit menu or from the Project contextual menu enables you to check spelling on multiple documents:

**Figure 19.5. Check Spelling in Files Dialog**

You can choose the following scopes:

|                               |  |
|-------------------------------|--|
| All opened files              | Spell check in all opened files.         |
| Directory of the current file | Directory of the current edited file.    |
| Scope of the current DITA Map | Scope of the current edited DITA Map.    |
| Project files                 | All files from the current project.      |
| Selected project files        | Selected files from the current project. |
| Specified path                | Specify a custom path.                   |

You can also choose a file filter, decide whether to recurse subdirectories or process hidden files.

The spell checker processor uses the options available in the Spell Check Preferences panel.

## Changing the font size

The font size of the editor panel can be changed with the following actions:

|  |   |
|--|---|
| Document → Font size → Increase editor font ( <b>Ctrl + NumPad + +</b> ) | Increase the font size with one point for each execution of the action. |
| Document → Font size → Decrease editor font ( <b>Ctrl + NumPad + -</b> ) | Decrease the font size with one point for each execution of the action. |
| Document → Font size → Normal editor font ( <b>Ctrl + 0</b> )            | Reset the font size to the value of the editor font set in Preferences. |

## VI editor actions

The Text mode editor implements many actions known from the VI text editor:

|  |                      |
|--|----------------------|
| Ctrl+Delete (Meta+Delete on Mac)       | Delete next word     |
| Ctrl+Backspace (Meta+Backspace on Mac) | Delete previous word |
| Ctrl+W (Meta+W on Mac)                 | Cut previous word    |
| Ctrl+K (Meta+K on Mac)                 | Cut to end of line   |

## Dragging and dropping the selected text

To move a whole region of text to other location in the same edited document just select the text, drag the selection by holding down the left mouse button and drop it to the target location.

## Inserting a file at caret position

Document+File → Insert file... inserts in a file under the current position of the caret in the current document.

## Opening the file at caret in system application

Document+File → Open File at Caret in system Application opens the filename under the current position of the caret from the current document with the default associated application.

## Opening the file at caret position

Document+File → Open File at Caret : Opens in a new panel the file with the name under the current position of the caret in the current document. If the file does not exist at the specified location the error dialog that is displayed contains a Create new file action which displays the **New** file dialog. This allows you to choose the type or the template for the file. If the action succeeds, the file is created with the referred location and name and is opened in a new editor panel. This is useful when you decide first on the file name and after that you want to create it in the exact location specified at the current cursor position.

## Switching between opened tabs

|                    |   |
|--------------------|---|
| Ctrl + Tab         | Switch between the tabs with opened files in the order from the recent ones to the not recent ones. |
| Ctrl + Shift + Tab | Switch between the tabs with opened files in the reverse order.                                     |

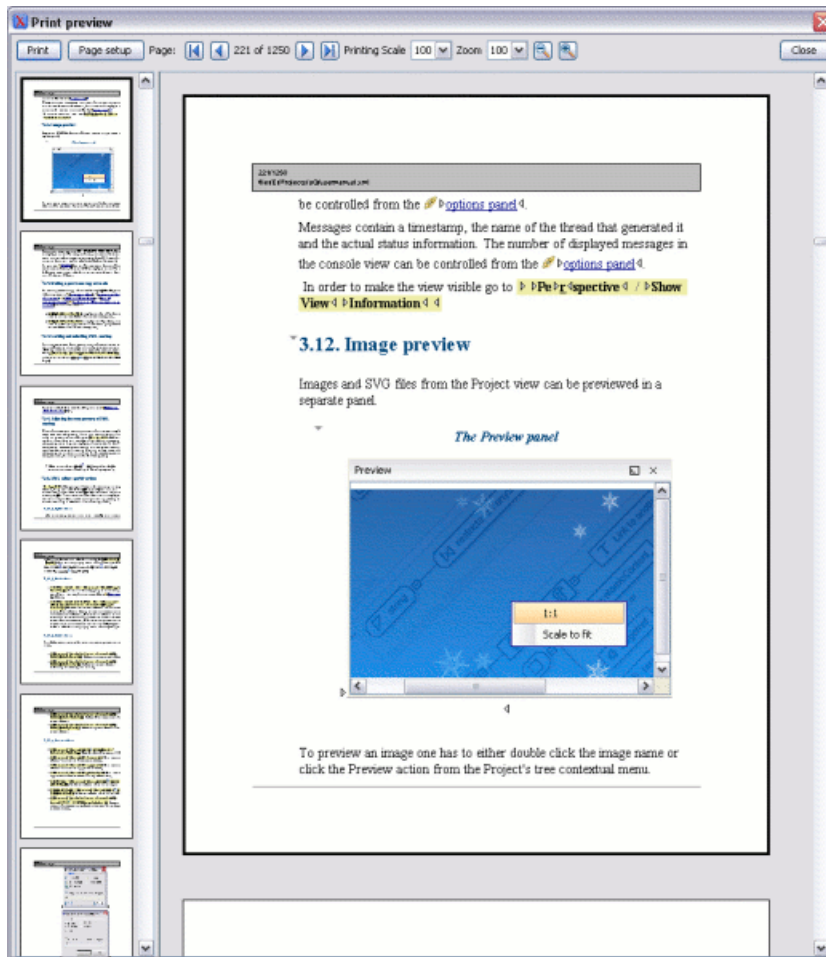
## Printing a file

File → Print (**Ctrl+P**) displays the Page Setup dialog used to define the page size and orientation properties for printing.

Printing is supported for Text, Grid and Author page of the editor.

A *Print Preview* action is available in the File menu. This allows you to manage the format of the printed document:

**Figure 19.6. Print Preview Dialog**



The main window is split in three sections:

- |              |  |
|--------------|--|
| Preview area | Displays the printed document page formatted.  |
| Left stripe  | The left-hand side stripe which displays a list of thumbnail pages. Clicking any of them will display the page in the main preview area. |
| Toolbar      | The toolbar top area which contains controls for printing, page settings, page navigation, print scaling and zoom.                       |

## Exiting the application

File → Exit (**Ctrl+Q**) : Terminates <oXygen/> XML Author . Session information such as the current Project, open Documents and Option settings is made persistent. When <oXygen/> XML Author is re-opened, the persistence information returns to the last saved state.

---

# Chapter 20. Configuring the application

## Importing/Exporting Global Options

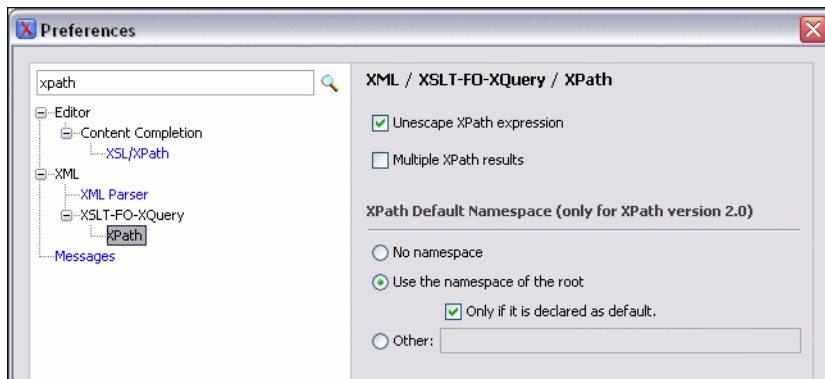
In the Options menu you can find the Import/Export preferences operations which allow you to move your global preferences in XML format from one computer to another.

## Preferences

Once the application is installed you can use the Preferences dialog accessed from Options → Preferences to customize the application for your requirements and network environment.

There is a search field available in the dialog for selecting only the preferences panels containing required words in the panel title or in the text of a label or a button contained in the panel. If you want to go to first match press Enter, Up Arrow or Down Arrow.

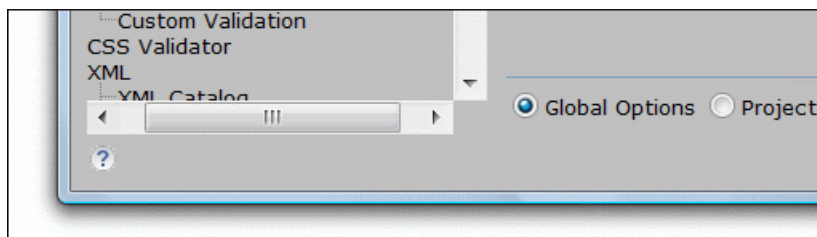
**Figure 20.1. The Search field from the Preferences dialog**



You can always revert modifications to their default values by using the Restore Defaults button, available in each preference page.

If you don't know how to use a specific preference that is available in any *Preferences* panel or what effect it will have you can open a help page about the current panel at any time using the help button located in the left bottom corner of the dialog.

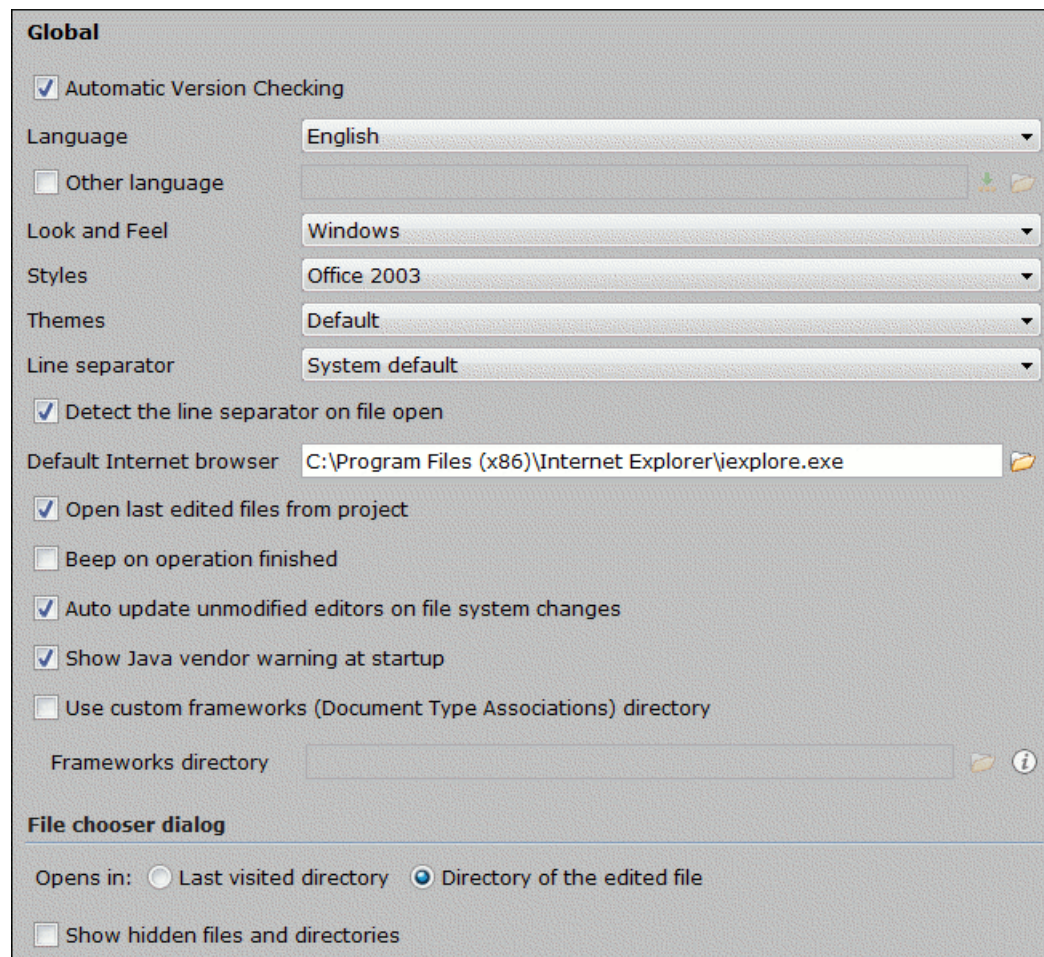
**Figure 20.2. The Help button of the Preferences dialog**



## Global

The Global preferences panel is opened from menu Options → Preferences+Global

**Figure 20.3. The Global preferences panel**



Automatic Version Checking

When enabled, checks the availability of new <oXygen/> XML Author versions at <http://www.oxygenxml.com> .

Language

The application supports a number of languages for localization of the GUI. Select Options → Preferences → Global+Language drop-list to display the language choices.

### Note

After restarting the application, if some GUI labels are not rendered correctly you will need to install the corresponding language pack from your OS installation kit.

Other language

To change the user interface language of <oXygen/> you must set here the properties file with all the user interface messages and labels translated to your

preferred language. For details about creating this file see the section describing the creation process. After setting the file you have to restart <code>oXygen/> in order to change the user interface language to your preferred language.

Look and Feel

Use this option to change graphic style (look and feel) of the GUI.

Styles

On Windows there are available the following styles:

- Office 2003
- Vsnet
- Eclipse
- Xerto
- Default

 **Note**

After changing the style one has to restart the application in order for the modification to take effect.

On Linux there are available the following styles:

- Eclipse
- Default
- GTK+ (not recommended due to stability and paint issues)

 **Note**

After changing the style one has to restart the application in order for the modification to take effect.

On Mac OS X this option is not available.

Themes

On Windows this option is enabled only if the Office 2003 or Default styles. In these cases, the following themes are available:

- Normal Color
- Home Stead
- Metallic
- Default
- Gray

On Linux this option is not available.

On Mac OS X this option is not available.

Line separator

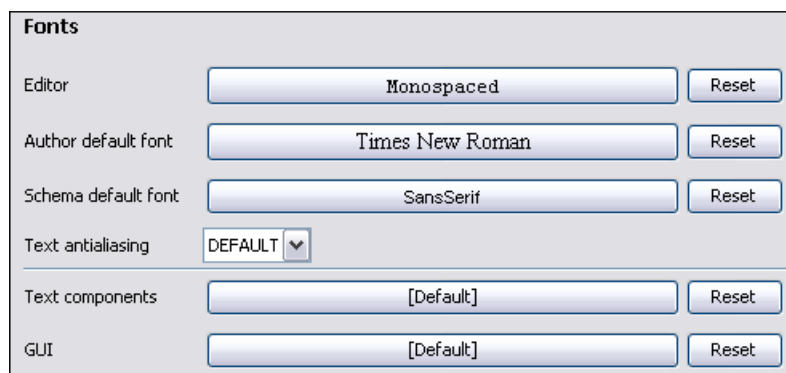
This option defines line separator to be used. The System Default choice sets the line separator from the platform.



|   |   |
|---|---|
| Detect the line separator on file open                | When this option is checked the editor will detect the line separator when the edited file is loaded and it will use it when the file is saved. The new files are saved using the line separator defined by the "Line separator" option.  |
| Default Internet browser                              | The path to a web browser executable. The browser is used to open XSLT or PDF transformation results, to open the <oXygen/> home page or to point to specific paragraphs in the W3C recommendation of XML Schema on the W3C website in case of validation errors.   |
| Open last edited files from project                   | When enabled, <oXygen/> will open the last edited files from project at start-up. Files larger than 50 KB are not opened.   |
| Beep on operation finished                            | If checked, it notifies the user through a beep that an action has ended. It will notify the user only at the end of validate, wellformed and transform actions.  |
| Show Java vendor warning at startup                   | Sun Microsystems Java VM or Apple Computer Java VM (on Mac OS X) is required to run <oXygen/>. If a different VM is used, then a warning is generated. This option allows the user to choose whether the warning dialog is shown in this case or not.   |
| Use custom frameworks directory                       | For editing different types of XML documents (for content completion, validation, authoring) <oXygen/> can use information from the external document types which are stored in the frameworks directory. If a custom frameworks directory is specified then the <oXygen/> will load the document types from this location. |
| Auto update unmodified editors on file system changes | Checked by default. If checked, the synchronization of the unmodified editors with the system changes is done automatically, without the user's interaction.  |
| Last visited directory                                | The dialog used for opening files remembers the last visited directory and the next time it starts directly in this directory.  |
| Directory of the edited file                          | The dialog used for opening files starts in the directory where the currently edited file is stored.  |
| Show hidden files and directories                     | Show system hidden files and folders in the file and directory browsers. This setting is not available on Mac OS X.   |

## Fonts

The Fonts preferences panel is opened from menu Options → Preferences+Fonts

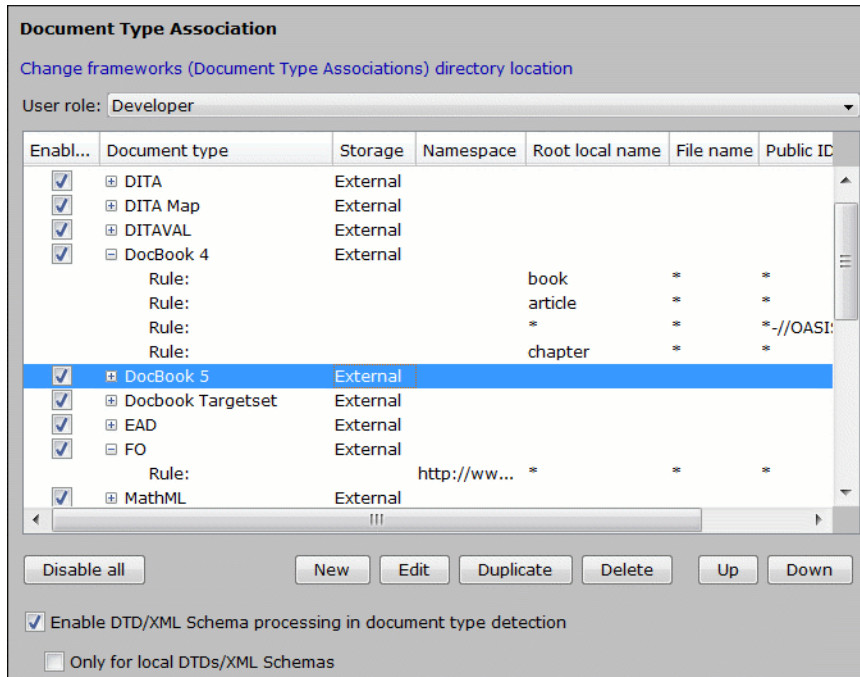
**Figure 20.4. The Fonts preferences panel**

|                     |   |
|---------------------|---|
| Editor              | Use this option to select the font family and size used to display text in the editor. This option affects both the text and grid page of the editor.   |
| Author default font | Use this option to select the font family and size used to display text in the author editor. This value will be used in the case another one is not specified in the CSS associated with the opened document.  |
| Schema default font | Use this option to select the font family and size used to display text in the XML Schema diagram and in the images included in the HTML documentation generated from an XML Schema.  |
| Text antialiasing   | Enable text antialiasing at the specified level. On JVM versions prior to 1.6 this combo box contains only the values Default, On and Off. Default means that <code>&lt;oXygen/&gt;</code> will not set anything special for text antialiasing but the JVM will use the setting of the operating system if it is available. The On option sets the text antialiasing to pixel level and the Off option disables it. Starting with version 1.6 the combo contains also values specific for sub pixel antialiasing, like GASP, LCD_HRGB, LCD_VRGB which sets the respective antialiasing mode for the text displayed in the <code>&lt;oXygen/&gt;</code> editors and views. |
| Text components     | Use this option to select the font family and size used to display text in text components. After changing the font one has to restart the application.   |
| GUI                 | Use this option to select the font family and size used to display GUI labels. After changing the font one has to restart the application.  |

## Document Type Association

The Document Type Association preferences panel is opened from menu Options → Preferences+Document Type Association

**Figure 20.5. Document Type Association preferences panel**



**Change framework directory location** You can specify a custom frameworks directory from where <oXygen/> will load the document types.

**User roles** You can select between two user roles *Content author* and *Developer*. When the selected role is *Content author* you can modify only the properties of the Document Type Associations stored in the user preferences. The externally stored associations cannot be modified and you will have to duplicate them in order to further customize these associations. The *Developer* user can change any document type association.

**Document types table** The table presents the currently defined document type associations. The columns are:

|               |  |
|---------------|--|
| Document type | Contains the name of the document type.  |
| Enabled       | When checked the corresponding document type association is enabled, it is analyzed when trying to determine the type of a document opened in <oXygen/>.   |
| Storage       | Presents the location where the document type association is stored.   |
|               | When expanding a Document Type Association its defined rules are presented. A rule is described by:  |
| Namespace     | Specifies the namespace of the root element from the association rules set (any by default). If you want to apply the rule only when the root element is in no namespace you must leave this field empty (remove the <i>ANY_VALUE</i> string). |

|   |                 |   |
|---|-----------------|---|
|   | Root local name | Specifies the local name of the root element (any by default).  |
|   | File name       | Specifies the name of the file (any by default).  |
|   | Public ID       | Represents the Public ID of the matched document.   |
|   | Java class      | Presents the name of the class which will be used to determine if a document matches the rule.  |
| New   |                 | Opens a new dialog allowing you to add a new association.   |
| Edit  |                 | Opens a new dialog allowing you to edit an existing association.  |
| Delete  |                 | Deletes one of the existing association.  |
| Up  |                 | Moves the selected association one level up (the order is important because the first document type association in the list that can be associated with the document will be used).   |
| Down  |                 | Moves the selected association one level down.  |
| Enable DTD/XML Schema processing in document type detection |                 | When this is enabled the matching process will also examine the DTD/XML Schema associated with the document. For example the fixed attributes declared in the DTD for the root element will be analyzed also if this is specified in the association rules. |

### Example 20.1. Enabling DTD Processing for DITA customizations

If you are writing DITA customizations you should enable this checkbox. DITA Topics and Maps are also matched by looking for the DITAArchVersion attribute in the root element. If the DTD is not processed on detection then this attribute specified as default in the DTD will not be detected on the root element and the DITA customization will not be correctly matched.

Only for local DTDs/XML Schemas When the previous feature is enabled you can choose to process only the local DTDs/XML Schemas.

#### Note

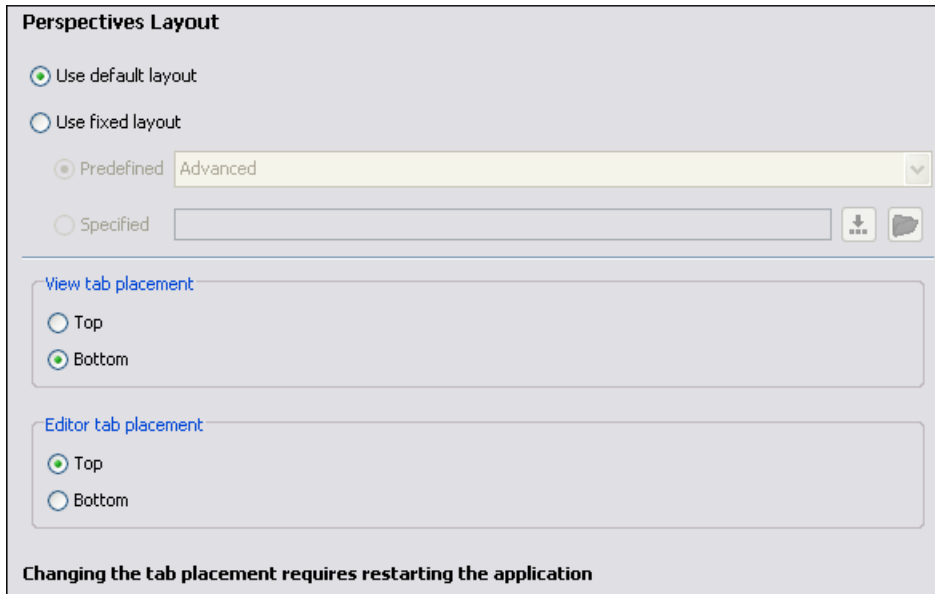
The *Reset Defaults* button that is available in all *Preferences* panels has no effect for document types with external storage.

## Perspectives Layout

The Perspectives Layout preferences panel is opened from menu Options → Preferences+Perspectives Layout

<oXygen/> has a large number of helper views that can be arranged in different layouts. Use this options to select a different layout for the editor.

**Figure 20.6. The Perspectives Layout preferences panel**



**Use default layout** This option is checked by default. It indicates that the editor must use the default layout for all the perspectives. Any modification of this layout (for instance closing/showing views or a new view arrangement) is saved when the program exits and is reloaded at the next start up.

**Used fixed layout** Check this when you want the editor to always start with a certain view layout. Modifications of the selected layout are lost when the program exists.

There are two kinds of fixed layout:

**Predefined** <oxygen/> has several predefined layouts to choose from, depending on the type of work you intend to do:

|                    |  |
|--------------------|--|
| Advanced           | All the views are visible.   |
| Basic              | Just the project view and the outline view are visible. This is recommended when you edit XML content and you need screen space. |
| Intermediate       | The project, outline, attributes and model view are visible.   |
| Schema development | The project, outline, attributes, model view and schema components are visible.  |
| Schema development | The project, outline, attributes, model view and schema components are visible.  |
| XQuery development | Only the project and the editing area are visible.   |
| XSLT development   | The project, outline, attributes, model view and XSLT input are visible.   |

Specified You can choose an existing layout file from disk. In order to create such a file, you can arrange the views in the desired order and then use the action: Perspective → Save layout..

## Encoding

The Encoding preferences panel is opened from menu Options → Preferences+Encoding

**Figure 20.7. The Encoding preferences panel**



Encoding for non XML files

This option defines the default encoding to be used when opening non XML documents. This is necessary because non XML files have a large variety of formats and there is no standard mechanism for declaring the encoding that should be used for opening and saving the file. In case of XML files the encoding is usually declared at the beginning of the file in a special declaration or it assumes the default value UTF-8.

UTF-8 BOM handling

This option defines how to handle the BOM (Byte Order Mark) for UTF-8 XML documents on the document save action. The UTF-16 BOM is always preserved. In case of UTF-32 documents the BOM is for big-endian.

The available options are:

- Don't Write - Don't write the BOM bytes, the loaded BOM bytes are ignored;
- Write - Write the BOM bytes accordingly with chosen encoding;
- Keep - If the loaded document has BOM then write them accordingly with chosen encoding. This is the default option.

Encoding errors handling

This option defines how to handle characters that cannot be represented in the specified encoding of the document when the document is opened. The available options are:

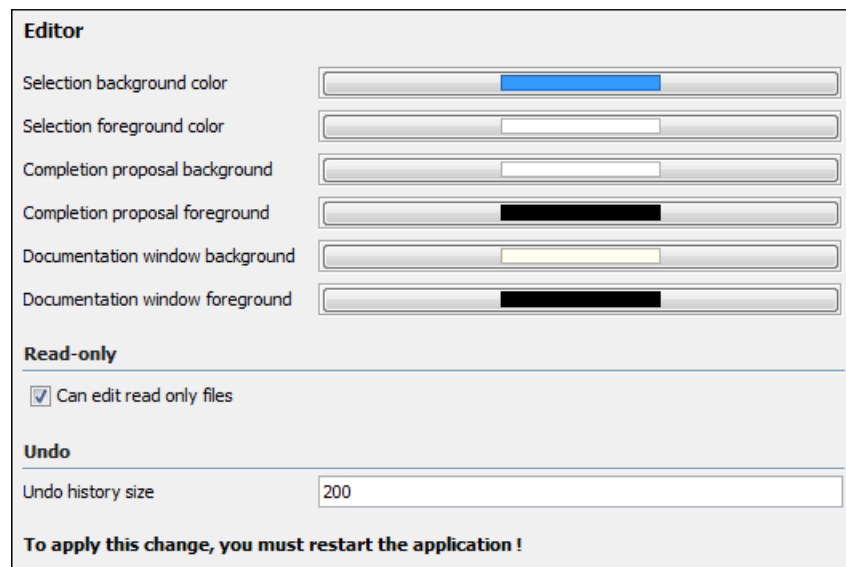
- REPORT - Show an error dialog with the character that cannot be represented in the specified encoding and allow the user to decide how to continue (ignore that character, replace it with a standard replacement character). This is the default option.
- IGNORE - The character is ignored and it will not be included in the document displayed in the editor panel.
- REPLACE - Replace the character with a standard replacement character. For example if the encoding is UTF-8 the replacement character has the Unicode code FFFD, and if the encoding is ASCII the character code is 63.

## Editor

The Editor preferences panel is opened from menu Options → Preferences+Editor

Use these options to configure the visual aspect of the text editor.

**Figure 20.8. The Editor preferences panel**

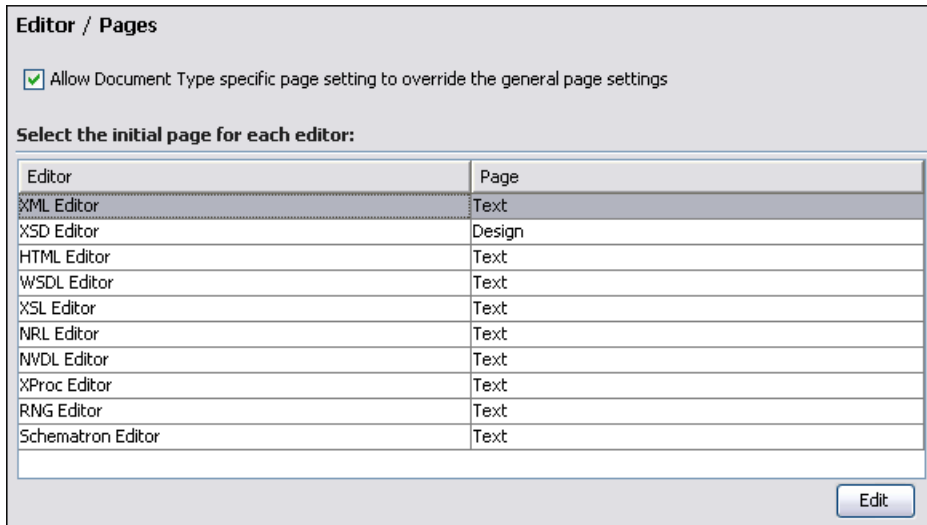


|                                 |  |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Selection foreground color      | Use this option to set the text color of selected text.  |
| Completion proposal background  | Use this option to set the background color for the content completion window.   |
| Completion proposal foreground  | Use this option to set the foreground color for the content completion window.   |
| Documentation window background | Use this option to set the background color for the window containing documentation for the content completion elements.   |
| Documentation window foreground | Use this option to set the foreground color for the window containing documentation for the content completion elements.   |
| Can edit read only files        | Read-only files are marked in <oXygen/> using a lock icon on the file tab. If this option is checked, you will be able to make modifications in the editor when a read-only file is opened in <oXygen/>. If unchecked, any modification to the content in the editor will be prohibited in any editor page. In this case, saving to the file will not be possible and you will be presented with a file chooser to choose a new location where to save the edited content. |
| Undo history size               | Use this option to control the maximum amount of undo edits which will be remembered by the editor in each of the pages.   |

## Pages

The Pages preferences panel is opened from menu Options → Preferences → Editor → Pages and allows you to select the initial page for an editor. The mode in which a file was edited in the previous session is saved and will be used when the application is restarted and the file reopened.

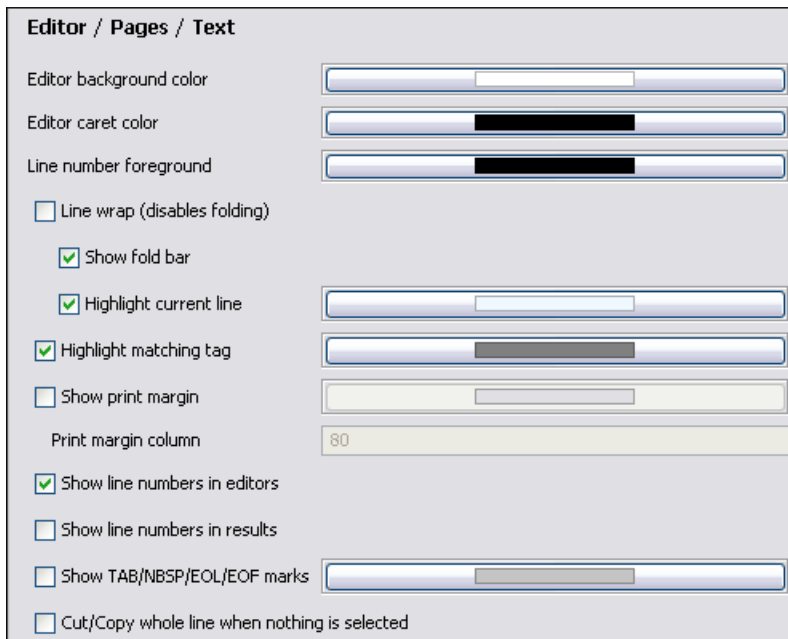
**Figure 20.9. The <oXygen/> Pages preferences panel**



## Text

The Author preferences panel is opened from menu Options → Preferences+Editor+Text

**Figure 20.10. The <oXygen/> Text preferences panel**



Editor background color

Use this option to set the background color of the editor and also of the Diff Files' editors.

Editor caret color

Use this option to set the background color of the editor.

Line number foreground

Use this option to set the foreground color for the line numbers displayed at the right of editor panel.

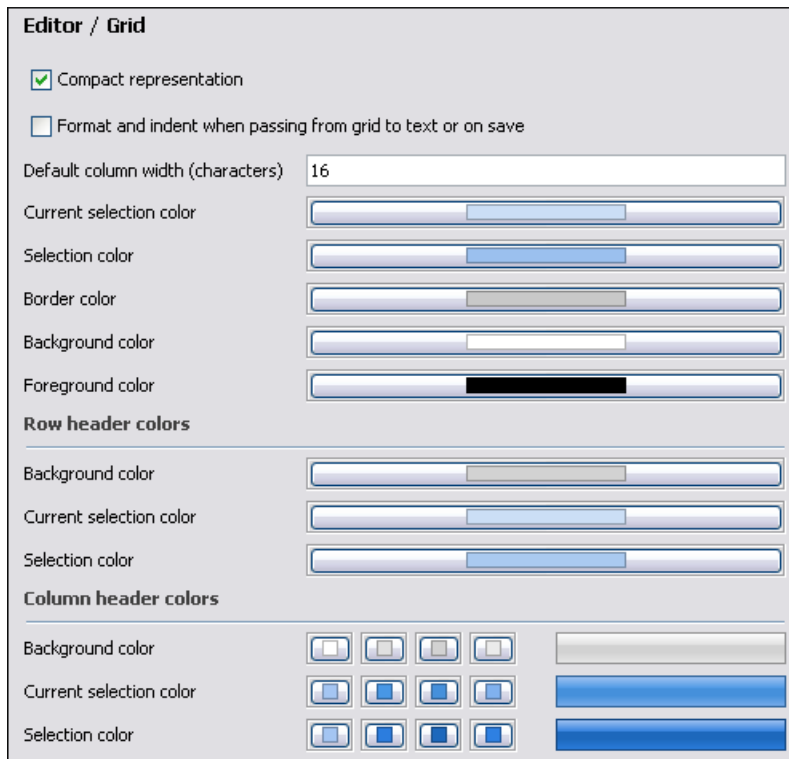


|  |  |
|--|--|
| Line Wrap (disables folding)                 | This option will do a soft wrap of long lines, that is automatically wrap lines in edited documents. When this option is checked line folding will be disabled.  |
| Show fold bar                                | This options enables the display of the document folding bar.  |
| Highlight current line                       | Enables highlight for the current line. Use the button to set the highlight color.   |
| Highlight matching tag                       | This option enables highlight for the tag matching the one on which the caret is situated. Use the button to set the color of the highlight.   |
| Show print margin                            | Enables displaying a vertical line in the editor panel representing the paper margin if the current content of the editor panel is printed with the action File → Print. Use the button to set the color of the print margin line. |
| Print margin column                          | The number of characters included on a line which the print format allows.   |
| Show line numbers in editor                  | This option enables the line numbers column located in the left part of the editing space. When unchecked, line numbers option is disabled.  |
| Show line numbers in results                 | This option enables the line numbers column located in the left part of the Results panel in the Debugger perspective.   |
| Show TAB/NBSP/EOL/EOF marks                  | Marks the TAB/NBSP/EOL/EOF using small icons, for a better visualisation of the document. Also set the marks color.  |
| Cut/Copy whole line when nothing is selected | Enables the Cut/Copy shortcut keys when nothing is selected in the editor. The Cut/Copy actions will operate on the entire current line.   |

## Grid

The Grid preferences panel is opened from menu Options → Preferences+Editor+Grid

**Figure 20.11. The Grid editor preferences panel**



|   |  |
|---|--|
| Compact representation                                      | If checked a child element is displayed at the same height level with the parent element. If unchecked a child elements is presented nested with one level in the parent container, that is lower than the parent with one row.  |
| Format and indent when passing from grid to text or on save | The content of the document is formatted by applying the Format and Indent action on every switch from the grid editor to the text editor of the same document.  |
| Default column width (characters)                           | The default width in characters of a table column of the grid. A column can hold an element name and its text content, an attribute name and its value. If the total width of the grid structure is too large you can resize any column with the mouse but the change is not persistent. To make it persistent set the new column width in this user option. the |
| Current selection color                                     | The background color used in the focused selected cell of the grid to make it different in the set of selected cells. For example when an entire row is selected only one cell of the row is the focused selected one.   |
| Selection color   | The background color used in the selected cells of the grid except the focused selected cell which uses a different background color.  |
| Border color  | The color used for the lines that separate the grid cells.   |
| Background color  | The background color of grid cells that are not selected.  |
| Foreground color  | The color of the text used for the element names, text content of elements, attribute names and attribute values.  |

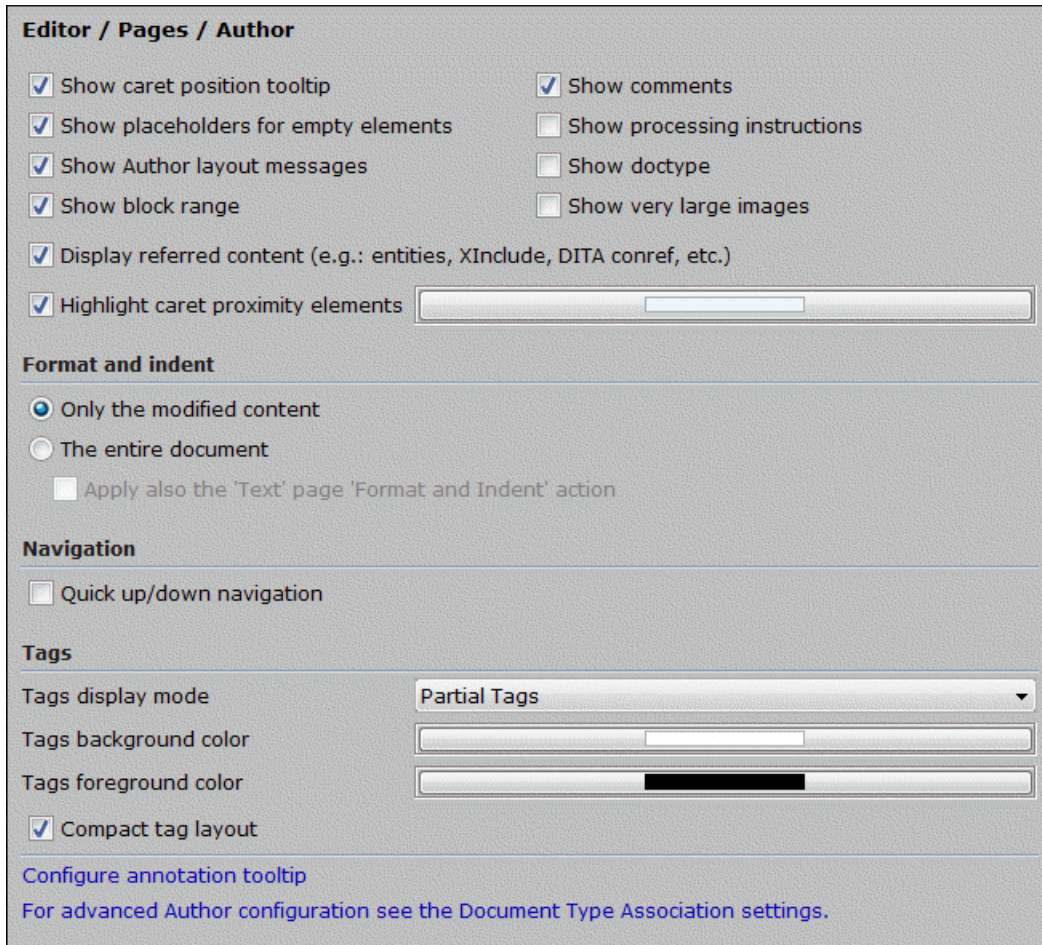
|  |   |
|--|---|
| Row header colors - Background color           | The background color of row headers that are not selected.  |
| Row header colors - Current selection color    | The background color of the row header that is currently selected and has the focus.              |
| Row header colors - Selection color            | The background color of the row header that is currently selected and does not have the focus.    |
| Column header colors - Background color        | The background color of column headers that are not selected.                                     |
| Column header colors - Current selection color | The background color of the column header that is currently selected and has the focus.           |
| Column header colors - Selection color         | The background color of the column header that is currently selected and does not have the focus. |

The column headers are painted with two color gradients, one for the upper 1/3 part of the header and the other for the lower 2/3 part. The start and end colors of the first gradient are set with the first two color buttons. The start and end colors of the second gradient are set with the last two color buttons.

## Author

The Author preferences panel is opened from menu Options → Preferences+Editor+Author

**Figure 20.12. The <oXygen/> Author preferences panel**



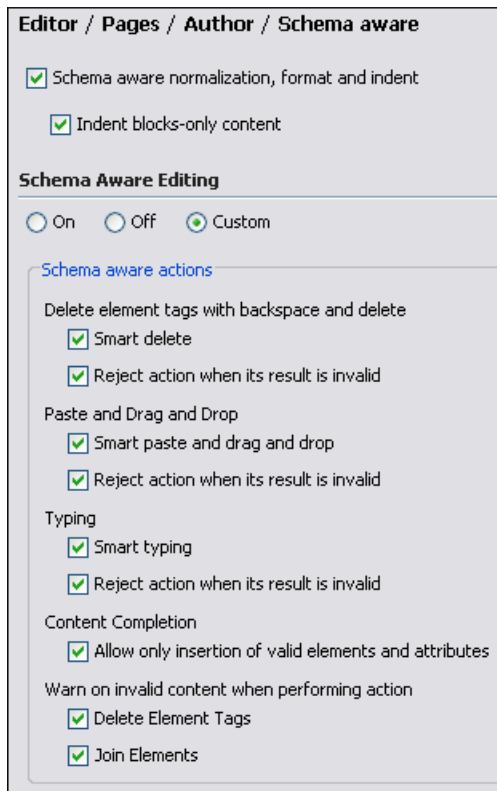
|                                      |  |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| Show caret position tooltip          | If checked, the position information tooltip will be displayed. More information about the position information tooltip can be found in the section Position information tooltip. The documentation tooltip can be disabled from the Content Completion Annotations preferences panel. |
| Show placeholders for empty elements | When checked, placeholders will be displayed for empty elements to make them clearly visible.  |
| Show Author layout messages          | If checked, all errors reported during layout creation will be presented in the <i>Errors</i> view.  |
| Show block range                     | If checked, a block range indicator will be shown in a stripe located in the left side of the editor.  |
| Hide comments                        | When checked, comments from the documents edited in Author mode will be hidden.  |
| Hide processing instructions         | When checked, processing instructions from the documents edited in Author mode will be hidden.   |
| Hide doctype                         | When checked, doctype sections from the documents edited in Author mode will be hidden.  |

|  |   |   |
|--|---|---|
| Show very large images   | If unchecked, images larger than 6 megapixels(24MB uncompressed) will not be loaded and displayed in Author mode. Please be aware that this option is unchecked by default because of the large amounts of application memory that images of high resolution can occupy. As a result, an OutOfMemory error could occur which would practically make <Oxygen/> unusable without a restart of the entire application. |   |
| Display referred content (e.g.: entities, XInclude, DITA conref, etc.) | When checked, the references(entities, XInclude, DITA conref, etc) will also display the content of the resources they refer.   |   |
| Highlight caret proximity elements                                     | In this option it is set the color that will be used for the background of the current element at cursor position or the background of two elements when the cursor is between two elements.  |   |
| Format and indent  | Here you can set the method of format and indent that is applied when a document is saved in Author mode:   |   |
|  | Only the modified content   | The save operation formats only the nodes that were modified in Author mode.  |
|  | The entire document   | The save operation applies formatting to the entire document regardless of the nodes that were modified in Author mode. If the checkbox <code>Apply</code> also the 'Text' page 'Format and Indent' action is selected the content of the document is formatted by applying the <code>Format and Indent</code> action on every switch from the author editor to the text editor of the same document. |
| Quick up/down navigation   | Up and Down arrows will skip positions between blocks and will stop on the next/previous line only if the caret is vertical.  |   |
| Tags display mode  | Default display mode for element tags presented in Author mode. You can choose between <i>Full Tags with Attributes</i> , <i>Full Tags</i> , <i>Block Tags</i> , <i>Inline Tags</i> , <i>Partial Tags</i> and <i>No Tags</i> .  |   |
| Tags background color  | Allows you to configure the author tags background color.   |   |
| Tags foreground color  | Allows you to configure the author tags foreground color.   |   |

## Schema aware

The Schema aware preferences panel is opened from menu Options → Preferences+Editor+Author+Schema aware

**Figure 20.13. The <oXygen/> Schema aware preferences panel**



Schema aware normalization, format and indent

When opening a document in Author, white spaces can be normalized or removed in order to obtain a more compact display. The reverse process takes place when saving the document in the Author. By default this algorithm is controlled by the CSS 'display' property.

If this option is checked then this process will be schema aware so the algorithm will take into account if the element is declared as element-only or mixed. It will also take into account options **Preserve space elements**, **Default space elements**, **Mixed content elements** from option page Options → Preferences → Editor → Format → XML

Indent blocks-only content

If checked, even if an element is declared in the schema as being mixed but it has a blocks-only content (as specified by the CSS property 'display' of its children), it will be treated as being element-only.

Schema Aware Editing

Editing in Author will take into account the schema.

On Enable all schema aware editing options.

Off Disable all schema aware editing options.

Custom Delete element tags with backspace and delete Controls the behaviour for deleting element tags using delete or backspace keys.

Available options:

- **Smart delete** If the result of the delete action is invalid, different strategies will be applied in order to keep the document valid. If backspace/delete is pressed at the beginning/end of an element the action that should take place is unwrap (the element will be deleted and its content will be put in its place). If its content is not accepted by the schema in that position, you can keep a valid document by applying different strategies like:
  - Search for a preceding (backspace case)/following(delete case) element in which you can append that content.
  - If the tag markers of the element to unwrap are not visible a caret move action in the delete action direction will be performed.
- **Reject action when its result is invalid** If checked and the result of the delete action is invalid, the action will not be performed.

#### Paste and Drag and Drop

Controls the behaviour for paste and drag and drop actions.

Available options:

- **Smart paste and drag and drop** If the content inserted by a paste or drop action is not valid at the caret position, according to the schema, different strategies are applied to find an appropriate insert position:

- If the sibling element can accept the content, then a new element with the same name as the sibling is created in which the content will be inserted.
- You will iterate to the left or to the right of the insertion position, without leaving the current context, and try to insert the fragment in one of the encountered elements (that accepts the content to be inserted).
- **Reject action when its result is invalid** If checked and the result of the paste or drop action is invalid, the action will not be performed.

#### Typing

Controls the behaviour that takes place when typing.

Available options:

- **Smart typing** If the typed character cannot be inserted at element from the caret position then a sibling element that can accept it will be searched for. If the sibling element can accept the content, then a new element with the same name as the sibling is created in which the content will be inserted.
- **Reject action when its result is invalid** If checked and the result of the typing action is invalid, the action will not be performed.

#### Content Completion

Controls the behaviour that takes place when inserting elements using content completion.



Available options:

- **Allow only insertion of valid elements and attributes** If checked, only elements or attributes from the content completion proposals list can be inserted in the document through content completion.

Warn on invalid content when performing action

A warning message will be displayed when performing an action that will result in invalid content.

Available options:

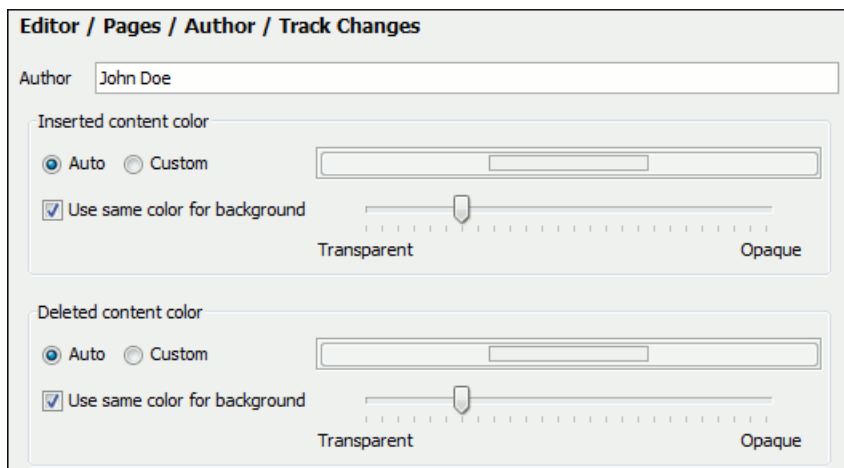
- **Delete Element Tags** If checked, when the Delete Element Tags action will result in an invalid content, a warning message will be displayed in which the user is asked if the operation should continue.
- **Join Elements** If checked, when the Join Elements action will result in an invalid content, a warning message will be displayed in which the user is asked if the operation should continue.

If the Schema Aware Editing is **On** or **Custom** all actions that can generate invalid content will be forwarded first toward AuthorSchemaAwareEditingHandler.

## Track Changes

The Author Track Changes preferences panel is opened from menu Options → Preferences+Editor+Author+Track Changes

**Figure 20.14. The <oxygen/> Track Changes preferences panel**

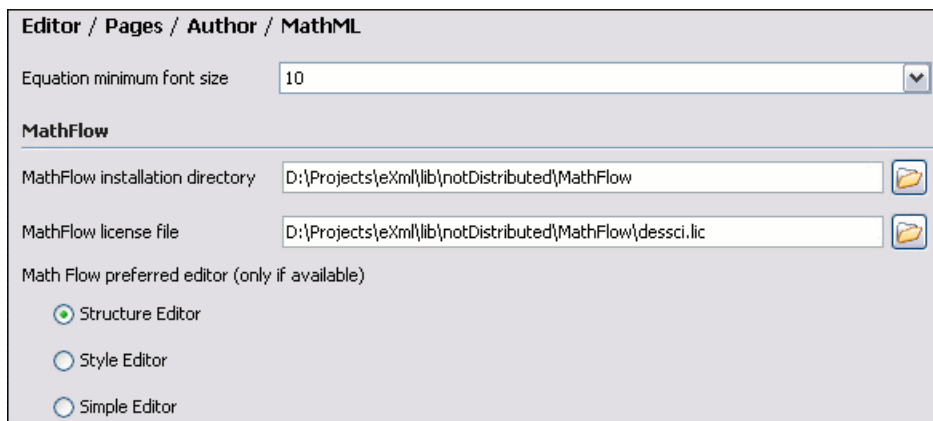


|                        |  |  |
|------------------------|--|--|
| Author                 | The name of the user who performs the changes when Change Tracking is active for a given editor. This information will be associated with each performed change. |  |
| Inserted content color | Auto   | Automatically assign colors for the insert changes based on the Author name.   |
|                        | Custom   | Use a custom color for all insert changes, regardless of the Author name.      |
|                        | Use same color for background  | Use the same color for the insert text background with a certain transparency. |
| Deleted content color  | Auto   | Automatically assign colors for the delete changes based on the Author name.   |
|                        | Custom   | Use a custom color for all delete changes, regardless of the Author name.      |
|                        | Use same color for background  | Use the same color for the delete text background with a certain transparency. |

## MathML

The MathML editor of Author mode has the following configurable parameters:

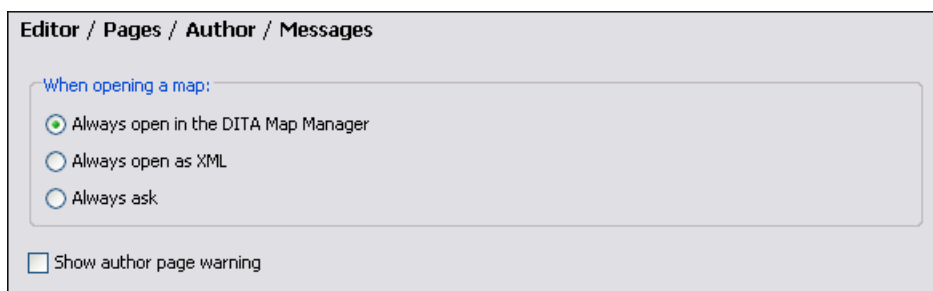
**Figure 20.15. Author MathML editor preferences panel**



|                                 |   |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Equation minimum font size      | The minimum size of the font used for rendering mathematical symbols.   |
| MathFlow installation directory | The installation directory where <math>oXygen</math> will find and load MathFlow Components (the MathFlow SDK).   |
| MathFlow license file           | The license for MathFlow Components (the MathFlow SDK).   |
| MathFlow preferred editor       | A mathML formula can be edited in one of three editors of MathFlow Components (MathFlow SDK): structure editor, style editor and simple editor. More documentation is available on the website of MathFlow SDK [ <a href="http://www.dessci.com/en/products/mathflow/">http://www.dessci.com/en/products/mathflow/</a> ]. |

## Messages

**Figure 20.16. The Author's Messages preferences panel**

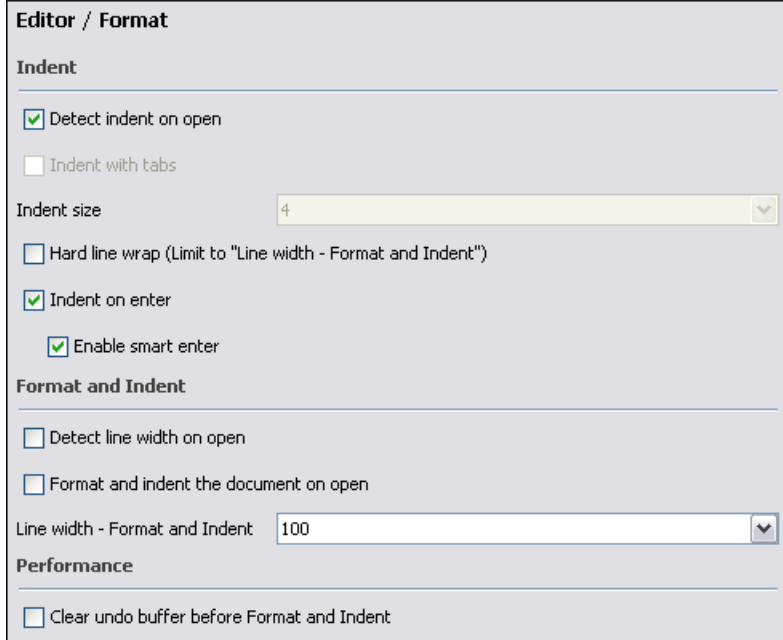


|                          |  |
|--------------------------|--|
| When opening a map       | Specified the default behavior when trying to open a map. You can choose between: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Always open in the DITA Map Manager</li> <li>• Always open as XML</li> <li>• Always ask</li> </ul>  |
| Show author page warning | When checked, a warning dialog will be displayed when switching to Author mode. The warning reminds you that the whitespaces from the text content are evaluated according to the value of the CSS <i>white-space</i> property associated to the enclosing elements. |

## Format

The Format preferences panel is opened from menu Options → Preferences+Editor+Format

**Figure 20.17. The Format preferences panel**



Detect indent on open

The editor tries to detect the indent settings of the opened XML document. In this way you can correctly format (pretty-print) files that were created with different settings, without changing your options. More than that you can activate the advanced option for detecting the maximum line width to be used for formatting and hard wrap. These features were designed to minimize the differences created by the pretty print operation when working with a versioning system, like CVS for example.

Indent with tabs

When checked enables 'Indent with tabs' to set the indent to a tab unit. When unchecked, 'Indent with tabs' is disabled and the indent will measure as many spaces as needed in order to go to the next tab stop position. The maximum number of space characters is defined by the 'Indent size' option.

Indent size

Sets the number of spaces or the tab size that will equal a single indent. The Indent can be spaces or a tab, select the preference using the Indent With Tabs option. If set to 4 one tab will equal 4 white spaces or 1 tab with size of 4 characters depending on which option was set in the Indent With Tabs option.

Hard line wrap

This feature saves time when writing a reach text XML document. You can set a limit for the length of the lines in your document. When this limit is exceeded the editor will insert a new line before the word that breaks the limit, and indent the next line. This will minimize the need of reformatting the document.

Indent on Enter

If checked, it indents the new line introduced when pressing Enter.

Enable Smart Enter

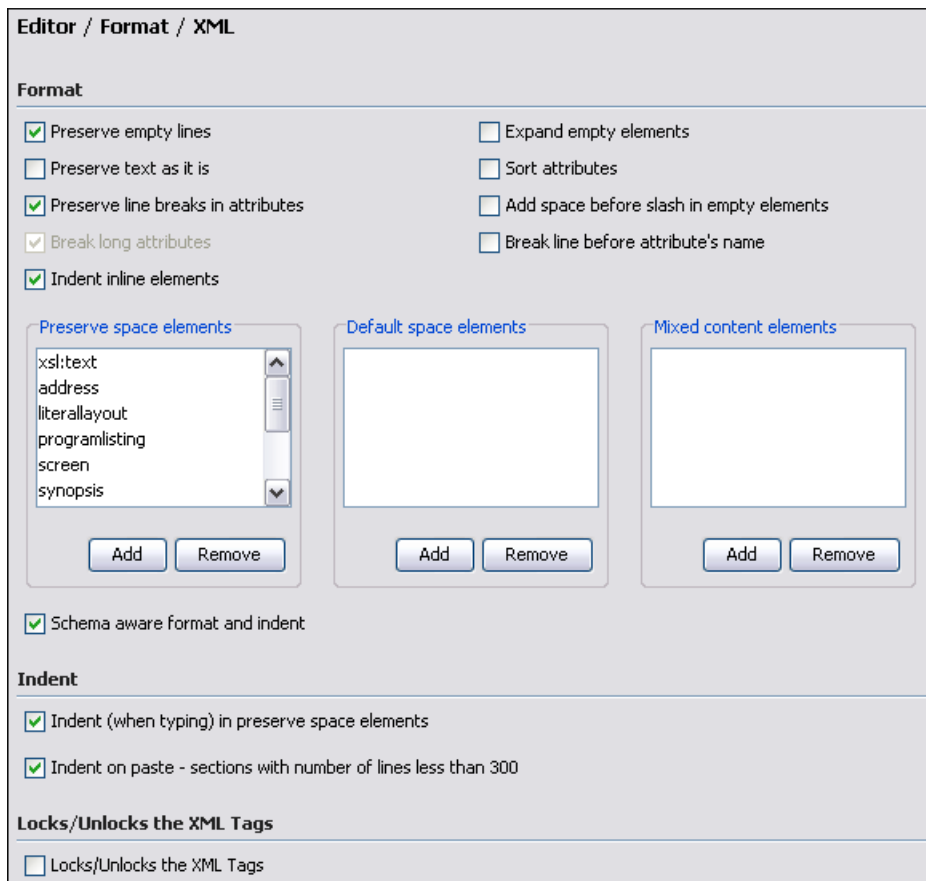
If checked, it inserts a new indented line between start and end tag.

|  |  |
|--|--|
| Detect line width on open                  | If checked, it detects the line width automatically when the document is opened.   |
| Format and indent the document on open     | When checked, the <i>Format and indent the document on open</i> operation will format and indent an XML document before opening it in the editor panel. This option applies only to documents associated with the XML editor, not to documents associated with the XSD editor, RNG editor or XSL editor. This option does not apply on read-only documents when the Can edit read only files option is disabled. |
| Line width - Format and Indent             | Defines the point at which the "Format and Indent" (Pretty-Print) function will perform hard line wrapping. So if set to 100 Pretty-Print will wrap lines at the 100th space inclusive of white spaces, tags and elements.   |
| Clear undo buffer before Format and Indent | If checked, the undo buffer is cleared. The undo action can now only undo the Format and Indent action   |

## XML

The XML Format preferences panel is opened from menu Options → Preferences+Editor+Format+XML

**Figure 20.18. The XML format preferences panel**



|                      |  |
|----------------------|--|
| Preserve empty lines | When checked, the <i>Format and Indent</i> operation will preserve all empty lines found in the document on which the pretty-print operation is applied. |
|----------------------|--|

|  |  |
|--|--|
| Preserve text as it is                   | If checked, the "Format and Indent" (Pretty-Print) function will preserve text nodes as they are without removing or adding any whitespace.  |
| Preserve line breaks in attributes       | If checked, the "Format and Indent" (Pretty-Print) function will preserve the line breaks found in attributes. When this option is checked, <i>Break long lines</i> option will be disabled.   |
| Break long attributes                    | If checked, the "Format and Indent" (Pretty-Print) function will break long attributes.  |
| Indent inline elements                   | If checked, the inline elements will be broken and indented on separate lines if there are whitespaces to the left and they follow another element start or end tag.   |
| Expand empty elements                    | When checked, the <i>Format and Indent</i> operation will output empty elements with a separate closing tag, ex. <code>&lt;a atr1="v1"&gt;&lt;/a&gt;</code> . When not checked the same operation will represent an empty element in a more compact form: <code>&lt;a atr1="v1"/&gt;</code>  |
| Sort attributes                          | When checked, the <i>Format and Indent</i> operation will sort the attributes of an element alphabetically. When not checked the same operation will leave them in the same order as before applying the operation.  |
| Add space before slash in empty elements | When checked, the <i>Format and Indent</i> operation will add a space before the closing slash of an empty element, for instance an empty <i>br</i> will appear as <code>&lt;br /&gt;</code> .   |
| Break line before attribute's name       | If checked, the "Format and Indent" (Pretty-Print) function will break the line before the attribute's name.   |
| Preserve space elements (XPath)          | <p>This list contains simplified XPath expressions for the names of the elements for which the contained white spaces like blanks, tabs and newlines are preserved by the <i>Format and Indent</i> operation exactly as before applying the operation. The allowed XPath expressions are of one of the form:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• author</li> <li>• //listing</li> <li>• /chapter/abstract/title</li> <li>• //xs:documentation</li> </ul> <p>The namespace prefixes like <i>xs</i> in the previous example are treated as part of the element name without taking into account its binding to a namespace.</p> |
| Default space elements (XPath)           | This list contains the names of the elements for which contiguous white spaces like blanks, tabs and newlines are merged by the <i>Format and Indent</i> operation into one blank.   |
| Mixed content elements (XPath)           | The elements from this list will be treated as mixed when applying the Pretty-Print operation, meaning that the operation will break the line only when whitespaces are encountered.   |
| Schema aware format and indent           | When checked, the <i>Format and Indent</i> operation will take into account the schema information regarding the space preserve, mixed or element only property of an element.   |

|   |  |
|---|--|
| Indent (when typing) in preserve space elements | If checked, automatic tags indentation while editing will take place for all elements including the ones that are excluded from Pretty Print (default behaviour). When unchecked, indentation while editing will not take place in elements that have the 'xml:space' attribute set on 'preserve' or are in the list of Preserve Space Elements. |
| Indent on paste                                 | Indent paste text corresponding to the indent settings set by the user. This is useful for keeping the indent style of text copied from other document.  |
| Locks/Unlocks the XML tags                      | The default state of the opened editors. For more information see the Locking and unlocking XML markup section.  |

 **Note**

*Preserve space elements, Default space elements, Mixed content elements and Schema aware format and indent work together. No matter which one indicates a more restrictive property, that property will be applied (if one of them indicates that an element is space preserve then it will be treated accordingly).*

 **Note**

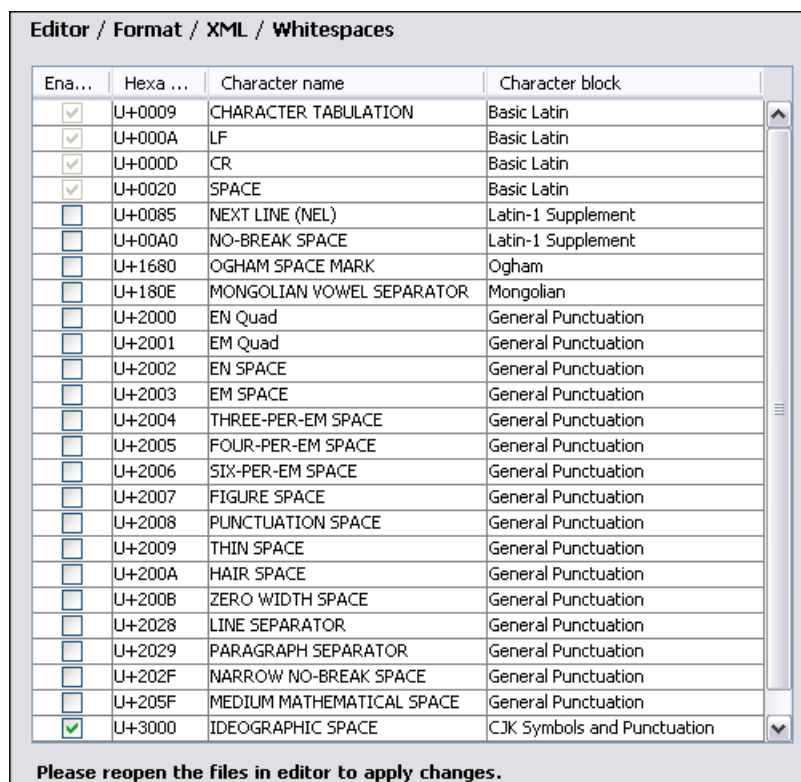
*Preserve empty lines, Preserve text as it is, Preserve line breaks in attributes, Break long attributes, Indent (when typing) in preserve space elements don't apply when switching from Author to Text page.*

## Whitespaces

This panel displays the special whitespace characters of Unicode. Any character that is checked in this panel is considered whitespace that can be normalized in an XML document. The whitespaces are normalized when the action *Format and Indent* is applied or when you switch from Text mode to Author mode or from Author mode to Text mode.

The characters with the codes 9, 10, 13 and 32 are always in the group of whitespace characters that must be normalized so they are always enabled in this panel.

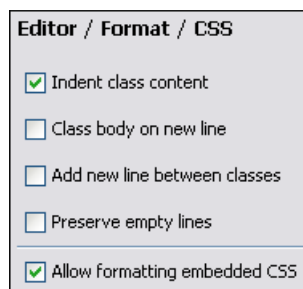
**Figure 20.19. The Whitespaces preferences panel**



## CSS

The CSS Format preferences panel is opened from menu Options → Preferences+Editor+Format+CSS

**Figure 20.20. The CSS format preferences panel**



Indent class content

If checked, the class content is indented during a "Format and Indent" (Pretty-Print) operation.

Class body on new line

If checked, the class body (including the curly brackets) are placed on a new line after a Pretty-Print operation.

Add new line between classes

If checked, an empty line is added between two classes after a Pretty-Print operation is performed.

Preserve empty lines

If checked, the empty lines from the CSS content are preserved.

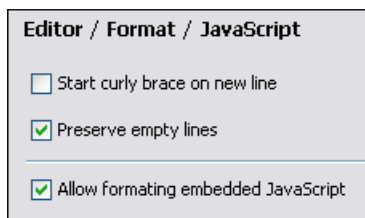


Allow formatting embedded CSS      If checked, the CSS content embedded in XML will be formatted when the XML content is formatted.

## JavaScript

The JavaScript Format preferences panel is opened from menu Options → Preferences+Editor+Format+JavaScript

**Figure 20.21. The JavaScript Format preferences panel**



Start curly brace on new line      If true, opening curly braces will start on a new line.

Preserve empty lines      If true, empty lines in the JavaScript code will be preserved.

Allow formatting embedded JavaScript      If checked, the JavaScript content embedded in XML will be formatted when the XML content is formatted.

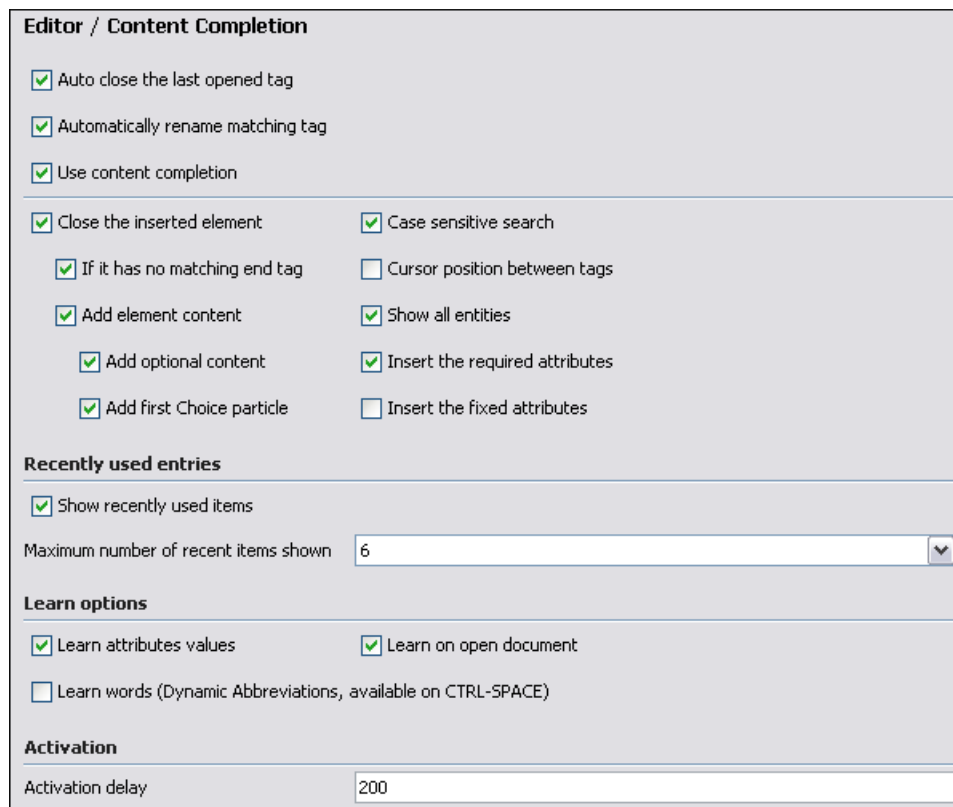
## Content Completion

The Content Completion feature enables inline syntax lookup and Auto Completion of mark-up elements and attributes to streamline mark-up and reduce errors while editing.

These settings define the operating mode of the content assistant.

The Content Completion preferences panel is opened from menu Options → Preferences+Editor+Content Completion

**Figure 20.22. The Content Completion preferences panel**



|                                   |  |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| Auto close the last opened tag    | If the Use Content Completion option is not checked and if this option is checked, <oXygen/> will close the last opened tag when </ is typed.  |
| Automatically rename matching tag | If checked, <oXygen/> will automatically rename the matching end tag when the start tag is modified in the editor.   |
| Use Content Completion            | When unchecked, all Content Completion features are disabled.  |
| Close the inserted element        | When inserting elements from the Content Completion assistant, both start and end tags are inserted.   |
| If it has no matching tag         | When checked, the end tag of the inserted element will be automatically added only if it is not already present in the document.   |
| Add element content               | When checked, <oXygen/> will insert automatically the required elements from the DTD or XML Schema or RELAX NG schema. This option is applied also in the Author mode of the XML editor.     |
| Add optional content              | When checked, <oXygen/> will insert automatically the optional elements from the DTD or XML Schema or RELAX NG schema. This option is applied also in the Author mode of the XML editor.     |
| Add first Choice particle         | When checked, <oXygen/> will insert automatically the first Choice particle from the DTD or XML Schema or RELAX NG schema. This option is applied also in the Author mode of the XML editor. |

|  |  |
|--|--|
| Case sensitive search  | When it is checked the search in the content completion window when you type a character is case sensitive ('a' and 'A' are different characters). This option is applied also in the Author mode of the XML editor.   |
| Cursor position between tags                                 | When checked, <oXygen/> will set the cursor automatically between tags. Even if the auto-inserted elements have attributes that are not required, the position of cursor can be forced between tags.   |
| Show all entities  | When checked, <oXygen/> will display a list with all the internal and external entities declared in the current document when the user types the start character of an entity reference (i.e. &).  |
| Insert the required attributes                               | When checked, <oXygen/> will insert automatically the required attributes from the DTD or XML Schema for an element inserted with the help of the Content Completion assistant. This option is applied also in the Author mode of the XML editor.  |
| Insert the fixed attributes                                  | When checked, <oXygen/> will insert automatically any <i>FIXED</i> attributes from the DTD or XML Schema for an element inserted with the help of the Content Completion assistant. This option is applied also in the Author mode of the XML editor.  |
| Show recently used items                                     | When checked, <oXygen/> will remember the last inserted items from the Content Completion window. The number of items to be remembered is limited by <i>Maximum number of recent items shown</i> combo box. These most frequently used items are displayed on the top of Content Completion window and are separated from the rest of the suggestions by a thin grey line. This option is applied also in the Author mode of the XML editor. |
| Maximum number of recent items shown                         | Limits the number of recently used items presented at the top of the content completion window. This option is applied also in the Author mode of the XML editor.  |
| Learn attributes values                                      | When checked, <oXygen/> will display a list with all attributes values learned from the current document. This option is applied also in the Author mode of the XML editor.  |
| Learn on open document                                       | When checked, <oXygen/> will automatically learn the document structure when the document is opened. This option is applied also in the Author mode of the XML editor.   |
| Learn words (Dynamic Abbreviations, available on CTRL+SPACE) | When checked, <oXygen/> will automatically learn the typed words and will make them available in a Content Completion fashion by pressing CTRL+SPACE.  |

 **Note**

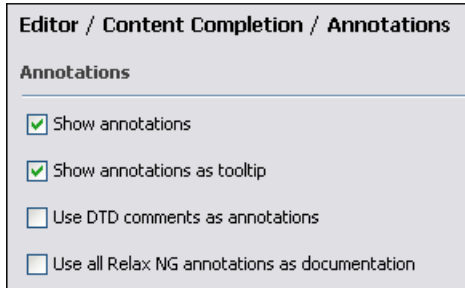
In order to be learned, the words need to be separated by space characters.

|                  |  |
|------------------|--|
| Activation delay | The number of milliseconds from last key press until activation of content completion popup. |
|------------------|--|

## Annotations

The Annotations preferences panel is opened from menu Options → Preferences+Editor+Content Completion+Annotations

**Figure 20.23. The Content Completion Annotations preferences panel**

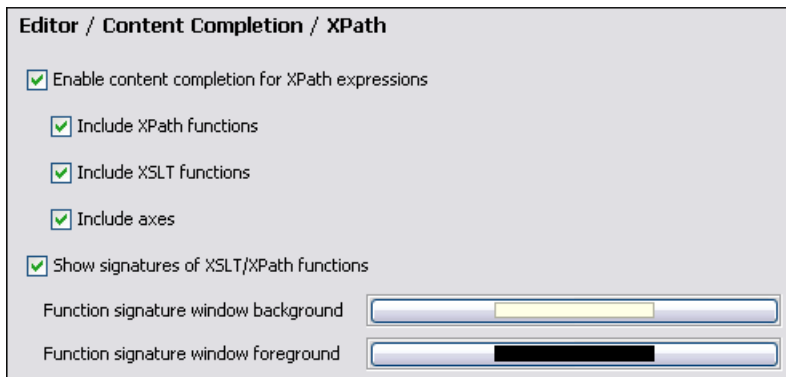


|   |  |
|---|--|
| Show annotations                              | When checked, <oXygen/> will display the annotations that are present in the used schema for the current element, attribute or attribute value. This option is applied also in the Author mode of the XML editor.  |
| Show annotations as tooltip                   | If checked, it shows the annotations of elements and attributes as tooltips. This option is applied also in the Author mode of the XML editor.   |
| Use DTD comments as annotation                | When checked, <oXygen/> will use all DTD comments as annotation. If it is not checked the following decision is performed: if among the gathered comments there are special <oXygen/> <i>doc:</i> comments, only those will be presented. If not, all encountered comments will be presented.  |
| Use all Relax NG annotations as documentation | When checked any element that is not from the Relax NG namespace, that is "http://relaxng.org/ns/structure/1.0" will be considered annotation and will be displayed in the annotation window next to the content completion window and in the Model View. When unchecked only elements from the Relax NG annotations namespace, that is "http://relaxng.org/ns/compatibility/annotations/1.0" will be considered annotation. |

## XPath

The XPath preferences panel is opened from menu Options → Preferences+Editor+Content Completion+XPath

**Figure 20.24. The Content Completion XPath preferences panel**



Enable content completion for XPath expressions Disables and enables content completion in XPath expressions entered in the XSL attributes *match*, *select* and *test* and also in the XPath toolbar.

Options are available to allow the user to include XPath functions, XSLT functions or axes in the content completion suggestion list.

The XPath section controls if the functions, axes are presented in the content completion list when editing XPath expressions.

Show signatures of XSLT/XPath functions If checked, the editor will indicate in a tooltip helper the signature of the XPath function located at the caret position.

Function signature window background The background color of the tooltip window.

Function signature window foreground The foreground color of the tooltip window.

## Colors

<oXygen/> supports Syntax Highlight for XML, JavaScript, PHP,CSS documents. While <oXygen/> provides a default color configuration for highlighting the tokens, you may choose to customize, as required, using the Colors dialog.

The Colors preferences panel is opened from menu Options → Preferences+Editor+Colors

**Figure 20.25. The Colors preferences panel**

Choose one of the supported document types. Each document type contains a set of tokens. The tokens for XML documents are used also in XSD, XSL, RNG documents so the Preview area has 4 tabs when an XML token is selected in the Element area for viewing the rendered result in all four types of documents: XML, XSD, XSL, RNG. When a document type node is expanded, the associated tokens are listed. Selecting a token displays the current color properties and enables you to modify them. You can also select a token by clicking directly in the preview area on that type of token.

You can edit the following color properties of the selected token:

|                  |   |
|------------------|---|
| Foreground color | The <i>Foreground</i> button opens a color dialog that allow setting the color properties for the selected token with one of the methods: Swatches, HSB or RGB. |
| Swatches         | Displays a color palette containing a variety of colors from across the color spectrum and shades thereof. Select a color.                                      |

|                  |  |
|------------------|--|
| HSB              | Hue, Saturation and Brightness (HSB) enables you to specify a color by describing it using hue, saturation and brightness.             |
| RGB              | Red, Green and Blue (RGB) enables you to specify a color using triplets of red, green and blue numbers.                                |
| Background color | The <i>Background</i> button opens the same color dialog as the <i>Foreground</i> button.  |
| Bold style       | This checkbox enables the bold variant of the font for the selected token. This property is not applied to a bidirectional document.   |
| Italic style     | This checkbox enables the italic variant of the font for the selected token. This property is not applied to a bidirectional document. |

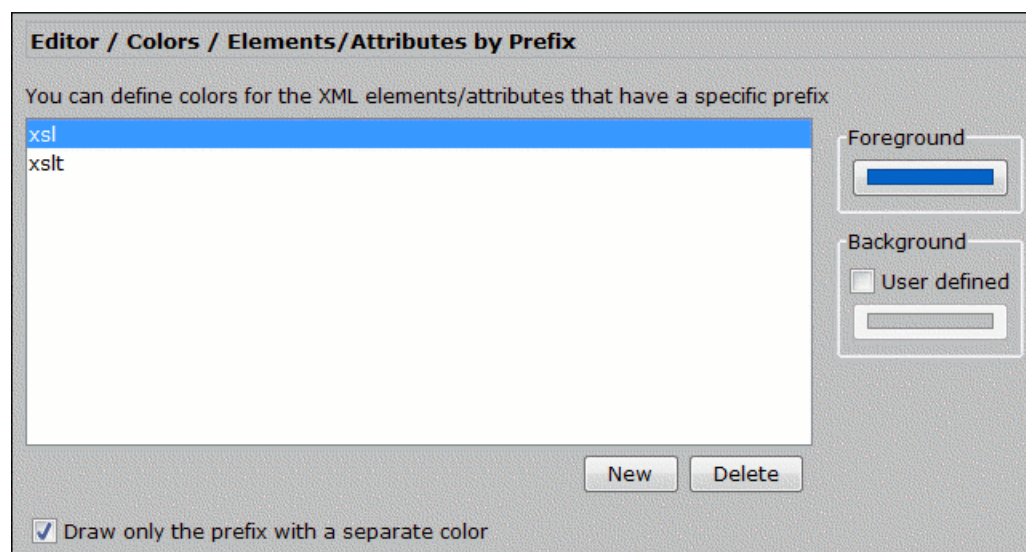
The *Preview* panel displays the appearance of all token colors in a sample document as they will be rendered in the editor.

Modifications are saved when the *OK* button is clicked. *Cancel* discards changes. *Restore Defaults* button changes all the token colors to the default values.

## Syntax Highlight / Elements/Attributes by Prefix

The Colors preferences panel is opened from menu Options → Preferences+Editor+Colors+Elements/Attributes by Prefix

**Figure 20.26. The Elements/Attributes by Prefix preferences panel**



One row of the table contains the association between a namespace prefix and the properties to mark start tags and end tags or attribute names in that prefix. Note that the marking mechanism does not look at the namespace bound to that prefix. If the prefix is bound to different namespaces in different XML elements of the same file all the tags and attribute names with the prefix will be marked with the same color.

You can edit the following color properties of the selected token:

|                  |   |
|------------------|---|
| Foreground color | The <i>Foreground</i> button opens a color dialog that allow setting the color properties for the selected token with one of the methods: Swatches, HSB or RGB. |
|------------------|---|

|          |  |
|----------|--|
| Swatches | Displays a color palette containing a variety of colors from across the color spectrum and shades thereof. Select a color. |
| HSB      | Hue, Saturation and Brightness (HSB) enables you to specify a color by describing it using hue, saturation and brightness. |
| RGB      | Red, Green and Blue (RGB) enables you to specify a color using triplets of red, green and blue numbers.                    |

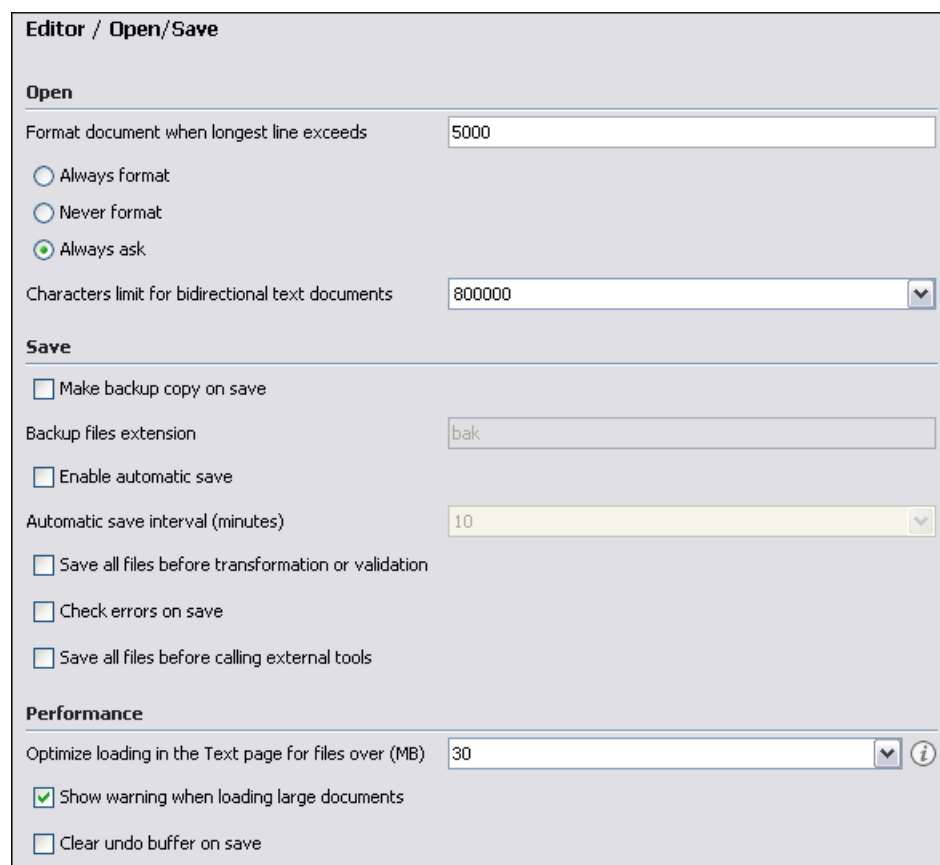
Background color      The *Background* button opens the same color dialog as the *Foreground* button.

You can choose that only the prefix to be displayed in the chosen color by checking the *Draw only the prefix with a separate color* option.

## Open/Save

The Open/Save preferences panel is opened from menu Options → Preferences+Editor+Open/Save

**Figure 20.27. The Open/Save preferences panel**



Format document when long lines exceeds

Specifies the default behavior when the longest line of a document exceeds the specified limit. This option doesn't apply on read-only documents when the Can edit read only files option is disabled. You can choose between:

- Always format



|  |   |
|--|---|
|  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Never format</li> <li>• Always ask</li> </ul>  |
| Characters limit for bidirectional text documents            | Specify the characters limit for bidirectional text documents. If the number of characters in document exceeds this limit, the bidirectional support will be disabled.  |
| Make backup copy on save                                     | If checked, a backup copy is made when saving the edited document. The default extension is <code>*bak</code> , but you can change extension as you prefer.   |
| Enable automatic save  | Automatic save is a useful feature that ensures your work is being saved in the background. You can specify the time intervals between automatic saves. If checked it enables Automatic Save. When unchecked, Automatic Save is disabled.   |
| Automatic save interval (minutes)                            | Selects the period in minutes for Auto Save intervals.  |
| Save all files before transformation or validation           | Save all opened files before validating or transforming an XML document. In this way the dependencies are resolved, for example when modifying both the XML document and its XML Schema.  |
| Check errors on save   | If checked, a checking for errors is done when saving the edited document.  |
| Save all files before calling external tools                 | If checked, all files will be saved before executing an external tool.  |
| Optimize loading in the Text page for files over (MB)        | File loading is optimized for reduced memory usage for any file with a size larger than this size. This optimization comes with a few restrictions on memory intensive operations.  |
| Show warning when loading large documents                    | If checked, a warning about the restrictions on editing very large files is displayed for every open operation on a very large file.  |
| Clear undo buffer on save                                    | If checked, the undo action has no effect after you've saved your document. You can only undo the modifications made after you've saved it.   |
| Consider application bundles to be directories when browsing | This option is available only on the Mac OS X platform. When checked the file browser dialog allows browsing inside an application bundle as in a regular folder. When unchecked the file browser dialog does not allow browsing inside an application bundle, as the Finder application does on Mac OS X. The same effect can be obtained by setting the property <code>apple.awt.use-file-dialog-packages</code> to true or false in the <code>Info.plist</code> descriptor file of the <code>&lt;oXygen/&gt;</code> application by adding two lines in this descriptor file: |

```
<key>apple.awt.use-file-dialog-packages</key>
<string>>false</string>
```

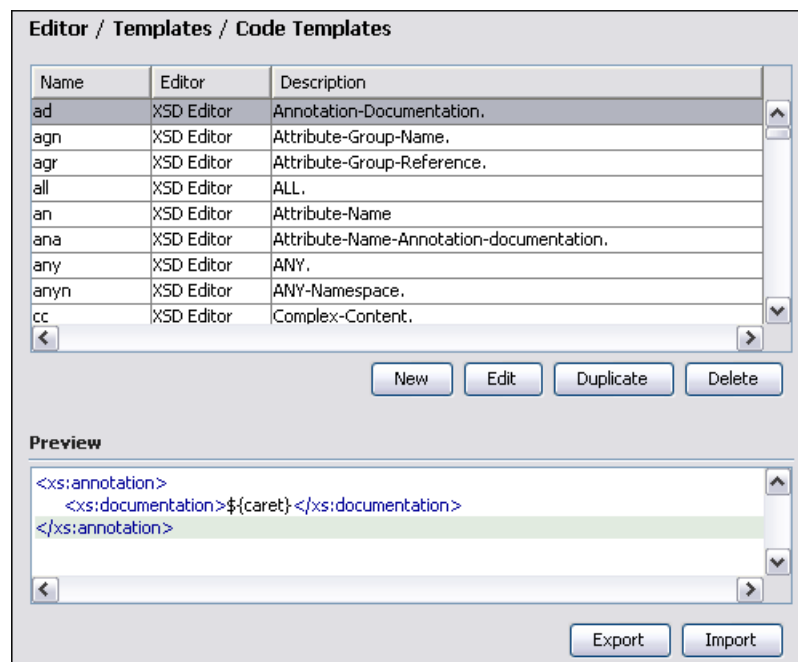
## Code Templates

Code templates are small document fragments that can be reused in other editing sessions. `<oXygen/>` comes with a large set of ready-to use templates for XSL, XQuery and XML Schema. You can even share your code templates with your colleagues using the Export and Import functions. To obtain the template list you can use the Content Completion on request shortcut key (usually CTRL-SPACE) or the Code Templates on request shortcut key (CTRL-SHIFT-SPACE).

The first shortcut displays the code templates in the same content completion list with elements from the schema of the document. The second shortcut displays only the code templates and is the default shortcut of the action Document → Content Completion → Show Code Templates .

The Code Templates preferences panel is opened from menu Options → Preferences+Editor+Templates+Code Templates

**Figure 20.28. The Code Templates preferences panel**



**New** Define a new code template.

You can define a code template for a specific type of editor or for all editor types.

**Edit** Edit the selected code template.

**Duplicate** Duplicate the selected code template.

**Delete** Delete the selected code template.

**Import** Import a file with code templates.

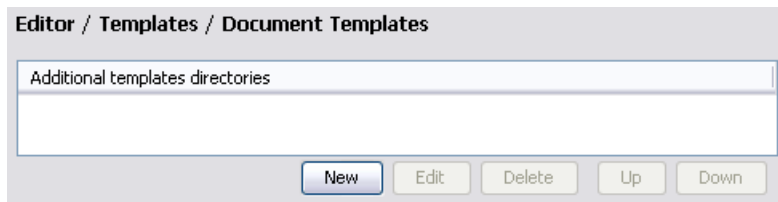
**Export** Export a file with code templates.

## Document Templates

The user can add template files in the `templates` folder of the <Oxygen/> install directory. Directories to be scanned for additional templates can also be specified in the Document Templates option page.

The Document Templates preferences panel is opened from menu Options → Preferences+Editor+Templates+Document Templates

**Figure 20.29. Document Templates preferences panel**



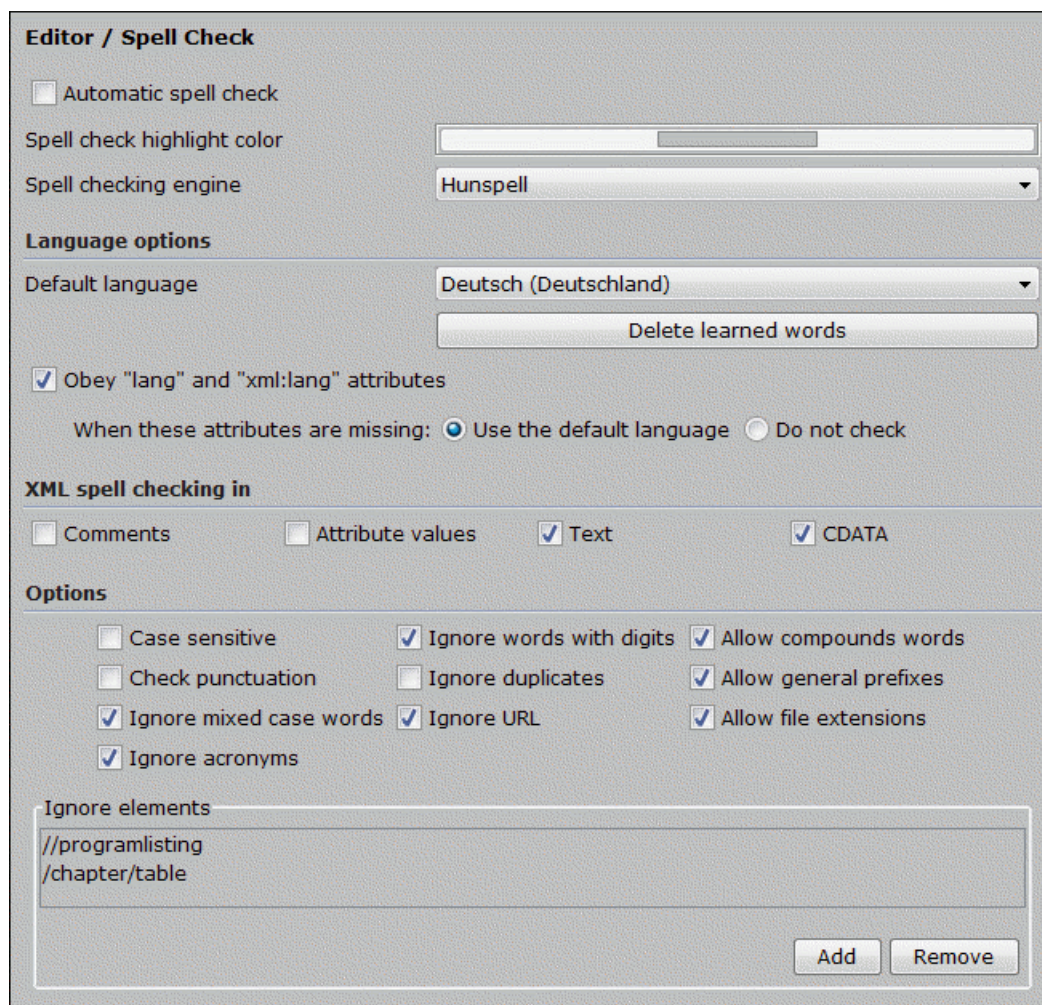
**Figure 20.30. Document Templates input dialog**



## Spell Check

The Spell Check preferences panel is opened from menu Options → Preferences+Editor+Spell Check

**Figure 20.31. Spell check preferences panel**



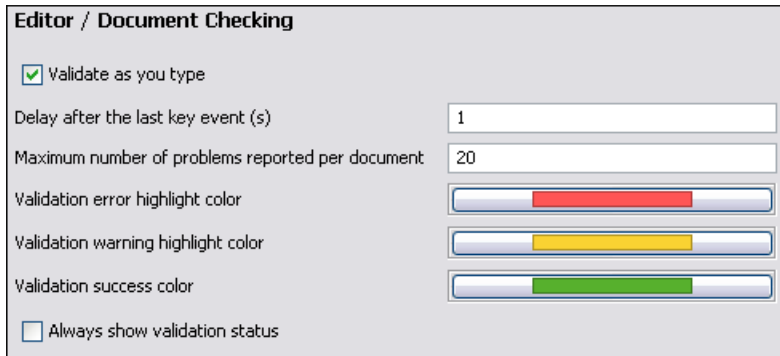
|                                       |  |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| Automatic Spell Check                 | When checked, the spell checker is activated. Spell errors will be highlighted as you type.  |
| Spell check highlight color           | Use this option to set the color of the spell check errors.  |
| Spell checking engine                 | The engines available are Hunspell and AZ Check. Each engine has a specific format of spelling dictionaries. The languages of the built-in dictionaries of the selected engine are listed in the <i>Default language</i> combo box.                    |
| Default language                      | The default language combo allows you to choose the language used by default. If the language of your documents is not listed in this combo box you can add a spelling dictionary for your language which will be added to this list.                  |
| Delete learned words                  | Press this button to reset the list of words that were added to the known words using the <i>Learn</i> feature.  |
| Obey "lang" and "xml:lang" attributes | If selected the contents of any element with such an attribute will be checked using a dictionary for the language specified in the attribute value if this dictionary is available. When these attributes are missing the language used is controlled |

|                          |  |
|--------------------------|--|
|                          | by the two radio buttons. The two options are to <i>Use the default language</i> or <i>Do not check</i> the spelling.  |
| XML spell checking in    | These options allow the user to specify if the spell checker will be enabled inside Comments, Attribute values, Text and CDATA sections.   |
| Case sensitive           | When checked, spell checking reports capitalization errors, for example a word that starts with lowercase after <i>etc.</i> or <i>i.e.</i> .   |
| Ignore mixed case words  | When checked, operations do not check words containing case mixing (e.g. "SpellChecker").  |
| Ignore words with digits | When checked, the Spell Checker does not check words containing digits (e.g. "b2b").   |
| Ignore Duplicates        | When checked, the Spell Checker does not signal two successive identical words as an error.  |
| Ignore URL               | When checked, ignores words looking like URL or file names (e.g. "www.oxygenxml.com" or "c:\boot.ini") .   |
| Check punctuation        | When checked, punctuation checking is enabled: misplaced white space and wrong sequences, like a dot following a comma, are detected.  |
| Allow compounds words    | When checked, all words formed by concatenating two legal words with an hyphen are accepted. If the language allows it, two words concatenated without hyphen are also accepted.   |
| Allow general prefixes   | When checked, a word formed by concatenating a registered prefix and a legal word is accepted. For example if "mini-" is a registered prefix, accepts "mini-computer".   |
| Allow file extensions    | When checked, accepts any word ending with registered file extensions (e.g. "myfile.txt", "index.html" etc.).  |
| Ignore acronyms          | When checked the acronyms are not reported as errors when checking the document.   |
| Ignore elements          | A list of XPath expressions for the elements that will be ignored by spell checking. Only a small subset of XPath expressions are supported, that is only the '/' and '/' separators and the '*' wildcard. An example of XPath expression: <i>/a/*/b</i> . |

## Document Checking

The Document Checking preferences panel is opened from menu Options → Preferences+Editor+Document Checking

**Figure 20.32. Document Checking preferences panel**

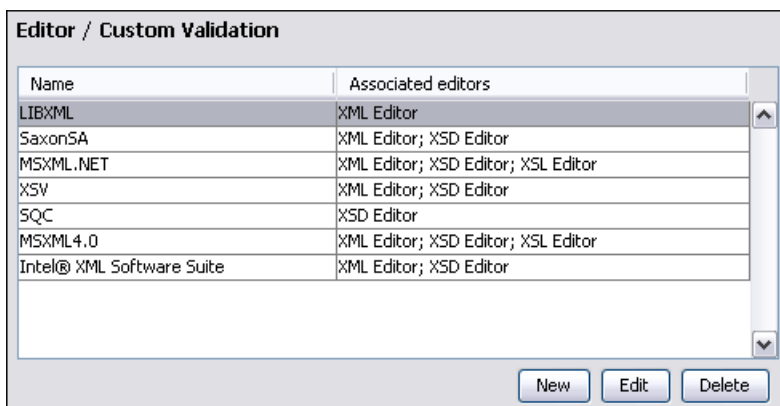


|  |   |
|--|---|
| Validate as you type                           | Validation of edited document is executed as the document is modified by editing in <oXygen/>.  |
| Delay after the last key event (s)             | The period of keyboard inactivity which starts a new validation (in seconds).   |
| Maximum number of errors reported per document | If there are many validation errors the process of marking them in the document is long. You should limit the maximum number of reported errors with this setting to keep the time for error marking short  |
| Validation error highlight color               | The color used to mark validation errors in the document.   |
| Validation warning highlight color             | The color used to mark validation warnings in the document.   |
| Validation success color                       | The color used to mark the success of the validation in the vertical ruler bar.   |
| Always show validation status                  | If this option is checked the line at the bottom of the editor panel which presents the message of the current validation error is always visible. This is useful to avoid scrolling problems when <i>Validate as you type</i> is enabled and the vertical scroll bar may change position when the document is edited and the line with the validation error message is made visible. |

## Custom Validation

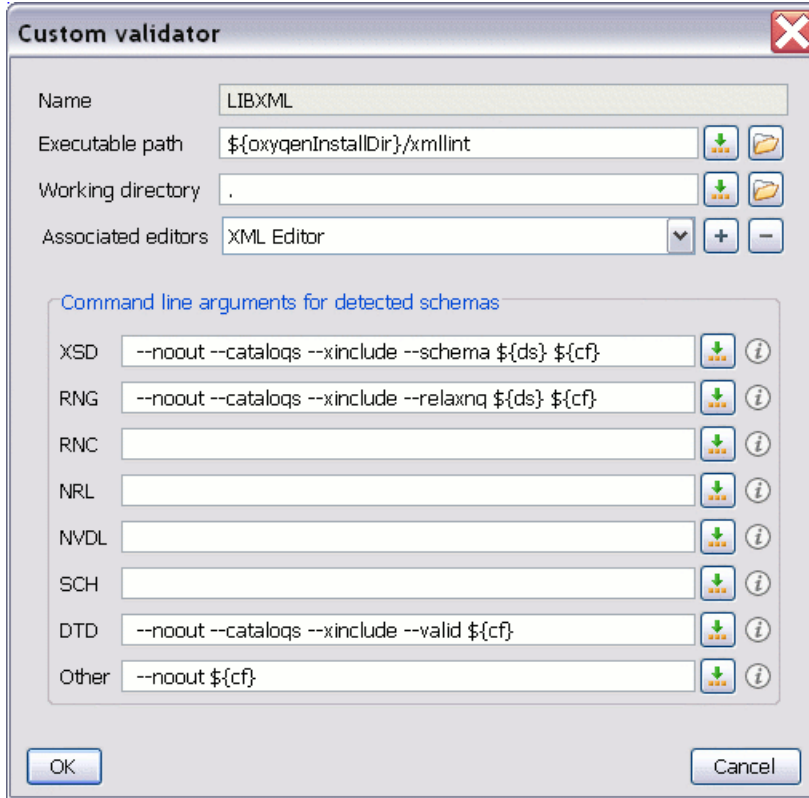
The Custom Validation preferences panel is opened from menu Options → Preferences+Editor+Custom Validation

**Figure 20.33. Custom Validation preferences panel**



If you want to add a new custom validation tool or edit the properties of an existing one you can use the Custom Validator dialog displayed by pressing New or Edit buttons.

**Figure 20.34. Custom validator dialog**



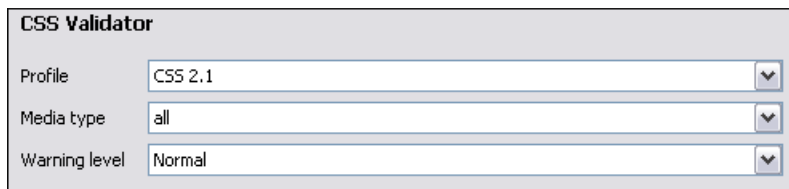
|   |   |
|---|---|
| Name  | Name of the custom validation tool displayed in the Custom Validation Engines toolbar   |
| Executable path                             | Path to the executable file of the custom validation tool. You can insert here editor variables like <code>\${homeDir}</code> , <code>\${pd}</code> , etc.  |
| Working directory                           | The working directory of the custom validation tool. The following editor variables can be used: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><code>\${homeDir}</code>                      The path to user home directory</li> <li><code>\${pd}</code>                                      Project directory</li> <li><code>\${oxygenInstallDir}</code>              &lt;oxygen/&gt; installation directory</li> </ul>   |
| Associated editors                          | The editors which can perform validation with the external tool.  |
| Command line arguments for detected schemas | Command line arguments used to validate the current edited file against different types of schema (W3C XML Schema, Relax NG full syntax, Relax NG compact syntax, Namespace Routing Language, Schematron, DTD, other schema type). The arguments can include any custom switch (like <code>-rng</code> ) and the editor variables: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><code>\${cf}</code>                                      The path of the currently edited file</li> </ul> |

|                     |  |
|---------------------|--|
| <code>#{cfu}</code> | Path of current file (URL)             |
| <code>#{ds}</code>  | The path of detected schema file       |
| <code>#{dsu}</code> | The path of detected schema file (URL) |

## CSS Validator

The CSS Validator preferences panel is opened from menu Options → Preferences+CSS Validator

**Figure 20.35. CSS Validator preferences panel**



|               |  |
|---------------|--|
| Profile       | Choose one of the available validation profiles: CSS 1, CSS 2, CSS 2.1, CSS 3, SVG, SVG Basic, SVG Tiny, Mobile, TV Profile, ATSC TV Profile |
| Media Type    | Choose one of the available mediums: all, aural, braille, embossed, handheld, print, projection, screen                                      |
| Warning Level | Set the minimum severity level for reported validation warnings. It is one of: all, normal, most important, no warnings.                     |

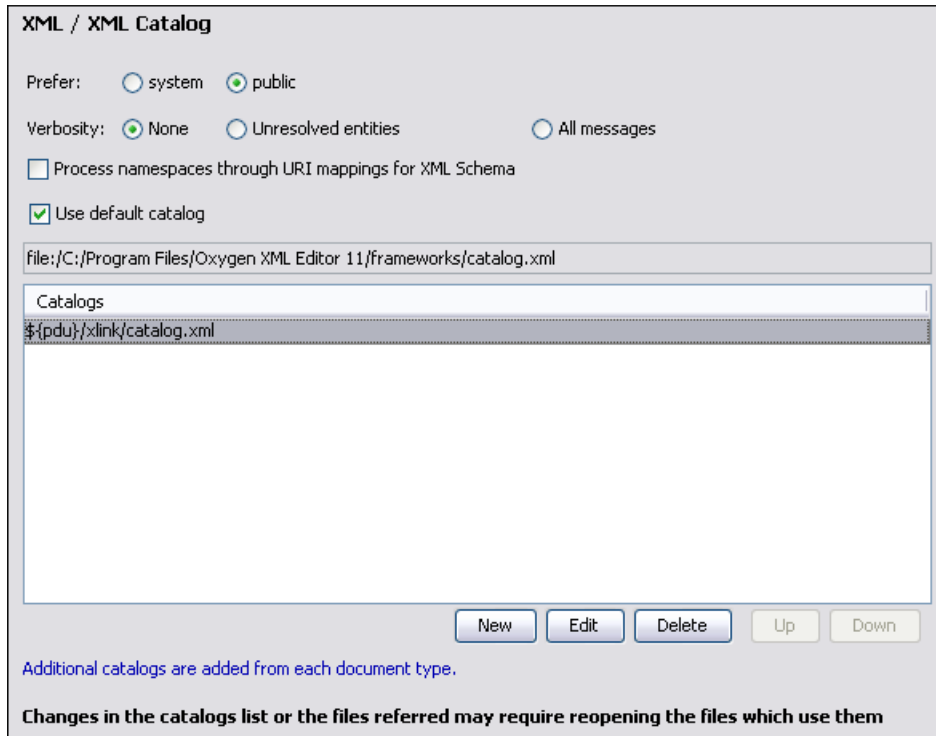
## XML

### XML Catalog

The XML Catalog preferences panel is opened from menu Options → Preferences+XML+XML Catalog



**Figure 20.36. The XML Catalog preferences panel**



The Prefer option is used to specify if <oxygen/> will try to resolve first the PUBLIC or SYSTEM reference using the specified XML catalogs. If a PUBLIC reference is not mapped in any of the catalogs then a SYSTEM reference is looked up.

When using catalogs it is sometimes useful to see what catalog files are parsed, if they are valid or not, and what identifiers are resolved by the catalogs. The Verbosity option selects the detail level of such messages of the catalog resolver that will be displayed in the *Catalogs* view at the bottom of the window:

- |                     |  |
|---------------------|--|
| None                | No message is displayed by the catalog resolver when it tries to resolve a URI reference with the XML catalogs set in the application. |
| Unresolved entities | Only the messages that track the failed attempts to resolve URI references are displayed.  |
| All messages        | The messages of both failed attempts and successful ones are displayed.  |

If the Process namespaces through URI mappings for XML Schema option is not checked only the schema location of an XML Schema that is declared in an XML document is searched in XML catalogs. If the option is checked the schema location of an XML Schema that is declared in an XML document is searched in XML catalogs and if the schema location is not resolved the namespace of the schema is also searched in the XML catalogs.

If the Use default catalog option is checked the first XML catalog which <oxygen/> will use to resolve system IDs at document validation and URI references at document transformation will be a default built-in catalog which maps such references to the built-in local copies of the local DocBook and TEI frameworks and the schemas for XHTML, SVG and JSP documents.

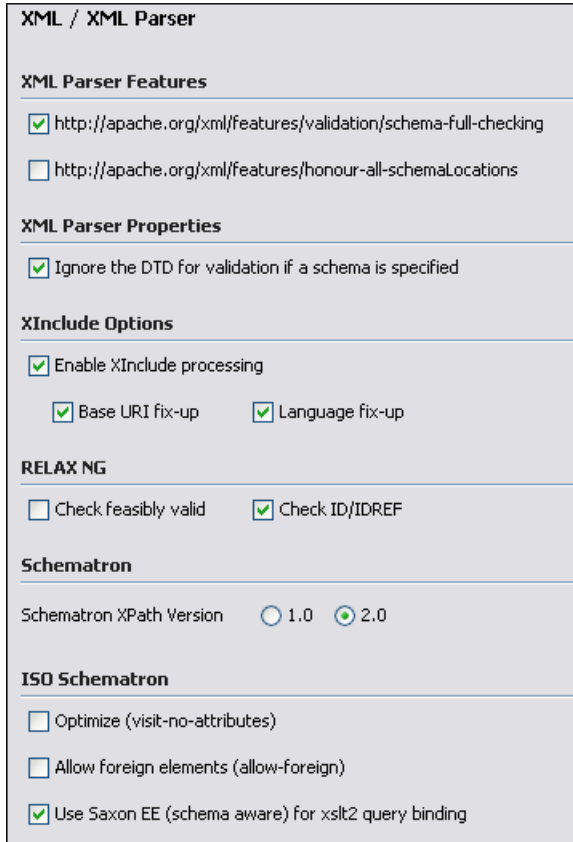
You can also add or configure catalogs for each of the defined document types from Document Type Association preferences page.

When you add/delete or edit an XML catalog to/from the list you must sometimes reopen the current edited files which use the modified catalog so that the changes take full effect.

## XML Parser

The XML Parser preferences panel is opened from menu Options → Preferences+XML+XML Parser

**Figure 20.37. The XML Parser preferences panel**



<http://apache.org/xml/features/validation/schema-full-checking> This option sets the 'schema-full-checking' feature to true.

<http://apache.org/xml/features/honour-all-schema-location> This option sets the 'honour-all-schema-location' feature to true. This means all the schemas that are imported for a specific namespace are used to compose the validation model. If this is false, only the first schema import is taken into account.

Ignore the DTD for validation if a schema is specified This option forces validation against a referred schema (XML Schema, Relax NG schema, Schematron schema) even if the document includes also a DTD declaration. It is useful when the DTD declaration is used to declare entities and the schema reference is used for validation.

Enable XInclude processing Enable XInclude processing - if checked the XInclude support in <oxygen/> is turned on.

Base URI fix-up [Xerces XML Parser documentation:] According to the specification for XInclude, processors must add an xml:base attribute to elements included from

locations with a different base URI. Without these attributes, the resulting infoSet information would be incorrect.

Unfortunately, these attributes make XInclude processing not transparent to Schema validation.

One solution to this is to modify your schema to allow xml:base attributes to appear on elements that might be included from different base URIs.

If the addition of xml:base and/or xml:lang is undesired by your application, you can disable base URI fix-up.

Language fix-up

[Xerces XML Parser documentation:]The processor will preserve language information on a top-level included element by adding an xml:lang attribute if its include parent has a different [language] property.

If the addition of xml:lang is undesired by your application, you can disable the Language fix-up.

Check ID/IDREF

Checks the ID/IDREF matches when the Relax NG document is validated.

Check feasibly valid

Checks the Relax NG to be feasibly valid when this document is validated.

Schematron XPath Version

1.0 - Allows XSLT 1.0 expressions for Schematron 1.5 assertion tests.

2.0 - Allows XSLT 2.0 expressions for Schematron 1.5 assertion tests.

Optimize (visit-no-attributes)

If your ISO Schematron assertion tests do not contain the attributes axis you should check this option for faster ISO Schematron validation.

Allow foreign elements (allow-foreign)

Enable support for allow-foreign on ISO Schematron. Used to pass non-Schematron elements to the generated stylesheet.

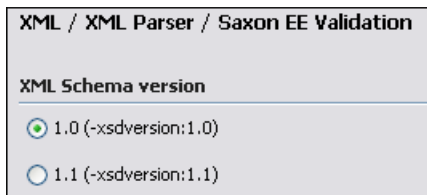
Use Saxon EE (schema aware) for xslt2 query binding

If checked, Saxon EE will be used for xslt2 query binding.

## Saxon EE Validation

The Saxon EE Validation preferences panel is opened from menu Options → Preferences+XML+XML Parser+Saxon EE Validation

**Figure 20.38. The Saxon EE preferences panel**



XML Schema version 1.0

The validation of XML Schema schemas is done according to the W3C XML Schema 1.0 specification.

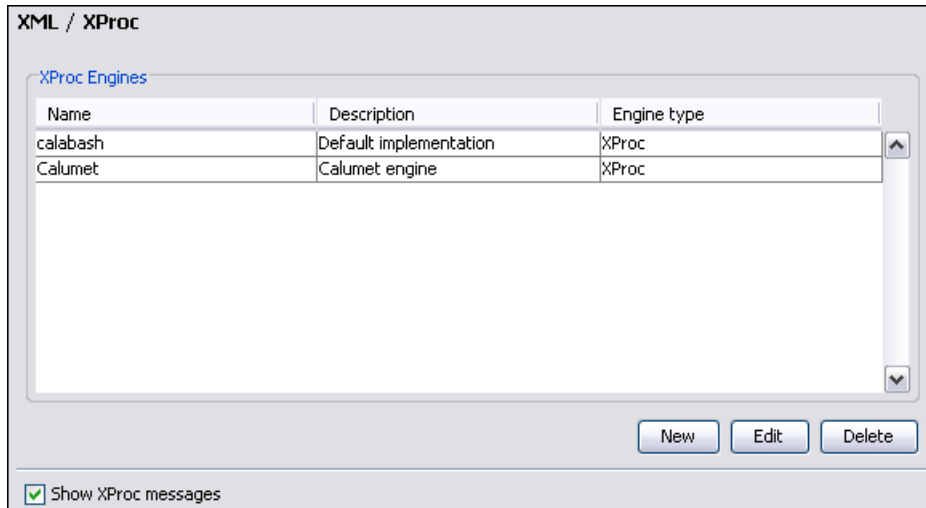
XML Schema version 1.1

The validation of XML Schema schemas is done according to the W3C XML Schema 1.1 specification.

## XProc Engines

<oXygen/> comes with a built-in engine called *Calabash XProc*. An external XProc engine can be configured in this panel.

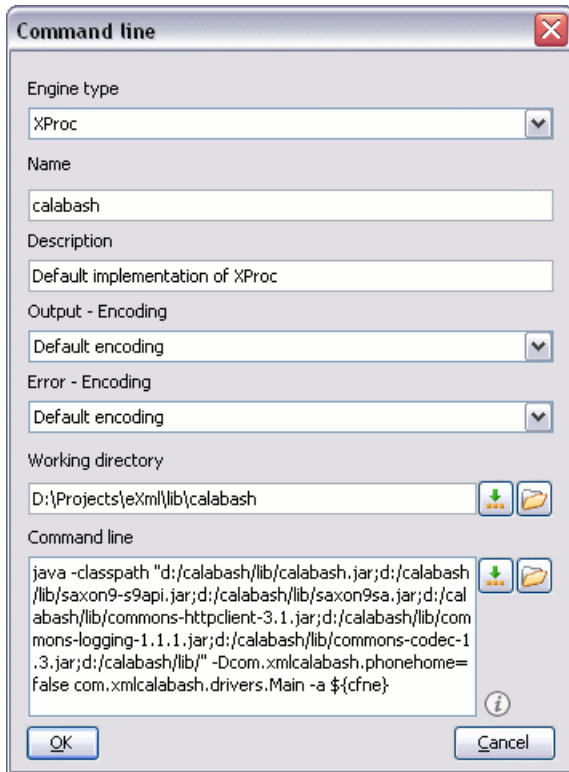
**Figure 20.39. The XProc Engines preferences panel**



When *Show XProc messages* is enabled all messages emitted by the XProc processor during a transformation will be presented in the results view.

For an external engine you must specify the name that will be displayed in the XProc transformation scenario and the command line that will start it.

**Figure 20.40. Creating an XProc external engine**

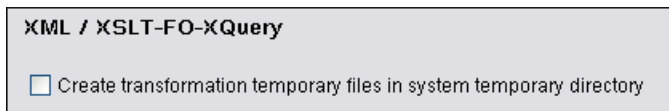


Also other parameters can be set: a description, the encodings for the output stream and the error stream of the engine, the working directory of the command that will start the engine. The encodings will be used for reading and displaying the output of the engine. The working directory and the command line can use built-in editor variables and custom editor variables for parameterizing a file path.

## XSLT/FO/XQuery

The XSLT/FO/XQuery preferences panel is opened from menu Options → Preferences+XML+XSLT/FO/XQuery

**Figure 20.41. The XSLT/FO/XQuery preferences panel**

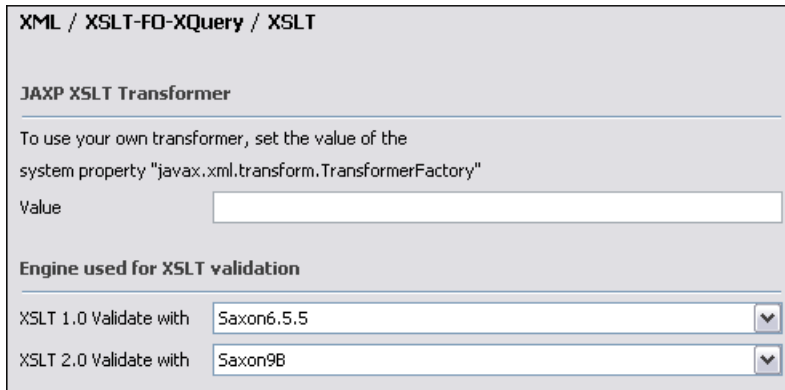


Check the option *Create transformation temporary files in system temporary directory* when creating transformation temporary files in the same folder as the source of the transformation breaks the transformation, for example the transformation processes all the files located in the same folder as the source of the transformation, which will include the temporary files, which you probably do not want.

## XSLT

The XSLT preferences panel is opened from menu Options → Preferences+XML+XSLT/FO/XQuery+XSLT

**Figure 20.42. The XSLT preferences panel**



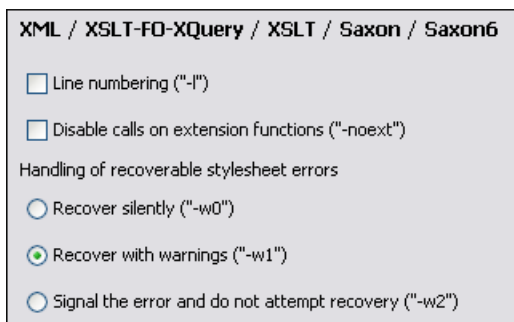
If you want to use an XSLT transformer different than the ones that ship with <oxygen/> namely Apache Xalan and Saxon all you have to do is to specify the name of the transformer's factory class which <oxygen/> will set as the value of the Java property "javax.xml.transform.TransformerFactory". To perform an XSLT transformation with Saxon 7 for instance you have to place the Saxon 7 jar file in the <oxygen/> libraries directory (the *lib* subdirectory of the installation directory), set "net.sf.saxon.TransformerFactoryImpl" as the property value and select JAXP as the XSLT processor in the transformation scenario associated to the transformed XML document.

- |                        |  |
|------------------------|--|
| Value                  | Allows the user to enter the name of the transformer factory Java class.         |
| XSLT 1.0 Validate with | Allows the user to set the XSLT Engine used for validation of XSL 1.0 documents. |
| XSLT 2.0 Validate with | Allows the user to set the XSLT Engine used for validation of XSL 2.0 documents. |

**Saxon6**

The Saxon 6 preferences panel is opened from menu Options → Preferences+XML+XSLT/FO/XQuery+XSLT+Saxon+Saxon 6

**Figure 20.43. The Saxon 6 XSLT preferences panel**



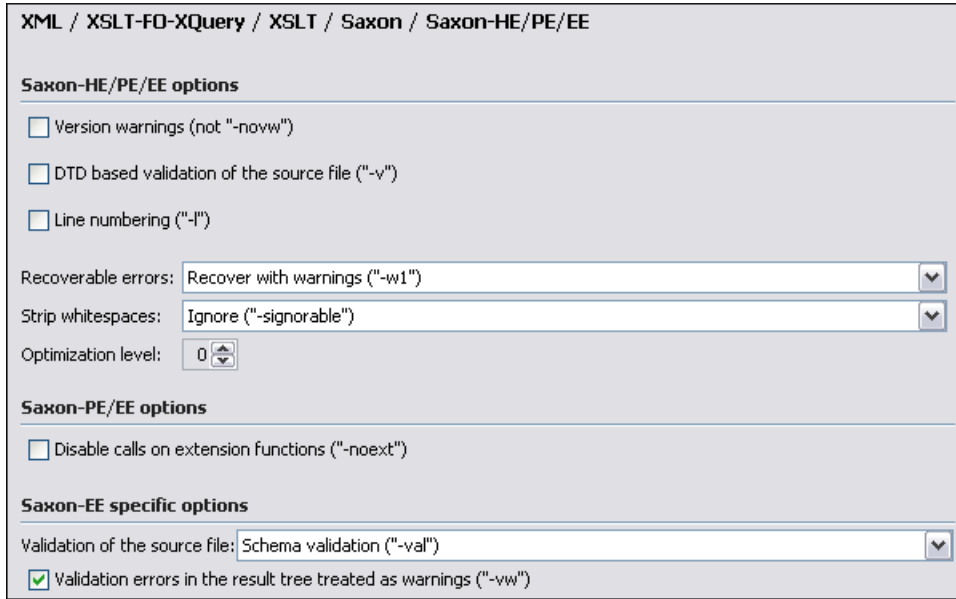
- Line numbering: If checked line numbers are maintained for the source document.
- Disable calls on extension functions: If checked external functions called is disallowed. Checking this is recommended in an environment where untrusted stylesheets may be executed. Also disables user-defined extension elements, together with the writing of multiple output files, all of which carry similar security risks.
- Policy for handling recoverable errors in the stylesheet: Allows the user to choose how dynamic errors will be handled. Either one of the following options can be selected: recover silently, recover with warnings or signal the error and do not attempt recovery.

## Saxon HE/PE/EE

The Saxon HE/PE/EE preferences panel is opened from menu Options → Preferences+XML+XSLT/FO/XQuery+XSLT+Saxon+Saxon HE/PE/EE

The XSLT options which can be configured for the Saxon 9 transformer (both the Basic and the Schema Aware versions) are:

**Figure 20.44. The Saxon HE/PE/EE XSLT preferences panel**



- **Version warnings:** If checked a warning will be generated when running an XSLT 2.0 processor against an XSLT 1.0 stylesheet. The XSLT specification requires this to be done by default.
- **Allows calls on extension functions:** If checked external functions called is disallowed. Checking this is recommended in an environment where untrusted stylesheets may be executed. Also disables user-defined extension elements, together with the writing of multiple output files, all of which carry similar security risks.
- **DTD based validation of the source file:** If checked XML source documents are validated against their DTD.
- **Line numbering:** If checked line numbers are maintained for the source document.
- **Policy for handling recoverable errors in the stylesheet:** Allows the user to choose how dynamic errors will be handled. Either one of the following options can be selected: recover silently, recover with warnings or signal the error and do not attempt recovery.
- **Strip whitespaces feature can be one of the three options:** All, Ignorable, None.

**All** strips all whitespace text nodes from source documents before any further processing, regardless of any `xsl:strip-space` declarations in the stylesheet, or any `xml:space` attributes in the source document.

**Ignorable** strips all ignorable whitespace text nodes from source documents before any further processing, regardless of any `xsl:strip-space` declarations in the stylesheet, or any `xml:space` attributes in the source document. Whitespace text nodes are ignorable if they appear in elements defined in the DTD or schema as having element-only content.

None strips no whitespace before further processing. (However, whitespace will still be stripped if this is specified in the stylesheet using `xsl:strip-space`).

Saxon9SA specific options

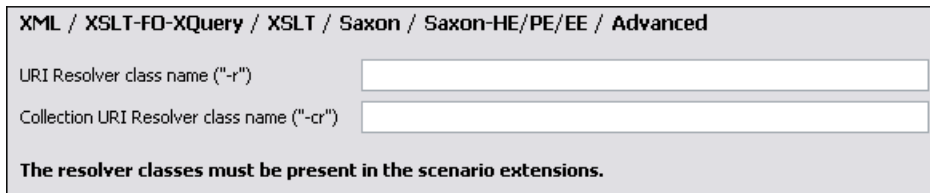
- Schema based validation of the source file: This determines whether source documents should be parsed with schema-validation enabled.
- Lax schema based validation of the source file: This determines whether source documents should be parsed with schema-validation enabled.
- Validation errors in the result tree treated as warnings: If checked, all validation errors are treated as warnings, otherwise they are treated as fatal.

**Saxon HE/PE/EE Advanced options**

The Saxon HE/PE/EE Advanced preferences panel is opened from menu Options → Preferences+XML+XSLT/FO/XQuery+XSLT+Saxon+Saxon HE/PE/EE+Advanced

The advanced XSLT options which can be configured for the Saxon 9 transformer (both the Basic and the Schema Aware versions) are:

**Figure 20.45. The Saxon HE/PE/EE XSLT Advanced preferences panel**



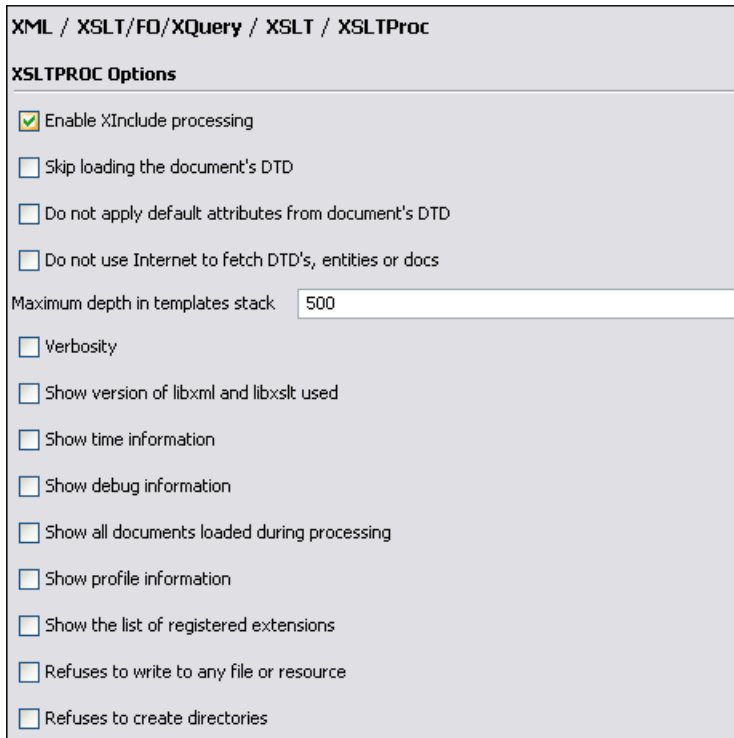
- URI Resolver class name: Allows the user to specify a custom implementation for the URI resolver used by the XSLT Saxon 9 transformer ("-r" option when run from the command line). The class name must be fully specified and the corresponding jar or class extension must be configured from the dialog for configuring the XSLT extension for the particular scenario
- Collection URI Resolver class name: Allows the user to specify a custom implementation for the Collection URI resolver used by the XSLT Saxon 9 transformer ("-cr" option when run from the command line). The class name must be fully specified and the corresponding jar or class extension must be configured from the dialog for configuring the XSLT extension for the particular scenario

**XSLTProc**

The XSLTProc preferences panel is opened from menu Options → Preferences+XML+XSLT/FO/XQuery+XSLT+XSLT-Proc



**Figure 20.46. The XSLTProc preferences panel**



*The options of the XSLTProc processor are the same as the ones available in the command line for the XSLTProc processor:*

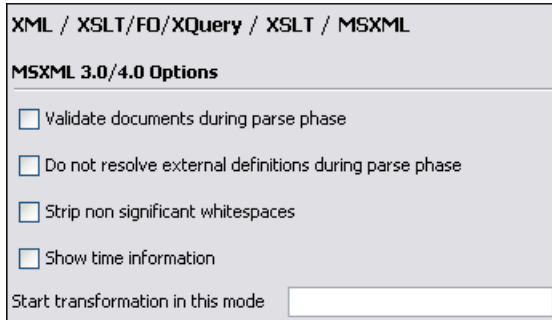
|  |   |
|--|---|
| Enable XInclude processing                           | If checked XInclude references will be resolved when XSLTProc is used as transformer in the transformation scenario.                  |
| Skip loading the document's DTD                      | If checked the DTD specified in the DOCTYPE declaration will not be loaded.   |
| Do not apply default attributes from document's DTD  | If checked the default attributes declared in the DTD and not specified in the document are not included in the transformed document. |
| Do not use Internet to fetch DTD's, entities or docs | If checked the remote references to DTD's and entities are not followed.  |
| Maximum depth in templates stack                     | If the limit of maximum templates is reached the transformation ends with an error.   |
| Verbosity  | If checked the transformation will output detailed status messages about the transformation process in the Warnings view.             |
| Show version of libxml and libxslt used              | If checked <oxygen/> will display in the Warnings view the version of the libxml and libxslt libraries invoked by XSLTProc.           |
| Show time information                                | If checked the Warnings view will display the time necessary for running the transformation.  |
| Show debug information                               | If checked the Warnings view will display debug information about what templates are matched, parameter values, etc.                  |

|   |  |
|---|--|
| Show all documents loaded during processing | If checked <oXygen/> will display in the Warnings view the URL of all the files loaded during transformation.  |
| Show profile information                    | If checked <oXygen/> will display in the Warnings view a table with all the matched templates, and for each template: the match XPath expression, template name, number of template modes, number of calls, execution time.          |
| Show the list of registered extensions      | If checked <oXygen/> will display in the Warnings view a list with all the registered extension functions, extension elements and extension modules.   |
| Refuses to write to any file or resource    | If checked the XSLTProc processor will not write any part of the transformation result to an external file on disk. If such an operation is requested by the processed XSLT stylesheet the transformation ends with a runtime error. |
| Refuses to create directories               | If checked the XSLTProc processor will not create any directory during the transformation process. If such an operation is requested by the processed XSLT stylesheet the transformation ends with a runtime error.                  |

**MSXML**

The MSXML preferences panel is opened from menu Options → Preferences+XML+XSLT/FO/XQuery+XSLT+MSXML

**Figure 20.47. The MSXML preferences panel**



The options of the MSXML 3.0 and 4.0 processors are the same as the ones available in the command line for the MSXML processors: [<http://msdn.microsoft.com/library/default.asp?url=/library/en-us/dnxml/html/msxsl.asp>]

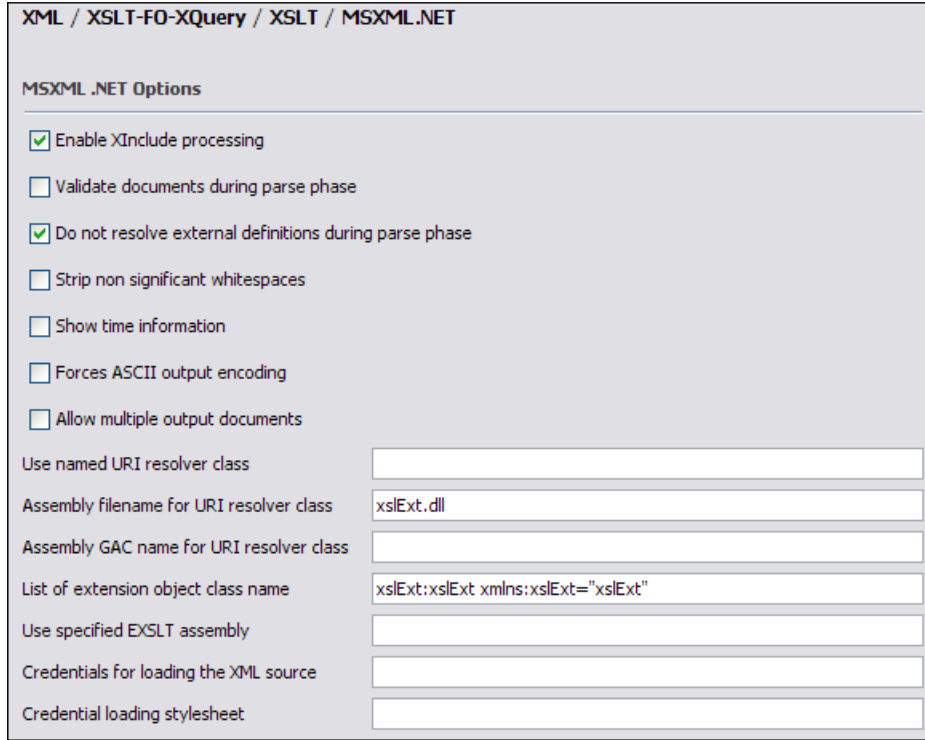
|  |  |
|--|--|
| Validate documents during parse phase                  | If checked and either the source or style sheet document has a DTD or schema against which its content should be checked, validation is performed.   |
| Do not resolve external definitions during parse phase | By default, MSXSL instructs the parser to resolve external definitions such as document type definition (DTD), external subsets or external entity references when parsing the source and style sheet documents. If this option is checked the resolution is disabled.                             |
| Strip non-significant whitespaces                      | If checked strip non-significant white space from the input XML document during the load phase. Enabling this option can lower memory usage and improve transformation performance while, in most cases, creating equivalent output.   |
| Show time information                                  | If checked the relative speed of various transformation steps can be measured: time to load, parse, and build the input document; time to load, parse, and build the style sheet document; time to compile the style sheet in preparation for the transformation; time to execute the style sheet. |

Start transformation in this mode      Although style sheet execution usually begins in the empty mode, this default may be changed by specifying another mode. Changing the start mode allows execution to jump directly to an alternate group of templates.

**MSXML.NET**

The MSXML.NET preferences panel is opened from menu Options → Preferences+XML+XSLT/FO/XQuery+XSLT+MSXML.NET

**Figure 20.48. The MSXML.NET preferences panel**



The options of the MSXML.NET processor are the same as the ones available in the command line for the MSXML.NET processor: [http://www.xmllab.net/Products/nxslt/tabid/62/Default.aspx]

- Enable XInclude processing      If checked XInclude references will be resolved when MSXML.NET is used as transformer in the transformation scenario.
- Validate documents during parse phase      If checked and either the source or style sheet document has a DTD or schema against which its content should be checked, validation is performed.
- Do not resolve external definitions during parse phase      By default MSXML.NET resolves external definitions such as DTD external subsets or external entity references when parsing source XML document and stylesheet document. Using this option you can disable this behaviour. (Note, that it may affect also the validation process.)
- Strip non-significant whitespaces      If checked strip non-significant white space from the input XML document during the load phase. Enabling this option can lower memory usage and improve transformation performance while, in most cases, creating equivalent output.
- Show time information      If checked the relative speed of various transformation steps can be measured: time to load, parse, and build the input document; time to load, parse, and build

|   |  |
|---|--|
|   | the style sheet document; time to compile the style sheet in preparation for the transformation; time to execute the style sheet.  |
| Forces ASCII output encoding              | There is a known problem with .NET 1.X XSLT processor (System.Xml.Xsl.XslTransform class) - it doesn't support escaping of characters as XML character references when they cannot be represented in the output encoding. That means that when you output a character that cannot be represented in output encoding, it will be outputted as '?'. Usually this happens when output encoding is set to ASCII. With this option checked the output is forced to be ASCII encoded and all non-ASCII characters get escaped as XML character references (&#nnnn; form).  |
| Allow multiple output documents           | This option allows to create multiple result documents using the <code>exsl:document extension element</code> . [ <a href="http://www.exslt.org/exslt/elements/document/index.html">http://www.exslt.org/exslt/elements/document/index.html</a> ]  |
| Use named URI resolver class              | This option allows to specify a custom URI resolver class to resolve URI references in <code>xsl:import/xsl:include</code> instructions (during XSLT stylesheet loading phase) and in <code>document()</code> function (during XSL transformation phase).  |
| Assembly file name for URI resolver class | The previous option specifies partially or fully qualified URI resolver class name, e.g. <code>Acme.Resolvers.CacheResolver</code> . Such name requires additional assembly specification using this option or the next option, but fully qualified class name (which always includes an assembly specifier) is all-sufficient. See MSDN for more info about fully qualified class names. [ <a href="http://msdn.microsoft.com/library/default.asp?url=/library/en-us/cpguide/html/cpconspecifyingfullyqualifiedtypenames.asp">http://msdn.microsoft.com/library/default.asp?url=/library/en-us/cpguide/html/cpconspecifyingfullyqualifiedtypenames.asp</a> ] This option specifies a file name of the assembly, where the specified resolver class can be found.  |
| Assembly GAC name for URI resolver class  | This option specifies partially or fully qualified name of the assembly in the <code>global assembly cache</code> [ <a href="http://msdn.microsoft.com/library/default.asp?url=/library/en-us/cpguide/html/cpconglobalassemblycache.asp">http://msdn.microsoft.com/library/default.asp?url=/library/en-us/cpguide/html/cpconglobalassemblycache.asp</a> ] (GAC), where the specified resolver class can be found. See MSDN for more info about partial assembly names. [ <a href="http://msdn.microsoft.com/library/default.asp?url=/library/en-us/cpguide/html/cpconpartialassemblyreferences.asp">http://msdn.microsoft.com/library/default.asp?url=/library/en-us/cpguide/html/cpconpartialassemblyreferences.asp</a> ] Also see the previous option.   |
| List of extension object class names      | This option allows to specify extension object [ <a href="http://msdn.microsoft.com/library/default.asp?url=/library/en-us/cpguide/html/cpconxsltargumentlistforstylesheetparametersextensionobjects.asp">http://msdn.microsoft.com/library/default.asp?url=/library/en-us/cpguide/html/cpconxsltargumentlistforstylesheetparametersextensionobjects.asp</a> ] classes, whose public methods then can be used as extension functions in an XSLT stylesheet. It is a comma-separated list of namespace-qualified extension object class names. Each class name must be bound to a namespace URI using prefixes as when providing XSLT parameters. [ <a href="http://www.xmlab.net/Products/nxslt/tabid/62/Default.aspx#parameters">http://www.xmlab.net/Products/nxslt/tabid/62/Default.aspx#parameters</a> ] |
| Use specified EXSLT assembly              | MSXML.NET supports rich library of the EXSLT [ <a href="http://www.exslt.org/">http://www.exslt.org/</a> ] and EXSLT.NET [ <a href="http://www.xmlab.net/exslt">http://www.xmlab.net/exslt</a> ] extension functions via embedded or plugged in EXSLT.NET [ <a href="http://workspaces.gotdotnet.com/exslt">http://workspaces.gotdotnet.com/exslt</a> ] library. EXSLT support is enabled by default and cannot be disabled in this version. If you want to use an external EXSLT.NET implementation instead of a built-in one use this option.  |

Credential loading source xml      This option allows to specify user credentials to be used when loading XML source documents. The credentials should be provided in the "username:password@domain" format (all parts are optional).

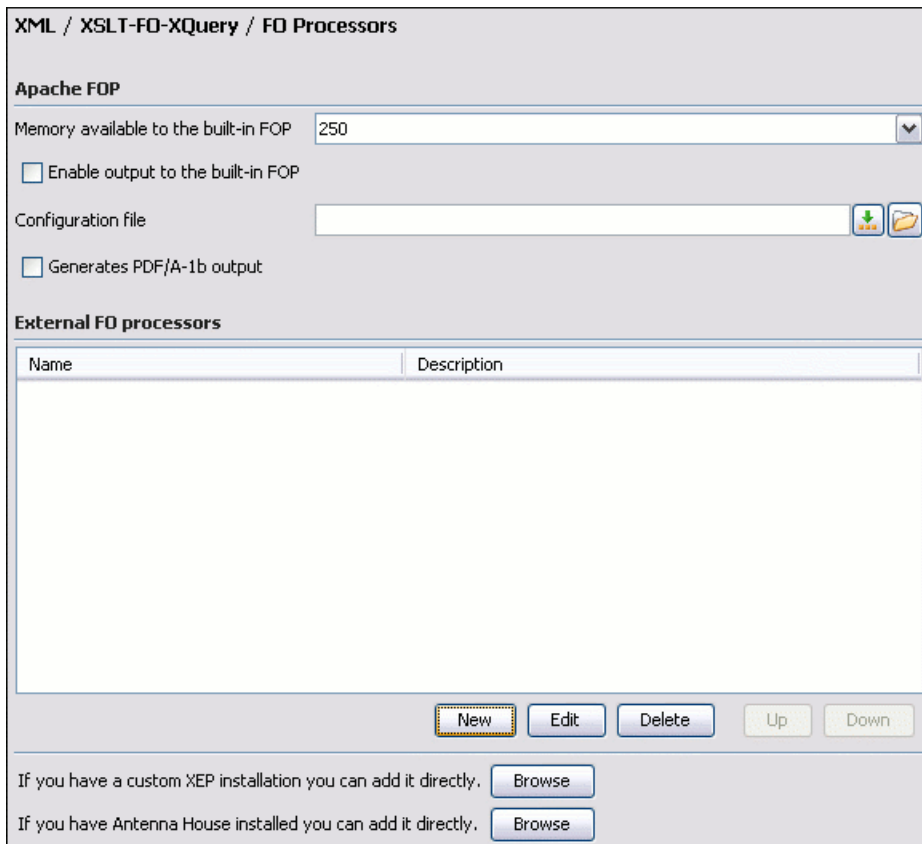
Credential loading stylesheet      This option allows to specify user credentials to be used when loading XSLT stylesheet documents. The credentials should be provided in the "username:password@domain" format (all parts are optional).

## FO Processors

Besides the built-in formatting objects processor (Apache FOP) the user can use other external processors. <oXygen/> has implemented an easy way to add two of the most used commercial FO processors. You can easily add RenderX XEP as external FO processor if the user has the XEP installed. Also, if you have the Antenna House v4 or v5 FO processors Oxygen will use the environmental variables set by the installation to detect and use it for transformations. If the environmental variables are not set for the Antenna House installation you can browse and choose the executable just as you would for XEP.

The FO Processors preferences panel is opened from menu Options → Preferences+XML+XSLT/FO/XQuery+FO Processors

**Figure 20.49. The FO Processors preferences panel**



Enable the output of the built-in FOP      When checked all FOP output will be displayed in a results pane at the bottom of the editor window including warning messages about FO instructions not supported by FOP.

|   |  |
|---|--|
| Memory available to the built-in FOP    | If your FOP transformations fail with an "Out of Memory" error select from this combo box a larger value for the amount of memory reserved for FOP transformations.        |
| Configuration file for the built-in FOP | You should specify here the path to a FOP configuration file, necessary for example to render to PDF using a special true type font a document containing Unicode content. |
| Generates PDF/A-1b output               | When selected PDF/A-1b output is generated.  |

 **Note**

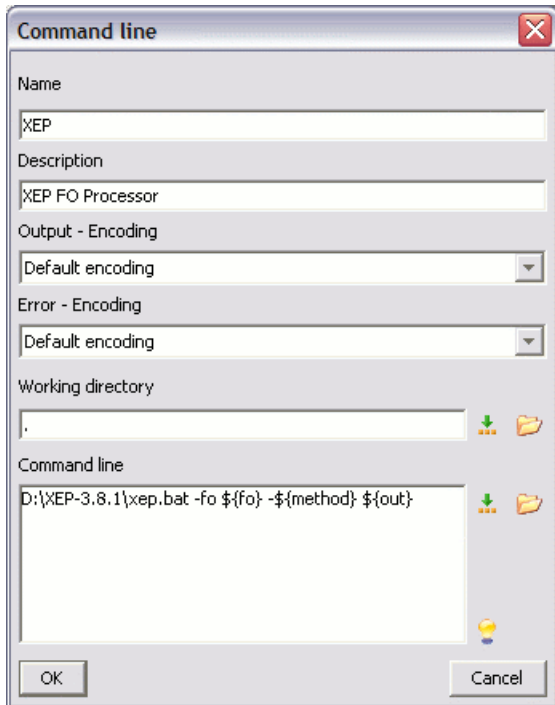
All fonts have to be embedded, even the implicit ones. More information about configuring metrics files for the embedded fonts can be found in [Add a font to the built-in FOP](#).

 **Note**

You cannot use the `<filterList>` key in the configuration file. FOP will generate the following error: *The Filter key is prohibited when PDF/A-1 is active.*

The users can configure the external processors for use with `<oXygen/>` in the following dialog.

**Figure 20.50. The external FO processor configuration dialog**



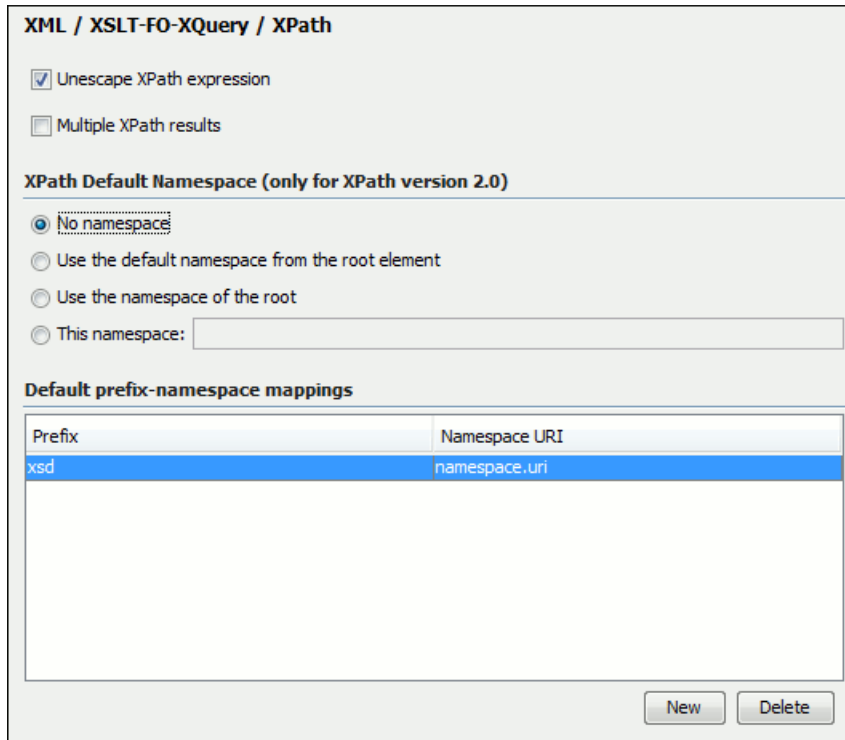
|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Name        | The name that will be displayed in the list of available FOP processors on the FOP tab of the Transforming Configuration dialog. |
| Description | The description of the FO processor displayed in the Preferences->FO Processors option.  |

|                      |   |             |   |         |   |         |                        |                      |                                       |                   |  |                      |                                       |        |   |
|----------------------|---|-------------|---|---------|---|---------|------------------------|----------------------|---------------------------------------|-------------------|--|----------------------|---------------------------------------|--------|---|
| Output Encoding      | The encoding used for the output stream of the FO processor which will be displayed in a results panel at the bottom of the <oXygen/> window.   |             |   |         |   |         |                        |                      |                                       |                   |  |                      |                                       |        |   |
| Error Encoding       | The encoding used for the error stream of the FO processor which will be displayed in a results panel at the bottom of the <oXygen/> window.  |             |   |         |   |         |                        |                      |                                       |                   |  |                      |                                       |        |   |
| Working directory    | <p>The directory in which the intermediate and final results of the processing will be stored. Here you can use one of the following editor variables:</p> <table border="0" style="margin-left: 20px;"> <tr> <td style="padding-right: 20px;">\${homeDir}</td> <td>The path to user home directory.</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="padding-right: 20px;">\${cfd}</td> <td>The path of current file directory. If the current file is not a local file the directory will be the user's Desktop directory.</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="padding-right: 20px;">\${pd}</td> <td>The project directory.</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="padding-right: 20px;">\${oxygenInstallDir}</td> <td>The &lt;oXygen/&gt; installation directory.</td> </tr> </table>   | \${homeDir} | The path to user home directory.              | \${cfd} | The path of current file directory. If the current file is not a local file the directory will be the user's Desktop directory. | \${pd}  | The project directory. | \${oxygenInstallDir} | The <oXygen/> installation directory. |                   |  |                      |                                       |        |   |
| \${homeDir}          | The path to user home directory.  |             |   |         |   |         |                        |                      |                                       |                   |  |                      |                                       |        |   |
| \${cfd}              | The path of current file directory. If the current file is not a local file the directory will be the user's Desktop directory.   |             |   |         |   |         |                        |                      |                                       |                   |  |                      |                                       |        |   |
| \${pd}               | The project directory.  |             |   |         |   |         |                        |                      |                                       |                   |  |                      |                                       |        |   |
| \${oxygenInstallDir} | The <oXygen/> installation directory.   |             |   |         |   |         |                        |                      |                                       |                   |  |                      |                                       |        |   |
| Command line         | <p>The command line that will start the FO processor, specific to each processor. Here you can use one of the following editor variables:</p> <table border="0" style="margin-left: 20px;"> <tr> <td style="padding-right: 20px;">\${method}</td> <td>The FOP transformation method (pdf, ps, txt).</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="padding-right: 20px;">\${fo}</td> <td>The input FO file.</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="padding-right: 20px;">\${out}</td> <td>The output file.</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="padding-right: 20px;">\${pd}</td> <td>The project directory.</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="padding-right: 20px;">\${frameworksDir}</td> <td>The path of the <code>frameworks</code> subdirectory of the &lt;oXygen/&gt; install directory.</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="padding-right: 20px;">\${oxygenInstallDir}</td> <td>The &lt;oXygen/&gt; installation directory.</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="padding-right: 20px;">\${ps}</td> <td>The separator which can be used on different operating systems between libraries specified in the class path.</td> </tr> </table> | \${method}  | The FOP transformation method (pdf, ps, txt). | \${fo}  | The input FO file.  | \${out} | The output file.       | \${pd}               | The project directory.                | \${frameworksDir} | The path of the <code>frameworks</code> subdirectory of the <oXygen/> install directory. | \${oxygenInstallDir} | The <oXygen/> installation directory. | \${ps} | The separator which can be used on different operating systems between libraries specified in the class path. |
| \${method}           | The FOP transformation method (pdf, ps, txt).   |             |   |         |   |         |                        |                      |                                       |                   |  |                      |                                       |        |   |
| \${fo}               | The input FO file.  |             |   |         |   |         |                        |                      |                                       |                   |  |                      |                                       |        |   |
| \${out}              | The output file.  |             |   |         |   |         |                        |                      |                                       |                   |  |                      |                                       |        |   |
| \${pd}               | The project directory.  |             |   |         |   |         |                        |                      |                                       |                   |  |                      |                                       |        |   |
| \${frameworksDir}    | The path of the <code>frameworks</code> subdirectory of the <oXygen/> install directory.  |             |   |         |   |         |                        |                      |                                       |                   |  |                      |                                       |        |   |
| \${oxygenInstallDir} | The <oXygen/> installation directory.   |             |   |         |   |         |                        |                      |                                       |                   |  |                      |                                       |        |   |
| \${ps}               | The separator which can be used on different operating systems between libraries specified in the class path.   |             |   |         |   |         |                        |                      |                                       |                   |  |                      |                                       |        |   |

## XPath

The XPath preferences panel is opened from menu Options → Preferences+XML+XSLT/FO/XQuery+XPath

**Figure 20.51. The XPath preferences panel**



Unescape XPath expression

When checked, unescapes the entities found in the XPath expression. For example the expression

```
//varlistentry[starts-with(@os, '&#x73;')]
```

is equivalent with

```
//varlistentry[starts-with(@os, 's')]
```

.

Multiple XPath results

When checked, results of different XPath expressions executed on the same file are written in separate result set tabs.

No namespace

If checked <Oxygen/> will consider unprefixed element names in XPath expressions evaluated in the XPath console as belonging to no namespace.

Use the default namespace from the root element

If checked <Oxygen/> will consider unprefixed element names in XPath expressions evaluated in the XPath console as belonging to the default namespace declared on the root element of the document.

Use the namespace of the root

If checked <Oxygen/> will consider unprefixed element names in XPath expressions evaluated in the XPath console as belonging to the same namespace as the root element of the document.

This namespace

The user has the possibility to enter here the namespace of the unprefixed elements used in the XPath console



Default prefix-namespace mappings Associates prefixes to namespaces. These mappings are useful when applying an XPath in XPath console and you don't have to define these mappings for each document separately.

The New button creates an editable prefix-namespace mapping.

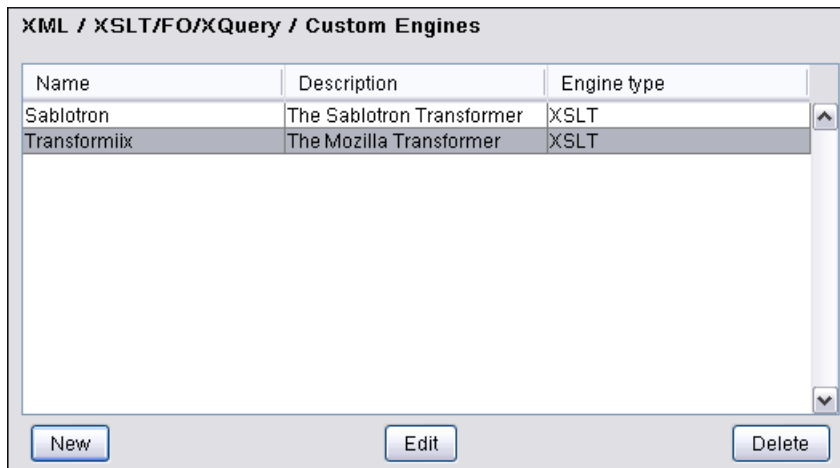
The Delete button deletes the selected mapping.

## Custom Engines

One can configure transformation engines other than the ones which come with the <oXygen/> distribution. Such an external engine can be used for XSLT / XQuery transformations within <oXygen/>, in the Editor perspective, and is available in the list of engines in the dialog for editing transformation scenarios.

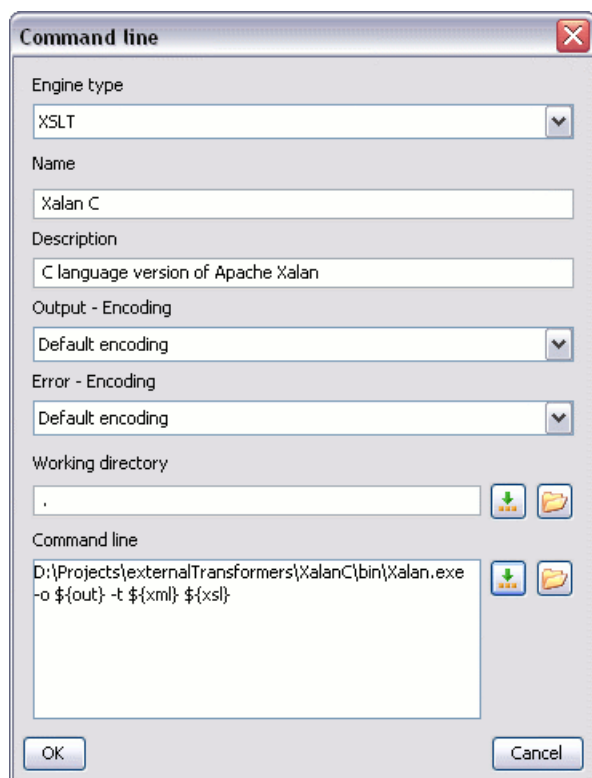
The Custom Engines preferences panel is opened from menu Options → Preferences+XML+XSLT/FO/XQuery+Custom Engines

**Figure 20.52. Configuration of custom transformation engines**



The following parameters can be configured for a custom engine:

**Figure 20.53. Parameters of a custom transformation engine**



|                   |  |
|-------------------|--|
| Engine type       | Combo box allowing you to choose the transformer type. There are two options: XSLT engines and XQuery engines.   |
| Name              | The name of the transformer displayed in the dialog for editing transformation scenarios   |
| Description       | Text description of the transformer  |
| Output Encoding   | The encoding of the characters sent to the output stream of the transformer  |
| Error Encoding    | The encoding of the characters sent to the error stream of the transformer   |
| Working directory | <p>The start directory of the transformer executable program. The following editor variables are available for making the path to the working directory independent of the input XML file:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>\${homeDir}</code> - the user home directory in the operating system</li> <li>• <code>\${cfd}</code> - the path to the directory of the current file</li> <li>• <code>\${pd}</code> - the path to the directory of the current project</li> <li>• <code>\${oxygenInstallDir}</code> - the &lt;oxygen/&gt; install directory</li> </ul> |
| Command line      | <p>The command line that must be executed by &lt;oxygen/&gt; to perform a transformation with the engine. The following editor variables are available for making the items of the command line (the transformer executable, the input files) independent of the input XML file:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>\${xml}</code> - the XML input document as a file path</li> </ul>  |

- `#{xmlu}` - the XML input document as a URL
- `#{xsl}` - the XSL / XQuery input document as a file path
- `#{xslu}` - the XSL / XQuery input document as a URL
- `#{out}` - the output document as a file path
- `#{outu}` - the output document as a URL
- `#{ps}` - the separator which can be used on different operating systems between libraries specified in the class path.

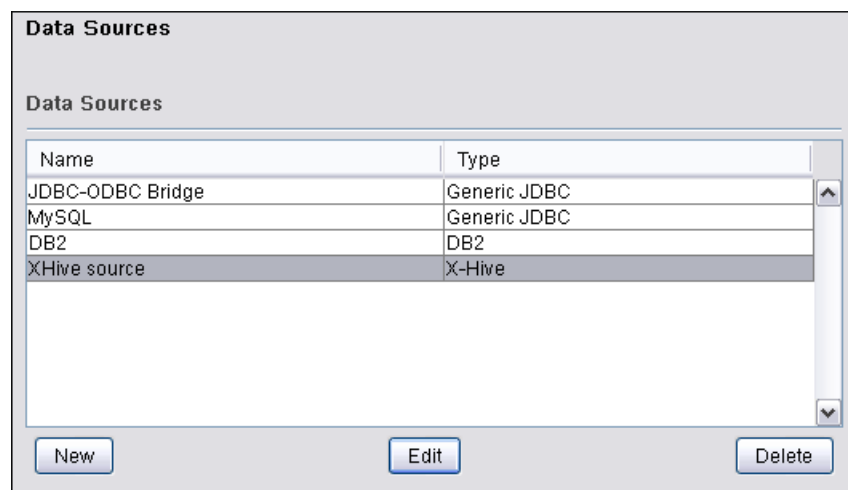
## Data Sources

The Data Sources preferences panel is opened from menu Options → Preferences+Data Sources

### Configuration of Data Sources

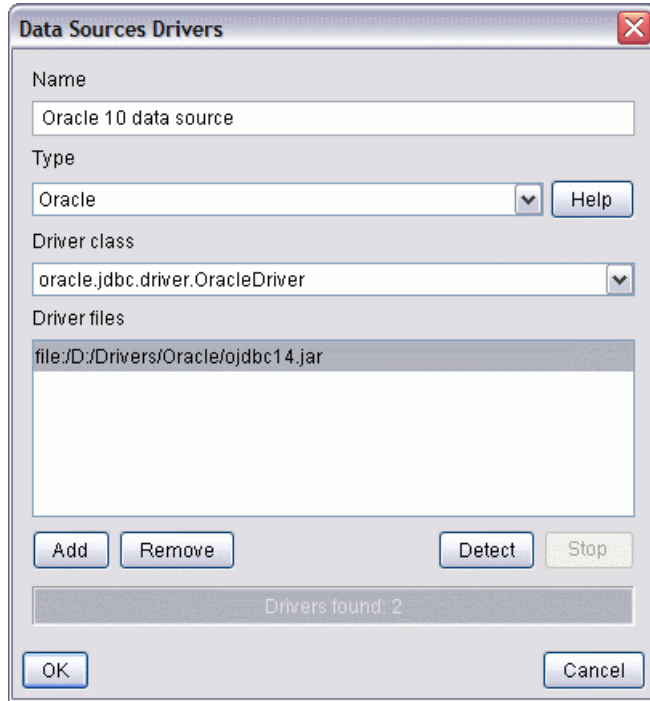
Here you can configure data sources and connections to relational databases as well as native XML databases. You can check the list of drivers ([http://www.oxygenxml.com/database\\_drivers.html](http://www.oxygenxml.com/database_drivers.html)) available for the major database servers.

**Figure 20.54. The Data Sources preferences panel**

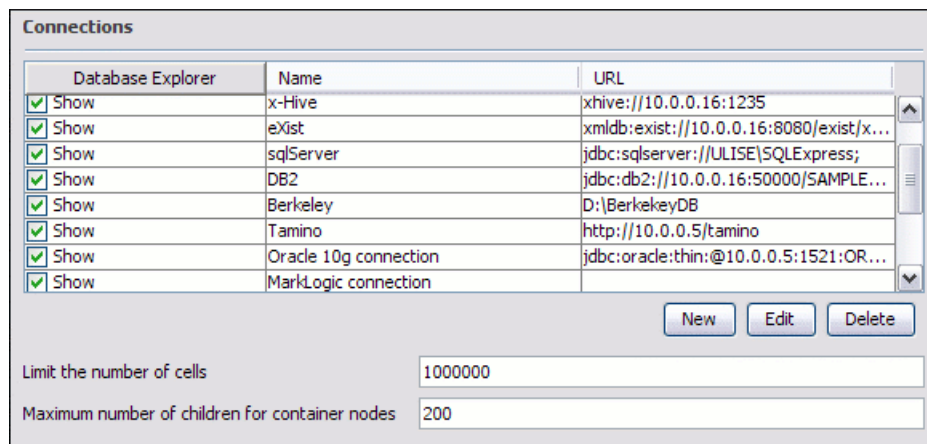


**New** Opens the Data Sources Drivers dialog, allowing you to configure a new driver.

**Figure 20.55. The Data Sources Drivers dialog**



|              |  |
|--------------|--|
| Name         | Allows you to name the new data source driver.   |
| Type         | Select data source type from the supported driver types.   |
| Help         | Open the User Manual at the list of the sections where the configuration of supported data sources is explained and the URLs for downloading the database drivers are specified.   |
| Driver Class | Provide the Driver Class for the data source driver  |
| Add          | Adds the driver class library.   |
| Remove       | Removes driver class library from the list.  |
| Detect       | Detects driver candidates.   |
| Stop         | Stops the detection of the driver candidates.  |
| Edit         | Opens the Data Sources Drivers dialog, allowing you to edit the selected driver. See above the specifications for the Data Sources Drivers dialog (in order to edit a data source , there must be no connections using that data source driver). |
| Delete       | Deletes the selected Data Source Driver (in order to delete a data source , there must be no connections using that data source driver).   |

**Figure 20.56. The Connections preferences panel**

### Note

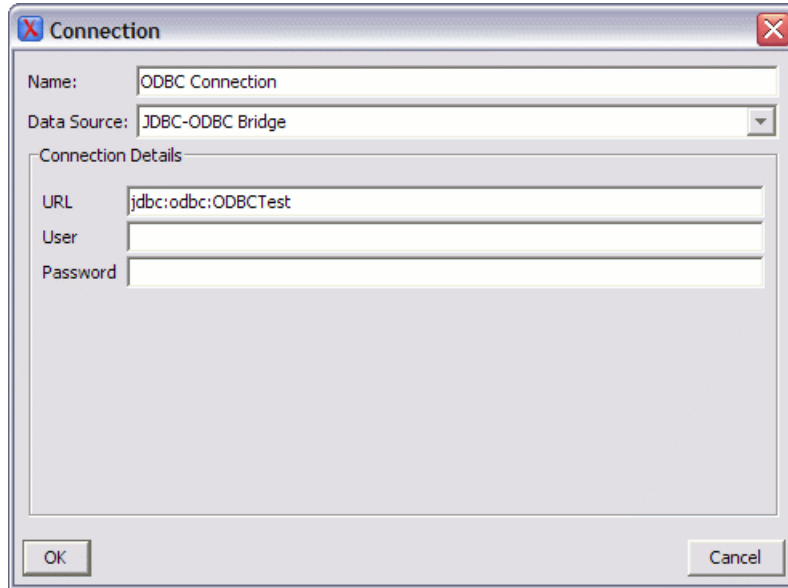
Checked connections will be visible in the *Data Source Explorer View*.

For performance issues, you can set the maximum number of cells that will be displayed in the Table Explorer view. Leave the field *Limit the number of cells* empty if you want the entire content of the table to be displayed. By default this field is set to 2,000. If a table having more cells than the value set here is displayed in the Table Explorer view, a warning dialog will inform you that the table is only partially shown.

In Oracle XML and Tamino databases a container can hold millions of resources. If the node corresponding to such a container in the Data Source Explorer view would display all the contained resources at the same time the performance of the view would be very slow. To prevent such a situation only a limited number of the contained resources is displayed as child nodes of the container node. Navigation to other contained resources from the same container is enabled by the *Up* and *Down* buttons of the Data Source Explorer view. This limited number is set in the option *Maximum number of children for container nodes*. The default value is 200 nodes.

**New**      Opens the Connection dialog.

**Figure 20.57. The Connection dialog**



Name                    Allows you to name the new connection.

Data Source            Select data source defined in the Data Source Drivers dialog.

Depending upon the selected Data Source, you can set some of the following parameters in the *Connection details* area:

URL:                                    The URL used to connect.

User:                                    Provide the database user .

Password:                                Provide the database password.

Host:                                    Provide the host address.

Port:                                    Provide a port to connect.

XML DB URI:                            Provide the database URI to connect.

Database:                                Provide the initial database.

Collection:                             Select one of the available collections for the specified data source.

Environment home directory:        Specify the home directory for a Berkeley database.

Verbosity:                              Set the verbosity level for a Berkeley database.

Edit                    Opens the Connection dialog, allowing you to edit the selected connection. See above the specifications for the Connection dialog.

Delete                Deletes the selected connection.

## Download links for database drivers

You can find below the locations where you have to go to get the drivers necessary for accessing databases in <oXygen/>

|   |  |
|---|--|
| Berkeley DB XML database                  | Copy the jar files from the Berkeley database install directory to the <oXygen/> install directory as described in the procedure for configuring a Berkeley DB data source.  |
| IBM DB2 Pure XML database                 | Go to the IBM website: <a href="http://www-306.ibm.com/software/data/db2/express/download.html">http://www-306.ibm.com/software/data/db2/express/download.html</a> [http://www-306.ibm.com/software/data/db2/express/download.html], in the <i>DB2 Clients and Development Tools</i> category select the <i>DB2 Driver for JDBC and SQLJ</i> download link, fill the download form and download the zip file. Unzip the zip file and use the db2jcc.jar and db2jcc_license_cu.jar files in <oXygen/> for configuring a DB2 data source.  |
| eXist database                            | Copy the jar files from the eXist database install directory to the <oXygen/> install directory as described in the procedure for configuring an eXist data source.  |
| MarkLogic database                        | Download Java and .NET XCC distributions (XCC Connectivity Packages) from <a href="http://xqzone.marklogic.com/download/#XCC">http://xqzone.marklogic.com/download/#XCC</a> . Details about configuring a MarkLogic data source are here.  |
| Microsoft SQL Server 2005 / 2008 database | Both SQL Server 2005 and SQL Server 2008 are supported. Download the SQL Server 2005 JDBC driver called <code>sqljdbc.jar</code> from the Microsoft website: <a href="http://www.microsoft.com/downloads/details.aspx?familyid=C47053EB-3B64-4794-950D-81E1EC91C1BA&amp;displaylang=en">http://www.microsoft.com/downloads/details.aspx?familyid=C47053EB-3B64-4794-950D-81E1EC91C1BA&amp;displaylang=en</a> and use it for configuring an SQL Server data source. Download the SQL Server 2008 JDBC driver called <code>sqljdbc4.jar</code> from the Microsoft website: <a href="http://www.microsoft.com/downloads/details.aspx?FamilyID=99b21b65-e98f-4a61-b811-19912601fdc9&amp;displaylang=en">http://www.microsoft.com/downloads/details.aspx?FamilyID=99b21b65-e98f-4a61-b811-19912601fdc9&amp;displaylang=en</a> and use it for configuring an SQL Server data source. |
| Oracle 11g database                       | Download the Oracle 11g JDBC driver called <code>ojdbc5.jar</code> from the Oracle website: <a href="http://www.oracle.com/technology/software/tech/java/sqlj_jdbc/index.html">http://www.oracle.com/technology/software/tech/java/sqlj_jdbc/index.html</a> [http://www.oracle.com/technology/software/tech/java/sqlj_jdbc/index.html] and use it for configuring an Oracle data source.   |
| PostgreSQL 8.3 database                   | Download the PostgreSQL 8.3 JDBC driver called <code>postgresql-8.3-603.jdbc3.jar</code> from the PostgreSQL website: <a href="http://jdbc.postgresql.org/download.html">http://jdbc.postgresql.org/download.html</a> and use it for configuring a PostgreSQL data source.   |
| RainingData TigerLogic XDMS database      | Copy the jar files from the TigerLogic JDK lib directory from the server side to the <oXygen/> install directory as described in the procedure for configuring a TigerLogic data source.   |
| SoftwareAG Tamino database                | Copy the jar files from the SDK\TaminoAPI4J\lib subdirectory of the Tamino database install directory to the <oXygen/> install directory as described in the procedure for configuring a Tamino data source.   |
| Documentum xDb (X-Hive/DB) XML database   | Copy the jar files from the Documentum xDb (X-Hive/DB) database install directory to the <oXygen/> install directory as described in the procedure for configuring an XHive data source.   |

## MySQL database

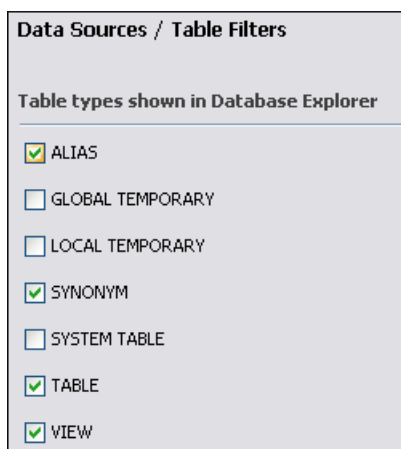
A MySQL driver file is included in the Oxygen kit. The installer creates the file `mysql.jar` in the folder `[Oxygen-install-folder]/lib`. When creating a new data source select the type *Generic JDBC* and add the file `[Oxygen-install-folder]/lib/mysql.jar` in *Driver files*. If you want to connect to a MySQL 5 server you may need the latest driver from the MySQL website: <http://dev.mysql.com/downloads/connector/j/5.1.html>

## Table Filters

The Table Filters preferences panel is opened from menu `Options → Preferences+Data Sources+Table Filters`

Here you can choose which of the table types will be displayed in the *Data Source Explorer* view.

**Figure 20.58. Table Filters Preferences Page**



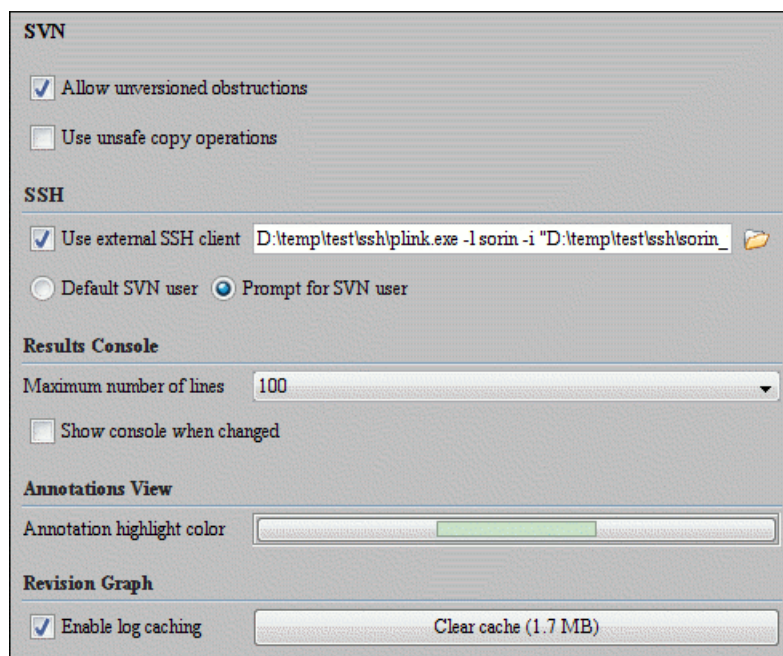
### Note

Table types filtering depends on the driver implementation.

## SVN

The SVN preferences panel is opened from menu `Options → Preferences+SVN` and it is the place where the user preferences for the embedded SVN client tool are configured. More preferences that configure how the embedded SVN client tool works can be set in the global files called 'config' and 'servers', that is the files with parameters that act as defaults applied to all the SVN client tools that are used by the same user on his login account on the computer. These files can be opened for editing with the two edit actions available in the SVN client tool on the *Global Runtime Configuration* submenu of the *Options* menu.



**Figure 20.59. The SVN preferences panel**

- Enable symbolic link support (*available only on Mac OS X and Linux*) - Subversion has the ability to put a symbolic link under version control, via the usual SVN add command. The Subversion repository has no internal concept of a symbolic link, it stores a "versioned symbolic link" as an ordinary file with a 'svn:special' property attached. The SVN client (on Unix) sees the property and translates the file into a symbolic link in the working copy.

### Note

Win32 has no symbolic links, so a Win32 client won't do any such translation: the object appears as a normal file.

If the symbolic link support is disabled then the versioned symbolic links, on Linux and OS X, are supported in the same way as on Windows - i.e. a text file instead of symbolic link is created.

### Important

It is recommended to disable symbolic links support if you do not have versioned symbolic links in your repository, because the SVN operations will work faster. However, you should not disable this option when you do have versioned symbolic links in repository. In that case a workaround would be to refer to working copy by its "real" path, not path that includes a symbolic link.

- Allow unversioned obstructions - This options controls how should be handled working copy resources being ignored/unversioned when performing an update operation and from the repository are incoming files with the same name, in the same location, that intersect with those being ignored/unversioned. If the option is enabled, then the incoming items will become BASE revision of the ones already present in the working copy, and those present will be made versioned resources and will be marked as modified. Exactly as if the user first made the update operation and after that he/she modified the files. If the option is disabled, the update operation will fail when encountering files in this situation, possibly leaving other files not updated. By default, this option is enabled.
- Use unsafe copy operations - Sometimes when the working copy is accessed through Samba and SVN client cannot make a safe copy of the committed file due to a delay in getting write permission the result is that the committed

file will be saved with zero length (the content is removed) and an error will be reported. In this case this option should be selected so that SVN client does not try to make the safe copy.

- SSH - here you can specify the command line for an external SSH client which will be used when connecting to a SVN+SSH repository. Absolute paths are recommended for the SSH client executable and the file paths given as arguments(if any). Depending on the SSH client used and your SSH server configuration you may need to specify in the command line the username and/or privatekey/passphrase. Here you can also choose if the default SVN user will be used(the same as the SSH client user) or you should be prompted for a user whenever SVN authentication is required. For example on Windows the following command line uses the plink.exe tool as external SSH client for connecting to the SVN repository with SVN+SSH:

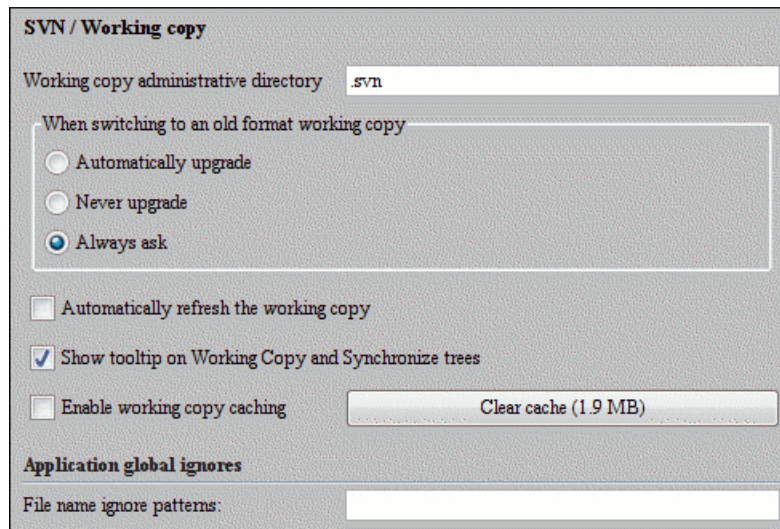
```
C:\plink-install-folder\plink.exe -l username -pw password -ssh -batch host_name_or_IP_a
```

- Results Console - here you can specify the maximum number of lines displayed in the *Console View* and if the Console view should come to the foreground when there is some output that is displayed in this view.
- Annotations View - here you can set the color used for highlighting in the editor panel all the changes contributed to a resource by the revision selected in the Annotations view.
- Revision Graph - here you can enable caching for the action of computing a revision graph. When a new revision graph is requested one of the caches from the previous actions may be used which will avoid running the whole query again on the SVN server which will finish the action much faster.

## Working Copy

The SVN Working Copy panel is open from menu Options → Preferences → SVN → Working copy and it contains options that are specific to SVN working copy.

**Figure 20.60. The Working copy panel**



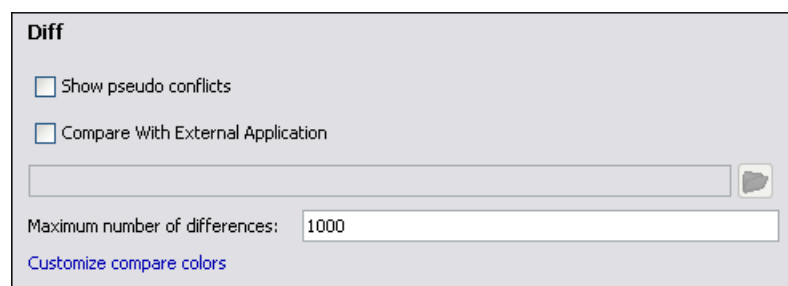
- Working copy administrative directory - allows you to customize the directory name where the svn entries are kept for each directory in the working copy.
- When switching to an old format working copy you can instruct Syncro SVN Client to do one of the following:
  - Automatically upgrade - older format working copies will be upgraded to the newest known format.

- Never upgrade - older format working copies are left untouched. No attempt to upgrade the format is made.
- Always ask - you will be notified when such a working copy is used and you are allowed to choose what action to be taken - to upgrade or not the format of the current working copy.
- Automatically refresh the working copy - if this checkbox is selected the working copy is refreshed from cache. Only the new changes are refreshed from disk.
- Show tooltip on Working Copy and Synchronize trees - for each file and folder a tooltip is displayed with details like SVN status, full path, current revision number, last changed date, etc.
- Enable working copy caching - if it is selected the content of the working copies is cached for refresh operations.
- Application global ignores - allows setting file patterns that may include the \* and ? wildcards for unversioned files and folders that must be ignored when displaying the working copy resources in the Working Copy view.

## SVN Diff

The SVN Diff preferences panel is opened from menu Options → Preferences+SVN+Diff and it allows you set the compare options for SVN.

**Figure 20.61. The SVN Diff preferences panel**



- Show pseudo conflicts - it allows you to specify if you want to see *pseudo-conflicts* in the Compare view. A pseudo conflict occurs when two developers make the same change, for example when both add or remove the same line of code.
- Compare With External Application - you can specify an external application to be launched for compare operations in the following cases: when two history revisions are compared, when the working copy file is compared with a history revision or when a conflict is edited. The parameters `#{firstFile}` and `#{secondFile}` specify the positions of the two compared files in the command line for the external diff application.
- Maximum number of differences - you can change the maximum number of differences allowed in the view.

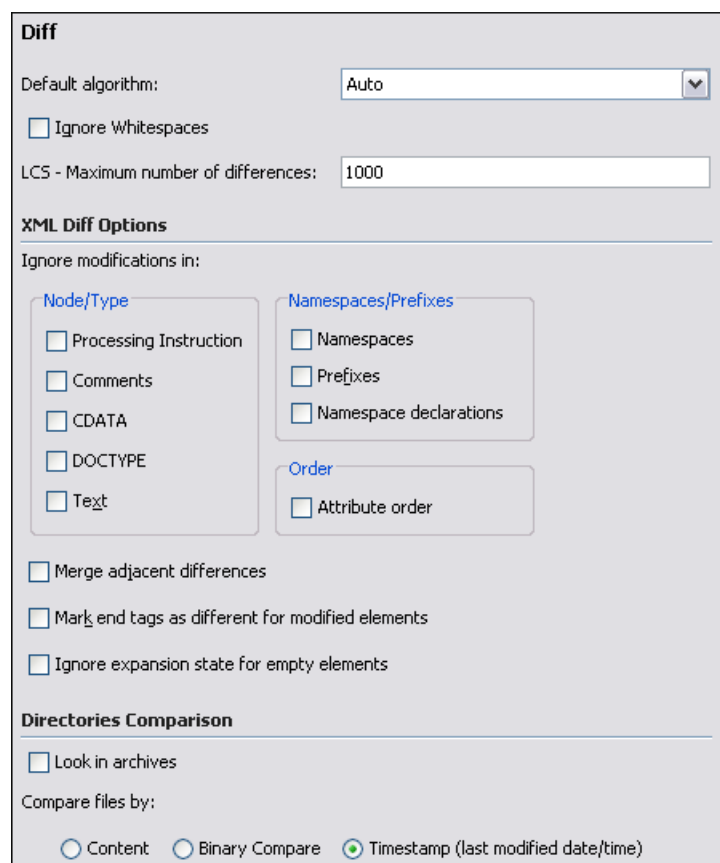
## Diff

<oXygen/> XML Author offers both directory and file comparison, six different diff algorithms to choose from for file comparison and multiple levels of comparison.

The complete diff solution includes two XML diff algorithms (*XML Fast* and *XML Accurate*), one *Syntax Aware* algorithm that gives very good results on all file types known by <oXygen/> XML Author and three all-purpose algorithms: line based, word based and character based. Any algorithm can be used to perform differences on request, but <oXygen/> XML Author offers also an automatic selection of the algorithm, selecting the most appropriate one based on the files' content and size.

The Diff preferences panel is opened from menu Options → Preferences+Diff

**Figure 20.62. The Diff preferences panel**



**Default algorithm**

Select from the list the algorithm that will be used as default when you open the Compare files dialog

- *Auto* makes an automatic selection of the diff algorithm, based on the files' content and size.
- *Characters* computes the differences at character level.
- *Words* computes the differences at word level..
- *Lines* computes the differences at line level.
- *Syntax aware* : for the file types known by <oXygen/> XML Author , this algorithm computes the differences taking into consideration the syntax of the documents.
- *XML Fast* is designed for XML documents. It works better than XML Accurate on large files, but it is less precise.
- *XML Accurate* is designed for XML documents. It works best on smaller XML files and it is most precise.

 **Note**

XML Fast and XML Accurate work for XML documents. If you'll try to use them for other types of files, you'll be prompted with the message "content not allowed in prolog"

|  |   |
|--|---|
| Ignore whitespaces                               | This option, if checked, allows the diff algorithm to ignore the whitespaces. Ignoring whitespace means that before the strings are compared they are first normalized and then the whitespace at the beginning and the end of the strings is trimmed.  |
| LCS - Maximum number of differences              | This option allows you to specify the maximum number of differences between your documents that you might be interested to see (using the Longest Common Subsequence Algorithm). If the number of differences is larger than the one specified here, you'll be notified by the message "Too many differences".  |
| XML Diff Options                                 | <p>This set of options allows you to specify the types of differences that will be ignored in the XML Fast and XML Accurate algorithms:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• in node / type:             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Processing instructions</li> <li>• Comments</li> <li>• CDATA</li> <li>• DOCTYPE</li> <li>• Text</li> </ul> </li> <li>• in namespaces / prefixes             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Namespaces</li> <li>• Prefixes</li> <li>• Namespace declarations</li> </ul> </li> <li>• in the attributes order</li> </ul> |
| Merge adjacent differences                       | If checked, it considers adjacent differences as one and they are presented in this way in the side-by-side editors. If unchecked, every difference is represented separately.  |
| Mark end tags as different for modified elements | If checked, end tags of modified elements are presented as differences.   |
| Ignore expansion state for empty elements        | If checked, empty elements in both expansion states are considered matched.   |

For the directories comparison you can specify the criterion for the component files comparison and a default file filter.

### Directories Comparison

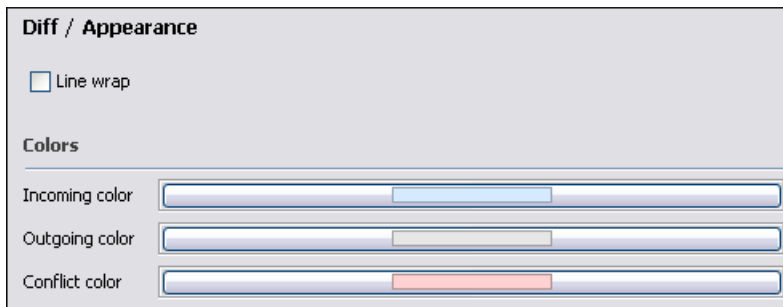
Look in archives:                      If checked, the Diff directories comparator will treat archives known by <oxygen/> XML Author as directories and show differences also between files inside them.

- Compare files by:                   The methods used to compare the files in diff directories.
- Content - The files content is compared using the current diff algorithm. Also all the xml diff options are used at comparison.
  - Binary Compare - The files are compared at byte level.
  - Timestamp (last modified date/time) - The files timestamp is compared.
- Default file filter                   specifies the file filter that is set by default in the *File filter* combo box of the Compare Directories window each time this window is opened from the *Tools* menu.

## Diff Appearance

The Diff Appearance preferences panel is opened from menu Options → Preferences+Diff+Appearance

**Figure 20.63. The Diff appearance preferences panel**

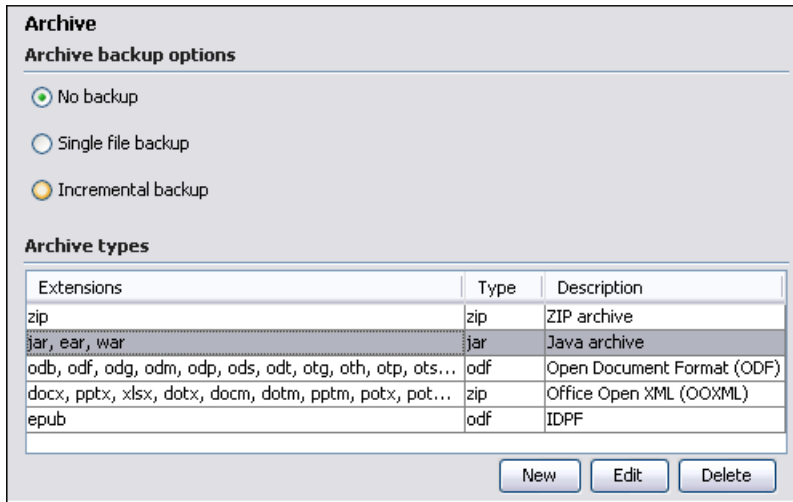


- Line wrap                   If checked the lines presented in the two diff panels are wrapped at the right margin of each panel so that no horizontal scrollbar is necessary.
- Incoming color               The color used for incoming changes on the vertical bar that shows the differences between the files compared.
- Outgoing color              The color used for outgoing changes on the vertical bar that shows the differences between the files compared.
- Conflict color               The color used for conflicts on the vertical bar that shows the differences between the files compared.

## Archive

The *Archive* preferences panel is opened from menu Options → Preferences+Archive

**Figure 20.64. The Archive preferences panel**



The following options are available in the Archive preferences page:

The following archive backup options are considered default options for backup in the Archive Backup dialog.

No backup

Perform no backup of the archive before save. This means that the file will be saved directly in the archive without any additional precautions.

Single file backup

Before any operation which modifies the archive is performed, the archive contents will be duplicated. The duplicate file name will be `originalArchiveFileName.bak` and will be saved in the same directory.

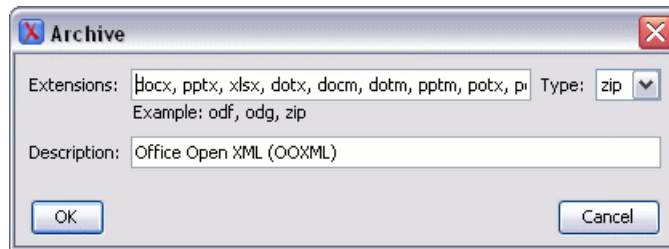
Incremental backup

Before each operation which modifies the archive is performed, the archive contents will be duplicated. The duplicate file names will be `originalArchiveFileName.bak#dupNo` and the files will be saved in the same directory.

Archive types table

This table contains all known archive extensions mapped to known archive formats. You can edit the table to modify existing mappings or add your own extensions to the list of known archive extensions.

**Figure 20.65. Edit the Archive extension mappings**



You can map a list of extensions to an archive type supported in `<oXygen/>`.

## ! Important

You have to restart <oXygen/> after removing an extension from the table in order for that extension to not be recognised anymore as an archive extension.

## Plugins

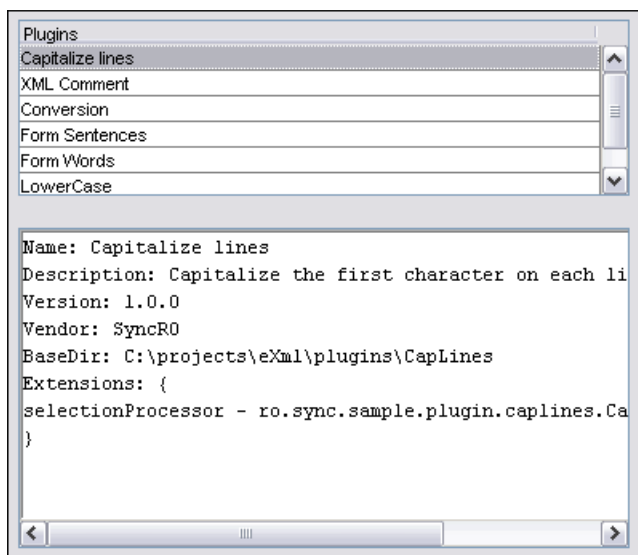
<oXygen/> provides the ability to add plugins that extend the functionality of the application. The plugins are shipped as separate packages; check for new plugins on <oXygen/> site: <http://www.oxygenxml.com>.

One plugin consists of a separate sub-folder in the Plugins folder in the <oXygen/> installation folder. This sub-folder must contain a valid plugin.xml in accordance with the plugin.dtd file from the Plugins folder.

<oXygen/> automatically detects and loads plugins correctly installed in the Plugins folder and displays them in the Plugin option from the Preferences dialog.

The Plugins preferences panel is opened from menu Options → Preferences+Plugins

**Figure 20.66. The Plugins preferences panel**



A short description of the plugin can be obtained with a click on the plugin name.

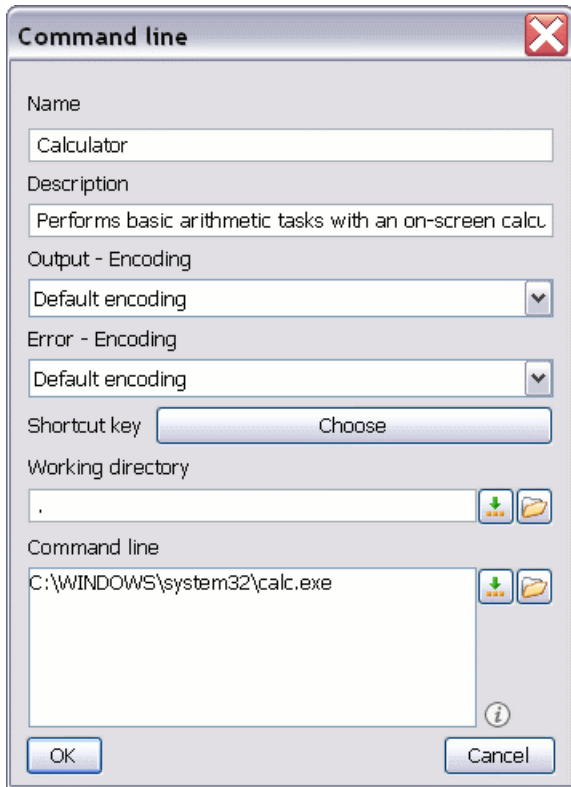
## External Tools

The External Tools preferences panel is opened from menu Options → Preferences+External Tools

The user can run within <oXygen/> other tools as if from the command line of the operating system shell. The configuration of such a tool is done in the following dialog.



**Figure 20.67. The external tools configuration dialog**



|                                   |   |                          |  |                      |                                     |                     |                        |                                   |  |
|-----------------------------------|---|--------------------------|--|----------------------|-------------------------------------|---------------------|------------------------|-----------------------------------|--|
| Name                              | The name of the menu entry corresponding to this tool that will be displayed in the External Tools menu and in the external tools combo box on the toolbar.   |                          |  |                      |                                     |                     |                        |                                   |  |
| Description                       | The description of the tool displayed in the Preferences->External Tools option.  |                          |  |                      |                                     |                     |                        |                                   |  |
| Output Encoding                   | The encoding that <oXygen/> uses to read the output stream data of the external tool.   |                          |  |                      |                                     |                     |                        |                                   |  |
| Error Encoding                    | The encoding that <oXygen/> uses to read the error stream data of the external tool.  |                          |  |                      |                                     |                     |                        |                                   |  |
| Shortcut key                      | The keyboard shortcut that launches the external tool.  |                          |  |                      |                                     |                     |                        |                                   |  |
| Working directory                 | The directory the external tool will use to store intermediate and final results. Here you can use one of the following editor variables: <table border="0" style="margin-left: 20px;"> <tr> <td><code>\${homeDir}</code></td> <td>The path to user home directory.</td> </tr> <tr> <td><code>\${cfd}</code></td> <td>The path of current file directory.</td> </tr> <tr> <td><code>\${pd}</code></td> <td>The project directory.</td> </tr> <tr> <td><code>\${oxygenInstallDir}</code></td> <td>The installation directory of &lt;oXygen/&gt;.</td> </tr> </table> | <code>\${homeDir}</code> | The path to user home directory.                   | <code>\${cfd}</code> | The path of current file directory. | <code>\${pd}</code> | The project directory. | <code>\${oxygenInstallDir}</code> | The installation directory of <oXygen/>. |
| <code>\${homeDir}</code>          | The path to user home directory.  |                          |  |                      |                                     |                     |                        |                                   |  |
| <code>\${cfd}</code>              | The path of current file directory.   |                          |  |                      |                                     |                     |                        |                                   |  |
| <code>\${pd}</code>               | The project directory.  |                          |  |                      |                                     |                     |                        |                                   |  |
| <code>\${oxygenInstallDir}</code> | The installation directory of <oXygen/>.  |                          |  |                      |                                     |                     |                        |                                   |  |
| Command line                      | The command line that will start the external tool. Here you can use one of the following editor variables: <table border="0" style="margin-left: 20px;"> <tr> <td><code>\${dbgXML}</code></td> <td>The path to the current Debugger source selection.</td> </tr> </table>  | <code>\${dbgXML}</code>  | The path to the current Debugger source selection. |                      |                                     |                     |                        |                                   |  |
| <code>\${dbgXML}</code>           | The path to the current Debugger source selection.  |                          |  |                      |                                     |                     |                        |                                   |  |

|                                   |  |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| <code>\${dbgXSL}</code>           | The path to the current Debugger stylesheet selection.   |
| <code>\${homeDir}</code>          | The path to user home directory.   |
| <code>\${cfn}</code>              | The current file name without extension.   |
| <code>\${cfne}</code>             | The current file name with extension.  |
| <code>\${cf}</code>               | The path of the currently edited file.   |
| <code>\${cfd}</code>              | The path of current file directory.  |
| <code>\${tsf}</code>              | Transformation result file.  |
| <code>\${pd}</code>               | The project directory.   |
| <code>\${oxygenInstallDir}</code> | The installation directory of the application.   |
| <code>\${frameworksDir}</code>    | The directory where the <oXygen/> frameworks are located.  |
| <code>\${ps}</code>               | The separator which can be used on different operating systems between libraries specified in the class path.                                    |
| <code>\${timeStamp}</code>        | Time Stamp - The current Unix time on the computer which can be used to save transformation results in different output files on each transform. |

 **Note**

The quote character (") is used to delimit parameters and files that have spaces in their names.

```
cmd /c dir "c:\samples\dir with spaces"
```

 **Note**

There are cases in which you need to specify in the command line a parameter that contains a quote. You will need to escape the quote by using the character: ^.

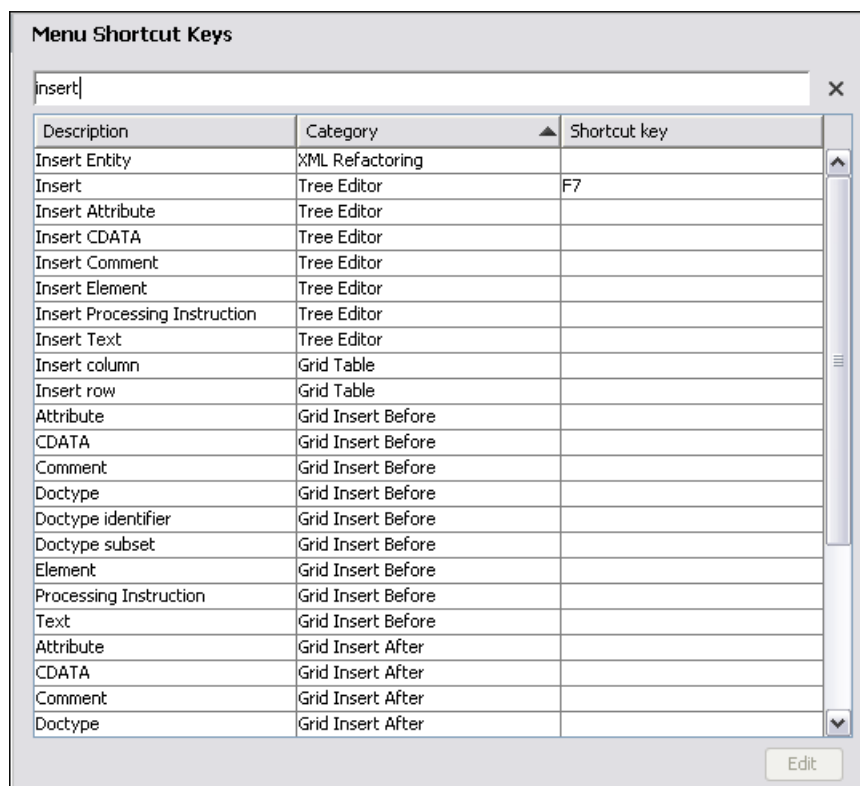
```
cmd /c dir "c:\samples\dir with ^"quotes^" and spaces"
```

## Menu Shortcut Keys

The user can configure in one place the keyboard shortcuts available for menu items available in <oXygen/> XML Author . The current shortcuts assigned to menu items are displayed in the following table.

The user can search an operation using the filter field by the operation's description, category or shortcut key.

The Menu Shortcut Keys preferences panel is opened from menu Options → Preferences+Menu Shortcut Keys

**Figure 20.68. The Menu Shortcut Keys preferences panel**

|   |  |
|---|--|
| Description                                     | A short description of the menu item operation.  |
| Category  | The shortcuts are classified in categories for easier management. For example the "Cut" operation for the source view is distinguished from the tree view one by assigning it to a separate category.  |
| Shortcut key                                    | The keyboard shortcut that launches the operation. Double-clicking on a table row or pressing the "Edit" button allows the user to register a new shortcut for the operation displayed on that row.  |
| 'Home' and 'End' keys are applied at line level | Option available only on the Mac OS X and controls the way the HOME and END keys are interpreted. If checked the default behaviour of the Mac OS X HOME and END keys will be overridden and the caret will move only on the current line. The default on the Mac is to move the caret to the beginning or end of the document. |

## File Types

<oXygen/> XML Author offers support for a wide variety of file types, but users are free to add new file types specified by extension and associate them with the editor type which fits better. The associations set here between a file extension and the type of editor which opens the file for editing have precedence over the default associations available in the File → Newdialog.

The File Types preferences panel is opened from menu Options → Preferences+File Types

**Figure 20.69. The File Types preferences panel**

The file types table can be edited to add the following information:

**Extension**      The new file types.

**Editor**          The type of editor which the extensions will be associated with. Some editors provide easy access to frequent operations via toolbars (e.g. XML editor, XSL editor, DTD editor) while other provide just a syntax highlight scheme (e.g. Java editor, SQL editor, Shell editor, etc.)

If the editor set here is not the XML Editor then the encoding set in the preference *Encoding for non XML files* is used for opening and saving a file of this type. This is necessary because in case of XML files the encoding is usually declared at the beginning of the XML file in a special declaration or it assumes the default value UTF-8 but in case of non XML files there is no standard mechanism for declaring the encoding of the file.

You can also decide the files which will be treated as DITA Maps when opened in Oxygen. If the files match the pattern you will be prompted to open them in the DITA Maps Manager.

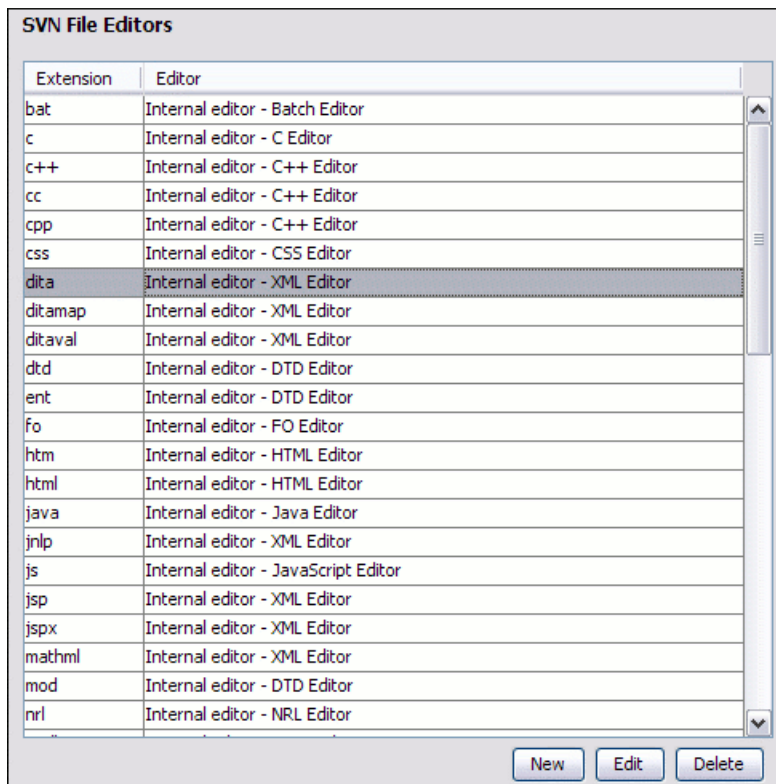
## SVN File Editors

Each type of file is associated with an editor which opens files of that type for editing. The editor can be the built-in one specially provided for the file type (for example the internal XML editor, the internal XSLT editor, the internal

XSL-FO editor, etc) or an external application installed on the computer, either the default system application associated with that file type in the operating system or other particular application specified by the path to its executable file. The list of all the associations file type - editor is displayed in the panel *SVN File Editors*.

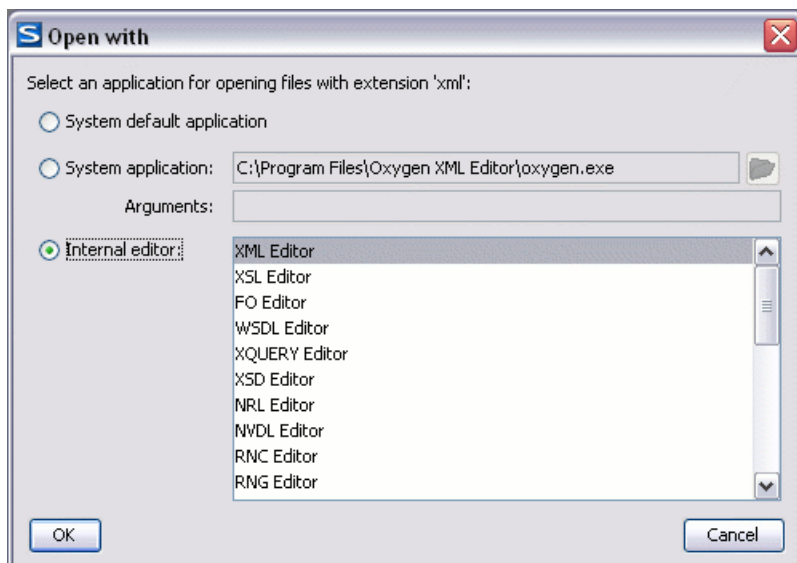
The SVN File Editors preferences panel is opened from menu Options → Preferences+SVN File Editors

**Figure 20.70. The SVN File Editors preferences panel**



The *Edit* button under the table or a double click on a table row opens a dialog for specifying the editor associated with the file type.

The same dialog is displayed and after an Open with action on a selected file from Syncro SVN Client.

**Figure 20.71. The Open With dialog for file type - editor associations**

In this dialog are offered three options for opening a file:

- System default application - this option allows you to open the selected file using the application that is associated with that file extension by default in your operating system;
- System application - opens the selected file using an external application that you have to specify by the path of its executable file. Also, you can specify some arguments for that application, if they are needed. This option also works for directories, if you wish to choose a file browser other than the system default.
- Internal editor - this options allows you to select an editor type from the built in editors that Syncro SVN Client comes with. By default, this option is disabled when selecting directories.

### Note

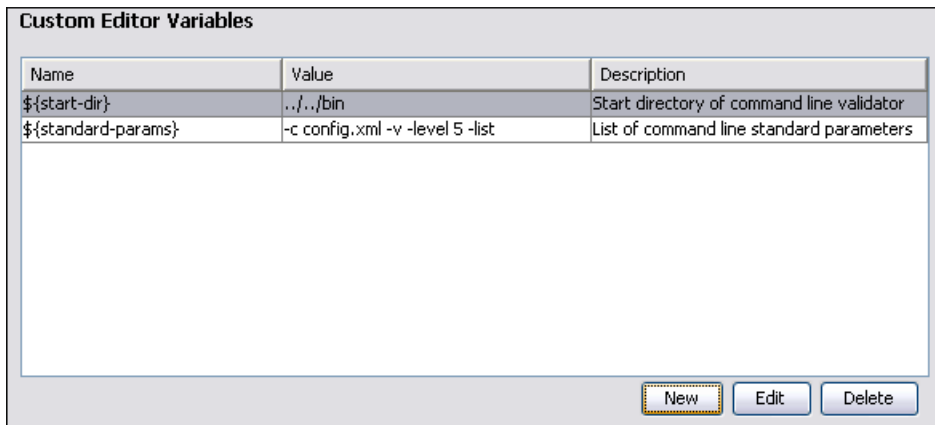
For opening a directory, you can choose one of the first two options. The System default application will be used to open that directory in the system built-in file browser (i.e. Windows Explorer for Windows, Finder for Mac OS X etc.), and the second one for opening that directory using a file browser other than the system default.

If a file type is associated with an internal editor other than the XML Editor then the encoding set in the preference *Encoding for non XML files* is used for opening and saving a file of that type. This is necessary because in case of XML files the encoding is usually declared at the beginning of the XML file in a special declaration or it assumes the default value UTF-8 but in case of non XML files there is no standard mechanism for declaring the encoding of the file.

## Custom Editor Variables

A custom editor variable is defined by a name, a string value and a text description and can be used in the same expressions where the built-in variables can be used, for example the command line of an external tool, the working directory of a custom external validator or the input URL of a transformation scenario. The string value will replace the name of the variable in the expression at runtime.

**Figure 20.72. Custom editor variables**

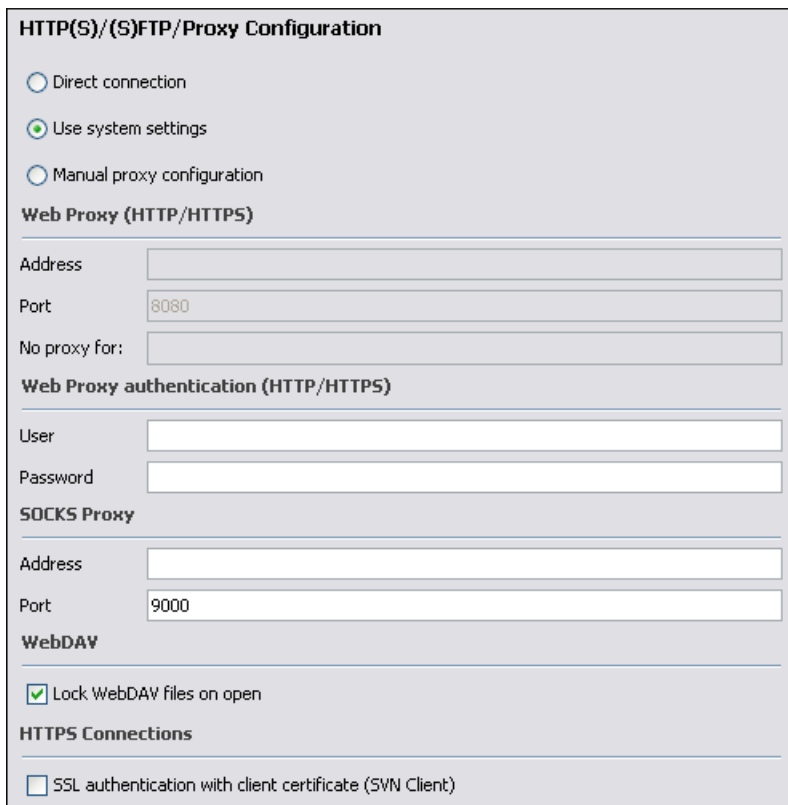


## HTTP(S) / (S)FTP / Proxy Configuration

Some networks use Proxy servers to provide Internet Services to LAN Clients. Clients behind the Proxy may therefore, only connect to the Internet via the Proxy Service. The Proxy Configuration dialog enables this configuration. If you are not sure whether your computer is required to use a Proxy server to connect to the Internet or the values required by the Proxy Configuration dialog, please consult your Network Administrator.

Open the HTTP(S) / (S)FTP / Proxy Configuration panel by selecting Options → Preferences+HTTP / HTTPS / FTP / SFTP / Proxy Configuration.

**Figure 20.73. The HTTP(S) / (S)FTP / Proxy Configuration preferences panel**



Complete the dialog as follows:

- Direct connection                      When checked the HTTP and HTTPS connections go directly to the target host without going through a proxy server.
- Use system settings                    When checked the HTTP and HTTPS connections go through the proxy server set in the operating system. For example on Windows the proxy settings are the ones available in Internet Explorer.

 **Warning**

The system settings for the proxy cannot be read correctly from the operating system on some Linux systems. The system settings option should work properly on Gnome based Linux systems but it does not work yet on KDE based ones as the Java virtual machine does not offer the necessary support yet  
[\[http://bugs.sun.com/bugdatabase/view\\_bug.do?bug\\_id=6385839\]](http://bugs.sun.com/bugdatabase/view_bug.do?bug_id=6385839).

- Manual proxy configuration            When checked the HTTP and HTTPS connections go through the proxy server specified in the fields *Address* and *Port* of the section *Web Proxy (HTTP / HTTPS)*. Also this section specifies the hosts to which the connections must not go through a proxy server.
- Web Proxy authentication (HTTP / HTTPS)    In this section one must set the user and password necessary for authentication with the proxy server. The user and password set here will be used both in case of manual proxy configuration and in case of system settings selected above.
- SOCKS Proxy                            In this section one must set host and port of a SOCKS proxy through which all the connections must pass. If the *Address* field is empty the connections will use no SOCKS proxy.
- Lock WebDAV files on open            If checked the files opened through WebDAV are locked on the server so that they cannot be edited by other users while the lock placed by the current user still exists.
- SSL authentication with client certificate    If checked and the SVN server accessed by the https protocol requires a digital certificate then the user is asked to specify the file containing a certificate in the PKCS format for accessing that server.

## Advanced HTTP Settings

Open the Advanced HTTP Settings preferences panel by selecting Options → Preferences → HTTP(S) / (S)FTP / Proxy Configuration+Advanced HTTP Settings.

**Figure 20.74. The Advanced HTTP Settings preferences panel**





|  |  |
|--|--|
| Automatic retry on recoverable error                               | If enabled, if a HTTP error occurs when <oXygen/> communicates with a server via HTTP, for example sending/receiving a SOAP request/response to/from a Web services server, and the error is recoverable, <oXygen/> tries to send again the request to the server.   |
| Enable HTTP 'Expect: 100-continue' handshake for HTTP/1.1 protocol | Activates 'Expect: 100-Continue' handshake. The purpose of the 'Expect: 100-Continue' handshake is to allow a client that is sending a request message with a request body to determine if the origin server is willing to accept the request (based on the request headers) before the client sends the request body. The use of the 'Expect: 100-continue' handshake can result in noticeable performance improvement when working with databases. 'Expect: 100-continue' handshake should be used with caution, as it may cause problems with HTTP servers and proxies that do not support HTTP/1.1 protocol. |
| Read Timeout (s)   | The period in seconds after which the application will consider a HTTP server is unreachable if it does not receive any response to a request sent to that server.   |

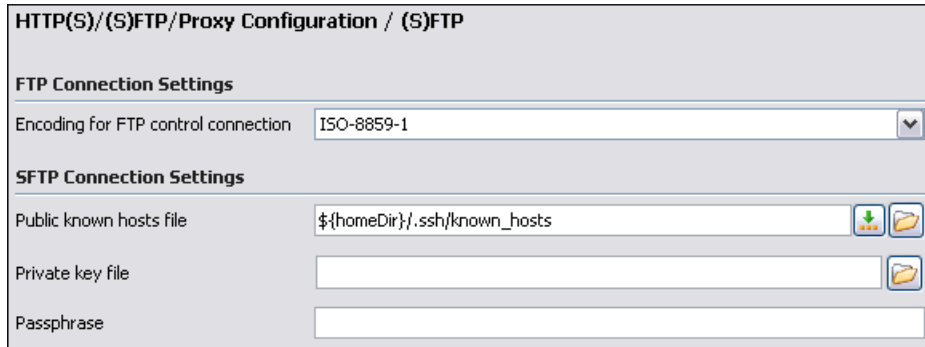
 **Tip**

If the *Automatic retry on recoverable error* option is checked the HTTP client will try to establish the connection twice so the timeout will be double the timeout specified here.

## (S)FTP

Open the (S)FTP preferences panel by selecting Options → Preferences → HTTP(S) / (S)FTP / Proxy Configuration+(S)FTP.

**Figure 20.75. The (S)FTP Configuration preferences panel**



|                                     |  |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| Public known hosts file             | File containing the list of all SSH server host keys that you have determined are accurate. The default file location is <code>\${homeDir}/.ssh/known_hosts..</code>   |
| Encoding for FTP control connection | The encoding used to communicate with FTP servers. It is one of ISO-8859-1 and UTF-8. If the server supports the UTF-8 encoding <oXygen/> will use it for communication. Otherwise it will use ISO-8859-1.                           |
| Private key file                    | The path to the file containing the private key used for the private key method of authentication of the secure FTP (SFTP) protocol. The user/password method of authentication has precedence if it is used in the Open URL dialog. |

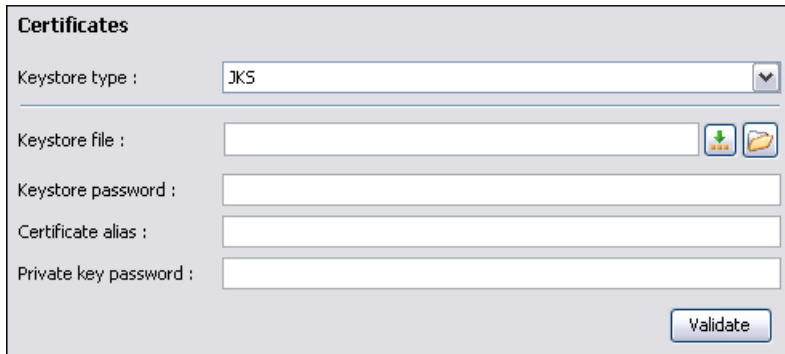
**Passphrase** The passphrase used for the private key method of authentication of the secure FTP (SFTP) protocol. The user/password method of authentication has precedence if it is used in the Open URL dialog.

## Certificates

In <Oxygen/> there are provided two types of Keystores: Java KeyStore (JKS) and Public-Key Cryptography Standards version 12 (PKCS-12). A keystore file is protected by a password.

The Certificates preferences panel is opened from menu Options → Preferences+Certificates

**Figure 20.76. The Certificates preferences panel**



|                      |  |
|----------------------|--|
| Keystore type        | Represents the type of keystore to be used.  |
| Keystore file        | Represents the location of the file to be imported.  |
| Keystore password    | The password which is used to protect the privacy of the stored keys.                                      |
| Certificate alias    | The alias to be used to store the key entry (the certificate and /or the private key) inside the keystore. |
| Private key password | It is only necessary in case of JKS keystore. It represents the certificate's private key password.        |
| Validate             | Verifies the entries from the fields; assures that the certificate is valid.                               |

## XML Structure Outline

The XML Structure Outline preferences panel is opened from menu Options → Preferences+Outline

**Figure 20.77. The XML Structure Outline preferences panel**



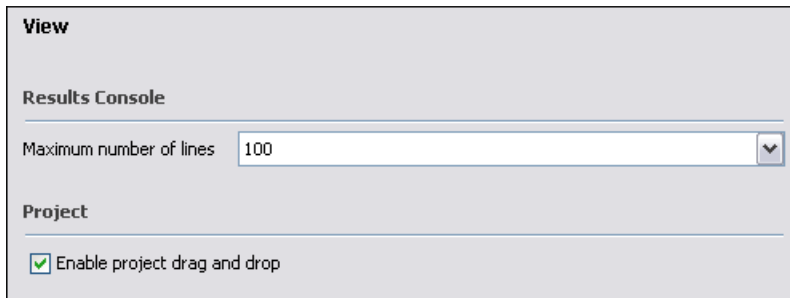
**Preferred attribute names for display** The attribute names which should be preferred when displaying element's attributes in the outline view. If there is no preferred attribute name specified the first attribute of an element is displayed in the outline view.

**Enable outline drag and drop** When drag and drop is disabled for the tree displayed by the outline view there is no possibility to accidentally change the structure of the document.

## View

The View preferences panel is opened from menu Options → Preferences+View

**Figure 20.78. The View preferences panel**



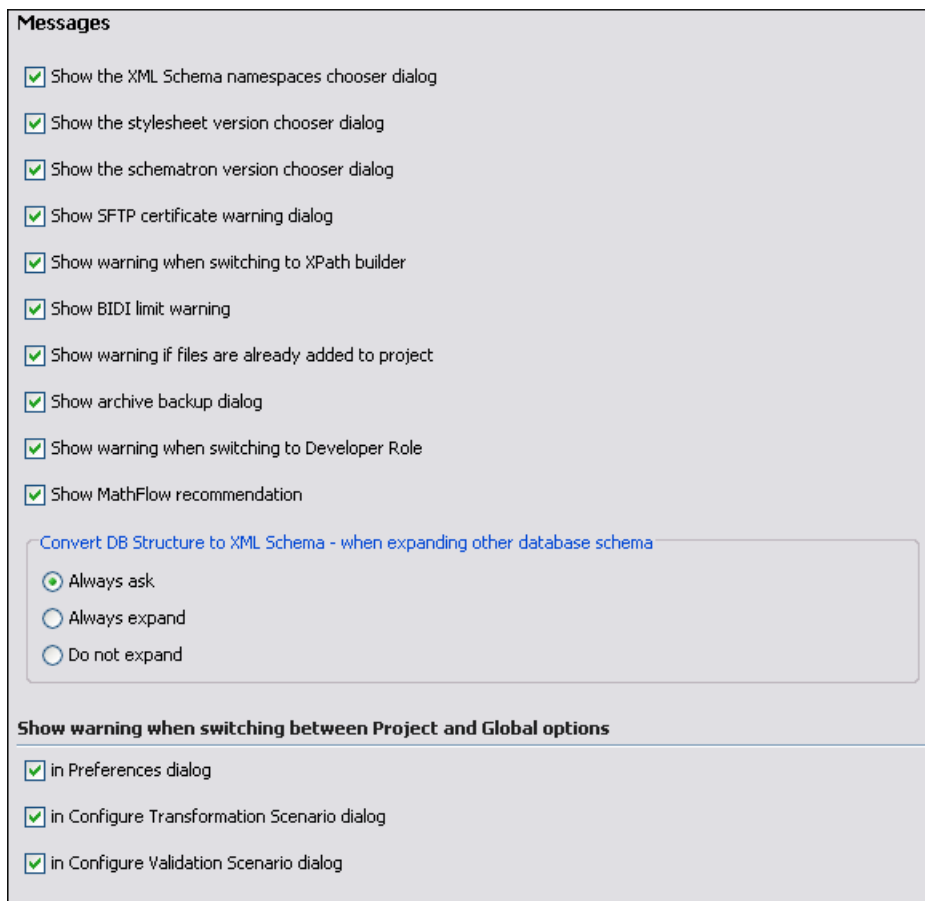
**Maximum number of lines** This option sets the maximum number of lines of the output console where the external tools place their output.

**Enable project drag and drop** This option enables the drag and drop support in Project view. When it is disabled there is no possibility to accidentally change the structure of the project.

## Messages

The Messages preferences panel is opened from menu Options → Preferences+Messages

**Figure 20.79. The Messages preferences panel**



This page allows disabling warning messages which may appear in the application.

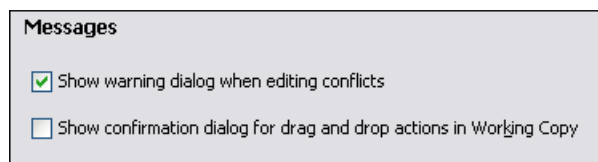
|  |   |
|--|---|
| Show the XML Schema namespaces chooser dialog      | If checked, the dialog appear when create a new XML schema file.  |
| Show the stylesheet version chooser dialog         | If checked, the version chooser dialog will be shown when creating a new stylesheet file.   |
| Show the schematron version chooser dialog         | If checked, the version chooser dialog will be shown when creating a new schematron file.   |
| Show SFTP Warning dialog                           | If checked, a warning dialog will be shown each time when the authenticity of the host cannot be established.   |
| Show warning when switching to XPath builder       | If checked, a warning dialog will be shown when the XPath toolbar contains a long expression and the user is advised to use the XPath Builder instead.      |
| Show BIDI limit warning                            | If checked, a warning dialog will be shown when the opened file which contains bidirectional characters is too large and bidirectional support is disabled. |
| Show warning if files are already added to project | If checked, a dialog will be shown warning the user if he wants to add to project an already existing file.   |

|  |   |
|--|---|
| Show archive backup dialog   | If checked, a dialog will be shown allowing the user different backup options before modifying an archive's content.  |
| Show warning when switching to Developer Role  | When checked, a warning dialog will be displayed when choosing to switch to developer role in the Document Type Association page.   |
| Show MathFlow recommendation   | When checked, if MathFlow components is not configured in Oxygen and you are trying to edit a MathML equation you will be notified that Oxygen can be easily configured to use the MathFlow editor.   |
| Convert DB Structure to XML Schema - when expanding other database schema                                  | When tables from a database schema are selected in the Select database table dialog, after the Convert DB Structure to XML Schema is invoked, and another database schema is expanded a confirmation is needed because the previous selection will be discarded. The option controls whether the user should always be asked about the next action, the other database schema will always be expanded or it will never be expanded. |
| Show warning when switching between Project and Global options in Preferences dialog                       | If checked, a warning dialog will be shown about uncommitted changes when switching between Project and Global options in a page.   |
| Show warning when switching between Project and Global options in Configure Transformation Scenario dialog | If checked, a warning dialog will be shown about uncommitted changes when switching between Project and Global options in the transformation scenarios edit dialog.   |
| Show warning when switching between Project and Global options in Configure Validation Scenario dialog     | If checked, a warning dialog will be shown about uncommitted changes when switching between Project and Global options in the validation scenarios edit dialog.   |

## SVN Messages

The SVN Messages preferences panel is opened from menu Options → Preferences+SVN+Messages

**Figure 20.80. The SVN Messages preferences panel**



This page allows disabling warning messages which may appear in the application.

|  |  |
|--|--|
| Show warning dialog when editing conflicts | If checked, when the <i>Edit Conflicts</i> action is executed in the SVN Client, a dialog will be shown that warns you that the action will overwrite the conflicted version of the file created by an update operation. The conflicted file will be overwritten with the version of the same file which existed in the working copy before the update operation and then proceeds with the visual editing of the conflict file. If the button Cancel is pressed in this warning dialog the <i>Edit Conflicts</i> action is aborted. |
|--|--|

Show confirmation dialog for drag and drop actions in Working Copy

Set this option to avoid doing a drag and drop when you just want to select multiple files in the Working Copy view and run the same action on all selected files, for example a Copy or a Commit.

## Sharing Preferences

By default all the settings are global and are stored in the user home directory.

**Figure 20.81. Controlling the Storage of the Preferences**



The values from each preference page can also be stored in the current project file. This allows you to create and share with your team an <oXygen/> project already configured. For instance you may decide that the default schema associations and catalogs must be shared. In this case you simply click the radio button "Project options", edit the values and then save your project. If you want to drop a option page from being stored into the project, you select the radio button "Global options".

### Note

The project settings have precedence over the global ones.

For instance, if you have changed a global option value, let say the line width used for pretty-print, and then you load a project that also defines a different line width for the pretty-print, <oXygen/> will use the value from the project.

### Note

If you change the global options and decide to move the current page to the project level, you need to press Apply to save your current changes. Otherwise, the current changes will be lost from the global options.

### Note

If you select "Global options" on a page that was at the project level, then the option values are removed from the project file when the project is saved.

## Automatically importing the preferences from the other distribution

If you want to use the settings from "standalone" in the Eclipse plugin just delete the file with the Eclipse plugin settings [user-home-dir]/Application Data/com.oxygenxml.author/oxyAuthorOptionsEc11.2.xml on Windows / [user-home-dir]/.com.oxygenxml.author/oxyAuthorOptionsEc11.2.xml on Linux, start Eclipse and the "standalone" settings will be automatically imported in Eclipse. The same for importing the Eclipse plugin settings in "standalone": delete the file [user-home-dir]/com.oxygenxml.author/oxyAuthorOptionsSa11.2.xml, start the <oXygen/> "standalone" distribution and the Eclipse settings will be automatically imported.

## Reset Global Options

To reset all custom user settings of the application that are stored in a local file (not in the project), to the installation defaults go to: Options → Reset Global Options The list of transformation scenarios will be reset to the default scenarios.

## Scenarios Management

You can import, export and reset the scenarios stored in the global options.

- The action Options → Import Global Transformation Scenarios loads a properties file with scenarios.
- The action Options → Export Global Transformation Scenarios stores all the scenarios in a separate properties file.
- The action Options → Import Global Validation Scenarios loads a properties file with scenarios.
- The action Options → Export Global Validation Scenarios stores all the scenarios in a separate properties file.

The option to Export Transformation/Validation Scenarios is used to store all the scenarios in a separate file , a properties file. In this file will also be saved the associations between document URLs and scenarios. The saved URLs are absolute. You can load the saved scenarios using Import Transformation Scenarios/Validation option. All the imported scenarios will have added to the name the word 'import'.

### Note

The scenarios are exported/imported from/in the global options, not from the project options. So be aware that the list of scenarios kept at the project level are not affected.

### Note

Starting with version 8, there is support for project level options. In this way sharing the options and scenarios with your team becomes simpler, as you can choose to store the settings directly into the project file, with no need for export/import operations. It is recommended to use the project level options. See the Preferences Sharing, Sharing the Transformation Scenarios and Sharing the Validation Scenarios sections for more details.

## Editor variables

An editor variable is a shorthand notation for a file path or directory path. It is used in the definition of a command (the input URL of a transformation, the output file path of a transformation, the command line of an external tool, etc.) to make the command generic. When the same command is applied the notation is expanded so that the same command has different effects depending on the actual value of the notation.

The following editor variables can be used in <oXygen/> commands:

|                                   |  |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| <code>\${oxygenHome}</code>       | Oxygen installation directory as URL   |
| <code>\${oxygenInstallDir}</code> | Oxygen installation directory  |
| <code>\${frameworks}</code>       | the path of the <code>frameworks</code> subdirectory of the <oXygen/> install directory as URL |
| <code>\${frameworksDir}</code>    | the path of the <code>frameworks</code> subdirectory of the <oXygen/> install directory        |

|                                 |  |
|---------------------------------|--|
| <code>\${home}</code>           | the path of the user home directory as URL   |
| <code>\${homeDir}</code>        | the path of the user home directory  |
| <code>\${pdu}</code>            | Project directory as URL   |
| <code>\${pd}</code>             | project directory - the path of the current project directory  |
| <code>\${pn}</code>             | project name- the name of the current project  |
| <code>\${cfdu}</code>           | current file directory url - the path of the current edited document up to the name of the parent directory as URL                               |
| <code>\${cfd}</code>            | current file directory - the path of the current edited document up to the name of the parent directory  |
| <code>\${cfn}</code>            | current file name - the name of the current edited document without extension and parent directory   |
| <code>\${cf}</code>             | current file - the absolute file path of the current edited document   |
| <code>\${currentFileURL}</code> | current file as URL - the absolute file path of the current edited document as URL   |
| <code>\${ps}</code>             | Path Separator - The separator which can be used on different operating systems between libraries specified in the class path.                   |
| <code>\${timeStamp}</code>      | Time Stamp - The current Unix time on the computer which can be used to save transformation results in different output files on each transform. |

## Custom editor variables

An editor variable can be created by the user and included in any user defined expression where a built-in editor variable is also allowed. For example a custom editor variable may be necessary for configuring the command line of an external tool, the working directory of a custom validator, the command line of a custom XSLT engine, a custom FO processor, etc. All the custom editor variables are listed together with the built-in editor variables, for example when editing the working directory or the command line of an external tool or of a custom validator, the working directory or a custom validator, etc.

Creating a custom editor variable is very simple: just specify the name that will be used in user defined expressions, the value that will replace the variable name at runtime and a textual description for the user of that variable.

An editor variable can be created also from a Java system property. For example the Java system property *var.name* can be inserted in any expression where built-in editor variables like `${currentFileURL}` are allowed with the expression `${system(var.name)}`.

An editor variable can be created also from an environment variable of the operating system. For example the environment variable *VAR\_NAME* can be inserted in any expression where built-in editor variables like `${currentFileURL}` are allowed with the expression `${env(VAR_NAME)}`.

The current date can be inserted at cursor location with the custom variable `${date(yyyy-MM-dd)}`. The date format is: the year with 4 digits, the month with 2 letters, the day with 2 letters.

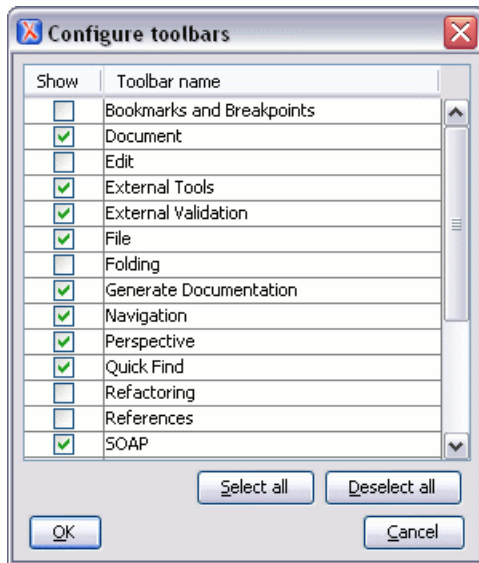
The custom editor variables are configured in Preferences.



# Configure toolbars

You can configure the toolbars that appear for the current Page using the Configure toolbars dialog from the Perspective → Configure toolbar... menu.

**Figure 20.82. Configure toolbars dialog**



---

# Chapter 21. Common problems

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| 21.1. <oXygen/> opens a XML document after a long time. Why does it happen? .....  | 575 |
| 21.2. I am trying to open a file larger than 70 MB for editing in <oXygen/> but it keeps telling me it runs out of memory. What can I do? .....  | 576 |
| 21.3. My file was created with other application and it contains special characters like é, ©, ®, etc. Why does <oXygen/> display a square for these characters? .....   | 576 |
| 21.4. When I start <oXygen/> XML Author on Windows XP I get the following error. What can I do? .....  | 576 |
| 21.5. I tried to start <oXygen/> on Windows but it crashed with an error message about “Fault Module Name: nvoglv32.dll”. How can I start <oXygen/> on my computer? .....  | 576 |
| 21.6. <oXygen/> crashed the Apple JVM/<oXygen/> could not start up on my Mac OS X computer due to a JVM crash. What can I do? .....  | 576 |
| 21.7. When I do a keyword search in the User Manual the search highlights the wrong word in the text, often several words after the keyword. Is this a bug? .....  | 577 |
| 21.8. The keyboard shortcuts listed in Options -> Preferences -> Menu Shortcut Keys do not work. What can I do? .....  | 577 |
| 21.9. Before installing Oxygen XML Editor/Author I had no problems viewing XML files in Internet Explorer but now Internet Explorer opens an XML file in Oxygen XML Editor/Author. How can I view XML files in Internet Explorer again? .....  | 577 |
| 21.10. I cannot associate the <oXygen/> application with a file type on my Windows computer by right clicking on a file in Windows Explorer, selecting Open With -> Choose Program and browsing to the file oxygen.exe. When I select the file oxygen.exe in the Windows file browser dialog and I click the <i>Open</i> button of the dialog the <oXygen/> application is not added to the list of applications in the <i>Open With</i> dialog of Windows. What can I do? ..... | 578 |
| 21.11. When I close the <oXygen/> application with multiple files open and then restart it, every file opens in a split panel of the editing area instead of a tab sharing with the other opened files the same editing area which organizes the editors in a tabbed pane. I want to have the files arranged as a tabbed pane as they used to be arranged before this restart of <oXygen/>. .....  | 578 |
| 21.12. I try to run <oXygen/> on Linux with the Compiz / Beryl window manager but I get only a grey window which does not respond to user actions / after opening and closing an <oXygen/> dialog or after resizing the <oXygen/> window or a view of the <oXygen/> window the content of this window becomes grey and it does not respond to user actions. What is wrong? .....   | 578 |
| 21.13. When I try to drag with the mouse an unselected resource from the Project View/DITA Maps Manager, the drag never starts, it only selects the resource. I need to drag the resource again after it becomes selected. As a result any drag and drop without initial selection becomes a two step operation. How can I fix this? .....   | 578 |
| 21.14. How do I set the version X of the Java virtual machine for <oXygen/> on Mac OS X? .....   | 578 |
| 21.15. On my Mac OS X machine when I double-click on the <oXygen/> icon the application doesn't start / gives a <i>Segmentation fault</i> error. ....  | 578 |
| 21.16. After upgrading my OS X version to 10.4.x / my <oXygen/> version to 6.x <oXygen/> is not associated to the file types XML, XSL, XSD, etc. This worked in the previous version of <oXygen/>. ....  | 579 |
| 21.17. After upgrading my Mac OS X to version 10.4.1 Tiger I am not able to set all XML files to open with <oXygen/> when I click Change All in the Get Info dialog. This worked in OS X 10.3.x. ....  | 579 |
| 21.18. I cannot connect to a SVN repository from the Repository Browser view of SVN client. How can I find more data about the error? .....  | 579 |
| 21.19. What details can I add to my problem report that I enter on the Technical Support online form of the product website? .....   | 580 |

21.1. <oXygen/> opens a XML document after a long time. Why does it happen?

All the content of your document is on a single line or the document is very large. If the content is on a single line please enable the *Format and indent the document on open* preference from Options → Preferences+Editor

/Format/XML before opening the document. If the document is very large (above 10 MB) you should increase the memory available to <oXygen/>.

- 21.2. I am trying to open a file larger than 70 MB for editing in <oXygen/> but it keeps telling me it runs out of memory. What can I do?

Try to increase the memory used by <oXygen/> as described in section Performance problems. If you are still unable to open it you should consider using the *Large File Viewer* tool available both in the <oXygen/> application on the Tools menu and as a standalone tool on the shortcuts menu together with the <oXygen/> shortcut.

- 21.3. My file was created with other application and it contains special characters like é, ©, ®, etc. Why does <oXygen/> display a square for these characters?

You must set a font able to render the special characters from Font preferences. If it is a text file you must set also the encoding used for non XML files. If a TrueType font installed on the computer is not accessible in the Font preferences the Java virtual machine is not able to load the system fonts. It is a problem of the Java virtual machine and a possible solution is to copy the files of the font in the [JVM-home-folder]/lib/fonts folder.

- 21.4. When I start <oXygen/> XML Author on Windows XP I get the following error. What can I do?

```
Cannot start <oXygen/>.
Due to: java.lang.NullPointerException
java.lang.NullPointerException
at com.sun.java.swing.plaf.windows.XPStyle.getString(Unknown Source)
at com.sun.java.swing.plaf.windows.XPStyle.getString(Unknown Source)
at com.sun.java.swing.plaf.windows.XPStyle.getDimension(Unknown Source)
at com.sun.java.swing.plaf.windows.WindowsProgressBarUI.
getPreferredInnerHorizontal(Unknown Source)
```

The error is caused by a bug in the Java runtime from Sun Microsystems [[http://bugs.sun.com/bugdatabase/view\\_bug.do;jsessionid=1068feedb408f5f279405ff0c75:YfiG?bug\\_id=6342514](http://bugs.sun.com/bugdatabase/view_bug.do;jsessionid=1068feedb408f5f279405ff0c75:YfiG?bug_id=6342514)]. You can avoid it by setting the Java system property *com.oxygenxml.no.xp.theme* to the value *true* in the startup script. If you start <oXygen/> XML Author with the author.bat script just add the parameter

```
-Dcom.oxygenxml.no.xp.theme=true
```

to the java command in the script. If you start <oXygen/> XML Author from the Start menu shortcut add the same parameter on a new line in the file [oXygen-install-folder]\author.vmoptions.

- 21.5. I tried to start <oXygen/> on Windows but it crashed with an error message about “Fault Module Name: nvogl32.dll”. How can I start <oXygen/> on my computer?

It is an OpenGL driver issue that can be avoided by creating an empty file called *opengl32.dll* in the <oXygen/> install folder if you start it with the shortcut created by the installer on the Start menu or on Desktop or in the subfolder *bin* of the home folder of the default Java virtual machine if you start <oXygen/> with the *oxygen.bat* script. The default Java virtual machine is the one that is started by a command

```
java -version
```

executed in a command line console.

- 21.6. <oXygen/> crashed the Apple JVM/<oXygen/> could not start up on my Mac OS X computer due to a JVM crash. What can I do?

Usually it is an incompatibility between the JVM and a native library of the host system. Depending on your platform, a crash log file is generated with more data about the problem. For Unix type systems you will get an error in the console. For Windows and Mac OS X the path of the crash log file is displayed on screen.

On Mac OS X 10.5 and later there is an more stable JVM called SoyLatte [<http://landonf.bikemonkey.org/static/soylatte/>] that can be downloaded and installed for avoiding the crash. For running <oxygen/> with the SoyLatte JVM just set the path to the JVM startup executable (`SoyLatte-install-folder/bin/java`) in the `java` command at the end of the script `oxygenMac.sh` and start <oxygen/> from a command line with the command:

```
sh oxygenMac.sh
```

- 21.7. When I do a keyword search in the User Manual the search highlights the wrong word in the text, often several words after the keyword. Is this a bug?

You get wrong highlights when <oxygen/> runs with some Java virtual machines. The search highlights are correct when <oxygen/> runs with a stable Java 1.6 virtual machine. It is a problem of the JavaHelp indexer supplied by Sun Microsystems. In order to see correct highlights it is recommended to use Java 1.6.0\_01 or later.

- 21.8. The keyboard shortcuts listed in Options -> Preferences -> Menu Shortcut Keys do not work. What can I do?

Usually this happens when a special keyboard layout is set in the operating system which generates other characters than the usual ones for the keys of a standard keyboard. For example if you set the extended Greek layout for your keyboard you should return to the default Greek layout or to the English one. Otherwise the Java virtual machine that runs the application will receive other key codes than the usual ones for a standard keyboard.

- 21.9. Before installing Oxygen XML Editor/Author I had no problems viewing XML files in Internet Explorer but now Internet Explorer opens an XML file in Oxygen XML Editor/Author. How can I view XML files in Internet Explorer again?

XML files are opened in Oxygen because Internet Explorer uses the Windows file associations for opening files and you associated XML files with Oxygen XML Editor/Author in the installer panel called File Associations. This installer panel displays a warning above the XML file association that XML files will not be viewed correctly in Internet Explorer if you associate them with Oxygen XML Editor/Author.

For viewing XML files in Internet Explorer again you have to associate XML files with IE by right-clicking on an XML file in Windows Explorer, selecting Open With -> Choose Program, selecting IE in the list of applications and checking the checkbox "Always use the selected program". Also you have to run the following command from a command line:

```
wscript revert.vbs
```

where `revert.vbs` is a text file with the following content:

```
function revert()  
  Set objShell = CreateObject("WScript.Shell")  
  objShell.RegWrite "HKCR\.xml\","xmlfile", "REG_SZ"  
  objShell.RegWrite "HKCR\.xml\Content Type", "text/xml", "REG_SZ"  
end function  
  
revert()
```

- 21.10. I cannot associate the <oXygen/> application with a file type on my Windows computer by right clicking on a file in Windows Explorer, selecting Open With -> Choose Program and browsing to the file `oxygen.exe`. When I select the file `oxygen.exe` in the Windows file browser dialog and I click the *Open* button of the dialog the <oXygen/> application is not added to the list of applications in the *Open With* dialog of Windows. What can I do?

The problem is due to some garbage Windows registry entries remained from old versions of <oXygen/> Please uninstall all your installed versions of <oXygen/> and run a registry cleaner application for cleaning these entries. Reinstalling a recent version of <oXygen/> will not generate this problem anymore.

- 21.11. When I close the <oXygen/> application with multiple files open and then restart it, every file opens in a split panel of the editing area instead of a tab sharing with the other opened files the same editing area which organizes the editors in a tabbed pane. I want to have the files arranged as a tabbed pane as they used to be arranged before this restart of <oXygen/>.

This happens randomly when several files are opened automatically on startup. It is a problem of the JIDE docking views library used in <oXygen/> for docking and floatable views. The workaround is to run the action Perspectives → Reset Layout. If you have a specific layout of the <oXygen/> views which you want to preserve when running this action you should set your layout in Options → Preferences+Perspectives Layout+Use fixed layout.

- 21.12. I try to run <oXygen/> on Linux with the Compiz / Beryl window manager but I get only a grey window which does not respond to user actions / after opening and closing an <oXygen/> dialog or after resizing the <oXygen/> window or a view of the <oXygen/> window the content of this window becomes grey and it does not respond to user actions. What is wrong?

Sun Microsystems' Java virtual machine does not support the Compiz window manager and the Beryl one very well [[http://bugs.sun.com/bugdatabase/view\\_bug.do?bug\\_id=6429775](http://bugs.sun.com/bugdatabase/view_bug.do?bug_id=6429775)]. It is expected better support for Compiz / Beryl will be added in future versions of their Java virtual machine. You should turn off the special effects of the Compiz / Beryl window manager before starting the <oXygen/> application or switch to other window manager.

- 21.13. When I try to drag with the mouse an unselected resource from the Project View/DITA Maps Manager, the drag never starts, it only selects the resource. I need to drag the resource again after it becomes selected. As a result any drag and drop without initial selection becomes a two step operation. How can I fix this?

This is a bug [[http://bugs.sun.com/bugdatabase/view\\_bug.do?bug\\_id=4521075](http://bugs.sun.com/bugdatabase/view_bug.do?bug_id=4521075)] present in JVM versions prior to 1.5.0\_09. This issue is fixed in 1.5.0\_09 and newer versions(including 1.6). See the installation instructions for setting a specific JVM version for running the <oXygen/> application.

- 21.14. How do I set the version X of the Java virtual machine for <oXygen/> on Mac OS X?

<oXygen/> uses the first JVM from the list of preferred JVM versions set on your Mac computer that has the version number not less than 1.5.0. You can move your desired JVM version up in the preferred list by dragging it with the mouse on a higher position in the list of JVMs available from Applications -> Utilities -> Java -> Java Preferences.

- 21.15. On my Mac OS X machine when I double-click on the <oXygen/> icon the application doesn't start / gives a *Segmentation fault* error.

Install the latest Java update from the Apple website. If that doesn't solve the problem copy the file `JavaApplicationStub` from the `/System/Frameworks` folder to the `oxygen.app/Contents/MacOS` folder. For browsing the folder `oxygen.app` Meta + click on the <oXygen/> icon and select Show Package Contents

- 21.16. After upgrading my OS X version to 10.4.x / my <oxygen/> version to 6.x <oxygen/> is not associated to the file types XML, XSL, XSD, etc. This worked in the previous version of <oxygen/>.

The upgrade damaged the file associations in the LaunchService Database on your Mac OS X machine. Please rebuild the LaunchService Database with the following procedure. This will reset all file associations and will rescan the entire file system searching for applications that declare file associations and collecting them in a database used by Finder.

### **Procedure 21.1. Rebuild file associations of the LaunchService Database**

1. Find all the <oxygen/> installations on your hard drive.
2. Delete them by dragging them to the Trash.
3. Clear the Trash.
4. Unpack the installation kit on your desktop.
5. Copy the contents of the archive into the folder /Applications/Oxygen.
6. Run the command

```
/System/Library/Frameworks/CoreServices.framework/Frameworks/LaunchServices.framework/Support/lsregister -kill -r -domain local -domain system -domain user -dump
```

from the Terminal.

7. Restart Finder with

```
killall Finder
```

from the Terminal.

8. Create a XML or XSD file on your desktop. It should take the <oxygen/> icon.
9. Double click it. After accepting the confirmation dialog <oxygen/> will be start up.

- 21.17. After upgrading my Mac OS X to version 10.4.1 Tiger I am not able to set all XML files to open with <oxygen/> when I click Change All in the Get Info dialog. This worked in OS X 10.3.x.

On Mac OS X Tiger you must add an entry to the Info.plist file. Tiger was released after <oxygen/> version 6.0 so the change could not be included in the <oxygen/> 6.0 release. Please close <oxygen/>, press Meta + click on the <oxygen/> icon, select Show package contents, go to Contents, edit the Info.plist file, add the entry

```
<key>CFBundleIdentifier</key>  
<string>ro.sync.exml.Oxygen</string>
```

and restart <oxygen/>. Select Change All in the Get Info dialog to make the association.

- 21.18. I cannot connect to a SVN repository from the Repository Browser view of SVN client. How can I find more data about the error?

First check that you entered the correct URL of the repository in the Repository Browser view. Also check that a SVN server is running on the server machine specified in the repository URL and is accepting connections

from SVN clients. You can check that the SVN server accepts connections with the command line SVN client from CollabNet.

If you try to access the repository with a svn+ssh URL also check that a SSH server is running on port 22 on the server machine specified in the URL.

If the above conditions are checked and you cannot connect to the SVN repository please generate a logging file on your computer and send the logging file to <support@oxygenxml.com>. For generating a logging file you need to create a text file called log4j.properties in the install directory with the following content:

```
log4j.rootCategory= debug, R2
```

```
log4j.appender.R2=org.apache.log4j.RollingFileAppender
log4j.appender.R2.File=logging.log
log4j.appender.R2.MaxFileSize=12000KB
log4j.appender.R2.MaxBackupIndex=20
log4j.appender.R2.layout=org.apache.log4j.PatternLayout
log4j.appender.R2.layout.ConversionPattern=%r %p [ %t ] %c - %m%n
```

Restart the application, reproduce the error, close the application and send the file logging.log generated in the install directory to <support@oxygenxml.com>.

21.19. What details can I add to my problem report that I enter on the Technical Support online form of the product website?

For problems like server connection error, unexpected delay while editing a document, a crash of the application, etc for which the usual details provided on the Technical Support online form are not enough you can generate an log file and attach it to the problem report. In case of crash you should also attach the crash report file generated by your operating system. For generating a logging file you need to create a text file called log4j.properties in the install directory with the following content:

```
log4j.rootCategory= debug, R2
```

```
log4j.appender.R2=org.apache.log4j.RollingFileAppender
log4j.appender.R2.File=logging.log
log4j.appender.R2.MaxFileSize=12000KB
log4j.appender.R2.MaxBackupIndex=20
log4j.appender.R2.layout=org.apache.log4j.PatternLayout
log4j.appender.R2.layout.ConversionPattern=%r %p [ %t ] %c - %m%n
```

Restart the application, reproduce the error, close the application. The log file is called logging.log and is located in the install directory.

---

# Index

## Symbols

- <oXygen/> CSS extensions
  - <oXygen/> CSS custom functions, 246
    - attributes(), 249
    - base-uri(), 247
    - capitalize(), 247
    - concat(), 247
    - local-name(), 246
    - lowercase(), 247
    - name(), 246
    - parent-url(), 247
    - replace(), 248
    - unparsed-entity-uri(), 248
    - uppercase(), 247
    - url(), 246
  - additional properties
    - display tags, 245
    - folding elements, 243
    - link elements, 244
  - supported features from CSS Level 3
    - additional custom selectors, 241
    - attr() function, 239
    - namespace selectors, 238

## A

- Archives, 343
  - browse, 343
  - edit, 344
  - file browser, 343
  - modify, 343
- Author editor, 83
  - Attributes view, 87
  - Change Tracking, 104
  - content author role, 84
  - contextual menu, 94
  - edit content, 97
  - edit markup, 96
  - editing XML, 96
  - Elements view, 87
  - Entities view, 89
  - external references, 93
  - find/replace, 94
  - navigation, 90
    - bookmarks, 91
    - display the markup, 91
  - Outline view, 85
  - position information tooltip, 91
  - reload content, 101
  - roles: content author, developer, 84

- validation, 101
- whitespace handling, 102
  - versions differences, 103
- WYSIWYG editing, 83
- Author Settings
  - actions, 183
    - insert section, 183
    - insert table, 186
  - Author default operations, 189
- Java API, 192
  - Author Extension State Listener, 210
  - Author Schema Aware Editing Handler, 211
  - CSS Styles Filter, 222
    - example 1, 193
    - example 2, 196
  - Extensions Bundle, 206
  - generate unique ID, 230
  - References Resolver, 219
  - Table Cell Span Provider, 227
  - Table Column Width Provider, 223
- menus, 183
  - contextual menu, 189
  - main menu, 188
- toolbars, 183
  - configure toolbar, 187

## C

- Common problems, 575
- Comparing and merging documents, 334
  - directories comparison, 334
    - Compare images view, 337
    - comparison results, 336
    - user interface, 335
  - files comparison, 337
    - character comparison, 342
    - compare toolbar, 339
    - file contents panel, 341
    - files selector, 341
    - main menu, 338
    - word comparison, 341
- Configure the application, 483
  - (S)FTP, 566
  - (S)FTP configuration, 564
  - Archive, 555
  - certificates, 567
  - configure toolbars, 574
  - CSS validator, 525
  - custom validation, 523
  - Data Sources, 544
    - download links for database drivers, 548
    - table filters, 549
  - Diff, 552
  - Diff Appearance, 555



- document type association, 487
  - Editor preferences, 492
    - author, 496
    - author track changes, 502
    - code templates, 518
    - colors, 514
    - content completion, 510
    - document checking, 522
    - document templates, 519
    - elements and attributes by prefix, 516
    - format, 505
    - format - CSS, 509
    - format - JavaScript, 510
    - format - XML, 506
    - grid, 494
    - open/save, 517
    - pages, 492
    - schema aware, 498
    - spell check, 520
    - text, 493
  - editor variables, 572
  - encoding, 491
  - external tools, 557
  - file types, 560
  - fonts, 486
  - global, 484
  - HTTP advanced configuration, 565
  - HTTP configuration, 564
  - HTTP proxy configuration, 564
  - import preferences from other distribution, 571
  - import/export global options, 483
  - menu shortcut keys, 559
  - messages, 568, 570
  - outline, 567
  - perspectives layout, 489
  - plugins, 557
  - reset global options, 572
  - scenarios management, 572
  - sharing preferences, 571
  - SVN, 549
  - SVN Diff, 552
  - SVN file editors, 561
  - view, 568
  - Working Copy, 551
  - XML, 525
  - XML catalog, 525
  - XML parser, 527
    - Saxon EE Validation, 528
  - XProc, 529
  - XSLT, 530
  - XSLT/FO/XQuery, 530
  - XSLT/FO/XQuery preferences
    - custom engines, 542
    - FO Processors, 538
    - MSXML, 535
    - MSXML.NET, 536
    - Saxon HE/PE/EE, 532
    - Saxon HE/PE/EE advanced options, 533
    - Saxon6, 531
    - XPath, 540
    - XSLTProc, 533
  - Content Management System, 369
  - copy/paste
    - grid editor, 296
  - CSS support in <oXygen/> Author
    - <oXygen/> CSS extensions, 237
      - Media Type oxygen, 237
    - CSS 2.1 features
      - properties support table, 234
      - supported selectors, 232
      - unsupported selectors, 233
  - Customization support, 159
    - Document Type Associations (advanced customization tutorial), 165
      - Author Settings, 182
      - Basic Association, 165
      - configuring extensions - Link target reference finder, 214
      - configuring Transformation Scenarios, 204
      - New File Templates, 201
      - XML Catalogs, 203
    - example files, 249
      - the Simple Documentation Framework Files, 249
    - simple customization tutorial
      - CSS, 161
      - XML Instance Template , 164
      - XML Schema, 160
- ## D
- Databases, 345
    - Native XML databases (NXD), 356
    - Relational databases, 345
    - WebDAV Connection, 366
  - Develop an <oXygen/> plugin, 460
    - example - a custom protocol plugin>, 466
    - example - UppercasePlugin, 465
    - implementing plugins, 460
      - component validation plugins, 463
      - custom protocol plugins, 462
      - document plugins, 462
      - general plugins, 461
      - resource locking custom protocol plugins, 463
      - selection plugins, 462
    - installing the plugin, 467
    - introduction, 460
    - requirements, 460
  - Digital signature, 375

- canonicalizing files, 376
  - certificates, 377
  - signing files, 378
  - verifying the signature, 379
  - DITA Map
    - DITA specialization support, 125
      - editing DITA Topic specialization, 125
  - DITA MAP document type, 142
    - association rules, 143
    - Author extension, 143
      - catalogs, 144
      - templates, 144
    - transformation scenarios, 144
    - schema, 143
  - DITA Maps, 107
    - advanced operations, 113
      - edit properties, 115
      - inserting a topic group, 115
      - inserting a topic heading, 114
      - inserting a topic reference, 113
    - DITA OT customization support, 123
      - customizing the <oxygen/> Ant tool, 124
      - increase the memory for Ant, 124
      - resolve topic reference through an XML catalog, 124
      - upgrade DITA OT, 124
      - use your own custom build file, 124
      - use your own DITA OT, 123
    - DITA specialization
      - editing DITA Map specialization, 125
    - DITA transformation scenario, 117
    - transforming DITA Maps, 116
      - output formats, 116
      - running an ANT transformation, 123
  - DITA Topics document type, 135
    - association rules, 135
    - Author extensions, 136
      - catalogs, 142
      - templates, 142
    - transformation scenarios, 142
    - schema, 135
  - DITA transformation scenario, 117
    - customize scenario, 117
  - DocBook Targetset document type, 135
    - association rules, 135
    - Author extensions, 135
      - templates, 135
    - schema, 135
  - DocBook V4 document type, 129
    - association rules, 129
    - Author extensions, 130
      - catalogs, 133
      - templates, 133
    - transformation scenarios, 134
    - schema, 130
  - DocBook V5 document type, 134
    - association rules, 134
    - Author extensions, 134
      - catalogs, 134
      - templates, 134
    - transformation scenarios, 134
    - schema, 134
  - Documentum (CMS) Support, 369
    - actions, 370
      - cabinets/folders, 371
      - connection, 371
      - resources, 372
    - configuration, 369
      - connection, 370
      - data source, 369
- ## E
- EAD document type, 158
    - association rules, 158
    - Author extensions, 158
      - templates, 158
    - schema, 158
  - edit, 21
    - archives, 344
    - change user interface language, 82
    - close documents, 35
    - copy/paste, 468
    - create new documents, 23
    - file properties, 35
    - find/replace, 468
    - find/replace (keyboard shortcuts), 473
    - integrate external tools, 77
      - Ant tool (example), 78
    - large file viewer, 79
    - open and close documents, 23
    - open current document in Web browser, 34
    - open documents, 29
    - open read-only files, 82
    - open remote documents (FTP/SFTP/WebDAV), 30
    - Quick Find toolbar, 472
    - save documents, 29
    - scratch buffer, 82
    - Unicode documents, 21
    - Unicode support, 21
    - Unicode toolbar, 22
  - Editing CSS stylesheets, 76
    - content completion, 76
    - folding, 77
    - format and indent (pretty print), 77
    - other editing actions, 77
    - Outline view, 76
    - validation, 76

## Editing XML documents, 35

- associate a schema to a document, 35
  - adding a processing instruction, 36
  - learning a document structure, 37
  - setting a default schema, 35
- document navigation, 56
  - bookmarks, 56
  - folding, 56
  - navigation buttons, 60
  - outline view, 57
  - using the Go To dialog, 60
- editor specific actions, 72
  - document actions, 73
  - edit actions, 72
  - refactoring actions, 74
  - select actions, 72
  - smart editing, 75
  - source actions, 72
  - split actions, 72
  - syntax highlight depending on namespace prefix, 75
- formatting and indenting documents (pretty print), 67
- grouping documents in XML projects, 61
  - large documents, 61
  - project level settings, 65
  - project view, 62
  - team collaboration - Subversion, 64
- image preview, 70
- including document parts with XInclude, 65
- locking and unlocking XML markup, 71
- making a persistent copy of results, 70
- markup transparency, 71
- status information, 70
- streamline with content completion, 37
  - code templates, 41
  - the Attributes panel, 43
  - the Elements view, 44
  - the Entities view, 44
  - the Model panel, 41
- working with XML Catalogs, 67

**F**

- find/replace, 468
  - Author editor, 94
  - Find All Elements dialog, 471
  - keyboard shortcuts, 473
  - Quick Find toolbar, 472
- FO document type, 157
  - association rules, 157
  - Author extensions, 157
    - transformation scenarios, 157
  - schema, 157

**G**

- Getting started, 15
  - dockable views and editors, 19
  - help, 15
  - perspectives, 15
    - database, 17
    - editor, 15
  - supported types of documents, 15
- grid editor, 292
  - add nodes, 295
  - bidirectional text, 298
  - clear column content, 295
  - copy/paste, 296
  - drag and drop, 296
  - duplicate nodes, 295
  - insert table row, 295
  - inserting table column, 295
  - layouts (grid vs. tree), 293
  - navigation, 293
    - collapse all, 294
    - collapse children, 294
    - collapse others, 294
    - expand all, 294
    - expand children, 294
  - refresh layout, 296
  - sort table column, 295
  - start editing a cell value, 296
  - stop editing a cell value, 296

**I**

- Installation
  - All Platforms version, 5
  - Linux, 5
  - Mac OS X, 4
  - multiple instances (Unix/Linux server), 6
  - requirements, 3
  - unattended (Windows and Linux only), 6
  - Windows, 4

**L**

- License
  - floating (concurrent) license, 9
  - floating license server, 10
  - license server installed as Windows service, 11
  - register a license key, 8
  - registration code, 12
  - release floating license, 12
  - unregister license key, 12

**M**

- MathML document type, 150
  - association rules, 151

schema, 151  
 templates, 151  
 Microsoft Office OOXML document type, 151  
 association rules, 151  
 schema, 152  
 templates, 152

**N**

Native XML databases (NXD), 356  
 data sources configuration, 356  
 Berkeley DB XML, 356  
 Documentum xDb (X-Hive/DB), 358  
 eXist, 356  
 MarkLogic, 357  
 Tamino, 357  
 TigerLogic, 357  
 database connections configuration, 358  
 Berkeley DB XML, 358  
 Documentum xDb (X-Hive/DB), 361  
 eXist, 359  
 MarkLogic, 359  
 Tamino, 360  
 TigerLogic, 360  
 resource management  
 Data Source Explorer view, 361  
 NVDL document type, 155  
 association rules, 155  
 Author extensions, 155

**O**

OASIS XML Catalog document type, 153  
 association rules, 154  
 schema, 154  
 templates, 154  
 Open Office ODF document type, 152  
 association rules, 153  
 schema, 153  
 templates, 153

**P**

Performance problems  
 external processes, 14  
 large documents, 13  
 problems on Linux/Solaris, 14

**Q**

Querying documents  
 running XPath expressions, 328  
 XPath Builder view, 332  
 XPath console, 328

**R**

Relational databases, 345  
 connections configuration, 347  
 IBM DB2, 348  
 JDBC-ODBC connection, 348  
 Microsoft SQL Server, 348  
 MySQL, 349  
 Oracle 11g, 349  
 PostgreSQL 8.3, 350  
 data sources configuration, 345  
 generic JDBC data source, 346  
 IBM DB2, 345  
 Microsoft SQL Server, 346  
 MySQL, 346  
 Oracle 11g, 347  
 PostgreSQL 8.3, 347  
 resource management, 350  
 Data Source Explorer view, 350  
 Table Explorer view, 353  
 RelaxNG document type, 154  
 association rules, 155  
 Author extensions, 155

**S**

Schematron 1.5 document type, 156  
 Schematron 1.5 document type  
 association rules, 156  
 Author extensions, 156  
 Schematron document type, 155  
 association rules, 155  
 Author extensions, 155  
 Startup parameter, 7  
 SVN Branches / Tags, 415  
 create a Branch / Tag, 416  
 create patches, 422  
 from repository revision, 426  
 from working copy, 423  
 merging, 417  
 merge options, 420  
 merge revisions, 417  
 merge two different trees, 419  
 reintegrate a branch, 419  
 resolve merge conflicts, 421  
 relocate a working copy, 422  
 switch the repository location, 422  
 SVN Client, 380  
 Annotations view, 447  
 command line interface, 454  
 add, 456  
 add / edit property, 459  
 add to svn:ignore, 456  
 branch / tag, 457  
 checkout, 454

- cleanup, 457
- commit, 455
- copy, 457
- delete, 456
- diff, 455
- export, 456
- import, 456
- information, 456
- lock, 458
- mark as merged, 458
- mark resolved, 457
- merge, 458
- move / rename, 457
- override and commit, 459
- override and update, 458
- refresh, 455
- remove property, 459
- revert, 457
- revert changes from these revisions, 459
- revert changes from this revision, 459
- scan for locks, 458
- show / refresh properties, 457
- show history, 455
- synchronize, 455
- update, 455
- Compare view
  - Compare images view, 443
  - description, 441
  - Toolbar, 442
- Console view, 450
- define a repository location, 389
  - Add/Edit/Remove repository locations, 389
  - authentication, 390
- define a working copy, 391
  - check out, 392
  - use an existing working copy, 394
- editor, 443
- Help view, 450
- History view
  - description, 444
  - history actions, 446
  - history filter dialog, 445
  - history filter field, 446
- image preview, 444
- main window, 381
  - main menu, 382
  - starting Syncro SVN Client, 381
  - views, 382
- obtain information for a resource
  - request history, 411
  - request status information, 411
- Preferences, 454
- Properties view
  - description, 448
  - toolbar and contextual menu, 450
- Repository view
  - contextual menu actions, 430
  - general description, 429
  - Toolbar, 429
- Resource History view, 412
  - Directory Change Set view, 413
  - history actions available on double selection, 413
  - history actions available on single selection, 412
- Revision Graph, 450
- sparse checkouts, 429
- SVN Branches / Tags, 415
- SVN properties, 414
  - Add / Edit / Remove, 415
- SVN working copy resources, 394
- Synchronize view
  - contextual menu actions, 439
  - general description, 438
  - icons, 441
  - synchronize trees, 439
  - Toolbar, 439
- Synchronize with the SVN repository, 398
- Working Copy view
  - contextual menu actions, 433
  - general description, 432
  - icons, 437
  - Toolbar, 433
- working with repositories
  - Copy / Move / Delete resources, 428
  - import / export resources, 428
- SVN working copy resources
  - add resources to version control, 394
  - Copy / Move / Rename resources, 395
  - delete resources, 395
  - edit files, 394
  - ignore resources, 395
  - lock / unlock resources, 396
    - locked items, 397
    - locking a file, 397
    - scanning for locks, 397
    - unlocking a file, 398
- Synchronize with the SVN repository, 398
  - commit changes, 408
  - integration with Bug Tracking tools, 410
  - presentation modes, 398
  - resolve conflicts, 402
    - content conflicts vs property conflicts, 403
    - drop incoming modifications, 406
    - edit real content conflicts, 404
    - merge conflicted resources, 406
    - real conflicts vs mergeable conflicts, 403
    - revert changes, 405
  - update the working copy, 407
  - view differences, 401

**T**

- TEI P4 document type, 147
  - association rules, 147
  - Author extensions, 147
    - catalogs, 149
    - templates, 149
    - transformation scenarios, 149
  - schema, 147
- TEI P5 document type, 149
  - association rules, 150
  - Author extensions, 150
    - catalogs, 150
    - templates, 150
    - transformation scenarios, 150
  - schema, 150
- Text editor specific actions, 468
  - change the font size, 480
  - check spelling, 476
  - check spelling in files, 479
  - drag and drop, 481
  - exit the application, 482
  - find and replace text in multiple files, 473
  - insert file at caret position, 481
  - open file at caret position, 481
  - open file at caret position in system application, 481
  - print a file, 481
  - switch between opened tabs, 481
  - undo and redo, 468
  - VI editor actions, 481
- Transformation scenario, 301
  - batch transformation, 302
  - built-in transformation scenarios, 302
  - new transformation scenario
    - additional XSLT stylesheets, 312
    - configure transformation scenario, 302
    - creating a transformation scenario, 312
    - XSLT parameters, 310
    - XSLT/XQuery extensions, 312
  - sharing the transformation scenarios; project level scenarios, 313
- Transforming documents, 300
  - common transformations, 319
    - HTML Help output, 321
    - HTML output, 321
    - Java Help output, 322
    - PDF output, 319
    - PS output, 320
    - TXT output, 320
    - XHTML output, 322
  - custom XSLT processors, 325
  - output formats, 300
  - supported XSLT processors, 322
  - Transformation scenario, 301

- Transformation Scenarios view, 313
- XSL-FO processors, 314
- XSLT processors extensions paths, 325

**U**

- Uninstalling the application, 13
- Upgrade, 12
  - check for new version, 13

**V**

- Validating XML documents, 45
  - against a schema, 47
    - caching the schema used for validation, 48
    - custom validation, 49
    - marking validation errors, 47
    - references to XML Schema specification, 55
    - resolving references to remote schemas with an XML Catalog, 55
    - validate as you type, 49
    - validation actions, 54
    - validation example, 48
    - validation scenario, 51
  - checking XML well-formedness, 45
- Validation scenario
  - sharing the validation scenarios; project level scenarios, 54

**W**

- WebDAV Connection, 366
  - actions
    - at connection level, 367
    - at file level, 367
    - at folder level, 367
  - configuration, 366

**X**

- XHTML document type, 144
  - association rules, 144
  - Author extensions, 144
    - catalogs, 146
    - templates, 146
    - transformation scenarios, 147
  - CSS, 144
    - schema, 144
- XML Outline view, 57
  - document structure change, 59
    - popup menu, 59
  - document tag selection, 60
  - modification follow-up, 59
  - outliner filters, 58
  - XML document overview, 58
- XML Schema document type, 154

- association rules, 154
- XMLSpec document type, 156
  - association rules, 156
  - Author extensions, 154, 157
    - catalogs, 157, 158
    - templates, 157
    - transformation scenarios, 157
  - schema, 156
- XSLT document type, 156
  - association rules, 156
  - Author extensions, 156